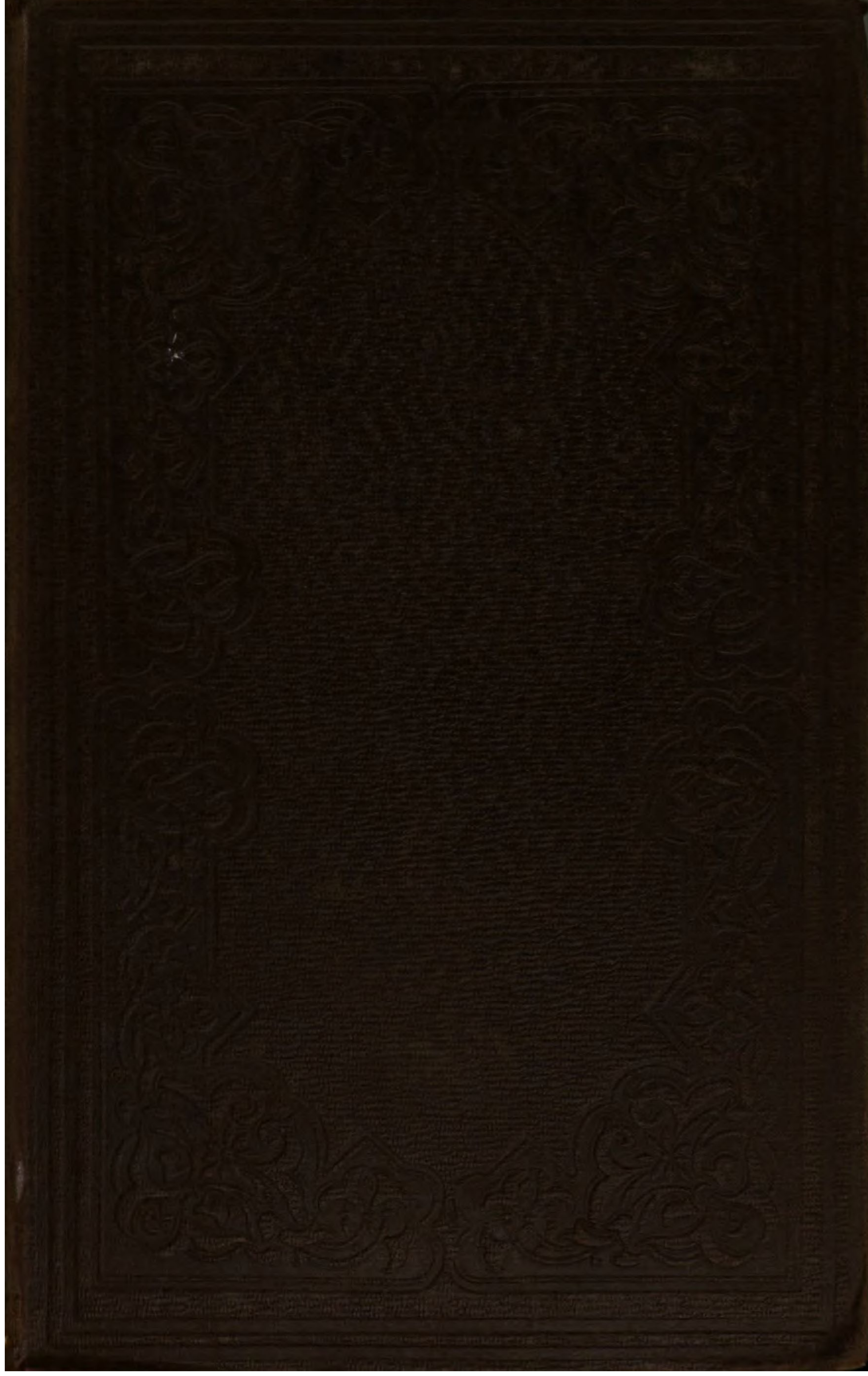






Brit. 355 <sup>ms</sup> -

Lingard











THE  
HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

---

VOL. III.



---

Printed by J. & H. Cox (Brothers), 74 & 75, Great Queen Street,  
Lincoln's-Inn Fields.

---



THE  
HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

FROM THE FIRST

INVASION BY THE ROMANS

TO THE

ACCESSION OF WILLIAM AND MARY

IN 1688.

By JOHN LINGARD, D.D.

THE FIFTH EDITION,  
REVISED AND CONSIDERABLY ENLARGED,  
IN TEN VOLUMES.

VOL. III.

---

LONDON:  
CHARLES DOLMAN, 61, NEW BOND STREET.

---

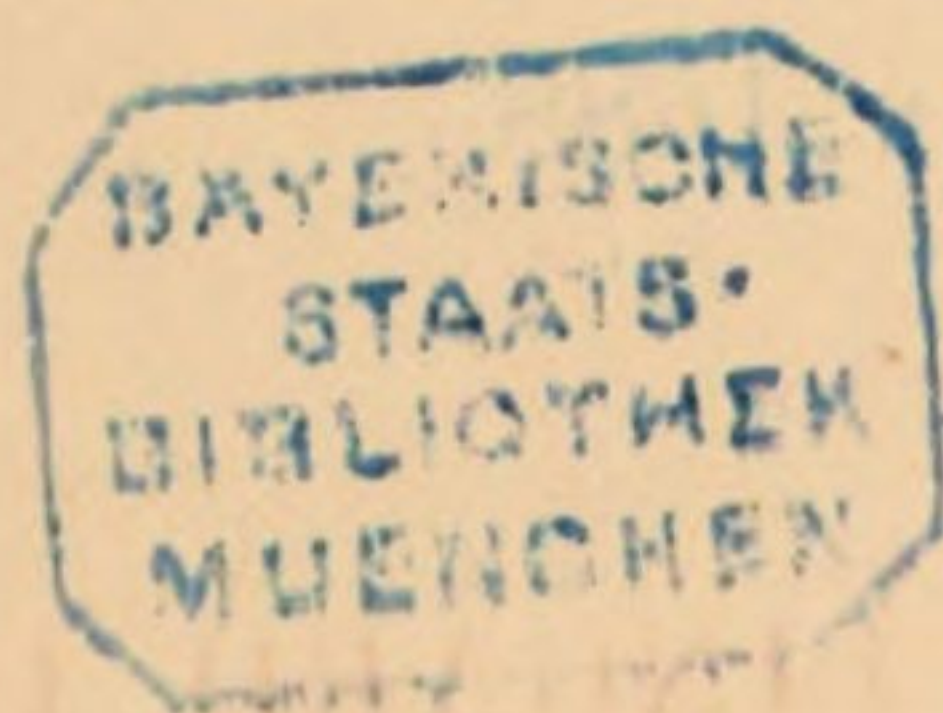
MDCCCXLIX.



HISTORY OF ENGLAND

BY THE HONORABLE

WILLIAM PURKESS







# CONTENTS

OF

## THE THIRD VOLUME.

### CHAPTER I.

#### EDWARD II.

CORONATION OF EDWARD—ELEVATION, EXILE, AND DEATH OF GAVESTON—  
WAR IN SCOTLAND—THE DEFEAT AT BANNOCKBURN—EDWARD BRUCE DE-  
FEATED AND SLAIN IN IRELAND—TRUCE WITH SCOTLAND—WAR WITH  
THE BARONS—LOSS OF GUIENNE—THE QUEEN MAKES WAR ON THE KING  
—EDWARD IS DEPOSED AND MURDERED.

|                                   |            |                                    |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|
| Accession of Edward II.           | 1          | Publication of the papal truce ..  | 38         |
| Recall of Gaveston ..             | 3          | It is violated by the Scots ..     | 39         |
| King's marriage.. ..              | 4          | Truce between England and Scot-    |            |
| And coronation .. ..              | <i>ib.</i> | land .. ..                         | 41         |
| Exile of the favourite ..         | 5          | Scottish memorial to the pope ..   | 42         |
| Petition of the Commons ..        | 6          | The English barons rebel ..        | 44         |
| Gaveston returns .. ..            | 7          | The Spencers banished .. ..        | 47         |
| And conceals himself ..           | 9          | King takes up arms .. ..           | 48         |
| Barons in arms .. ..              | <i>ib.</i> | Receives the Spencers .. ..        | <i>ib.</i> |
| He rejoins the king .. ..         | 10         | Lancaster treats with the Scots .. | 49         |
| The articles of reform ..         | 11         | He is made prisoner .. ..          | 51         |
| Gaveston departs .. ..            | 13         | And beheaded .. ..                 | 52         |
| And returns .. ..                 | 14         | Revision of the ordinances ..      | 53         |
| He is taken prisoner ..           | 15         | Inroad of the Scots .. ..          | 54         |
| And beheaded .. ..                | 16         | Treason of Harclay .. ..           | 55         |
| King and barons reconciled ..     | 17         | Truce with Scotland .. ..          | 56         |
| War with Scotland .. ..           | 19         | Escape of Mortimer to France ..    | 57         |
| Battle of Bannockburn ..          | 22         | The king of France invades         |            |
| War in Ireland .. ..              | 24         | Guienne .. ..                      | 58         |
| The natives .. ..                 | 25         | The queen goes to France ..        | 59         |
| Are joined by Edward Bruce ..     | 27         | And Prince Edward .. ..            | 60         |
| He is crowned .. ..               | 29         | They refuse to return .. ..        | 61         |
| Is joined by the king of Scots .. | <i>ib.</i> | But land with an army .. ..        | 63         |
| Irish memorial to the pope ..     | 30         | The queen is joined by great       |            |
| Edward Bruce is killed ..         | 33         | numbers .. ..                      | 65         |
| Famine and pestilence ..          | 34         | Edward is forced to flee.. ..      | 66         |
| Dispute respecting the ordinances | 35         | The elder Spencer is taken and     |            |
| Negotiation with Scotland ..      | 37         | executed .. ..                     | 67         |



|                                  |    |                                |    |
|----------------------------------|----|--------------------------------|----|
| Edward is taken .. ..            | 68 | And made to resign .. ..       | 73 |
| Execution of the younger Spencer | 69 | Edward is murdered .. ..       | 75 |
| The prince is declared king ..   | 71 | Abolition of the order of Tem- |    |
| The king is deposed .. ..        | 72 | plars .. ..                    | 76 |

## CHAPTER II.

## EDWARD III.

\* \* \* Genealogical Table, Edward III. to Henry VII., facing p. 83.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE SCOTS—EXECUTION OF THE EARL OF KENT—FALL AND EXECUTION OF MORTIMER—BALIOL RECOVERS AND LOSES SCOTLAND—EDWARD CLAIMS THE CROWN OF FRANCE—HIS USELESS EXPEDITIONS TO FLANDERS—VICTORY AT SEA—TRUCE—RENEWAL OF THE WAR—VICTORY AT CRECI—VICTORY AT NEVIL'S CROSS—SURRENDER OF CALAIS—ANOTHER TRUCE—PESTILENCE—THE FLAGELLANTS.

|                                                     |            |                                                         |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Proceedings of the new government .. ..             | 83         | The rights of the peerage ..                            | 123        |
| Negotiations with Scotland ..                       | 84         | Edward's dissimulation ..                               | 124        |
| Campaign in the county of Durham .. ..              | 86         | The king supports the new duke of Bretagne .. ..        | 126        |
| The armies meet .. ..                               | 87         | Heroism of the duchess ..                               | 127        |
| The Scots escape .. ..                              | 89         | She receives succours from England .. ..                | <i>ib.</i> |
| Peace with Scotland .. ..                           | <i>ib.</i> | Recommencement of the war ..                            | 128        |
| Power of Mortimer .. ..                             | 91         | The earl of Derby in Guienne ..                         | 129        |
| Execution of the earl of Kent ..                    | 93         | Edward in Flanders .. ..                                | 130        |
| Fall of Mortimer .. ..                              | 95         | Artaveldt is murdered .. ..                             | 131        |
| He is apprehended .. ..                             | 96         | Edward lands in Normandy ..                             | 132        |
| And executed .. ..                                  | 98         | Reaches Paris .. ..                                     | 133        |
| Troubles in Scotland .. ..                          | 99         | Crosses the Seine .. ..                                 | <i>ib.</i> |
| The disinherited noblemen arm ..                    | 100        | Passes the Somme .. ..                                  | 134        |
| They sail from the Humber ..                        | 101        | Reaches Creci .. ..                                     | 135        |
| Success of Baliol .. ..                             | <i>ib.</i> | Preparations for the battle ..                          | 136        |
| Edward's ambiguous conduct ..                       | 102        | Array of the French army ..                             | <i>ib.</i> |
| He makes war on Scotland ..                         | 104        | The Genoese are broken ..                               | 137        |
| Battle of Halidon Hill .. ..                        | 105        | The prince in danger .. ..                              | 138        |
| Surrender of Berwick .. ..                          | <i>ib.</i> | The king of France flees ..                             | 139        |
| Adventures of Baliol .. ..                          | 106        | Meeting of Edward and his son ..                        | <i>ib.</i> |
| Edward's claim to the crown of France .. ..         | 107        | A second battle in the morning ..                       | 140        |
| His dissensions with Philip of Valois .. ..         | 109        | Loss of the French .. ..                                | <i>ib.</i> |
| Story of Robert of Artois ..                        | 110        | Siege of Calais .. ..                                   | 141        |
| The king subsidizes allies ..                       | 111        | King of Scots invades England ..                        | 142        |
| And begins the war .. ..                            | 112        | Battle of Nevil's Cross .. ..                           | 143        |
| The pope exhorts him to peace ..                    | 114        | War in Guienne .. ..                                    | 145        |
| Edward gains a victory by sea ..                    | 117        | Surrender of Calais .. ..                               | 146        |
| But fails in his attempt on Tournay .. ..           | 119        | A truce concluded under the mediation of the pope .. .. | 149        |
| And concludes an armistice ..                       | 120        | Attempt to surprise Calais ..                           | 151        |
| The king returns and prosecutes his ministers .. .. | 121        | Victory at sea over the Spaniards ..                    | 152        |
| Accuses Archbishop Stratford ..                     | 122        | The great pestilence .. ..                              | 154        |
|                                                     |            | Consequences of the mortality ..                        | 156        |
|                                                     |            | Opinions as to its cause ..                             | 157        |
|                                                     |            | The sect of Flagellants .. ..                           | 159        |



CHAPTER III.

RENEWAL OF THE WAR IN FRANCE—VICTORY OF POITIERS—LIBERATION OF THE KING OF SCOTS—PEACE WITH FRANCE—RELEASE OF KING JOHN—WHO RETURNS TO ENGLAND AND DIES—WAR IN SPAIN—VICTORY OF NAVARETTE—CONFISCATION OF GUIENNE—SICKNESS AND DEATH OF THE BLACK PRINCE—DEATH OF THE KING—AMENDMENTS IN THE LAWS AND ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE—CONSTITUTION AND FORMS OF PARLIAMENT—MANNER OF RAISING TAXES—CONSTITUTION OF THE ARMY AND NAVY.

|                                                        |            |                                                                                     |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Renewal of the war in France ..                        | 161        | Its members .. ..                                                                   | 213        |
| Invasion of Scotland .. ..                             | 164        | The three estates .. ..                                                             | 214        |
| Victory of Poitiers .. ..                              | <i>ib.</i> | The clergy .. ..                                                                    | <i>ib.</i> |
| Force of the two armies .. ..                          | 165        | The lords .. ..                                                                     | 215        |
| First division of the French defeated .. ..            | 167        | The commons .. ..                                                                   | 218        |
| The second retires from the field .. ..                | 168        | Knights of the shire .. ..                                                          | <i>ib.</i> |
| The third is vanquished .. ..                          | <i>ib.</i> | Citizens and burgesses .. ..                                                        | 219        |
| John is taken prisoner .. ..                           | 169        | Opening of the parliament .. ..                                                     | 220        |
| Modesty of the prince .. ..                            | 170        | Separation of the three estates .. ..                                               | 221        |
| Negotiation with the king of Scots .. ..               | 171        | Laws granted by the king at the prayer of one estate with assent of the other .. .. | 223        |
| He is ransomed .. ..                                   | 173        | Commons refuse to be bound without their assent .. ..                               | 224        |
| Ineffectual negotiation with John .. ..                | 176        | Evasion of new statutes .. ..                                                       | 225        |
| Edward marches through France .. ..                    | 177        | Judicial duties of the peers .. ..                                                  | 226        |
| The French fleet insults the coast .. ..               | 178        | Policy of Edward .. ..                                                              | 227        |
| Edward consents to a peace .. ..                       | 180        | System of taxation .. ..                                                            | 229        |
| Its terms .. ..                                        | <i>ib.</i> | Manner of levying tenths and fifteenths .. ..                                       | 231        |
| Liberation of John .. ..                               | 181        | Duties on imports and exports .. ..                                                 | 234        |
| He cannot fulfil his engagements .. ..                 | 182        | Tonnage and poundage .. ..                                                          | 235        |
| Ravages of "the companies" .. ..                       | 183        | Taxes on parishes .. ..                                                             | <i>ib.</i> |
| Returns to England .. ..                               | 184        | Constitution of the army .. ..                                                      | 236        |
| And dies .. ..                                         | 185        | Summons of military tenants .. ..                                                   | 237        |
| Story of Pedro the Cruel .. ..                         | 186        | Mercenaries .. ..                                                                   | 238        |
| Who is aided by the Black Prince .. ..                 | 187        | Their pay .. ..                                                                     | 239        |
| Battle of Navarette .. ..                              | 189        | Forced levies .. ..                                                                 | <i>ib.</i> |
| The prince returns into Guienne .. ..                  | 191        | Men at arms .. ..                                                                   | 242        |
| Policy of Charles, and discontent of the Gascons .. .. | <i>ib.</i> | Hoblers .. ..                                                                       | 244        |
| Don Pedro is slain .. ..                               | 193        | Archers .. ..                                                                       | <i>ib.</i> |
| Losses of the English in France .. ..                  | 194        | Footmen .. ..                                                                       | 246        |
| Massacre at Limoges .. ..                              | 195        | Artificers and labourers .. ..                                                      | <i>ib.</i> |
| Defects of chivalry .. ..                              | 196        | The navy .. ..                                                                      | 247        |
| English armies march through France .. ..              | 197        | Ships and men pressed into the service .. ..                                        | 248        |
| Prosecution of ministers .. ..                         | 200        | Commanders .. ..                                                                    | 249        |
| Death of the Black Prince .. ..                        | 201        | Prizes .. ..                                                                        | <i>ib.</i> |
| Influence of the duke of Lancaster .. ..               | 202        | Affairs of the church .. ..                                                         | 250        |
| The king's death .. ..                                 | 204        | Spiritual and temporal courts .. ..                                                 | <i>ib.</i> |
| His character .. ..                                    | 205        | Demands of the popes .. ..                                                          | 251        |
| Advantages derived from his wars .. ..                 | 207        | Peter-pence .. ..                                                                   | 252        |
| Grievances redressed .. ..                             | <i>ib.</i> | Grant of King John .. ..                                                            | <i>ib.</i> |
| Purveyance .. ..                                       | <i>ib.</i> | First-fruits .. ..                                                                  | 253        |
| Administration of justice .. ..                        | 209        | Provision of bishoprics .. ..                                                       | 254        |
| Statute of Treasons .. ..                              | 211        | Of inferior benefices .. ..                                                         | 257        |
| Account of parliament .. ..                            | 213        | Papal officers in England .. ..                                                     | 258        |



|                               |     |                                              |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Statutes against provisors .. | 259 | Obtains preferment ..                        | 268 |
| Nature of the controversy ..  | 264 | Inveighs against beneficed clergy <i>ib.</i> |     |
| Wycliffe .. ..                | 265 | Is called before the primate ..              | 269 |
| He loses his wardenship ..    | 267 | And reprimanded ..                           | 270 |

## CHAPTER IV.

## RICHARD II.

GOVERNMENT OF THE KINGDOM DURING THE MINORITY—INSURRECTION AND EXCESSES OF THE PEOPLE—WYCLIFFE—HIS DEATH AND DOCTRINES—INVASION OF SCOTLAND—PROSECUTION OF MINISTERS—ASCENDANCY OF THE DUKE OF GLOUCESTER—EXECUTION OF THE KING'S FRIENDS—RICHARD RECOVERS HIS AUTHORITY—STATUTES OF PROVISORS—THE KING GOES TO IRELAND—ATTAINDER OF THE DUKE OF GLOUCESTER AND HIS ADHERENTS—JUDGMENT OF THE DUKES OF HEREFORD AND NORFOLK—ILLEGAL CONDUCT OF RICHARD—HE GOES TO IRELAND—HENRY OF LANCASTER REBELS—KING MADE PRISONER AND DEPOSED—HENRY CLAIMS THE CROWN.

|                                            |            |                                              |            |
|--------------------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------|------------|
| Succession of Richard ..                   | 271        | Of the hierarchy ..                          | 309        |
| His coronation ..                          | 272        | Of other points ..                           | 310        |
| Council of regency ..                      | 273        | His translation of the Scriptures <i>ib.</i> |            |
| Transactions in parliament ..              | 275        | State of the government ..                   | 311        |
| Judgment of Alice Perrers ..               | 277        | Suspensions against the duke of Lancaster .. | 312        |
| Events of the war ..                       | 278        | French in Scotland ..                        | 314        |
| A new parliament ..                        | 279        | Richard at York ..                           | 315        |
| Expedition to Bretagne ..                  | 280        | He enters Scotland ..                        | 316        |
| New taxes ..                               | 281        | Promotions ..                                | 317        |
| Ferment among the people ..                | 283        | Duke of Lancaster goes to Spain ..           | 319        |
| Insurrection ..                            | 285        | Threatened invasion from France ..           | 320        |
| At Brentwood ..                            | 286        | The earl of Suffolk impeached ..             | 323        |
| Dartford ..                                | <i>ib.</i> | The king consults the judges ..              | 327        |
| And Gravesend ..                           | <i>ib.</i> | Returns to London ..                         | 329        |
| Sermon of John Ball ..                     | 287        | He is opposed by Gloucester ..               | <i>ib.</i> |
| Proceedings of the insurgents ..           | 288        | Flight of his favourites ..                  | 331        |
| They assemble at Blackheath ..             | 289        | Arrest of his friends ..                     | 332        |
| Commit excesses in London ..               | 290        | Impeachments ..                              | 333        |
| Murder the Flemings ..                     | <i>ib.</i> | Judgments ..                                 | 334        |
| The demands of some granted ..             | 291        | The judges impeached ..                      | 335        |
| The others murder the ministers <i>ib.</i> |            | And condemned ..                             | <i>ib.</i> |
| Wat Tyler is killed ..                     | 292        | More trials ..                               | 336        |
| The insurgents quelled ..                  | 293        | And executions ..                            | 337        |
| Punishment of the insurgents ..            | <i>ib.</i> | Execution of Burley ..                       | <i>ib.</i> |
| Proceedings in parliament ..               | 295        | Dissolution of parliament ..                 | 339        |
| Schism in the papacy ..                    | 298        | The king recovers his authority ..           | 340        |
| Crusade of the bishop of Norwich ..        | 299        | His administration ..                        | 341        |
| Proceedings against Wycliffe ..            | 301        | Statute against provisors ..                 | 345        |
| Synod in London ..                         | 303        | Expedition to Ireland ..                     | 349        |
| His death ..                               | 305        | State of Ireland under Edward III. ..        | 351        |
| His doctrines ..                           | 307        | Statute of Kilkenny ..                       | 352        |
| Of the church ..                           | <i>ib.</i> | Richard lands ..                             | 353        |
| Of property founded in grace ..            | 308        | Petition of the Lollards ..                  | 354        |
| Of the seven sacraments ..                 | <i>ib.</i> |                                              |            |
| Of matrimony ..                            | 309        |                                              |            |



# CONTENTS.

ix

|                                                |                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| The king's marriage .. .. 355                  | Richard's despotic conduct .. 379                   |
| His enmity to the duke of Gloucester .. .. 357 | He goes to Ireland .. .. 381                        |
| Arrests .. .. 359                              | Lancaster lands in England .. 382                   |
| Appeal of treason .. .. 361                    | His success .. .. 384                               |
| Confession of Gloucester .. 362                | Richard returns .. .. 386                           |
| Opening of parliament .. .. <i>ib.</i>         | His army dispersed .. .. <i>ib.</i>                 |
| Impeachment of Gloucester's friends .. .. 363  | The king goes to Conway .. 387                      |
| Gloucester's attainder .. .. 365               | Is deceived by the earl of Northumberland .. .. 388 |
| Attainder of the primate .. 366                | Carried a prisoner to Flint .. 389                  |
| Of the earl of Warwick .. .. 367               | His complaints .. .. 390                            |
| Pardons .. .. 369                              | And interview with Henry .. 391                     |
| Dissimulation of the king .. 370               | Is conducted to the Tower .. 392                    |
| Parliament at Shrewsbury .. 372                | Resigns the crown .. .. 393                         |
| Unconstitutional grants .. .. 375              | Is also deposed .. .. 395                           |
| Exile of Hereford and Norfolk .. 377           | Henry claims the succession .. 396                  |
|                                                | Character of Richard .. .. 398                      |

## CHAPTER V.

### HENRY IV., SURNAMED OF BOLINGBROKE.

CORONATION OF THE NEW KING—INSURRECTION—DEATH OF RICHARD—WAR AGAINST THE SCOTS—REBELLION OF THE PERCIES—INSURRECTION IN YORKSHIRE—REBELLION OF OWEN GLENDOWER—TRANSACTIONS WITH FRANCE—SETTLEMENT OF THE CROWN—DEATH OF THE KING—PRIVILEGES AND AUTHORITY OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS—STATUTES AGAINST THE LOLLARDS.

|                                                    |                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Coronation of Henry .. .. 401                      | Archbishop Scrope and the earl marshal .. .. 438               |
| Proceedings of the new parliament .. .. 402        | Put to death .. .. 439                                         |
| Judgment of the lords appellants .. .. <i>ib.</i>  | Defeat and death of Northumberland .. .. 442                   |
| Salutary laws .. .. 403                            | Rebellion of Owen Glendower .. 443                             |
| Judgment of the late king .. 404                   | Is supported by troops from France .. .. <i>ib.</i>            |
| Insurrection of the lords appellants .. .. 405     | Is gradually subdued .. .. 444                                 |
| Their failure and deaths .. .. 406                 | Henry's transactions with France <i>ib.</i>                    |
| Death of Richard .. .. 411                         | He is defied by St. Pöl .. .. 446                              |
| War with the Scots .. .. 416                       | And challenged by the duke of Orleans .. .. 447                |
| Reports that Richard was still alive .. .. 420     | Murder of the duke of Orleans .. 450                           |
| Executions .. .. <i>ib.</i>                        | Settlement of the crown .. .. 452                              |
| Battle of Homildon Hill .. .. 423                  | Conduct of the prince of Wales 454                             |
| Treatment of the prisoners .. 424                  | He is suspected of aspiring to the throne .. .. 455            |
| Rebellion of the Percies .. .. 425                 | King's bad health .. .. 456                                    |
| Defiance of the Percies .. .. 428                  | And death .. .. 457                                            |
| King's answer .. .. 430                            | Increasing importance of the House of Commons .. .. <i>ib.</i> |
| Battle of Shrewsbury .. .. <i>ib.</i>              | Election of knights of the shire 458                           |
| Submission of the earl of Northumberland .. .. 432 | Freedom from arrest .. .. 459                                  |
| He is pardoned .. .. 433                           | Freedom of debate .. .. 460                                    |
| Escape and capture of the earl of March .. .. 434  | Addresses delivered by the speaker 461                         |
| Insurrection in Yorkshire .. .. 437                | Authority of the commons .. .. 462                             |



|                                  |     |                                   |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|-----|
| In making statutes .. ..         | 462 | Lollards preach against the reve- |     |
| In voting money .. ..            | 463 | nue of the church .. ..           | 468 |
| In appropriating the supplies .. | 464 | Statute de heretico comburendo    | 469 |
| Dispute of privilege .. ..       | 465 | Execution of Sawtre .. ..         | 471 |
| Crime of heresy .. ..            | 467 | Additional statute .. ..          | 472 |

## CHAPTER VI.

## HENRY V.

SUCCESSION OF HENRY V.—INSURRECTION OF THE LOLLARDS—INVASION OF FRANCE—BATTLE OF AZINCOURT—SECOND INVASION OF FRANCE—CONQUEST OF NORMANDY—MURDER OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY—HENRY IS MADE REGENT OF FRANCE—REDUCES MEAUX—AND DIES—HIS FUNERAL—AFFAIRS OF THE CHURCH.

|                                     |            |                                 |            |
|-------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|------------|
| Succession of Henry V. . . .        | 475        | Parties in France .. ..         | 508        |
| Insurrection of the Lollards ..     | 476        | The king lands in Normandy ..   | 509        |
| Apprehension of Oldcastle ..        | 478        | Execution of Sir John Oldcastle | 512        |
| Dispersion of the insurgents ..     | 480        | Conquests of Henry .. ..        | <i>ib.</i> |
| Their number and designs ..         | <i>ib.</i> | Massacre in Paris .. ..         | 513        |
| Henry claims the crown of           |            | Negotiations .. ..              | 514        |
| France .. ..                        | 482        | Siege of Rouen .. ..            | 515        |
| Makes preparations for war ..       | 485        | It surrenders .. ..             | 518        |
| Dismisses the French envoys ..      | 486        | Conferences at Meulent ..       | 519        |
| Conspiracy against him ..           | 487        | Henry is cheated .. ..          | 520        |
| He lands in Normandy ..             | 489        | Murder of the duke of Burgundy  | 522        |
| Reduces Harfleur .. ..              | <i>ib.</i> | Henry is made regent of France  | 523        |
| Passage of the Somme .. ..          | 492        | And married to Catherine ..     | 524        |
| The English at Maisoncelles ..      | 493        | The treaty is confirmed ..      | 525        |
| Preparations for battle ..          | 495        | Defeat of Beaujé .. ..          | 526        |
| Battle of Azincourt .. ..           | 497        | Henry returns to France ..      | 527        |
| Defeat of the first division of the |            | Siege and reduction of Meaux .. | 528        |
| French .. ..                        | 499        | He falls ill and dies .. ..     | 530        |
| Of the second .. ..                 | <i>ib.</i> | His character and burial ..     | 532        |
| And of the third .. ..              | 500        | Proceedings of parliament ..    | 534        |
| Loss of the enemy .. ..             | 501        | Schism in the church .. ..      | 536        |
| Henry returns to England ..         | 502        | Its termination .. ..           | 537        |
| Arrival of the emperor Sigismund    | 504        | Objections to the statutes of   |            |
| Naval victory .. ..                 | 506        | provisors .. ..                 | 538        |
| Conference at Calais .. ..          | 507        |                                 |            |



# HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

## CHAPTER I.

### EDWARD II.

#### CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emp. of Germ.</i>        | <i>K. of Scotland.</i> | <i>K. of France.</i> | <i>K. of Spain.</i> |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Albert ...1308              | Robert I.              | Philip IV. 1314      | Ferdinand IV. 1312  |
| Henry VII...1313            |                        | Louis X....1316      | Alphonso XI.        |
| Louis IV.                   |                        | Philip V....1322     |                     |
|                             |                        | Charles IV.          |                     |
| <i>Popes.</i>               |                        |                      |                     |
| Clement V. 1314. John XXII. |                        |                      |                     |

CORONATION OF EDWARD—ELEVATION, EXILE, AND DEATH OF GAVESTON—WAR IN SCOTLAND—THE DEFEAT AT BANNOCKBURN—EDWARD BRUCE DEFEATED AND SLAIN IN IRELAND—TRUCE WITH SCOTLAND—WAR WITH THE BARONS—LOSS OF GUIENNE—THE QUEEN MAKES WAR ON THE KING—EDWARD IS DEPOSED—AND MURDERED.

OF the six sons of the late king three had preceded him to the grave. The eldest of the survivors, three-and-twenty years of age, bore the name, but inherited little of the character, of his father. From his childhood he had lived in habits of intimacy with Piers de Gaveston, the son of a gentleman of Guienne, whom Edward had selected for his companion. The two boys grew up together; they partook of the same amusements, and applied to the same exercises; and a

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1307.



- CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1307. — similar taste for dissipation and pleasure, cemented, as they advanced in age, the attachment of their more early years. The king had occasion frequently to reprehend, sometimes to punish, the excesses of the heir-apparent; and about three months before his death, he made Gaveston abjure the kingdom, and exacted from his son a promise upon oath that he would never recall his favourite without the royal consent.<sup>1</sup> Affairs required the presence of the young prince in London; but before he departed from Carlisle, Edward sent for him to his bedside; and after giving him such advice as dying kings have often given to their intended successors, told him that of the money in the treasury he had bequeathed thirty-two thousand marks for the service of seven score knights in Palestine; forbade him, under pain of his paternal malediction, to allow Gaveston to return to England without the previous consent of his parliament; and commanded him to prosecute the Scottish war, and to carry his dead bones along with the army to the very extremity of Scotland.<sup>2</sup> Soon after the king died; and his commands no less than his advice were forgotten. His successor hastened from the capital to the borders; received at Carlisle the homage of the English, at Dumfries that of the Scottish barons;
- July 7.
- July 23-29.
- August 6.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ii. 1043.

<sup>2</sup> This command is thus mentioned by Froissart:—"He called his eldest son, and made him swear in the presence of all his barons, by the saints, that as soon as he should be dead, he would have his body boiled in a large caldron until the flesh should be separated from the bones; that he would have the flesh buried, and the bones preserved, and that every time the Scots should rebel against him, he would summon his people, and carry against them the bones of his father; for he believed most firmly that, as long as his bones should be carried against the Scots, those Scots would never be victorious."—Froissart, i. xxv. Johnes's translation. There must be much exaggeration in this.



and at the head of a gallant army advanced in pursuit of Robert Bruce. But war had few attractions for the young Edward. He halted at Cumnock, in Ayrshire; and, under pretence of making preparations for his marriage and coronation, hastily returned into England.

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1307.

August 20.

Sept. 2.

The first object of the new king had been the recall of his favourite, on whom, during his absence, he had conferred the title of earl of Cornwall, with a grant of all the lands which had belonged to Edmund of Almaine, son of Richard, king of the Romans. Gaveston joined him before he left Scotland; and his arrival was followed by a total change in the offices of government. The chancellor, the barons of the Exchequer, the justices of the different courts were removed; and the treasurer, Langton bishop of Lichfield, who, by refusing to supply money for their pleasures, had formerly incurred the enmity of the prince and his favourite, was stripped of his property, and thrown into prison. In defiance of his father's prohibition, Edward ventured to bury the late king's bones at Westminster, and gave the money destined for the holy war to Gaveston, who was daily loaded with new honours. He was made lord chamberlain, affianced to the king's niece, and, when Edward prepared to sail to France, appointed regent of the kingdom, with all those powers which the sovereign on such occasions was accustomed to reserve to himself.<sup>1</sup>

August 6.

Sept. 20.

Oct. 27.

Nov. 1.

Dec. 26.

Edward landed at Boulogne, where he found Philip

1308.

Jan. 24.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 1—4, 11, 49, 53. Heming. 244. Walsing. 95. Lel. Col. i. 248. By several writers the marriage of Gaveston is placed some years later. But the contrary is plain, from the king's grant to Gaveston and Margaret his wife.—Rym. iii. 87.



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1308.  
Jan. 25. le Bel, king of France. He did homage for Guienne and Ponthieu, and the next day in the presence of four kings and three queens married Isabella, to whom he had been contracted four years before, the daughter of the French monarch, and reputed the most beautiful woman in Europe. A few days were given to feasting and rejoicings; and on his return Edward was accompanied or followed by the two uncles of his bride, and a numerous train of foreign noblemen, whom he had invited to be witnesses of his coronation. On their way they were met by the regent and the English barons; when, to the general astonishment, the king, neglecting the others, rushed into the arms of his favourite, Feb. 7. kissed him, and called him his brother. The coronation was performed with extraordinary magnificence;<sup>1</sup> but outward expressions of joy accorded ill with the discontent which secretly rankled in the breasts of the more powerful nobles. Not only had the offices at this Feb. 25.

<sup>1</sup> The following is the oath taken on the occasion:—"Sir, will you grant, and keep, and confirm by your oath, to the people of England, the laws and customs granted to them by the ancient kings of England, your predecessors, righteous and devout to God; and namely, the laws, customs, and franchises, granted to the clergy and people by the glorious king, St. Edward, your predecessor?" "I grant them, and will keep them, and confirm them by oath."

"Sir, will you keep to God, and holy church, and clergy, and people, peace and harmony in God, according to your power?" "I will keep them."

"Sir, will you cause to be observed in all your judgments, equal and right justice and discretion, in mercy and truth, according to your power?" "I will cause it to be observed." "Sir, do you grant that the laws and right customs, which the commonalty of your realm shall have chosen, shall be kept and observed? and will you defend and strengthen them to the honour of God, according to your power?" "I grant it, and promise."—Rolls, iii. 417. Stat. of Realm, i. 168. New Rymer, ii. 33, 36. It seems to have been the doctrine of the age, that parliament possessed the right of adding any other conditions which it thought just to the oath. For in the Rolls is subjoined the following direction: "*adjicianturque prædictis interrogationibus quæ justa fuerint.*"—Rolls, *ibid.*



ceremony been distributed without regard to the claims of inheritance, or the precedents of former reigns; but, what was a general grievance, the place of honour, to carry the crown and walk in the procession immediately before the king, had been allotted to Gaveston, whom they considered a foreign adventurer. This preference awakened every former prejudice against him. Three days later the barons assembled in the refectory of the monks at Westminster, and sent to Edward a petition for the redress of abuses, and the immediate banishment of the favourite. He promised to return an answer in the parliament to be held after Easter, and in the mean time endeavoured, but in vain, to mollify their resentment. Gaveston was still the sole dispenser of the royal favours; in the splendour of his dress and the number of his retinue he outshone every rival; in different tournaments he had by his good fortune or address unhorsed the earls of Lancaster, Hereford, Pembroke, and Warenne; and, elated with his own superiority, he continued to despise and ridicule his opponents. These, however, were fixed in their resolution. Their vanity had been too severely mortified to acquiesce in the triumphs and taunts of a man, whom they considered a foreigner and an upstart. At the parliament their demands were renewed in terms which admitted of neither refusal nor procrastination; letters patent were accordingly issued; Gaveston himself was compelled to swear that he would never return; and the bishops pronounced against him the sentence of excommunication, if he should violate his oath. Edward, to console the affliction of his favourite, made him new grants of lands in England and Guienne, wrote in his favour to the pope and king of France, and accompanied him as

CHAP.

I.  
A.D. 1308.

Feb. 28.

April 28.

May 18.

June 7.

June 26.



CHAP. far as Bristol. There he sailed from England; but  
 I.  
 A.D. 1308. his enemies had scarcely time to felicitate themselves  
 — on his downfall when, to their surprise and indigna-  
 tion, they learned that he had assumed by royal ap-  
 pointment the government of Ireland.<sup>1</sup>

1309.  
 April 27. In Ireland Gaveston displayed the magnificence of  
 a prince, and distinguished himself in several success-  
 ful engagements with the natives.<sup>2</sup> In England the  
 king assembled his parliament, and solicited an aid.  
 In the last year he had obtained a twentieth from the  
 lords and knights, a fifteenth from the citizens and  
 burgesses; the repetition of the request in the present,  
 emboldened the commons to append to their vote of  
 a twenty-fifth the unprecedented demand that their  
 petition for the redress of grievances should be pre-  
 viously granted. This petition deserves the notice of  
 the reader; because it enumerates those abuses, which  
 for more than a century continued under different  
 modifications to harass and irritate the people. They  
 complained, 1. That the king's purveyors took all  
 kinds of provisions without giving any security for  
 the payment; 2. That he had imposed additional  
 duties on wine, on cloth, and on other foreign imports,  
 which had raised the price one-third to the consumer;  
 3. That by the debasement of the coin the value of all  
 commodities had been advanced; 4. That the stewards  
 and marshals of the king's household held pleas, which  
 did not fall under their cognizance; 5. And exercised  
 their authority beyond the verge, that is, a circuit of  
 twelve leagues round the king's person; 6. That no  
 clerks were appointed, as they had been under the last

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 63, 80, 87—93. Trokel. 5, 6. Mons. Malm. 99, 100.  
 Moor, 593. Wals. 96. Trivet, Cort. 4. New Rym. ii. 36. Parl.  
 Writs, ii. 74.

<sup>2</sup> Ann. Hib. apud Cam. ann. 1308, 1309.



monarch, to receive the petitions of the commons in parliament; 7. That the officers appointed to take articles for the king's use in fairs and markets, took more than they ought, and made a profit of the surplus; 8. That in civil suits men were prevented from obtaining their right by writs under the privy seal; 9. That felons eluded the punishment of their crimes by the ease with which charters of pardon were obtained; 10. That the constables of the castles held common pleas at their gates without any authority; and, 11. That the escheators ousted men of their inheritances, though they had appealed to the king's courts. Edward was startled by this remonstrance. He promised to take it into consideration, dismissed the commons, and ordered the lords to attend him three months later at Stamford.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1309.

During the prorogation the great object of the king had been to procure the return of Gaveston, without whose company he appeared to consider life a burden. By condescension and liberality he broke the union of the barons, and attached some of the more powerful to his own party. He had previously solicited the advice and aid of his father-in-law, and had written to the pope in favour of Gaveston. From the king of France he obtained nothing; the pontiff repeatedly exhorted him to live in harmony with his people; and at last absolved Gaveston from his oath, on condition that he should submit to the judgment of the church, and make answer to the charges brought by his enemies. Edward was dissatisfied with this conditional absolution; but his impatience could be no longer controlled; he ordered the favourite to return; flew to Chester to receive him, and conducted

June 26.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. i. 441.



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1309.  
July 30. him to Stamford. There the prelates and barons had assembled to give their advice respecting the petitions of the commons in the preceding session. At their request, he assented to every article, and obtained from them in return the grant of a twenty-fifth, and what the king probably valued more than the money, their consent that Gaveston, whose humility had soothed them as much as Edward's concessions, might remain in England, "provided he should demean himself properly."

But neither the king nor his minion was capable of improving from experience. The reign of dissipation recommenced; the court again exhibited a perpetual round of feasting, dancing, and merriment; and Gaveston, once more in possession of the ascendancy, indulged in all his former extravagance, and irritated his adversaries by his pleasantries and sarcasms.<sup>1</sup> He was not, however, allowed to remain in ignorance of the general discontent. He had repeatedly published his intention of holding a tournament; none of the great lords would accept his invitation. He ordered the necessary arrangements to be made at Kennington; during the night the lists and the scaffolding disappeared. At length the exhausted state of the treasury compelled Edward to convoke a council at York; but the principal barons refused to attend, under the pretence that they were not equal to the power, and afraid of the malice of Gaveston. The disappointment

Oct. 18.

<sup>1</sup> He gave nicknames to the principal nobility. Thus "the gentil count Thomas of Lancaster" was sometimes "the old hog," at others "the stage-player;" the earl of Pembroke, "Joseph the Jew;" the earl of Gloucester, "the cuckold's bird;" and the earl of Warwick, "the black dog of the wood."—Packington, apud Lel. Coll. ii. 461. Wals. 94, 97. Writers differ as to the time of his return; but the teste of the writs shows that the king did not go to Chester before the end of June.



opened the king's eyes. He prevailed on the favourite to withdraw to some secret asylum, and called a parliament to meet at Westminster. The barons obeyed; but their leaders came attended by their retainers in arms. It was in vain that Edward issued proclamation on proclamation; that he offered a safe conduct to all; that he appointed four earls to keep the peace, and to prevent the access of armed men. He soon found himself completely in their power, and reluctantly consented to the appointment of a committee of peers, who, under the name of ordainers, should regulate the king's household, and redress the grievances of the nation. The archbishop, who had resumed the administration of his diocese,<sup>1</sup> seven bishops, eight earls, and thirteen barons, having received the royal permission to name the committee, signed an instrument, in which they declared that this grant proceeded from the king's free will, that it ought not to be drawn into a precedent against the rights of the crown, and that the powers to be exercised by the ordainers would expire of themselves at the feast of St. Michael in the following year. The committee was then appointed, consisting of seven prelates, eight earls, and six barons, who immediately swore to discharge their office "to the honour of God, the honour and profit of holy church, the honour of their lord the king, the profit of him and his people, according to right and reason, and the oath which he took at his coronation."<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1309.

Oct. 26.

1310.

Feb. 8.

March 16.

March 17.

March 20.

<sup>1</sup> He returned in 1308. During his suspension the pope, with the king's permission, had appointed a receiver of the income of the archbishopric. At his return the whole amount was restored to him.—Ang. Sac. i. 51.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 200, 203, 204, 220. Ryley, 526. Rot. Parl. i. 445. The election was made thus. The bishops chose two earls; all the earls, two bishops, and these four two barons. There were now six elected, who chose fifteen others, so as to make the whole number twenty-one.—Parl. Writs, ii. par. 2, p. 27.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1310.

1311.

Aug. 8.

The ordainers sat in the capital. Edward was glad to withdraw from their presence, and summoned his military retainers to follow him into Scotland. Out of ten earls three only joined him; and of these one was Gaveston, whose imprudence was rewarded with new favours. He obtained the royal castle of Nottingham, and was created justiciary of the forests north of the Trent. In Scotland the king penetrated as far as the Forth without finding an enemy. He passed the winter at Berwick, and in the spring ordered Gaveston at the head of the army to resume the war. The favourite penetrated beyond the Forth, displayed his usual prowess in action, and deserved the praise of a prudent yet enterprising general. But the caution of Bruce allowed him no opportunity of gaining those laurels, which it was hoped would attract the admiration of the people, and silence the tongues of his enemies. The time approached, when it was necessary for Edward to meet his parliament. Gaveston shut himself up in the strong castle of Bamborough, in Northumberland;<sup>1</sup> the king proceeded to London to receive the articles of reform which had at last been framed by the wisdom or the prejudices of the ordainers.

On an attentive perusal of these articles the reader will be of opinion that many of them were highly beneficial; but he will find some that trenched on

<sup>1</sup> Rym. 226, 314. Moor, 593. Heming. 248. Bamborough belonged to the lady Vescy. From a roll in the office of the king's remembrancer it appears that Edward demanded from the several religious houses the aid of carts and horses to convey provisions and ammunition to the army in Scotland. The heads of forty-two houses excused themselves; and twenty of them on the ground of *poverty* and *inability*. Hence it has been very justly inferred that the religious houses could not have been so wealthy as has been generally supposed.



the lawful prerogative of the crown, and will suspect that others were framed for the gratification of private revenge. The first six, regarding the rights of the church, the king's peace, the payment of his debts, the farming of the customs, and the observance of the great charter, had been already published with some modifications by the king before he proceeded to Scotland.<sup>1</sup> The principal of the others were the following: that all grants, which had been made by Edward since he issued the commission, and of course those in favour of Gaveston, should be revoked; and that all which might be subsequently made without the consent of the baronage assembled in parliament, and until the king's debts are paid, should be invalid, and should subject the receiver to such punishment as the baronage might award. That the king should not leave the kingdom, or levy war without the consent of the baronage; and in the case of his absence a guardian should be chosen by the common assent of the baronage in parliament. That all purveyances, except such as were ancient and lawful, should cease, and that those who should presume to take any other might be pursued with hue and cry, and punished on conviction like robbers. That the new taxes on wool, cloth, wine, and other merchandise should be abolished. That all the great offices of the crown, the wardens of the cinque ports, and the governors of the king's foreign possessions, should be chosen with the advice and assent of the baronage in parliament. That the sheriffs should be persons of property sufficient to answer for their conduct; should be chosen by the chancellor, treasurer,

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1311.  
—

<sup>1</sup> At Northampton, Aug. 2. See Rot. Parl. i. 446. The customs had of late been farmed by the company of the Frescobaldi of Florence.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1311.  
—

and the rest of the council, and in the absence of the chancellor, by the treasurer, barons of the Exchequer, and justices of the King's Bench, and should receive their commissions under the great seal.<sup>1</sup> That Gaveston, for having given bad advice to the king, embezzled the public money, formed an association of men sworn to live and die with him against all others, estranged the affections of the sovereign from his liege subjects, and obtained blank charters with the royal seal affixed to them, should be banished for ever from England and all countries appertaining to the crown, should depart before the first day of November, and if he were found within the king's dominions after that day, should be treated as an enemy to the nation. That the lord Henry Beaumont, for having received grants from the king since the issuing of the commission, should never more come near the king, unless it were to perform his duty in parliament or in war, and should forfeit his income till he had repaid whatever he might have hitherto received from the aforesaid grants; that his sister the lady Vescy, who had procured these grants, should never more come within the limits of the court, and should restore to the king her castle of Bamborough, which in reality belonged to the crown. And that, to prevent delay in the administration of justice, parliaments should be holden at least once, and, if need should be, oftener than once every year.<sup>2</sup> To these a few other, but less important

<sup>1</sup> It was but eleven years since Edward I. had consented that the election of the sheriffs should be made by the counties themselves, "if they chose."—Stat. of Realm, i. 139.

<sup>2</sup> On account of the importance which has sometimes been attached to this ordinance, I will translate it entirely. "Whereas many persons are delayed of their demands in the king's court, because the opposite party alleges that answer ought not to be made to the demands out of the king's presence; and whereas



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1311.  
—

articles, were added, regarding appeals, outlawries, and the authority of the marshals and stewards of the king's court. The reader may easily imagine the distress of Edward, when the whole collection was submitted for his approbation. Anxious to retain to its full extent the authority which he had inherited from his father, and still more anxious to preserve his favourite from the sentence of banishment, he objected, complained, and entreated; but the barons were positive and inexorable; and the king after a long struggle consented to sign and publish the ordinances. Previously, however, he solemnly protested, that if any article should prove injurious to the just rights of the crown, or be found to have been unauthorized by the powers given to the commissioners, it should be considered as void, and therefore reserved to himself the right of amending every such article with the advice of the lords ordainers and of his own council.<sup>1</sup> This protestation sufficiently proved the king's resolution to burst the shackles imposed upon him as soon as he could do it with impunity.

Oct. 10.

Gaveston lingered in the company of Edward till

Nov. 1.

“ many persons are grieved against right by the officers of the king,  
“ of which grievances they cannot obtain redress without a common  
“ parliament, we ordain that the king hold a parliament once a year,  
“ or twice if need be, and in a convenient place; and that in such  
“ parliament the pleas that have been delayed as aforesaid, and the  
“ pleas in which the judges are of different opinions, shall be re-  
“ corded and determined; and that in the same manner shall be  
“ determined the petitions that have been presented in parliament,  
“ as law and reason shall demand.” No. 29.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. i. 281, 477. Ryley, 530, 541. New Rym. ii. 146. The king's protestation is not on the roll, but its existence is asserted in writs which he afterwards published. I may add that, from the tenor of the ordinances, it is plain that the authority of the parliament was hitherto supposed to reside in the baronage, the great council of former reigns. The commons had nothing to do but to present petitions, and to grant money.



- CHAP. the day fixed for his departure. They separated in  
 I.  
 A.D. 1311. tears. The exile landed in France, passed into Flan-  
 — ders, and presented to the duke and duchess of Brabant  
 the royal letters, recommending him to their protection.
- Dec. 18. As for the king, he first prorogued, afterwards dis-  
 solved, the parliament and called another ; then care-  
 Dec. 19. fully concealing his intention, retired suddenly into  
 the north, where he found himself less under the con-  
 trol of the barons. These congratulated themselves  
 that at length they had separated him and his favourite  
 for ever ; but they quickly learned that Edward and  
 1312.  
 Jan. 1. Gaveston had joined each other at York. A royal  
 Jan. 18. proclamation followed, stating that the favourite had  
 returned in obedience to the king's orders ; that he  
 was a true and loyal subject, and was ready to main-  
 tain his innocence against the charges of his accusers.
- Feb. 24. A new grant was made to him of his former estates  
 and honours.<sup>1</sup>

Among the English nobility, the most powerful was  
 Thomas, the grandson of Henry III., who united in  
 his possession the five earldoms of Lancaster, Lincoln,  
 Leicester, Salisbury, and Derby. The confederate  
 barons appointed him their leader, and under the pre-  
 tence of a tournament, secretly assembled the knights  
 of their party. Edward seems not to have been aware  
 March 8. of their design. Instead of seeking to oppose force  
 to force, he contented himself with issuing commis-  
 sions, in virtue of his late protest, for the revision of  
 the ordinances ; but was awakened to a sense of his  
 danger by the sudden approach of the earl of Lancas-  
 May 4. ter, who, not finding the king in York, hastened his  
 march towards Newcastle. Edward had time to eva-

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 287, 298, 299, 304, 308. Trokel. 9. Wals. 98.

<sup>2</sup> Ryley, Plac. 530. Rot. Parl. i. 447. Parl. Writs, ii. App. 48.



cuate the place a few hours before the arrival of the  
 barons. He fled to Tynemouth, disregarded the tears  
 and entreaties of his wife, embarked with Gaveston  
 on board a vessel, and landed in safety at Scarborough.  
 The favourite, for greater security, remained in the  
 castle; the king repaired to York, and unfurled the  
 royal banner. Lancaster did not visit the queen at  
 Tynemouth, lest it might exasperate the king against  
 his consort; but having sent her a letter of compli-  
 ment and condolence, retraced his steps, encamped  
 between York and Scarborough, and commissioned the  
 earls of Surrey and Pembroke to lay siege to the castle.  
 It was in vain that Edward sent them a mandate to  
 retire. The unfortunate Gaveston finding the place  
 untenable, surrendered with the king's consent to the  
 earl of Pembroke, on condition, that if no accommoda-  
 tion were effected before the first of August, he should  
 be reinstated in the possession of Scarborough. It  
 had been agreed that the prisoner should be confined  
 in his own castle of Wallingford; and the earl and  
 the lord Henry Percy bound themselves for his safety  
 to the king, under the forfeiture of their lands, limbs,  
 and lives. From Scarborough Gaveston proceeded  
 under their protection towards Wallingford; at Ded-  
 ington, Pembroke left him in the custody of his  
 servants, and departed to spend the night with his  
 countess in the neighbourhood. The captive retired  
 to rest without any suspicion of danger; but "the  
 " Black Dog had sworn that the favourite should feel  
 " his teeth;" and before dawn he received a peremp-  
 tory order to dress himself, and leave his chamber.  
 At the gate, instead of his former guards, he found to  
 his astonishment his enemy, the earl of Warwick, with  
 a numerous force. He was immediately placed on a

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1312.

May. 5.

May 17.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1312.  
—

June 19.

mule, and conducted to the castle of Warwick, where his arrival was announced by martial music, and shouts of triumph. There the chiefs of the party sat in council over the fate of their prisoner. To a proposal to save his life, a voice replied, "You have caught the fox; if you let him go, you will have to hunt him again;" and it was ultimately resolved to disregard the capitulation, and to put him to death, in conformity with one of the ordinances. When his doom was announced, Gaveston threw himself at the feet of the earl of Lancaster, and implored, but in vain, the pity and protection of his "gentle lord." He was hurried to Blacklow-hill (now Gaversike) and beheaded in the presence of the earls of Lancaster, Hereford, and Surrey. The intelligence of his murder was received throughout the nation with astonishment and dismay. The annals of the kingdom furnished no similar execution since the Conquest. By the perpetrators themselves it was deemed a hazardous experiment; and on that account the victim had been conveyed to a spot within the jurisdiction of the earl of Lancaster, whose greater power and relationship to the king appeared to screen him from danger. But they were disappointed. The blood of Gaveston was afterwards avenged with the blood of the persecutor.<sup>1</sup>

The first news of this event threw the king into the most violent transports of grief, which gradually subsided into a fixed purpose of revenge. He had gone

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 327, 328, 334. Mon. Malm. 121—124. Trokel. 13—17. Wals. 100, 101. Gaveston's body was buried by the friars in their church in Oxford; it was afterwards removed by the king, and interred in the new church at Langley. Edward placed with his own hands two palls of cloth of gold on his tomb, at the second interment, Jan. 31, 1325.—Wardrobe account of that year. Knyght. 2533. Lel. Coll. i. 248.



from York to Berwick ; but immediately returned towards the capital, and was joined on his way by the earl of Pembroke. The conduct of that nobleman was open to much suspicion. It was generally believed that, as he had granted the capitulation to Gaveston, without consulting the confederates, so, in order to satisfy them without exposing his own honour, he had purposely allowed his castle at Dedington to be forced by the earl of Warwick. He succeeded, however, in convincing the king of his innocence ; and proved his assertion by his subsequent attachment to the royal interests. Edward, on his way to London, summoned a parliament, solicited succours from France, and assembled a considerable body of forces. But the advance of the barons to Ware, and the resolute tone in which they made their demands, induced him to listen to the pacific exhortations of the cardinal of St. Prisca, legate of the pope, and of the envoys of the king of France ; and the birth of a son and heir, which fortunately happened at the same time, seemed almost to obliterate from his mind the untimely fate of his favourite. Conferences were held between the deputies of the king and of the barons, in the presence of the foreign ministers ; and a form of reconciliation was unanimously adopted, subject to the approbation of the earl of Lancaster and his chief associates, who were absent.<sup>1</sup> One article was soon fulfilled, the surrender to the king of the plate and jewels which had belonged to Gaveston.<sup>2</sup> But the associated barons,

CHAP.

I.  
A.D. 1312.

July 8.

Nov. 13.

Nov. 11.

Dec. 20.

1313.  
Feb. 7.

<sup>1</sup> Soon afterwards, on the 11th of May, died Archbishop Winchelsea, the great adviser of the barons in this, as he had been in the last reign. *Ipsius Roberti hortatu.*—Higden apud Brady, iii. 119.

<sup>2</sup> We may judge of the wealth of Gaveston from his plate and jewels, the inventory of which fills five pages in Rymer, iii. 388—393.



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1313.  
March 18. for their own security, demanded that he should be declared a traitor; a demand which Edward spurned with indignation. Two parliaments were summoned to ratify the treaty; but from the first the principal agents in the murder were detained by their apprehensions; and they departed from the second on pretence of the king's absence, who had gone to France, and did not return till a week after the opening of the session. At length every difficulty was surmounted.

Oct. 16. Edward seated himself on his throne in Westminster-hall; the barons on their knees expressed their sorrow for having given him offence; a general amnesty was proclaimed; and the next day more than five hundred particular pardons were issued to the noble-men and knights who had been concerned in the confederacy.<sup>1</sup>

It is now time to return to the affairs of Scotland. While Edward had been contending for a favourite, he had contrived to lose a crown. The ease with which the late king had repeatedly overrun Scotland encouraged a persuasion that the natives could never withstand the superior power of England; and the slow but constant progress of Bruce was viewed with indifference or contempt. Once, indeed, Edward, and afterwards Gaveston by his orders, had crossed the frontiers; but the Scottish king had cautiously retired before them; and both returned to England almost without seeing an enemy. In the mean time the fortresses, which commanded the country, fell in succession into the hands of the natives. The castle of Linlithgow is said to have been won by the artifice

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 404, 428, 442—449. Mon. Malm. 125—134. Wals. 102, 103. At the same time an act of indemnity was also passed in favour of those who had been the adherents of Gaveston.—Stat. 7 Edw. II. St. 1.



of a peasant named William Binnock; he concealed in a load of hay a few armed men, who, when the waggon entered the gate, mastered the guard, and kept possession till they were joined by their countrymen.<sup>1</sup> Perth was surprised at night by Bruce himself. He waded through the ditch with a ladder on his shoulders, and was the second man who mounted the wall.<sup>2</sup> Roxburgh was taken by escalade, while the garrison indulged in the excesses of the carnival.<sup>3</sup> The castle of Edinburgh was the last which yielded. At midnight Randolph, earl of Moray, with thirty companions, climbed up the rock; the alarm was given, the governor, who hastened to the spot, fell in the onset, and his men surrendered to the assailants.<sup>4</sup> Alarmed by these losses, the Scots who still adhered to the English solicited assistance, and the inhabitants of the three northern counties complained that they were abandoned by the king to the predatory incursions of their neighbours. At length the news arrived that Mowbray, governor of Stirling, had consented to surrender that important fortress, if it were not relieved before the feast of St. John the Baptist. Edward, apparently at peace with his own subjects, judged the opportunity favourable for an expedition into Scotland. He summoned his military tenants to meet him at Berwick, ordered levies of foot soldiers in Wales and the northern counties of England, and demanded aid from the chiefs of the Irish septs. But all his projects were thwarted by civil dissension. In repeated conferences, which lasted seven weeks, the ordinances were defended by the barons, and opposed

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1313.

1312.  
Jan. 8.1313.  
Feb. 28.

March 14.

1314.

May 27.

<sup>1</sup> Barb. 199.<sup>2</sup> Ford. xii. 18. Barb. 180.<sup>3</sup> Barb. 205. Ford. xii. 19.<sup>4</sup> Ford. xii. 19. Barb. 211. Lel. Coll. ii. 546.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1314.  
—

June 18.

by the king; the clergy of both provinces refused an aid; and the earls of Lancaster, Surrey, Warwick, and Arundel, and probably many others influenced by their example, disobeyed the summons. A week before the day fixed for the surrender of Stirling, Edward marched from Berwick, and though the army was encumbered by a long train of provision-waggons and military engines, reached the neighbourhood on the eve of the festival.<sup>1</sup> Bruce had employed the time in making preparations for the combat. His army, consisting of thirty thousand picked men, stretched from the burn of Bannock on the right, to the neighbourhood of the castle on the left;<sup>2</sup> and was protected in front by narrow pits in the ground, and concealed by hurdles covered with sods, sufficiently strong to bear a man on foot, and sufficiently weak to

<sup>1</sup> It is impossible to ascertain the number of Edward's army. By Fordun it is ridiculously multiplied to 340,000 horse, and an equal number of foot. But the verses which he cites as his authority may have a different meaning.—Ford. xii. 21. As the most powerful earls did not attend (Wals. 104), and as some others were excused by the royal writs (Rym. iii. 476), it is probable that the cavalry was not as numerous as usual. The Irish do not appear to have arrived. The infantry summoned by writs to the sheriffs amounted to 21,540 men.—Rym. iii. 431. Lord Hailes, in opposition to Hume, observes that these footmen were furnished by twelve counties and a few lords; and that if all the counties and barons in England furnished their quotas in equal proportion, the army must have amounted to an immense number (Annals, ii. 41). But there is no evidence that they did so. The counties in question furnished 14,500 men, because they lay nearest to the enemy; the remaining 7,040 were required from Wales, and the marches of Wales, because the king wanted men accustomed to fight in forests and on mountains, and "able to drive the enemy a locis fortibus et morosis, ubi equitibus difficilis patebit accessus."—Rym. iii. 481.

<sup>2</sup> Most writers describe the Scots as lying with their front to the south, and Stirling behind them. I have followed Lord Hailes, who decided from his own inspection of the ground (ii. 42). It should, however, be observed, that Moor gives the very same position to the English. They fought with the morning sun in their eyes; had they waited till noon, it would have been on their right.—Moor, 594.



sink under the weight of an armed knight on horse-back. Douglas and Stewart commanded the centre; Edward Bruce took charge of the right, and Randolph of the left wing. The men of Argyle, of Carrick, and of the isles, composed a body of reserve; and at a distance in a valley, lay fifteen thousand followers of the army, whom the king dared not bring into the field, but whom he instructed to show themselves in the heat of the conflict as a new army hastening to the aid of their countrymen.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1314.

—

On the eve of the battle a warm action occurred between the advanced parties of the two armies, and terminated in favour of the Scots. Bruce with his battle-axe clove the scull of Henry de Bohun, a distinguished knight; and his followers hailed the prowess of their sovereign as an omen of victory. At day-break they gathered round an eminence, on which Maurice, abbot of Inchaffray, celebrated mass, and harangued his hearers on the duty of fighting for the liberty of their country. At the close of his discourse, they answered with a loud shout; and the abbot, barefoot, with a crucifix in his hand, marched before them to the field of battle. As soon as they were formed, he again addressed them, and, as he prayed, they all fell on their knees. "They kneel," exclaimed some of the English; "they beg for mercy."—"Do not deceive yourselves," replied Ingelram de Umfraville; "they beg for mercy; but it is only from God."<sup>2</sup>

June 24.

From the discordant accounts of the Scottish and English writers it is difficult to collect the particulars of the battle. The Scots, with very few exceptions,

<sup>1</sup> Ford. cura Goodall, p. 256, not.<sup>2</sup> Ford. xi. 21.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1314.

fought on foot, armed with battle-axes and spears. The king appeared in their front, and bore the same weapons as his subjects. The attack was made by the infantry and archers of the English army; and so fierce was the shock, so obstinate the resistance, that the result long remained doubtful. Bruce was compelled to call his reserve into the line; and as a last resource to order a small body of men-at-arms to attack the archers in flank. This movement decided the fate of the English infantry. They fled in confusion; and the knights, with the earl of Gloucester at their head, rushed forward to renew the conflict. But their horses were entangled in the pits;<sup>1</sup> the riders were thrown; and the timely appearance of the Scots who had been stationed in the valley, scattered dismay through the ranks of the English.<sup>2</sup> Edward, who was not deficient in personal bravery, spurred on his charger to partake in the battle; but the earl of Pembroke wisely interposed, and led him to a distance. Giles d'Argentyr, a renowned knight, had hitherto been charged with the defence of the royal person; now, seeing the king out of danger, he bade him farewell, and turning his horse, rode back to the enemy. He cried "An Argentyr," rushed into the hottest part of the fight, and soon met with that death which he sought.<sup>3</sup>

It was in the full confidence of victory that Edward had hastened to Bannock-burn; he fled from it with a party of Scottish cavalry at his heels; nor did he dare to halt, till the earl of March admitted him within

<sup>1</sup> Though Barbour is silent, the fact of many being destroyed in the pits is mentioned by Fordun, xii. 20, and Moor, 594.

<sup>2</sup> Quibus ab Anglicis visis, putabant eos fuisse exercitum...qui Anglos ita stupidos, et hærentes reddidit, &c.—Ford. p. 256.

<sup>3</sup> Walsing. 195. Moor, 594. Lel. ii. 547. Mon. Malm. 149, 150.



the walls of Dunbar, whence he proceeded by sea to England. His privy seal and treasures, with the military engines, and provisions for the army, fell into the hands of the conquerors.<sup>1</sup> The number of those who were slain in battle was not great; but the fugitives, without a leader or a place of retreat, wandered over the country; and, if the lives of the knights and esquires were preserved for the sake of ransom, the less precious blood of the footmen was shed without mercy. Bruce behaved to his prisoners with kindness; and in exchange for the earl of Hereford, obtained the release of his wife, sister, and daughter, and of the bishop of Glasgow and the earl of Mar.<sup>2</sup> He thought it was a favourable moment to propose a treaty between the two nations; but when Edward refused him the title of king, the indignant Scot put an end to the negotiation, called his parliament, and proceeded to settle the succession.<sup>3</sup> His only child was an unmarried daughter.

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1314.

Sept. 18.

1315.  
April 26.

<sup>1</sup> I shall transcribe the description in Fordun.—*Boum armenta, gregesque ovium et porcorum, frumentum et hordeum cum molendinis portatilibus, et vinum in doliis atque cadiferreis...cum petrariis et ligonibus, trabiculis et mangonellis, scalis et ingeniis, pavilionibus et canopeis, fundis et bombardis, cæterisque bellicis machinis.*—Ford. xii. 21. Other manuscripts add *tribuchetis et arietibus* (p. 249).

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 438, 496. The sister of Bruce now liberated was Christina, relict of Christopher Seaton. His sister Mary had been released from her cage in the castle of Roxburgh, and exchanged for Walter Comyn, as early as the year 1310.—Rym. iii. 204. Even the countess of Buchan, after having kept her cage seven years, had been taken out, and put under the charge of the Lord Beaumont, in April, 1313—Rym. iii. 401. I should mention, that among the prisoners was Baston, a Carmelite friar, and a professed poet. Edward had compelled him to attend the battle, that he might celebrate his victory; Bruce compelled him, now that he was a captive, to sing the defeat. His poem, and a most singular poem it is, may be seen in Fordun, xii. 22.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. 495. Edward's commissioners were furnished with two sets of powers. In one the king was said to have taken this step in consequence of the ardent wish for peace expressed by Bruce in a letter to him; in the other, that it was to please his father and ally



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1315. ter called Marjory ; and, to avoid the dangers, which  
April 26. in the present circumstances might attend the reign  
of a female, it was ordained, with her consent, that if  
the king died without leaving a son, the crown should  
go to his brother Edward Bruce, and the heirs male of  
*his* body, failing whom, it should revert to Marjory  
and her descendants.<sup>1</sup>

But the Scots were not content with asserting their own independence ; they undertook to free Ireland from the English yoke. That island was now divided between two races of men, of different language, habits, and laws, and animated with the most deadly hatred towards each other. The more wild and mountainous districts, and the larger portions of Connaught and Ulster, were occupied by the natives ; the English had established themselves along the eastern and southern coasts, and in all the principal cities and towns. By the English we are to understand an aggregate mass of adventurers from different countries, from England, Wales, and Guienne ; men, or the descendants of men, of desperate fortunes at home, who had depended on their swords to carve for themselves new fortunes abroad. They professed fealty to the English crown ; but their fealty was a mere sound. Since the expedition of John, they had seen no sovereign among them ; and the severity with which *he* had punished their transgressions had been quickly forgotten. At a distance from the court, and in what was deemed a foreign island, they despised the authority of the sovereign ; and within the walls of their castles set

the king of France, who had requested the favour. In each Bruce and his adherents were styled Sir Robert de Brus, et les gentz d'Escosse, à qui nous avons guerre. —Rot. Scot. i. 132-3.

<sup>1</sup> Fordun, xii. 24.



at defiance the severity of the law.<sup>1</sup> At pleasure they levied war on each other, or on the natives; family feuds were transmitted from father to son; and, except in the vicinity of Dublin, the seat of provincial government, the “pale” was divided among a multitude of petty tyrants, who knew no other law than their own interests, and united to the advantages of partial civilization the ferocity of savages. Conscious that they were the original aggressors, they looked on the natives as natural enemies. Those within the pale they reduced to a state of the most abject villanage; those without they harassed with military expeditions. But their aggressions were requited by the resentment of the sufferers; and the necessity of self-preservation generated a spirit of the most implacable revenge. All Irishmen were included under the sweeping denomination of enemies and robbers; the murder of a native was not considered a crime punishable by law; and the man who had inflicted the most cruel injury on the neighbouring septs was the most distinguished among his fellows.<sup>2</sup>

On the other side, the descendants of the original inhabitants were equally lawless, and equally vindictive. In the annals of Ireland we find them perpetu-

<sup>1</sup> Rym. i. 391; ii. 1061, 1062. In the last instance Fitzwarin, the king's steward in Ulster, had distrained the lands of the Mandevilles for the king's dues. In revenge they collected an army, entered the royal demesne, and burnt five townships, three mills, and two thousand measures of corn.

<sup>2</sup> See Fordun, xii. 28, 29, 30. On this account Irishmen frequently procured from the king charters, investing them with the character and the rights of Englishmen. To some these grants were made only for life; often they extended to whole septs and their posterity for ever, as to 300 MacOters, 400 MacGothmunds, &c. The motive on the part of the king was profit: quod est ad commodum regis.—See Petit. in Parl. 18 Ed. I. p. 68, 69, 125, 127; New Rym. ii. 86.



CHAP. ally engaged in dissension and warfare. Sometimes  
 I.  
 A.D. 1315. they are fighting among themselves, sometimes against  
 — their oppressors. Occasionally we see them purchasing the aid of the English, that they may revenge themselves on their own countrymen; occasionally marching under the banners of an English baron, to invade the domains of his neighbour.<sup>1</sup> But whatever cause summoned them to arms, their steps might be traced by the desolation which they had wrought, and their victories were always celebrated with murder and conflagration. In short, the appetite for human blood, the hope and pursuit of vengeance, were equally keen in the native and the stranger; and each was actuated by the conviction that the destruction of the other was essential to his own safety.

When Edward before his expedition into Scotland had ordered his vassals to meet him at Berwick, he had also written to his "beloved," the chiefs of the Irish septs, requesting them to accompany De Bourg, the earl of Ulster, who had been commanded to lead an army to his assistance.<sup>2</sup> This request was neglected. By the Irish the efforts of the Scots were viewed with a kindred feeling. The patriots were fighting against the same nation, by which *they* had been so cruelly oppressed. They were of the same lineage, spoke a dialect of the same tongue, and retained, in many respects, the same national institutions.<sup>3</sup> When intel-

<sup>1</sup> In the instance mentioned above, two Irish kings aided the Mandevilles, and six the Stewart. They ended by turning their arms against each other.—Rym. ii. 1062.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 476. It is plain from the difference between this letter and the usual summons to vassals, that none of the Irish chieftains had sworn fealty to him. He does not give the title of king to any; but that of dux to twenty-six.

<sup>3</sup> Omnes reges minoris Scotiæ de nostra majore Scotia sanguinis originem sumpserunt, linguam nostram et conditiones nostras quodammodo retinentes.—Irish memorial, apud Ford. xii. 32.



ligence arrived of the victory at Bannock-burn, it was received with enthusiasm, and the conviction that the English were not invincible awakened a hope that Ireland might recover her independence. Edward discovered that an active correspondence was carried on between the men of Ulster and the court of Bruce. Alarmed for the safety of his Irish dominions, he despatched the escheator, the Lord Ufford, with instructions to treat with the native chieftains, the tenants of the crown, and the corporations of the boroughs;<sup>1</sup> but, before that nobleman could execute his commission, Edward Bruce, the brother of the king of Scots, with an army of six thousand men, had landed in the neighbourhood of Carrickfergus. He was immediately joined by the O'Nials, who directed his march. They burnt Dundalk; the greater part of Louth was laid desolate; and at Atherdee the inhabitants, men, women, and children, who had crowded into the church, perished in the flames. But the approach of Butler the lord deputy,<sup>2</sup> and of the earl of Ulster, warned the confederates to return. They retired to Conyers, left their banners flying in their camp, and making a short circuit, fell on the rear of their pursuers. A fierce encounter took place; but the English were dispersed, and Bruce, continuing his retreat, despatched the earl of Moray to Scotland for reinforcements.<sup>3</sup>

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1315.

March 14.

May 25.

June 29.

Sept. 11.

Sept. 15.

During this interval a new envoy arrived from Edward, John de Hotham, afterwards bishop of Ely, invested with extraordinary powers, to reconcile the

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 510. It appears there were four towns, governed by mayors, Dublin, Waterford, Cork, and Ross; and three royal burghs, with a reeve and bailiffs, Kilkenny, Drogheda, and Trim. The other towns in Ireland belonged to their respective lords.

<sup>2</sup> I adopt this term, as more familiar; the original title is justiciary.

<sup>3</sup> Annal Hib. apud Camd. ann. 1315.



CHAP. I. barons, and to treat with the natives.<sup>1</sup> The dissensions  
 A.D. 1316. of the barons had prevented them from uniting their  
 — forces; some of them were even accused of having  
 invited the Scots; several were privately suspected  
 of corresponding with Bruce. With much difficulty  
 Hotham formed an association among the tenants of  
 the crown, who bound themselves under the penalty  
 of forfeiture to aid each other to the utmost in their  
 efforts against the common enemy.<sup>2</sup> With the chiefs  
 of the natives he was less successful. They detailed  
 to him the history of their grievances, and complained  
 that it was the policy of their oppressors to raise an  
 insuperable barrier between them and the throne.  
 They offered, however, to hold the lands, to which they  
 laid claim, immediately of the king, provided they  
 might enjoy the advantage of the English laws, or to  
 make him the umpire between themselves and his  
 barons, and to submit to such demarcation of their re-  
 spective possessions as he in his wisdom should deem  
 just. To these proposals they never received, probably  
 did not wait to receive, an answer;<sup>3</sup> for Bruce had  
 now obtained a reinforcement from Scotland; he  
 Jan. 26. penetrated as far as Kildare, defeated the English at  
 Feb. 14. Arscol, in that county, and as he returned, obtained a  
 second victory at Kenlys, in Meath. His presence ani-  
 mated the Irish of Leinster. The O'Tooles, O'Briens,  
 O'Carrols, and Archbolds, were instantly in arms;  
 Arklow, Newcastle, and Bree, were burnt; and the  
 open country presented one continued scene of anarchy  
 and devastation.<sup>4</sup>

It is probable that in these inroads the Scots suffered  
 many severe losses. They returned to their former

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 432.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 547. Annal. Hib. ann. 1315.

<sup>3</sup> Apud Ford. xii. 31.

<sup>4</sup> Annal. Hib. ann. 1315.



quarters in Ulster, and sent again to Scotland for succours. But at the same time a treaty was concluded between Edward Bruce and Donald O'Nial, called in Edward's writs prince of Tyrone, but who styled himself hereditary monarch of Ireland. By letters patent the rights of O'Nial were transferred to Bruce, who was immediately crowned, and entered on the exercise of the regal power.<sup>1</sup> But his inactivity abandoned to destruction the different septs that had joined him during his late expedition. Two hundred of the natives perished under O'Hanlan at Dundalk; three hundred were slain in Munster; four hundred fell in a battle at Tullagh; and eight hundred heads of the O'Moores were sent by the lord deputy to Dublin as the proof of his victory. From these losses Ireland might have risen; but her hopes were extinguished in the sanguinary field of Athenree, where Phelim O'Connor, the king of Connaught, attacked the Lord Richard Birmingham. The natives, in a confused mass, rushed on a resolute and disciplined enemy; the battle or slaughter lasted from dawn till sunset; and among eleven thousand dead bodies were found those of Phelim himself, and of twenty-nine subordinate chieftains of the same name. The sept of the O'Connors was nearly extinguished.<sup>2</sup>

To balance the exultation caused by this victory, intelligence was brought to Dublin that Robert Bruce, the king of Scotland, had landed with a numerous army in Ulster. The garrison of Carrickfergus, after a most obstinate defence, was compelled to surrender. The two brothers, at the head of twenty thousand men, Scots and Irish, advanced into the more southern counties; and the citizens of Dublin were compelled

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1316.  
—

May 2.

Aug. 10.

Sept. 12.  
1317.

Jan. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Apud Ford, xii. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Annal. Hib. ann. 1316.



CHAP. I. to burn the suburbs for their own protection. But  
 A.D. 1317. the Scots, unprepared to besiege the place, ravaged  
 March 12. the country. They successively encamped at Leixlip,  
 Naas, and Callen; and at last penetrated as far as  
 the vicinity of Limerick. But it was the depth of  
 winter; numbers perished through want, fatigue, and  
 the inclemency of the season; and the English had  
 assembled an army at Kilkenny to intercept their  
 March 31. return. With difficulty the Bruces eluded the vigi-  
 lance of the enemy, and retired by Cashel, Kildare,  
 May 1. and Trim, into Ulster. It is not easy to assign the  
 reason of this romantic expedition, undertaken at such  
 a season, and without any prospect of permanent con-  
 quest. To the Scots it was more destructive than a  
 defeat; and Robert Bruce, dissatisfied with his Irish  
 expedition, hastened back to his native dominions.<sup>1</sup>

But notwithstanding the severe defeats which the  
 natives had suffered, the flame of patriotism was kept  
 alive by the exhortations of many among the clergy.  
 The English government complained of their conduct  
 to the papal court; and John XXII. commissioned  
 the archbishops of Dublin and Cashel to admonish  
 those who fomented the rebellion, and to excommu-  
 nicate all who should persist in their disobedience.  
 This commission created a deep sensation among the  
 septs. A justification of their conduct was signed by  
 O'Nial and the majority of the chieftains; and the  
 memorial was transmitted to the cardinals Joscelin  
 and Fieschi, legates in Scotland, to be forwarded  
 through them to the pontiff. This important in-  
 strument begins by stating, that during forty centuries  
 Ireland had been governed by its own monarchs of the  
 race of Milesius, till the year 1170, when Adrian IV.,

<sup>1</sup> Annal. Hib. ann. 1316, 1317.



an Englishman, conferred against all manner of right the sovereignty of the island on Henry II., the murderer of St. Thomas, whom for that very crime, he ought rather to have deprived of his own crown;<sup>1</sup> that since that period perpetual warfare had raged between the Irish and English, to the destruction of at least fifty thousand individuals on each side; and that the latter had gradually established their dominion over the fairest portion of the island, while the former were still compelled to fight for the bogs and mountains, the only possessions which remained to them in their native land. After this introduction, it argues that the original grant is become void, because none of the conditions on which it was made have been fulfilled. Henry had promised for himself and his successors to protect the church, and yet they had despoiled it of one-half of its possessions; to establish good laws, and they had enacted others repugnant to every notion of justice;<sup>2</sup> to extirpate the vices of the natives, and they had introduced among them a race of men more wicked than existed in any other country upon earth; men whose rapacity was insatiable; who employed indifferently force or treachery to effect their purposes; and who publicly taught that the murder of

<sup>1</sup> We may excuse the four thousand years attributed to the succession of their kings; but it is singular that they were not aware of the anachronism in making Adrian live after the murder of the archbishop, though he died twelve years before it.

<sup>2</sup> The laws of which they chiefly complained are, 1. That though the king's courts were open to every man, who brought an action against an Irishman, yet, if a native were the plaintiff, the very fact of his birth was allowed to be an effectual bar to his claim; 2. That if an Irishman was murdered, whatever were his rank in the church or state, no court would undertake to punish the murderer; 3. That no widow, if she were a native, was admitted to the claim of dower; and, 4. That the last wills of the natives were declared void, and their property disposed of according to the will of their lords.—Ford. xii. 28.



CHAP. I. an Irishman was not a crime.<sup>1</sup> It was to free them-  
 A.D. 1317. selves from the oppression of these tyrants that they  
 — had taken up arms; they were not rebels to the king  
 of England, for they had never sworn fealty to him; they were freemen waging mortal war against their foes; and for their own protection they had chosen Edward de Bruce, earl of Carrick, for their sovereign. They concluded with expressing a hope that the pontiff would approve of their conduct, and would forbid the king of England and his subjects to molest them for the future.<sup>2</sup> This memorial appears to have made a deep impression on the mind of John, who both wrote to the king,<sup>3</sup> and commissioned his legates to speak to him in favour of the Irish. Urged by their repeated remonstrances, Edward attempted to justify himself by declaring, that if they had been oppressed, it was without his knowledge, and contrary to his intention; and promised that he would take them under his protection, and make it his care that they should be treated with lenity and justice.<sup>4</sup>

1318. This promise was hardly given before the war in Ireland was terminated. Sir Roger Mortimer had been intrusted with the government, and during the year of his administration, though it was not distinguished by any signal victory, he had gradually confirmed the superiority of the English. The barons accused of favouring the Scots, particularly the Lacies, were attainted; the earl of Ulster, who had been im-

<sup>1</sup> In support of this charge they produce four instances of treachery and murder.—Ford. xii. 29, 30. We should, however, recollect that they are the accusations of an enemy. Three of them are mentioned in the Annals, but without any notice either of the causes, or the real authors.—Annal. ad ann. 1277, 1282, 1305.

<sup>2</sup> See Fordun, xii. 26—32.

<sup>3</sup> Bullar. tom. i. Joan. XXII. const. iv.

<sup>4</sup> Rym. iii. 727, 728.



prisoned by the officious loyalty of the citizens of Dublin, was released; and the O'Briens and Archbolds were received to the king's peace. The men of Connaught by their dissensions aided the cause of their enemies; and no less than eight thousand of them are said to have perished in civil war. Soon after the departure of Mortimer, Edward Bruce advanced to the neighbourhood of Dundalk. He was met by John lord Birmingham, and fell in battle with the greater part of his forces. His quarters were sent, as those of a traitor, to the four principal towns; and his head was presented by the conqueror to Edward, from whom he received the dignity and emoluments of earl of Louth.<sup>1</sup> With Bruce fell the hopes of the Irish patriots; the ascendancy of the English was restored; and the ancient system of depredation and revenge universally revived. The king's attention had, however, been directed to the state of Ireland by a petition presented to him in parliament, stating that, to establish tranquillity, it was requisite to abolish charters of pardon for murders perpetrated by Englishmen, and that the natives, admitted to the benefit of the English law, should fully enjoy the legal protection of life and limb. Both points were granted; and it was afterwards provided that no royal officer should acquire lands within the extent of his jurisdiction, or levy purveyance, unless it were in case of necessity, with the permission of the council, and under a writ from the chancery.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1318.

Oct. 14.

1319.  
May 20.1318.  
October.

Not to interrupt the chain of events, I have conducted the Irish war to its termination by the fall of Edward Bruce; we may now revert to the concerns

<sup>1</sup> Annal. Hib. ann. 1318. Rym. iii. 767. New Rym. ii. 397.  
"He was slayn by his owne wilfulness, that wold not tary for his  
ful company, that were almost at hand."—Lel. Coll. ii. 547.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. i. 386. Ryley, 569, 574.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1318.

1315.

1316.  
Feb. 14.

of England, where the people had forgotten the disastrous battle of Bannock-burn amid the more dreadful calamities which oppressed them. For three years they groaned under the two most direful scourges that can afflict the human race, pestilence and famine. The deficiency of the harvest in 1314 had created an alarm; and the merchants of Newcastle, and probably those of the other ports, obtained the royal license to purchase corn in France, and import it into England. But the supply was so scanty, that the king, at the request of parliament, which assembled in February, fixed a maximum on the price of provisions. This measure was of no avail. In defiance of the statute the price of every article rapidly advanced; wheat, peas, and beans were sold at twenty shillings the quarter; and even the king's family found it difficult on some occasions to procure bread for the table. Unfortunately the following season was preternaturally wet and stormy; so that the more early crops were damaged by the rain, the others never ripened at all, and before Christmas the scarcity of the preceding year had been doubled. To add to the calamity, a pestilential disease raged among the cattle; and the want of nourishment, and the insalubrity of the food, produced dysenteries and other epidemic disorders among the people. The parliament, convinced by experience of its error, repealed the maximum;<sup>1</sup> and the king, at the suggestion of the citizens of London, suspended the breweries, as a measure "without which" not only the indigent but the middle classes must "inevitably have perished through want of food." Still the prices continued to advance, till the quarter of wheat sold for ten times its usual value; and the

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. i. 351.



poor were reduced to feed on roots, horses, dogs, and the most loathsome animals. Even instances are recorded, which for the honour of human nature we may hope to be untrue, of men eating the dead bodies of their companions, and parents those of their children.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1316.  
—

The continuance of the calamity had taught the most extravagant to economise their resources. Many expelled from their castles the crowds of domestics and dependants, with whom they usually swarmed; and these unfortunate men, without the lawful means of support, were necessitated to live by the plunder of their former patrons, or of their inoffensive neighbours. Every county was infested with bands of robbers, whose desperate rapacity was not to be checked by the terrors or the punishments of the law. The inhabitants were forced to combine for their own protection; association was opposed to association; summary vengeance was inflicted by each party; and the whole country presented one great theatre of rapine, anarchy, and bloodshed.<sup>2</sup>

During this period of unexampled distress the Scots, emboldened by their late victory, and the timidity of their enemies, repeatedly poured over the borders, and ravaged with impunity the northern counties. On the eastern coast they pushed their depredations as far as the Humber, on the western as far as the river Lune. The attempts of the inhabitants to resist, invariably ended in defeat and slaughter; and those were the most fortunate who were able to purchase with large sums of money the forbearance of the invaders.<sup>3</sup> Every project of defence or revenge formed

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 107, 108. Trokel. 37. Mon. Malms. 166.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 107, 109.

<sup>3</sup> The inhabitants of the bishopric paid 1,600 marks, and the next year the burgesses of Ripon 1,000.—Abbrev. Placit. 336. Rot. 60.



CHAP. I  
A.D. 1316. — by the king's council was defeated by the dissensions between him and the principal barons. Both obstinately persisted, they in demanding, he in refusing the execution of the "ordinances." If he summoned them to attend their duty in parliament, or to accompany him against the Scots, they constantly alleged that, till the ordinances were enforced, their presence might be attended with consequences fatal to themselves. Occasionally, yielding to the pressure of circumstances, Edward seemed to acquiesce; during the  
Feb. 17. parliament at Lincoln the earl of Lancaster was placed at the head of the administration;<sup>1</sup> and the barons flattered themselves that they had carried their favourite measure. But the king as often seized the first opportunity to emancipate himself from the dominion of his subjects; and always found among his nobility, persons willing to link their own fortune to that of their sovereign. The two parties viewed each other with distrust and aversion; even when they lived in apparent harmony, their real animosity was only smothered for the occasion; and the most trifling accident, a lawsuit or a private quarrel, would rekindle it into more than its former fury. Each accused the other of a clandestine alliance with the king of Scots. Lancaster pretended that by intercepting a messenger he had obtained possession of the original instrument signed by Edward himself. It is difficult to believe that any one could be deceived by so palpable a falsehood. The royalists retorted the charge,

<sup>1</sup> In 1316, March 3rd, the earl accepted the presidentship of the council on three conditions; that he should be allowed to resign, if the king refused to follow his advice; that nothing of consequence should be done till he had been consulted; and that unprofitable counsellors should be removed from time to time by authority of parliament. These terms were entered at his demand on the Rolls. —Rot. Parl. i. 352.



and clothed their assertions with so much probability, that the earl thought it necessary to offer wager of battle to any man who should dare to renew the accusation.

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1316.

If the king of Scotland relied on these dissensions for the security of his own kingdom, when he sailed to the assistance of his brother in Ireland, his hopes were not disappointed. Edward hastened to York; made the necessary preparations, and summoned his military tenants to meet him at Newcastle; but the great barons disobeyed; and by their disobedience, the golden opportunity was lost. Yet the king lingered for some months in the north; and the plan of invasion was exchanged for a few predatory incursions, which generally ended in the discomfiture of the aggressors. He returned to the south to receive the two cardinals Joscelin d'Ossat and Luca de Fieschi, the legates of John XXII., who had lately ascended the papal throne; and hoped to distinguish the commencement of his pontificate by terminating the destructive war, which had now raged for more than ten years between England and Scotland. The legates brought with them letters of exhortation to each prince, and a bull in which the pope of his own authority proclaimed a truce to last for two years, as a preparatory step to a permanent peace. Edward, having consulted a great council, submitted respectfully to a mandate, which it is probable he had secretly procured; and the royal orders for the suspension of hostilities were immediately issued. The cardinals sent to request a safe conduct from Bruce, who had now returned to his dominions, and waited at Durham for his answer.<sup>1</sup> After much difficulty and many

1317.

July 18

Sept. 1.

<sup>1</sup> They went to Durham in company with the Lord Henry Beau-



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1317.

affected delays, the messengers were admitted into the royal presence. Bruce listened with apparent respect to the exhortation from the pontiff, but refused to open the letters from the legate, because they were addressed to "The noble lord, Robert de Brus, the *ruler* of Scotland." The messengers observed, that while a controversy was pending, it became not the Holy See to give to either of the parties a title, which might prejudice the right of the other. "But you give me," replied Bruce, "a title which prejudices my right. I am a king, and acknowledged for a king by foreign powers. I can receive no letters which are not directed to me as a king, nor can I give an answer to your request till I have consulted my parliament. You shall hear from me after the feast of St. Michael."<sup>1</sup> The legates returned to London, and long after the appointed time received an answer, signed by Bruce, his earls and barons, and stating that till he was acknowledged king of Scotland he should decline entering into any negotiation either with them or their messengers.<sup>2</sup> Mortified by this

mont and his brother Louis, bishop elect of Durham. Between Rushyford and Ferry-hill, about six leagues from Darlington, they were suddenly attacked by a band of robbers, who had concealed themselves in the wood of Asshe. The cardinals lost all their property, but were allowed to go forward; the Beaumonts were retained in captivity till they had paid exorbitant ransoms.—Rym. iii. 663, 666, 669. Ang. Sax. i. 738. Gilbert de Middleton, the captain of the robbers, on account of the arrest of his cousin, Adam de Swinburn, had called to his standard a number of outlaws and adventurers, and plundered with impunity the counties of Northumberland and Durham. He was afterwards taken in the castle of Mitford by treachery, and suffered the death of a traitor in London.—Scala Chron. in Lel. Coll. ii. 548. Parl. Writs, ii. App. p. 118. Abbrev. Placit. 329. Rot. 112. Middleton's chattels were valued at 2,615*l.* 12*s.* 4*d.*, his lands at 23*l.* 1*s.* 4*d.* per annum.—Ibid.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 661, 663.

<sup>2</sup> See the pope's bull (ibid. 798). The object of this bull has been mistaken by Lord Hailes. It empowers the cardinals to continue



refusal, they published, with due solemnity, the papal truce in London, and ordered Adam Newton, guardian of the Friars Minors in Berwick, to notify its publication to the Scots. Newton executed his commission with some art. He obtained a safe conduct to Old Cambus, where the Scots were employed in making preparations for the siege of Berwick. Bruce refused to see him, or to receive his letters; but he took the opportunity to proclaim the truce with a loud voice in the midst of the multitude which surrounded him. He was instantly ordered to depart; his petition for a passport was refused; and before he had gone far he was seized by four men, who robbed him of his letters, stripped him to the skin, and bade him farewell. The friar, however, pursued his way to Berwick, and gloried in having fulfilled the object of his mission.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1317.  
—

Dec. 16.

In defiance of the papal truce the Scots persevered in their attempt to reduce Berwick. It was not probable that they could make much progress in the depth of winter; but the citizens harboured a traitor of the name of Spalding, who entered into a correspondence with the enemy, and betrayed to them the post where he kept guard. The town was taken by surprise; and after a few days the castle surrendered.<sup>2</sup> The fall of Berwick was followed by the reduction of Wark, Harbottle, and Mitford; Northallerton, Boroughbridge, Scarborough, and Skipton, were burnt; and Ripon would have experienced the same fate, had it not been redeemed by the payment of a thousand marks. Irritated by these proceedings, the cardinals solemnly declared that Bruce and his asso-

1318.

March 28.

May.

July.

the process, though their legation had expired. It contains historical particulars, not to be found elsewhere.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. 693, 798.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 111. Moor, 594. Barb. 347.



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1318. ciates had incurred the sentence of excommunication,  
August 25. previously fulminated against those who should violate  
the truce; and taking leave of Edward, returned to  
the papal court at Avignon.<sup>1</sup>

It was evident that Bruce owed the success which  
had so long attended his arms, not to any superior  
prowess or skill, but to the dissension which con-  
tinued to rage between Edward and his barons. The  
king was employed in an endless struggle to free him-  
self from the restraints imposed upon him by the  
ordainers; the barons, bound to each other by oaths  
and pledges, sought to overcome his obstinacy by re-  
fusing to join him in the field, or to attend on him in  
parliament; and the retainers on both sides, animated  
with the hostility of their leaders, indulged in acts of  
mutual aggression. But the loss of Berwick opened  
the eyes both of Edward and of his opponents to the  
disastrous consequences of their quarrel. The chan-  
cellor, by order of the king, repeatedly visited the earl  
of Lancaster; by mutual consent commissioners were  
August 9. appointed; and at last in a meeting at Leek a plan of  
reconciliation was adopted. In consequence, a par-  
Oct. 20. liament was held in York, in which it was enacted  
that the ordinances should be maintained in their  
pristine form without any qualification; all offences  
on both sides were forgiven; to the great officers of  
state were added as members of the council certain  
peers, of whom two bishops, one earl, and one baron,  
with a baron or baronet, the representative of Lan-  
caster, should in rotation wait on the king; of the  
grants made by him many were reduced in amount,  
on the ground that the remuneration given exceeded  
in value the service received; and several members

<sup>1</sup> Rym. 707, 799, 800, 858.



of the royal household, under the pretext of incapacity or peculation, were removed from their respective appointments.<sup>1</sup> There can be little doubt that in these proceedings more attention was paid to the interest of party than to the claims of justice; but by mutual concession harmony was restored; Lancaster and his friends were mollified by the recent acquiescence and apparent sincerity of the king; and the barons without distinction of party attended him in parliament at York, and from York accompanied him with their retainers as far as Berwick. That town was immediately invested by the army, and defended by the Stewart of Scotland with a numerous garrison. Bruce hastened to raise the siege; but despairing of success, despatched fifteen thousand men under Randolph and Douglas to surprise the queen Isabella at York, and to ravage the country. They failed in the first object; but their devastations were so extensive, that the archbishop, at the head of the posse of the county, ventured to oppose them at Boroughbridge. He was defeated; and three hundred clergymen, ten times that number of laymen, fell by the sword, or perished in the river. The disastrous intelligence soon reached the camp before Berwick, and the former dissensions were revived. The barons of the south proposed to continue the siege; but Lancaster with his friends departed; and Edward, weakened by their absence, made a fruitless attempt to intercept the Scots in their return. Wearied out with repeated failures, he began to wish for peace; while his adversary was not less anxious to be reconciled with the court of Rome. The first proposal for a negotiation came from Scot-

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1318.

1319.  
May 6.

July 25.

Sept. 4.

Sept. 20.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. anno 12 Edw. II. Parl. Writs, i. pt. i. 184; pt. ii. App. 126—32.



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1320.  
Jan. 1. land; the demand of the legal title was waived; and a truce for two years was concluded between "Edward " king of England, and Sir Robert de Brus, for himself and his adherents."<sup>1</sup>

April 6. This suspension of hostilities was employed by the king of Scotland in an attempt to make his peace with the Holy See. A parliament was assembled at Aberbrothick, and a common letter, signed by eight earls and thirty-one barons in the name of the commonalty of Scotland, was sent by the royal messengers to the pontiff. This instrument stated that the Scots had settled in the north of Britain about twelve hundred years after the passage of the Red Sea, and had been converted to the faith by the preaching of the apostle St. Andrew; that they had always enjoyed their independence till Edward I. had seized the opportunity to impose on them the yoke of England, at a moment when their throne was vacant; that they had since been freed from the English yoke by Robert de Brus, whom the divine providence, the legal succession which they were determined to maintain, and their due and unanimous consent had raised to the throne: but that, were he to abandon them, they would treat him as an enemy, would choose another king and defy the whole power of England as long as a hundred Scots remained alive. Liberty was their object; and liberty, no good man would wish to survive. Having thus in the most forcible language declared their resolution, they request the pontiff to employ his influence with the king of England, and advise him to be content with his own dominions, which once were deemed sufficiently ample for seven kings;

<sup>1</sup> Parl. Writs, ii. 522, 525. Wals. 112. Ford. xii. 37. Rym. iii. 806, 809.



CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1320.

and to leave to the Scots their own barren soil, the most remote of habitable lands, but which was dear to them, because it was their own, and which it was their only object to possess in peace. They then conclude in these words:—"Should, however, your holiness give too credulous an ear to the reports of our enemies, and persist in favouring the pretensions of the English, we shall hold you responsible before God for the loss of lives, the perdition of souls, and every other calamity which must arise from the continuance of the war between the two nations. As far as our duty binds us, we are your obsequious children; to you, as to the vicegerent of God, we shall yield that obedience which is due; but to God, as the Supreme Judge, we commit the protection of our cause. We cast all our care upon him, confident that he will enable us to '*do valiantly, and will tread down all our enemies.*'"<sup>1</sup>

This letter convinced the pontiff that the cause of Edward was desperate. He treated the envoys with kindness, and at their request consented to suspend the process against the king of Scotland for twelve months, and afterwards for an additional half-year. To the king of England he wrote a letter of advice, and earnestly exhorted him to improve the present opportunity, and conclude a useful and lasting peace. Edward assented: commissioners from the pope and king of France were appointed to attend the congress; and hopes were confidently entertained of a favourable result. But the conferences, if any were held, proceeded slowly; the king of England was too much occupied with the rebellion of his barons to attend to

Sept. 15.

<sup>1</sup> Ford. xiii. 2, 3. Anderson, Diplom. Scot. Tab. lii.



CHAP. other concerns ; and Bruce expected to obtain better  
 I.  
 A.D. 1320. terms by aiding the rebels than by treaty with the  
 — sovereign.<sup>1</sup>

It was the singular fate of Edward that either he could not live without an unworthy favourite, or could not admit another to his friendship without wounding the arrogance of his barons. Lancaster had formerly  
 1318. obtruded on the king one of his own followers to fill the office of chamberlain. The young man, whose name was Hugh Spenser, by his talents and assiduity soon  
 1321. acquired the esteem of his sovereign ; the disposal of the royal favours was by degrees intrusted to his discretion ; and his marriage with a daughter of the late earl of Gloucester gave him possession of the greater portion of the county of Glamorgan. His growing opulence awakened the jealousy of his former superiors. He was described as haughty, covetous, and ambitious ; epithets, which in the mouths of those who applied them, may perhaps only prove, that, as he had devoted himself to the service, he had been rewarded by the gratitude of his prince. It chanced that John de Mowbray had taken possession, without asking the royal license, of an estate belonging to his wife's father, and contiguous to the lands of the favourite. He pretended that he had only availed himself of the liberty of the marches ; Spenser maintained that for the omission the fief was by law forfeited to the crown. The lords of the marches immediately associated for the defence of their common  
 March 23. rights. Edward forbade them to commit any breach of the peace, and commanded their leader, the earl  
 April 23. of Hereford, to attend the council. But he required

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 846, 848, 867, 884, 891.



that the favourite should be previously committed to the custody of the earl of Lancaster till the next parliament; and on the king's refusal, placed himself at the head of the marchers, who with eight hundred men at arms, five hundred hobblers, and ten thousand footmen, entered the lands of the favourite, reduced his ten castles, and burnt, destroyed, or carried off all the property on his twenty-three manors. After this exploit they marched into Yorkshire, and claimed the protection of Lancaster the fomentor and patron of every faction. An indenture, binding the parties to prosecute the two Spensers, father and son, till they should fall into their hands, or be driven into banishment, and to maintain the quarrel to the honour of God and holy church, and the profit of the king and his family, was signed on the one part by the earl of Hereford and the lords of the marches, on the other by the earl of Lancaster and thirty-four barons and knights. The elder Spenser, whose fate was thus connected with that of his son, was one of the most powerful barons, far advanced in age, whose only crime seems to have been his near relationship to the favourite, and his influence in the king's council. Lancaster led the confederates towards the capital, allowing them to live at free quarters on their march, and to plunder the estates belonging to the elder Spenser.<sup>1</sup> From St. Alban's he sent a message to

CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1321.

May 3.

June 28.

Aug. 2.

<sup>1</sup> I will add the estimate of their losses delivered to parliament by the two Spensers, that the reader may form some idea of what constituted the wealth of a nobleman at these times.

*The elder Spenser.*—His crop in the barn, and that on the ground: 28,000 sheep; 1,000 oxen and heifers; 1,200 cows, with their calves for two years; 40 mares; 160 cart-horses; 2,000 pigs; 300 goats; 40 tuns of wine; 601 fitches of bacon; 80 carcasses of beef; 600 of mutton in the larder; 10 tuns of cider; arms and armour for 200 men.



CHAP. I. Edward, requiring the banishment of the father and  
A.D. 1321. son, and an act of indemnity for the confederate barons.

— The king replied with spirit, that the elder Spenser was beyond the sea employed in his service, the younger with his fleet, guarding the cinque ports; that he would never punish the accused before they had an opportunity of answering their accusers; and that it was contrary to the obligation of his coronation-oath to pardon men who disturbed the tranquillity of his kingdom.<sup>1</sup>

August 19. The parliament was now sitting at Westminster; and Lancaster advancing to London, cantoned his followers in the neighbourhood of Holborn and Clerkenwell. The confederates spent a fortnight in secret consultations. At length they proceeded to Westminster, filled the hall with armed men, and without informing the king of their intentions, ordered a paper to be read. It was an act of accusation against the Spensers, consisting of eleven counts,<sup>2</sup> and charging

*The younger.*—Forty mares, with their issue of two years; 11 stallions; 160 heifers; 400 oxen; 500 cows, with their calves for two years; 10,000 sheep; 400 pigs; arms and armour for 200 men; his crop on the ground; provisions for his castles, as corn, wine, honey, salt, salt meat, and salt fish; the rents of his tenants, amounting to 1,000*l.*, and the debts due to him to the amount of 3,000*l.*—See Rot. Parl. iii. 361—363.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 113, 114. Moor, 595. Ad. Murim. 55.

<sup>2</sup> The first count recited a writing made by the younger Spenser, on the doctrine of Allegiance. As it is curious, I will translate it. “Homage and oaths of allegiance regard the crown more than the king’s person, and bind more to the crown than to the person; and this appears from the fact, that before the crown descends to any one, no homage is due to any person. Hence in the case that the king is not guided by reason in exercising the rights of the crown, his lieges are bound by their oath to the crown, to bring back the king and the state of the crown by reason, otherwise the oath would not be kept. The question then remains how the king is to be brought back; by suit of law, or by force? By suit of law no man can do it; for he can have no other judges but those appointed by the king; and of course, if the will of the king be



CHAP.

I.  
A.D. 1321.

them with usurping the royal power, estranging the king from the great lords, appointing judges who did not know the law, advising unconstitutional measures, and requiring fines from all persons who solicited grants from the crown ; and concluded with these words : “ Therefore we, peers of the land, earls and “ barons, in the presence of our lord the king, do “ award, that Hugh le Despenser the son, and Hugh “ le Despenser the father, be disherited for ever, and “ banished from the kingdom of England, never to “ return, unless it be by assent of the king, and by “ assent of the prelates, earls, and barons, in parlia- “ ment duly summoned ; and that they quit the realm “ by the port of Dover before the next feast of St. “ John the Baptist ; and that if they remain in England “ after that day, or ever return, they be dealt with as “ enemies of the king and kingdom.” Against this sentence the prelates protested in writing : but the king and the barons of his party, intimidated by the armed men in attendance, gave their assent ; the banishment of the two Spensers was duly entered on the rolls ; and a general pardon was granted to the earl and his associates, for all trespasses com-

August 20.

“ not conformable to reason, the error will be maintained and con- “ firmed. It follows, then, that, to keep the oath of allegiance, when “ the king will not redress grievances, and do away what is bad “ for the people and dangerous for the crown, it must be done away “ by force : for by their oaths both the king is bound to govern his “ people, and his lieges are also bound to govern in aid of him and “ in his default.”—Statutes of Realm, 182. Rot. Parl. iii. 363. The barons, at the very moment, were acting on this principle. Nor did they condemn it as treasonable ; the offence with which they charged the younger Spenser was, that he had employed it treason- ably, to “ accrouch” the sovereign power to himself. On one occasion, finding the king obstinate, he had composed this writing, and with the aid of two other persons had used it, to terrify his sovereign into submission.—Ibid.



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1321. mitted by them or their followers since the month of February.<sup>1</sup>

— The king felt the indignity which had been offered to his authority, and two months did not elapse before he had the opportunity of revenging it. The queen, Oct. 13. on her way to Canterbury, proposed to lodge during the night in the royal castle of Ledes. The custody of the castle had been intrusted by Edward to the lord Badlesmere, a man who had lately betrayed to the confederates the secrets of his master, and by their means had obtained a special pardon for his trans- Oct. 15. gressions.<sup>2</sup> He was absent; but the lady Badlesmere refused admission to the queen; and during the altercation several of the royal attendants were killed. Isabella complained loudly of this insult; the chivalrous feelings of the nation were aroused; and the king found himself in a condition to demand and enforce redress. Badlesmere avowed the act of his wife, and the lords of the marches advanced to his assistance, Oct. 31. but Edward took the castle, hanged Colepepper the governor and eleven of his knights, sent the others to different prisons, and confined in the Tower the lady Badlesmere and her female attendants.<sup>3</sup>

This act of vigour infused new life into the king's friends. Many came forward with the offer of their services; and the two Spensers successively returned to England. The younger, in obedience to the law, surrendered himself a prisoner; but at the same time presented a petition that the judgment against him might be reversed; 1, Because he had been neither appealed

<sup>1</sup> Statutes, 181. Rot. Parl. i. 364. Parl. Writs, ii. App. 163-7.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 890. Parl. Writs, ii. 163.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. iii. 897, 898. Wals. 114, 115. Moor, 595. Trokel. 52. Lel. Coll. i. 273.



in court, nor allowed to answer; 2, Because the whole process had been contrary to the form of the great charter; and, 3, Because he had been condemned by men who, in defiance of the king's writ, had come to parliament with arms in their hands. Edward referred the petition to the consideration of the prelates, who were then assembled in convocation, and requested their advice. They replied that they had always protested against the award as contrary to law, and therefore prayed that it might be repealed; the four earls of Kent, Richmond, Pembroke, and Arundel, declaring that they had assented to it through fear, joined in the petition of the prelates; and the king, supported by their opinion, gladly took the favourite and his father under the royal protection, till a parliament should assemble to repeal the award enacted against them.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1321.

Dec. 8.

The popularity of the earl of Lancaster had been for some time on the decline. It was evident that the success of the Scots in their destructive inroads was owing to the pertinacity with which he had opposed all the measures of government. Men believed that, had he not so precipitately left the army before Berwick, the place must have fallen, and that his departure had been purchased by Bruce with a present of forty thousand pounds. These charges may have been invented by his enemies; but after the reduction of the castle of Leds, his traitorous intelligence with the Scots becomes evident from the original documents, which are still extant. He immediately summoned all the barons of his party to meet him in council at Doncaster; and soon afterwards sent an emissary, Richard de Topcliffe,

Nov. 29.

Dec. 7.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 362, 363. Rym. iii. 907.



- CHAP. I. to confer with Douglas in the castle of Jedburgh.  
 A.D. 1321. In a fortnight the truce expired; the Scots under  
 Dec. 21. Randolph and Douglas burst into Northumberland,  
 and Topcliffe resumed his negotiation at Corbridge.  
 1322. It was at length concluded that the king of Scots,  
 Jan. 16. Randolph, and Douglas, with their forces, should join  
 the earls of Lancaster and Hereford on an appointed  
 day; should live and die with them in their quarrel;  
 should protect their friends and injure their enemies;  
 but on no account should lay claim to any conquest  
 within the kingdom of England; and that on the  
 other part the earls should never give their aid in any  
 expedition against Scotland, but should do their best  
 that Bruce should enjoy his dominions in peace.<sup>1</sup> In  
 the mean time the king, aware of these proceedings,  
 had collected his forces; the lords of the marches had  
 Jan. 15. taken Gloucester, but on his approach they fled to  
 the earl of Lancaster; who, though warned of the  
 consequences by the king, took them under his  
 Feb. 8. protection. The royal castle of Tickhill was instantly  
 besieged by the united army of the confederates.  
 It resisted their attempts till the arrival of Edward;  
 when the insurgents took possession of Burton-upon-  
 Trent, and for three days defended the bridge over  
 March 10. the river. But the royalists passed by a ford, and  
 Lancaster, having set fire to the town, hastily retired  
 into Yorkshire. At Pontefract he wrote in his own  
 name, and in the names of Hereford and his associates,  
 to the king of Scots,<sup>2</sup> and then continued his retreat  
 with seven hundred cavalry, in the hope of meeting  
 the army of his allies. At Boroughbridge his pro-  
 gress was arrested by Sir Simon Ward and Sir An-

<sup>1</sup> Rym. 907, 924, 938. Parl. Writs, App. ii. 195, 6.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 927.



drew Harclay, the governors of York and Carlisle, who had collected a strong force on the opposite bank of the river. Hereford attempted to make his way over the bridge, but was slain by a Welshman stationed below, who through a crevice thrust his lance into the bowels of the earl. Lancaster had led his men to a ford, but they were repulsed by the archers on the opposite bank. He offered a bribe to Harclay, which was refused; and then solicited a truce till the following morning. A faint ray of hope still cheered his spirits. It was possible that the Scots might arrive during the night. But this hope was disappointed; at daybreak his fate was apparent; and on receiving a summons to yield, he retired into the chapel, and looking on the crucifix, exclaimed, "Good Lord, I render myself to thee, and put me into thy mercy." The captors conducted him by water to York, and thence to the castle of Pontefract.<sup>1</sup> In general, when our kings had obtained the mastery over their refractory barons, they had been content with the feudal punishments of forfeiture and exile; but such lenity accorded not with the policy or the resentment of Edward. He could not forget the blood of Gaveston, and the indignities which he had suffered in person; and experience had taught him that he must crush the presumption, or submit to be a mere puppet in the hands of his adversaries. A more favourable moment he could not expect; for their traitorous connection with the Scottish king had deprived them of the sympathy

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1322.  
March 16.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 927, 931, 934, 937—940. Knyghton, 2540. Lel. Coll. ii. 464. It was at Pontefract, that on the return of Edward from the siege of Berwick, the earl and his men came out of the castle, and jeered the king as he passed by. *Acclamaverunt in ipsum regem vilissime et contemptibiliter.*—Rym. iii. 938. Wals. 116.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1322.  
March 22.

of the nation. The earl of Lancaster as the head of the party was selected for the first victim. He was brought before the king, six earls, and the royal barons; of his guilt there could be no doubt; he was told that it was useless to speak in his defence, and was condemned to be drawn, hanged, and beheaded. In consideration of his royal descent, Edward forgave the more ignominious part of the punishment, but the spectators and ministers of justice were careful to display their loyalty by heaping indignities on their unfortunate victim. As he was led to execution on a grey pony without a bridle, with his confessor, a friar-preacher, by his side, they pelted him with mud, and taunted him with the title of King Arthur, the name which he had assumed in his correspondence with the Scots.<sup>1</sup> "King of Heaven," he cried, "grant me mercy, for the king of earth hath forsaken me." The cavalcade stopped on an eminence without the town, and the earl knelt down with his face to the east. But he was ordered to turn to the north, that he might look towards his friends; and while he remained in that posture his head was struck off by an executioner from London.<sup>2</sup>

In the skirmish at Boroughbridge only four persons of note had fallen with the earl of Hereford; in the company of Lancaster one hundred and one knights and fourteen bannerets were made prisoners. A few, who had not yet reached their confederates, came in,

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 926.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 926, 936. Parl. Writs, ii. App. 200—215, 237, 262. Wals. 116. Lel. Coll. ii. 464, 465, 474. From these authorities it appears that as their guilt was manifest, they were condemned by the judges without trial. To intimidate their partisans, they were sent to different places for execution; but in no instance do we read of the revolting practice of embowelling and quartering. The bodies were left hanging on the gibbet.



and surrendered; and about half a dozen fled beyond the sea. The king had now the whole party at his mercy. A selection was made. All the bannerets and fourteen of the knights taken in open war were condemned and executed; a few of the others, amongst whom were the two Mortimers, uncle and son, received judgment of death, which was commuted for perpetual imprisonment; the more wealthy of the rest compounded for their estates, and gave security for their behaviour; and the others swore allegiance, and were discharged "for charity and the love of God."

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1322.

August 2.

From Pontefract Edward had repaired in triumph to York, where the parliament had assembled. All the members were, or pretended to be, royalists; and every measure proposed by the crown was carried without opposition. The "ordinances" underwent a rigorous examination. Some were confirmed as beneficial to the nation; the rest were declared unconstitutional, and trenching on the prerogative of the crown. To prevent any future attempts similar to those of the "ordainers," it was enacted, that thenceforth no provisions made by the king's subjects, acting under any commission whatsoever, should be of force, if they affected the rights of the sovereign; and that all laws respecting "the estate of the crown, "or of the realm and people, must be treated, accorded, and established in parliament by the king, "by and with the assent of the prelates, earls, barons, "and commonalty of the realm." At the same time the petitions of the Spencers were heard and granted; and the award against them was ordered to be struck out of the rolls, as contrary to the king's oath, and the provisions of Magna Charta. The father was

May 19.

May 20.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1322.  
—

created earl of Winchester, and received several of the forfeited estates as a compensation for his losses.<sup>1</sup> The son recovered his former ascendancy; but instead of profiting by the fate of Gaveston, he gloried to tread in the footsteps of that favourite, and by his ostentation and arrogance prepared the way for his own murder, and that of his royal benefactor.

- The victory which Edward had gained over his domestic enemies inspired him with the hope of wiping away the disgrace of Bannock-burn, and of re-establishing his superiority over the kingdom of Scotland. With this view he assembled the most numerous army that England had seen for many years. But its apparent strength proved its real weakness; and the impossibility of supplying provisions for such a multitude of men disappointed the hopes of the king and the nation. The Scots as they retired swept the country before them; the English could neither overtake the flying enemy, nor subsist in a desert; and Edward, after advancing as far as the Forth, was compelled to return without performing one splendid action, or achieving a single conquest.
- Aug. 12. Nor was this the only disgrace. Having appointed guardians of the marches and disbanded his army, he remained in security in Yorkshire. But the Scots
- Sept. 15. had formed a plan to surprise him. Riding day and night, they suddenly appeared before the abbey of Biland, where the king lay, made an attack on the knights who accompanied him, and took Henry de Sully, a French nobleman, and John de
- Oct. 14.

<sup>1</sup> Brady, 140—146. Stat. of Realm, 185—190. To this parliament 24 members were summoned as representatives of South, and other 24 as representatives of North Wales (New Rym. ii. p. 484); and again in 1326.—Ibid. 649.



Bretagne, earl of Richmond. Edward fled with precipitation to York. The Scots followed, remained till evening at the gates defying the garrison; and in their return ravaged the country without opposition.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1322.  
—

It was generally believed that this inroad of the Scots must have been effected with the connivance of some one holding a command on the borders; and the royal suspicion was soon fixed on Harclay, who for his services at Boroughbridge had been rewarded with the earldom of Carlisle, and made warden of the Western marches. It was discovered that he had been engaged in a negotiation with the king of Scotland; when Edward invited him to his court at York, he refused to obey; and Sir Henry Fitz-Hugh soon afterwards arrested him by command of the king. He was accused of having bound himself by writing and oath to maintain Bruce and his heirs on the throne of Scotland; of having agreed to name conjointly with that prince twelve persons, who should regulate the concerns of the two kingdoms; and of having induced many others to swear to the observance of this treaty. If this were true, we may conclude that Harclay's elevation had impaired his understanding, or that he had consented to become the agent of the Lancastrian faction, which, though it languished in a state of depression, had not abandoned the hope of revenge. He was degraded, and suffered in all its rigour the punishment of a traitor.<sup>2</sup>

1323.  
Mar. 3.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 117. Moor, 596. Barb. 385—394. Ford. xiii. 4. To aid him in this expedition the merchants, not the parliament, granted him an additional duty on the exportation of wool and hides to last for one year.—Parl. Writs, ii. App. 229.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 983, 988, 994, 999, 1000. The judgment was in



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1323.  
—

May 30.

At length the destructive war, which with a few pauses had continued three-and-twenty years, and had repeatedly involved one half of Scotland, and the northern counties of England, in bloodshed and misery, began to draw to a close. Bruce was sensible that his kingdom required a long interval of tranquillity to repair the havoc of so many campaigns; and experience had taught Edward to doubt the ultimate success of any attempt to enforce his claim of superiority. The proposal was made by the Scots; Bruce consented to waive his title in the treaty; and a suspension of arms was concluded for thirteen years between the two nations, to remain in force till the end of that term, even in the event of the death of one, or of both of the contracting parties.<sup>1</sup>

substance as follows : Whereas our lord the king, on account of the loyalty which he thought he had observed in you, Andrew Harclay, made you earl of Carlisle, and with his own hand girded you with the sword, and gave you a fee of the county, with castles, towns, lands, and tenements, to support the estate of an earl; and yet you have traitorously, falsely, and maliciously gone to Robert Bruce to maintain him in opposition to the will of the king, this court doth award that you shall be degraded, and lose the title of earl for yourself and your heirs for ever; and that you shall be ungirded of your sword, and that your spurs of gold shall be struck from your heels. And whereas you, Andrew, the liege man of our lord the king, contrary to your homage, faith, and allegiance, have traitorously gone to Robert Bruce, the mortal enemy of our lord the king, &c., this court doth award that for the same treason you shall be drawn, hanged, and beheaded—that your heart, bowels, and entrails, from which these traitorous thoughts proceeded, shall be plucked out, and burnt to ashes, and the ashes be scattered in the wind, and that your body shall be divided into quarters, and sent to Carlisle, Newcastle, York, and Shrewsbury, and your head shall be placed on London bridge for an example, that others may learn not to commit such treasons against their liege lord.—Rym. 999. Parl. Writs, ii. App. 262. Here bowelling and quartering are mentioned, but the reader will observe that they were not to take place whilst the victim was still alive, but after decapitation, as was the case with respect to Sir William Wallace.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. 1022, 1023.



CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1323.

At peace with foreign nations, and with his own subjects, Edward might now hope to enjoy that tranquillity to which he had so long been a stranger. But the Lancastrian party was not extinct, nor without the hope of rising from its ashes. Among the people at large, and especially among the clergy, there existed a strong feeling in its favour. Men looked on the earl and his followers as the champions of their liberties; they revered those who had suffered as martyrs; they circulated reports of miraculous cures wrought through their intercession. Edward and his ministers were aware of this popularity of their adversaries, and the sudden appearance of armed bands in several counties, the audacious surprisal of the castle of Wallingford by a knight of the name of Walton, and the discovery of an association to murder the elder Spenser, alarmed and sharpened their jealousy. They succeeded in preventing an attempt to liberate from prison some of the knights taken at Boroughbridge; yet one captive, Roger Lord Mortimer of Wigmore, the man whose activity and resentment they most feared, had the good fortune to effect his escape. He had twice been convicted of treason, and twice owed his life to the clemency of the king. Wearied with his confinement,<sup>1</sup> he corrupted the fidelity of Girard de Asplaye, one of the officers in the Tower, who, in an entertainment which he gave to the wardens, infused a soporiferous drug into their drink. While they slept, Mortimer made his way through the wall of his chamber into the kitchen of the palace adjoining; a ladder of ropes aided him to mount and descend several walls; and

Aug. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Packington says he had received information that he would be executed.—Lel. Coll. ii. 467.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1323.

a boat on the edge of the water conveyed him across the Thames. There he found his servants and horses, rode to the coast of Hampshire, and embarking in a ship which was prepared for him, escaped to France. Edward, ignorant of his motions, issued different writs for his apprehension. Mortimer entered into the service of Charles de Valois, and in a short time wreaked his vengeance on the prince, who had abstained from taking his life, when it was forfeited to the law.<sup>1</sup>

Charles le Bel had now succeeded his brother Philip le Long on the throne of France. Of the real object of this prince in his subsequent quarrel with the king of England, it is impossible to form a correct notion; this only is evident, that he sought pretexts for hostilities, and rejected with disdain the most equitable offers. He complained that Edward had not attended at his coronation, nor done him homage for Guienne; and that his town of St. Sardos had been unlawfully destroyed by the seneschal of that duchy. The king replied that he had never been summoned to do homage; that the town of St. Sardos was notoriously within his own territories; that he was ignorant of the conduct of his seneschal, but, if that officer had done wrong, he should answer for it in the court of the duchy. At the same time he offered to do homage at an appointed day, if the French army were to be recalled from Guienne; and to refer the subject of their quarrel to the equity of the peers of France, or the arbitration of the pope. But Charles was inexorable; his army overran the Agenois; and it was only by the surrender of Reoles,

1324.  
Sept. 22.

<sup>1</sup> Abbrev. Placit. p. 343. rot. 37. Rym. iv. 7, 20, 22. Knyght. 2543. Moor, 596. Blande, 84.



the last fortress in that province, that Edmund earl of Kent, and brother to Edward, could purchase a truce for a few months.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1324.

During this interval the pontiff employed all his influence to restore peace between the two kings. Edward, though he had made preparations for an expedition to Guienne, professed himself ready to make every sacrifice consistent with his honour; Charles, on the contrary, spoke of nothing but conquest, and haughtily refused to listen to any proposals. It was, however, artfully suggested to the papal envoys, that if the queen of England would visit the French court, the king might grant to the solicitations of a sister what he would withhold from an indifferent negotiator.<sup>2</sup> Edward fell into the snare: Isabella proceeded to France with a splendid retinue; and a treaty was concluded, which will remind the reader of the deception practised in the last reign with respect to the same duchy. The troops of Charles were to retire into his own territories, those of Edward to the neighbourhood of Bayonne; possession of Guienne was then to be given to the king of France, who would name a seneschal unexceptionable to both parties, and restore the province to Edward as soon as he had done homage, but would retain the Agenois till his right had been decided by the peers of France, and, if their award were not in his favour, till he had received compensation for the expenses of the war.<sup>3</sup> When this ignominious treaty was communicated to Edward, an answer was required in the course of the week;

1325.  
May 31.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 90, 95, 100. Wals. 120, 121. <sup>2</sup> Rym. iv. 140.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. iv. 153—163. Parl. Writs, ii. 730.



CHAP. his council, anxious to avoid the blame, declined to  
 A.D. 1325.<sup>1</sup> give him advice on a subject which demanded the  
 — decision of his parliament; and the king, after some  
 days, reluctantly approved of the condition which  
 July 30. had been stipulated by his wife. He now began his  
 journey to France to do homage at Beauvais, but  
 Aug. 24. was detained at Dover by sickness, and sent a mes-  
 senger to Charles to account for his delay.<sup>1</sup> Whether  
 the dark plot which soon astonished the nations of  
 Europe had already been formed, we have not the  
 means of knowing; but an answer was returned, that  
 if Edward would transfer the possession of Guienne  
 and Ponthieu to his son, Charles, at the prayer of  
 Isabella, would receive the homage of the young  
 prince on the same terms on which he had consented  
 to receive that of the father. The offer, though it  
 bore a suspicious aspect, was accepted; the necessary  
 resignations were made; and the young Edward, a  
 boy of twelve years of age, after promising his father  
 to hasten his return, and not to marry during his  
 Sept. 14. absence, sailed with a splendid retinue to the French  
 coast.<sup>2</sup> But to the general astonishment, though  
 the ceremony was speedily performed, week after week  
 passed away, and neither mother nor son appeared  
 inclined to revisit England. Mortimer had joined  
 Isabella at Paris; he was made the chief officer of  
 her household; and it was soon publicly reported  
 that the daughter of France and queen of England  
 had abandoned her husband to become the mistress  
 of a rebel and exile.<sup>3</sup>

Edward would probably have borne without regret  
 the absence of a faithless wife; but his only son was

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 163.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 163, 165, 168.

<sup>3</sup> Wals. 122.



in her company ; and her court had become the great resort of his enemies. He repeatedly ordered her to return, and was repeatedly disobeyed. His letters to the king and peers of France, to the pope, to his “dame,” and his “fair son,” are still extant ; and completely disprove the pretext by which she sought to justify her absence, her apprehensions from the hostility of Hugh Spenser. The king affirms that such fears are a mere pretence : that she had never betrayed the least suspicion of Spenser in England ; that at her departure she had taken leave of him as a friend, and during her absence had written to him letters of compliment and esteem ; that since her marriage she had always been treated with honour and kindness ; and that if he himself had sometimes “spoken to her words of chastisement,” it was always in secret, and because she had deserved it by her follies.<sup>1</sup> Her designs, however, began to unfold them-

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1325.

Dec. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 180, 194, 200, 210. For the gratification of the curious, I shall translate some of the letters which passed on this occasion. 1. Letter from the queen to the archbishop of Canterbury : “Most reverend father in God, we have carefully perused the letter by which you require us to return to the company of our most dear and dread lord and friend ; and assure us that Sir Hugh Spenser is not our enemy, but even, as you say, wishes our good. At this we marvel much ; for neither you nor any one of sound mind can believe that we would abandon the company of our said lord without good and reasonable cause, and unless it were to escape the danger of our life, and through fear of the said Hugh, who has the government of our said lord and of his whole kingdom, and who would dishonour us to the best of his power, as we are certain and know from experience, though we dissembled to escape the danger. Truly, there is nothing we desire so much after God and our salvation as to be in the company of our said lord, and to live and die in the same. We therefore beg of you to excuse us ; for in no manner can we return to the company of our said lord, without putting our life in danger, on which account we are in greater grief than we can express.” At Paris, Wednesday after Candlemas.—Apol. Ad. Orleton, 276. 2. The king to the queen : “Dame,—Several times both before the homage and since, we have



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1325.

selves. Levies of troops were made in her name; the barons of the Lancastrian faction were requested to join her at her arrival in England; reports the most dishonourable to the king were circulated both at home and abroad; and orders were transmitted from the young prince to the lords of Guienne, in opposition to those which Edward had given as administrator for his son. Among the king's envoys to the court of France, the bishop of Exeter, a minister of irreproachable integrity, was peculiarly obnoxious to the party; and an attempt to take his life compelled

“ordered you to return to us immediately, and without any excuse. “But before the homage you excused yourself, because your presence “was necessary for the prosecution of our concerns; and now you “have sent us word that you will not come, through the danger and “fear of Hugh Spenser; at which we marvel with all our might; “the more so, since both you and he treated each other in so friendly “a manner before us, and even at your departure you gave him “promises, signs, and proofs, of certain friendship, and afterwards “sent him the kindest letters, and that not long ago, which letters “he has shewn to us. And truly, dame, we know, and so do you, “that he has always procured for you all the honour in his power; “and that since you came into our company, no evil or disgrace has “ever been done to you; unless perhaps sometimes through your own “fault (if you will but remember) we have spoken to you as we “ought, words of chastisement in secret, without any other severity. “Neither ought you, as well on account of God and the laws of “holy church, as our honour and your own, for any earthly reason “to transgress our commands, much less to avoid our company. “Therefore we command and charge you, that laying aside all “feigned reasons and excuses, you come to us immediately in all “haste.” At Westminster, Dec. 1st. 3. From the king to the prince. After ordering him to return, and to refuse his assent to any marriage, the king adds the following postscript: “Edward, fair son, “though you are of tender age, take these our commands tenderly “to heart, and perform them humbly and quickly, as you wish to “escape our anger and heavy indignation, and love your own profit “and honour. And follow no advice contrary to the will of your “father, as the wise king Solomon teaches you, and send us word “immediately what you mean to do; knowing this, that if we find “you hereafter disobedient to our will, we will take care that you “shall feel it to the last day of your life, and that other sons shall “learn from your example not to disobey their lord and father.”—*Rym. iv. 181, 212.*



him to return to England. He was followed by the majority of those who had composed the retinue of the queen and prince, and who were now dismissed, that they might not be employed as spies on her proceedings. At the same time the king of France, to distract the attention, or multiply the perplexities of the English government, sent bodies of troops to make inroads into Guienne. Edward was fully aware of his danger. He ordered the retailers of false news to be arrested, and all suspicious letters to or from foreign parts to be seized; he wrote again and in stronger terms to his son and the king of France; and at last declared war against the latter for the invasion of Guienne, and the detention of his wife and of the presumptive heir of his crown.<sup>1</sup> Charles, who still affected to be ignorant of the dishonour of his sister, was at last induced, by a letter of severe but merited reproach from the pope, to dismiss her from Paris; but he had secretly prepared an asylum for her in the court of his vassal, William count of Hainault. Here all her plans were matured under the direction of Mortimer. She signed a contract of marriage between her son Edward and Philippa, the second daughter of the count; a body of more than two thousand men at arms under John de Hainault was placed at her disposal; all the exiles of the Lancastrian faction crowded round her person; and on the twenty-fourth of September she landed with her followers at Orwell in Suffolk.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.

A.D. 1326.  
—

Jan. 3.

March 18.

June 12.

July 6.

Sept. 24.

.82.4p2

We are told that the original projector of the invasion was Adam Orleton, bishop of Hereford, who had been deeply engaged in Lancaster's conspiracy,

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 183, 193, 196, 206, 209, 211, 212, 218.

<sup>2</sup> Moor, 598. Wals. 123. Rym. iv. 231. Avesbury, 4.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1326.

---

and had lost his temporalities as the punishment of his treason.<sup>1</sup> This wary and experienced politician founded his hopes of success on the probable co-operation of the two parties, which had hitherto divided the nation. He was secure of the aid of his former friends. A revolution alone could restore them to their estates, or furnish them with the means of revenge. The royalists, though attached to the king, were dissatisfied with the ascendancy of his favourite; and every true knight must deem it a duty to reconcile with her husband a young queen, who had been driven from the court by the insolence of an upstart. The ulterior designs of the conspirators were carefully concealed; and the apparent integrity of their professions seduced many from their allegiance. Of the envoys whom Edward had sent to France, his brother the earl of Kent, his cousin the earl of Richmond, the lord Beaumont, and the bishop of Norwich, joined Isabella; though his fleet (so well was he informed of the queen's intention) had been ordered to assemble at Orwell three days before the arrival of the enemy, it was perfidiously directed to a different port; and even Robert de Wateville, who had been despatched to oppose the invaders, ranged his forces under the banners of the queen and her son. The unfortunate monarch knew not whom to trust; and afraid to summon the military tenants of the crown, commanded the commissioners of array to come to his aid with the men of the neighbouring counties; ordered all who should be found in the invading army, with the exception of his wife, his son, and his brother, to be treated as enemies; and offered a free pardon with

Sept. 28.

<sup>1</sup> Moor, 596, 597. Rym. iv. 257.



a reward of one thousand pounds, for the head of Mortimer.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1326.  
Sept. 24.

Isabella, at her landing (and it affords a strong presumption that the charges against Edward and his favourites were not without foundation), was generally hailed as the deliverer of the country. The Lancastrian lords hastened to meet her; the primate supplied her with a sum of money to pay her followers; and the king's other brother, the earl of Norfolk, with three bishops, repaired to her camp. Letters were immediately written to the remaining prelates and barons to allure them to her party, by the exposition of her views, and an exaggerated statement of her present force, and of the succours which she expected from her brother the French king. But at Wallingford, proposals were heard, which alarmed the real authors of the expedition. The new comers professed themselves hostile to the Spencers, but talked of restoring the queen to her husband, and of compelling him to govern by the advice of his parliament. The principal among them were immediately summoned to a council, in which Orleton, by the command of Isabella, accused the passionate and revengeful temper of Edward, detailed several real or pretended instances of his brutal conduct to the queen, and solemnly asserted that in the present circumstances she could not return to his society without evident danger to her life.<sup>2</sup> At the same time it was determined to issue a proclamation, which, while it pointed the public hatred against the favourite, was studiously silent with respect to the intended system of govern-

Oct. 15.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 225, 231, 233, 237.

<sup>2</sup> Apolog. Ad. Orlet. 2766. Her pretended fears of violence from the king were believed, and have been repeated by most of our historians.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1326.

ment. It stated that the queen, the prince, and the earl of Kent, were come to free the nation from the usurped tyranny of Hugh Spenser, who had disinherited the crown of its rights, deprived the church of its possessions, irritated the king against his queen and his son, attainted, murdered, or exiled the great men of the realm, robbed widows and orphans of their property, and aggrieved the people by unlawful exactions. They, therefore, required the assistance of every good and loyal subject, as they had no other object in view but the advantage of the church and of the realm. In addition, the emissaries, who distributed this proclamation, were instructed to inform the people that the pope had excommunicated all who should bear arms against the queen; had absolved the king's vassals from their allegiance, and had sent two cardinals to give to the undertaking the sanction of the Apostolic See.<sup>1</sup>

At the queen's approach towards the capital, Edward, as a last resource, threw himself on the loyalty and pity of the citizens. Their answer was cold but intelligible. The privileges of the city would not, they observed, permit them to follow the king into the field, but they would shut the gates against the foreigners, and would on all occasions pay due respect to their sovereign, his queen, and his son. Edward immediately departed with the two Spensers, the chancellor Baldock, and a slender retinue; and soon after his departure the populace rose, murdered Walter Stapledon, the bishop of Exeter, took forcible possession of the Tower, and liberated the prisoners. The fugitive monarch hastened to the marches of Wales, where lay the estates of his favourite. Bristol

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 236. Moor, 598.



was given to the custody of the elder Spenser, earl of Winchester; and at Caerfilly an attempt was made to raise the men of Glamorgan. But the Welshmen were equally indifferent to the distress of their lord, and of their sovereign; and Edward with his favourite took shipping for Lundy, a small isle in the mouth of the Bristol Channel, which had been previously fortified, and plentifully stored with provisions.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1326.  
Oct. 19.

Oct. 26.

The queen was not slow to pursue her fugitive consort. As she passed through Oxford, she commanded Orleton to preach before the university. The bishop selected for his text that passage in Genesis, "I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed. She shall bruise thy head." These words he applied to Isabella and the Spensers; but many thought that they discovered in the sermon dark and prophetic allusions to the fate which afterwards befel the unfortunate Edward. From Oxford she hastened to Bristol; and the earl of Winchester, unable to master the disaffection of the burghers, surrendered the town and castle on the third day. His grey hairs (he had passed his ninetyeth year) were not respected by his enemies; and he was accused before Sir William Trussel, one of the exiles raised by Isabella to the office of judge, of having assumed an undue influence over the king, exercised the royal power, widened the breach between the sovereign and the people, and advised the execution of the earl of Lancaster. In these tumultuous times the liberty of defence was seldom allowed to a political prisoner, but the notoriety of the facts charged in the indictment was assumed as a justifi-

Oct. 26.

<sup>1</sup> Ang. Sac. i. 366. Wals. 123, 124. Moor, 598—600. Rym. iv. 238.



CHAP. cation of the sentence which immediately followed.  
 I.  
 A.D. 1326. The earl was drawn from the court to the place of execution, where his enemies glutted their revenge with the sight of his sufferings. He was embowelled alive; his body was afterwards hung on a gibbet for four days, and then cut into pieces and thrown to the dogs.<sup>1</sup>

At Bristol it was ascertained that Edward had put to sea; and a proclamation was immediately made through the town, summoning him to return and resume the government. This farce was preparatory to an important decision of the prelates and barons in the queen's interest. Assuming the powers of parliament, they resolved that by the king's absence the realm had been left without a ruler; and therefore appointed the "duke of Aquitaine" guardian of the kingdom in the name and by the right of his father.<sup>2</sup> Edward's evil fortune pursued him by sea as well as land. He was unable to reach the isle of Lundy; and after contending for some days with a strong westerly wind, he landed at Swansea, retired to Neath, and sought to elude the search of his enemies by concealing himself in different places between that monastery and the castle of Caerfilly, held by his partisan, John de Felton. At length, Henry earl of Leicester, who had lately taken the title of his attainted brother, the earl of Lancaster, corrupted the fidelity of the natives, and got possession of Spenser and Baldock, who were secreted in the woods near the castle of Lantressan. Edward, it is said, immediately came forward, and voluntarily surrendered to his cousin, by whom he was sent to the strong fortress

<sup>1</sup> Apolog. Ad. Orlet. 2765. Wals. 125. Lel. Coll. ii. 468.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iv. 237.



of Kenilworth. *His* fate was postponed to answer the purposes of his wife ; the other captives were sacrificed without mercy to the resentment of their enemies. Baldock, as a clergyman, was confined first in the prison of the bishop of Hereford, and afterwards in that of Newgate, where he sank under the rigours of his captivity ; Spenser was arraigned at Hereford before the same judge whose hands were still reeking with the blood of his father. The offences laid to his charge form the best proof of his innocence. According to Trussel, he had been the cause of every calamity which had befallen the kingdom since his return from banishment, of the failure of the king's expedition into Scotland, and of the success of the Scottish incursions into England. He had not only prosecuted the earl of Lancaster and his adherents to death, but when God had demonstrated the virtue of that nobleman by the supernatural cures wrought at his tomb, he had placed guards to prevent the afflux of the people, and to suppress the knowledge of the miracles ;<sup>1</sup> he had constantly fomented the dissension between Edward and his consort ; had hired assassins to murder the queen and the prince when they were in France ; and at their return had conveyed away the king and the royal treasures against the provisions of the great charter. "Therefore," continues this upright judge, "do all the good men of this realm, lesser and greater, poor and rich, award with common assent that you,

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1326.

---

Nov. 21.

<sup>1</sup> It was pretended that miracles had been wrought at his tomb, and on the hill where he was beheaded. In consequence a guard of fourteen men-at-arms was appointed to prevent all access to the place.—Lel. Coll. ii. 466. Soon after the coronation of the young king a letter was written at the request of the commons in parliament to the pope, to ask for the canonization of Lancaster, and of his friend, Robert, archbishop of Canterbury. The request was not noticed.—Rym. iv. 263. Rot. Parl. ii. 7.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1326.

“ Hugh Spenser, as a robber, traitor, and outlaw, be drawn, hanged, embowelled, beheaded, and quartered. Away then, traitor ; go, receive the reward of your tyranny, wicked and attainted traitor ! ” He was drawn in a black gown with the arms of his family reversed, and a wreath of nettles on his head, and was hanged on a gallows fifty feet high, amidst the acclamations and scoffs of the populace. A few yards below him suffered Simon de Reading, a faithful servant, who had always adhered to the fortunes of his master. Besides these the earl of Arundel and two other gentlemen were beheaded. They had remained neutral during the invasion, but were accused of having consented to the death of the earl of Lancaster. In the opinion of the public, their chief crime was the contiguity of their possessions to those of the queen’s favourite, to whom they were granted.<sup>1</sup>

1327,  
Jan. 7.

From Hereford Isabella with Mortimer and her son proceeded by slow journeys to meet the parliament at Westminster. The session was opened by a long speech from that crafty politician, the bishop of Hereford. The removal of the Spensers from the person of the king, the only ostensible object of the party, had now been effected, and it was natural to ask why Edward, in whose name the parliament had been summoned,<sup>2</sup> was not restored to the exercise of the royal authority. To obviate this difficulty, he painted in strong colours the vindictive disposition which it suited him to ascribe to the captive monarch, and

<sup>1</sup> Knyght. 2546—2549. Moor, 600. Wals. 125. Lel. Coll. ii. 468.

<sup>2</sup> The first writs had been tested by the prince as guardian of the realm ; but this supposed Edward to be absent, and other writs, proroguing the meeting of parliament, were issued teste rege, though he was in reality a prisoner.—Parl. Writs, ii. 350.



solemnly declared that to liberate him now would be to expose to certain death the princess, who by her wisdom and courage had so lately freed the realm from the tyranny of the royal favourites. He therefore requested them to retire, and to return the next day, prepared to answer this important question, whether it were better that the father should retain the crown, or that the son should reign in the place of his father. At the appointed hour the hall was filled with the most riotous of the citizens of London, whose shouts and menaces were heard in the room occupied by the parliament. Not a voice was raised in the king's favour. His greatest friends thought it a proof of courage to remain silent. The young Edward was declared king by acclamation, and presented in that capacity to the approbation of the populace. The temporal peers with many of the prelates publicly swore fealty to the new sovereign; the archbishop of York, and the bishops of London, Rochester, and Carlisle, though summoned by the justiciaries, had the resolution to refuse.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1327.

Jan. 8.

These irregular proceedings had probably been pursued to extort from the members an assent, from which they could not afterwards recede. Though the prince was declared king, his father had neither resigned, nor been deposed. To remedy the defect, a bill of six articles was exhibited against Edward by Stratford, bishop of Winchester, charging him with indolence, incapacity, the loss of the crown of Scotland, the violation of the coronation oath, oppression of the church, and cruelty to the barons. In the presence of the young prince seated on the throne, these charges were read and approved; and it was resolved

Jan. 13.

<sup>1</sup> Ang. Sac. i. 367.



CHAP. that the reign of Edward of Carnarvon had ceased,  
I. and that the sceptre should be intrusted to the hands  
A.D. 1327. of his son, Edward of Windsor.  
—

When this resolution was reported to the queen, she acted a part which could deceive no one. With the most violent expressions of grief, she lamented the misfortune of her husband, declared that the parliament had exceeded its legitimate powers, and exhorted her son to refuse a crown which belonged to his father. To silence her pretended scruples, a deputation was appointed consisting of prelates, earls, barons, knights, citizens, and burgesses. They were instructed to proceed to Kenilworth, to give notice to Edward of the election of his son, to procure from him a voluntary resignation of the crown, and, if he refused, to give him back their homage, and to act as circumstances might suggest. The bishops of Winchester and Lincoln, a secret and an open enemy, were the first who arrived. They employed arguments, and promises, and threats to obtain the consent of the unfortunate king; spoke of the greatness of mind he would display, and of the reward he would deserve, by renouncing the crown to restore peace to his people; promised him in the event of his compliance the enjoyment of a princely revenue and establishment; and threatened, if he refused, not only to depose him, but to pass by his son, and choose a sovereign from another family. When they had sufficiently worked on his hopes and fears, they led him, dressed in a plain black gown, into the room in which the deputation had been arranged to receive him. At the sight of Orleton, his mortal enemy, who advanced to address him, he started back, and sank to the ground, but in a short time recovered sufficiently to attend to the speech of that prelate.



CHAP.

I.

A.D. 1327.

His answer has been differently reported by his friends and opponents. According to the former, he replied that no act of his could be deemed free, as long as he remained a prisoner; but that he should endeavour to bear patiently whatever might happen. By the latter we are told that he expressed his sorrow for having given such provocation to his people; submitted to what he could not avert; and thanked the parliament for having continued the crown in his family. Sir William Trussel immediately addressed him in these words: "I, William Trussel, proctor of the earls, barons, and others, having for this full and sufficient power, do render and give back to you Edward, once king of England, the homage and fealty of the persons named in my procuracy; and acquit and discharge them thereof, in the best manner that law and custom will give. And I now make protestation in their name that they will no longer be in your fealty or allegiance, nor claim to hold any thing of you as king, but will account you hereafter as a private person, without any manner of royal dignity." The distressing ceremony was closed by the act of Sir Thomas Blount, the steward of the household, who, as was always done at the king's death, broke his staff of office, and declared that all persons engaged in the royal service were discharged.<sup>1</sup>

In three days the deputation returned from Kenilworth, and the next morning the accession of the new sovereign, who was in his fourteenth year, was proclaimed by the heralds in the following unusual form: "Whereas Sir Edward, late king of England, of his own good will, and with the common advice and assent of the prelates, earls, barons, and other nobles,

Jan. 24.

<sup>1</sup> Moor, 600, 601. Wals. 126. Knyght. 2549. Twisden, 2550.



CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1327.  
—

“ and all the commonalty of the realm, has put himself  
“ out of the government of the realm, and has granted  
“ and willed that the government of the said realm  
“ should come to Sir Edward, his eldest son and heir,  
“ and that *he* should govern the kingdom, and should  
“ be crowned king, on which account all the lords  
“ have done him homage; we cry and publish the  
“ peace of our said lord Sir Edward the son, and on  
“ his part strictly command and enjoin, under pain  
“ and peril of disherison, and loss of life and member,  
“ that no one break the peace of our said lord the  
“ king; for he is, and will be, ready to do justice to all  
“ and each of the said kingdom, both to the little and  
“ the great, in all things, and against all men. And  
“ if any one have a claim against another, let him  
“ proceed by way of action, and not by violence or  
“ force.” The same assertion, that the late king had  
resigned of his own free will with the consent of his  
parliament was unblushingly repeated at the corona-  
tion of the young prince.<sup>1</sup>

Feb. 1.

Edward of Carnarvon (for so we must now call him)  
was destined to add one to the long catalogue of  
princes, to whom the loss of a crown has been but the  
prelude to the loss of life. The attention of the earl  
of Lancaster to alleviate the sufferings of his captive  
did not accord with the views of the queen and her  
paramour. He was given to the custody of Sir John  
de Maltravers, a man who, by his former sufferings,  
had proved his attachment to the party. To conceal  
the place of Edward's residence, he successively trans-  
ferred the prisoner from Kenilworth to Corfe, Bristol,  
and Berkeley, and by the indignities which were  
offered to him, and the severities which were inflicted,

April 4.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 243—245.



laboured to deprive him of his reason or to shorten his life. It was in vain that the deposed monarch solicited an interview with his wife, or to be indulged with the company of his children. Isabella had not the courage to face the husband whom she had so cruelly injured, nor would she trust her sons in the presence of their father. Though in possession of the sovereign power, she was still harassed with the most gloomy apprehensions. In several parts of the kingdom associations were known to exist for the avowed purpose of liberating the captive; her scandalous connection with Mortimer was publicly noticed by the clergy in their sermons; and there was reason to fear that the church might compel her by censures to cohabit with her consort. To prevent the last she had recourse to her usual expedient. As her son led an army against the Scots, she called an assembly of prelates and barons at Stamford, laid before them her pretended reasons for dreading the sanguinary vengeance of her husband, and prevailed on them to declare that, even if she desired it, they would not permit her to return to the society of Edward of Carnarvon.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1327.

April 23.

Thomas Lord Berkeley, the owner of Berkeley Castle, was now joined with Sir John Maltravers in the commission of guarding the captive monarch. It chanced that the former was detained at his manor of Bradley by a dangerous malady, during which the duty of watching the king devolved on two of his officers, Thomas Gournay and William Ogle. One night, while he was under their charge, the inmates of the castle were alarmed by the shrieks which issued from his apartment; the next morning the neighbouring gentry, with the citizens of Bristol, were invited

Sept. 21.

<sup>1</sup> Apol. Ad. Orlet. 2767. Rym. iv. 304. Moor, 601.



CHAP. I. to behold his dead body. Externally it exhibited no  
A.D. 1327. marks of violence; but the distortion of the features  
betrayed the horrible agonies in which he had expired; and it was confidently whispered that his death had been procured by the forcible introduction of a red-hot iron into the bowels. No further investigation was made; and the corpse was privately interred in the abbey church of St. Peter in Gloucester.<sup>1</sup>

The first Edward had been in disposition a tyrant. As often as he dared, he had trampled on the liberties, or invaded the property of his subjects; and yet he died in his bed, respected by his barons, and admired by his contemporaries. His son, the second Edward,

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 52, 54. Rym. iv. 312. Knyght. 2551. Murim. 70, 71. Moor, 603. Moor ascribes the king's death to the contrivance of Orleton, but the charge is probably groundless, as he had been for some months out of the kingdom on an embassy to the papal court (Rym. iv. 276), where he was deprived of his bishopric, but at length procured in its place the see of Worcester.—Ang. Sac. i. 533. On Moor's authority also it has been said that the actual murderers were Maltravers and Gournay; but, though Maltravers was condemned by the same parliament which condemned the murderers, it was for a different crime, which forms a presumption that he was innocent of this.—Rot. Parl. ii. 53. According to the judgment of the house of peers in 1330, Mortimer commanded (he confessed it before his death, *ibid.* 62), Gournay and Ogle perpetrated, the murder. Mortimer suffered death; the other two had fled out of the kingdom; but a reward of 100*l.* was offered for the apprehension, or of 100 marks for the head, of Gournay, and another reward of 100 marks for the apprehension, and of 40*l.* for the head, of Ogle.—Rot. Parl. ii. 54. What became of Ogle, I know not; Gournay fled into Spain, and was apprehended by the magistrates of Burgos. See note (A) at the end. With respect to Lord Berkeley, he was tried at his own demand before a jury of knights, and acquitted. The king, however, ordered him to be put under the custody of Sir Ralph Neville till the next parliament, for having placed officers of a bad character near the person of his father.—Rot. Parl. ii. 57. But in that parliament, at the request of the lords, he was permitted to be at large, till the truth could be learned from Gournay, *who was still alive*, but not yet arrived from Spain.—Rot. Parl. ii. 62. From these words it was probable that Ogle died before the capture of Gournay.



was of a less imperious character; no acts of injustice or oppression were imputed to him by his greatest enemies; yet he was deposed from the throne, and murdered in a prison. Of this difference between the lot of the father and the son the solution must be sought in the manners and character of the age. They both reigned over proud and factious nobles, jealous of their own liberties, but regardless of the liberties of others; and who, though they respected the arbitrary sway of a monarch as haughty and violent as themselves, despised the milder and more equitable administration of his successor. That successor, naturally easy and indolent, fond of the pleasures of the table and the amusements of the chase, willingly devolved on others the cares and labours of government. But in an age unacquainted with the more modern expedient of a responsible minister, the barons considered the elevation of the favourite as their own depression, his power as the infringement of their rights. The result was what we have seen, a series of associations, having for their primary object the removal of evil counsellors, as they were called, from the person of the prince, but gradually invading the legitimate rights of the crown, and terminating in the dethronement and assassination of the sovereign. For the part which Isabella acted in this tragedy no apology can be framed. The apprehensions of danger to her life, under which she attempted to conceal her real purposes, were of too flimsy a texture to blind the most devoted of her partisans; nor could she palliate her adulterous connection with Mortimer by retorting on her husband the charge of conjugal infidelity.<sup>1</sup> In a few years her crime was punished

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1327.  
—

<sup>1</sup> Moor, 601.



CHAP. with the general execration of mankind. She saw  
 I.  
 A.D. 1327. her paramour expire on a gibbet, and spent the remainder of her life in disgrace and obscurity.

I must not close this account of Edward's reign without noticing the abolition of the Knights Templars. That celebrated order was established in 1118 by the patriarch of Jerusalem, and originally consisted of nine poor knights, who lived in community near the site of the ancient temple, and took on themselves the voluntary obligation of watching the roads in the neighbourhood of the city, and of protecting the pilgrims from the insults of robbers and infidels.<sup>1</sup> By degrees their number was surprisingly augmented; they were the foremost in every action of danger; their military services excited the gratitude of Christendom; and in every nation legacies were annually left, and lands successively bestowed on the Templars. But wealth and power generated a spirit of arrogance and independence, which exasperated both the civil and ecclesiastical authorities. As long indeed as the knights were usefully employed against the infidels, their enemies were silent; but after their expulsion from the Holy Land, they indulged in indolence and luxury, and reports the most prejudicial to the reputation of the order began to be circulated and credited. Philip le Bel had repeatedly denounced it to the pope Clement V.; and at last, impatient of delay, ordered all the knights in his dominions to be arrested, and on examination obtained from many a confession of the most shocking and infamous practices. Clement was dissatisfied with the precipitance of the king; but to stay the proceedings would have been to proclaim himself the

1307.  
 Oct. 12.

<sup>1</sup> Wil. Try. xii. 7.



protector of guilt, and he therefore reserved the future prosecution of the inquiry to the Apostolic See. In different bulls addressed to the sovereigns of Christendom he detailed the charges brought against the order, of profligacy, idolatry, and apostasy; requested that the knights in their respective territories might be placed in confinement; and appointed judges to inquire into their guilt or innocence.<sup>1</sup> In England and Ireland they were all apprehended on the same day, and kept in safe but honourable custody.<sup>2</sup> The process against them lasted for three years; and, if it be fair to judge from the informations taken in England, however we may condemn a few individuals, we must certainly acquit the order.<sup>3</sup> The result of the inquiries made in the different countries was laid before the pontiff in the council of Vienne; and after much deliberation he published a bull, suppressing the institute, not by way of a judicial sentence establishing its guilt, but by the plenitude of his power, and as a measure of expediency rather than of justice.<sup>4</sup> That the property of the Templars might be still preserved for the purposes for which it had been originally given, it was determined to transfer it to the Knights Hospitallers; but, when the papal bull, containing this ordinance, arrived in England, Edward suspended its execution for more than a year; and if he at last

CHAP.  
I.  
A.D. 1307.

1308.  
Jan. 10.

1312.  
March 22.

May 2.

August 1.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 30, 301.

<sup>2</sup> One of the king's clerks was sent to the sheriff of each county with an order for him to take a certain number of good and lawful men, and with them to swear to execute the sealed orders which the bearer should deliver to him. These were then opened, and authorized the arrest of the Templars.—Rym. iii. 34, 43.

<sup>3</sup> The whole process may be seen in Wilkins, ii. 329—400.

<sup>4</sup> *Non per modum diffinitivæ sententiæ, cum eam super hoc secundum inquisitionem, et processum super his habitos non possemus ferre de jure, sed per viam provisionis seu ordinationis apostolicæ.*—Rym. iii. 323.



CHAP. I.  
A.D. 1312. he assented, it was not till he had made a protestation that  
1313. he did it for objects of national utility, and without  
Nov. 24. abandoning his own right or the right of any of his  
subjects to the possessions in question.<sup>1</sup> Eleven years  
later he consulted the judges, who replied that by the  
law of the land all the possessions of the Templars  
had reverted as escheats to the lords of the fees; and  
1324. immediately an act of parliament was passed, assign-  
ing them to the Hospitallers, for the same purposes  
for which they had been originally bestowed on the  
Templars.<sup>2</sup>

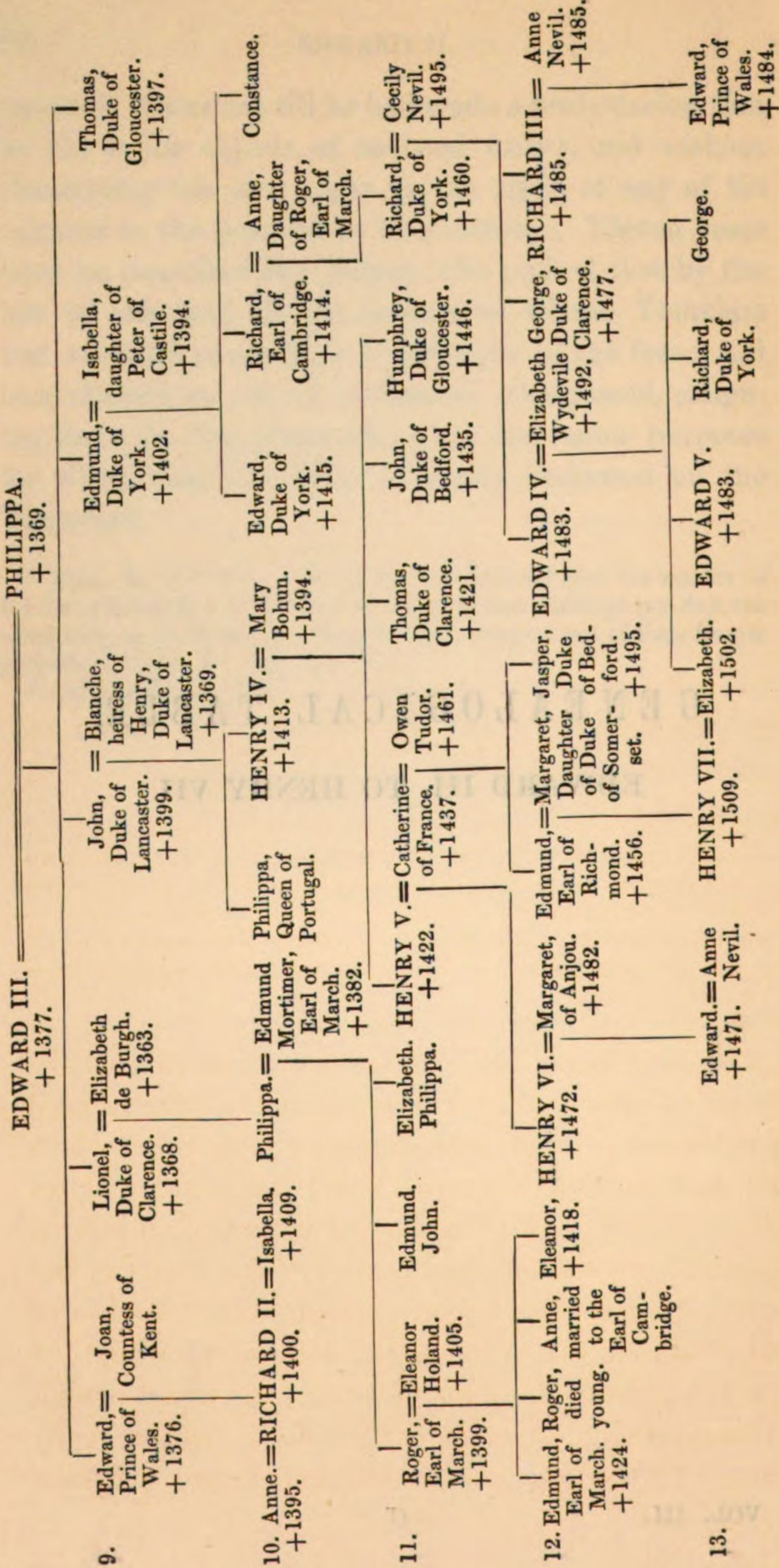
<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 451, 457. The king had ordered that the master of the Templars in England should be allowed two shillings per day, the other knights fourpence per day, for their support out of their former property.—Rym. iii. 327, 349, 472.

<sup>2</sup> Stat. of Realm, 194.



# GENEALOGICAL TABLE, EDWARD III. TO HENRY VII.







## CHAPTER II.

## EDWARD III.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emp. of Germ.</i> | <i>K. of Scotland.</i> | <i>K. of France.</i> | <i>K. of Spain.</i> |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Louis IV. .. 1347    | Robert I. ...1329      | Charles IV. 1328     | Alphonso XI. 1350   |
| Charles IV.          | David II. ...1370      | Philip VI. 1350      | Pedro .....1368     |
|                      | Robert II.             | John ....1364        | Henry II.           |
|                      |                        | Charles V.           |                     |

*Popes.*

John XXII. 1334. Benedict XII. 1342. Clement VI. 1352. Innocent VI. 1362. Urban V. 1370. Gregory XI.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE SCOTS—EXECUTION OF THE EARL OF KENT—FALL AND EXECUTION OF MORTIMER—BALIOL RECOVERS AND LOSES SCOTLAND—EDWARD CLAIMS THE CROWN OF FRANCE—HIS USELESS EXPEDITIONS TO FLANDERS—VICTORY AT SEA—TRUCE—RENEWAL OF THE WAR—VICTORY AT CRECI—VICTORY AT NEVIL'S CROSS—SURRENDER OF CALAIS—ANOTHER TRUCE—PESTILENCE—THE FLAGELLANTS.

For some years Isabella and Mortimer enjoyed the reward of their guilt. The youth of the king allowed them to retain that ascendancy over his mind which they had hitherto exercised; and the murder of his father secured them from the resentment of an injured husband. Of the forfeited estates of the Spencers and their partisans, the larger portion, with the title of earl of March, fell to the lot of Mortimer; whilst the queen obtained the sum of twenty thousand pounds for the present payment of her debts, and a yearly income to the same amount for her future expenses.

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1327.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1327.  
Feb. 3.

In the parliament an act of indemnity was passed for all violences committed during the revolution; the award against the Spensers was re-enacted; the judgments given against the late earl of Lancaster and his adherents were reversed;<sup>1</sup> the survivors, or the heirs of the deceased, were restored to the possession of their hereditary estates; both the great charter and charter of forests were confirmed, and certain grievances abolished; and a council of regency was appointed, to consist of four bishops, four earls, and six barons. Most, however, of its members belonged to the queen's party, and those who were not under her control were gradually dismissed by the contrivance of that unprincipled woman and her paramour.

The first measures of the new government were disconcerted by an unexpected occurrence. Of the truce with Scotland only a few years had expired; but the state of affairs in England offered to the Scottish king a temptation which he had not the virtue to resist. He determined, in violation of his engagements, to wrest, if possible, from the young king a solemn renunciation of that superiority which had been claimed by his father and grandfather. Aware of the intentions of Bruce, the English government had recourse to every expedient to avert hostilities. The lords of the marches were ordered to observe the articles of the late treaty; it was solemnly confirmed by the new king; envoys were sent to negotiate with the

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 245—264. Rot. Parl. ii. 3—6, 52. Knyght. 2556. The attainder against the earl of Lancaster was annulled, because he had not been arraigned in the king's court, nor tried by his peers, "though it was in time of peace." How could that be, when with a large force he had besieged the castle of Tickill, and taken the town of Burton? The answer was, that "the chancery and courts of justice were still open, and the king had not displayed his banner."—Rot. Parl. ii. 4, 5. New Rym. ii. p. 731.



Scottish monarch; and it was at last agreed that ambassadors should meet in the marches, and treat of a final peace. But Bruce summoned his military retainers to join him at the same place and on the same day; and Edward, to be prepared for the event, was compelled to issue similar orders to the tenants of the crown and the men of the northern counties. The negotiators met: the Scots insisted on their own terms; and when the English demurred, an army of twenty-four thousand men under Randolph and Douglas crossed the borders, and ravaged the county of Cumberland.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1327.

April 23.

June 1.

Edward consumed six weeks at York, waiting for the arrival of his forces. At the suggestion of Mortimer, he had purchased, for the sum of fourteen thousand pounds, the services of John of Hainault and a body of foreigners, who were lodged in the best quarters, and treated with the best cheer. On Trinity Sunday the king entertained five hundred knights, the queen sixty ladies, at their respective tables; but the festivity was interrupted by an alarm of a tumult in the city. The insolence of the foreigners had irritated the Lincolnshire archers; and in a battle, which lasted till night, some hundreds were slain on each side. The men of Hainault claimed the victory; but they were compelled from that moment to use the same precautions as in a hostile country, and never considered themselves safe till they had left the island. Commissioners were appointed to inquire into the

June 7.

<sup>1</sup> See Rymer, iv. 256, 270, 271, 280, 287, 293. Lord Hailes (Annals, 116—118) seems to have misunderstood these documents, from which it was evident that the infraction of the truce must be charged to the Scots. At the same time the Irish septs burst into the English pale in Ireland (Rym. iv. 295); but whether there was any connection between the two invasions is unknown.



CHAP. II. origin of the quarrel; whatever may have been the  
A.D. 1327. result, it was deemed prudent to suppress it.<sup>1</sup>

— At length the English, amounting to more than forty thousand men, marched to Durham, but were unable to obtain any certain intelligence of the enemy.

July 18. An army of Scots was peculiarly adapted for predatory incursions. It consisted entirely of cavalry, and was unencumbered with luggage. For provisions they depended on the cattle to be captured from the enemy, and on the scanty supply of oatmeal which every horseman carried in a pouch at the end of his saddle. The flesh of the cattle was eaten almost raw, having been previously scorched rather than roasted, or else seethed in boilers made at the moment of the hides, which were slackly stretched upon stakes over the fire. The oatmeal was mixed with water from the nearest brook, kneaded into cakes, and baked on thin heated plates of metal, which plates they carried with them in their saddles. Hence the rapidity of their movements was so great that, whether they advanced or retreated, it was difficult either to discover or pursue them. On the fifth day, intelligence reached the king that the enemy were burning the villages at a distance of ten miles from the city. The army was immediately in motion, and marched in three divisions, in each of which the infantry occupied the centre, with the cavalry on its flanks. Orders had been issued that no man should quit his banner under the penalty of death.

In this manner they advanced for two days without overtaking the Scots; on the second evening it was resolved to gain by a rapid march the left bank of the

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 292. Froiss. c. i. 16. Wals. 127. Lel. Coll. i. 307.



Tyne, and to intercept the return of the enemy. With this view the baggage and provisions were conveyed back to Durham, and no man was permitted to carry with him more than a single loaf, tied to his saddle. They set out at midnight, rode all day in a straight line over mountains and valleys, heaths and morasses, and a little before sunset crossed the river at the town of Haydon. Here they remained seven days, still ignorant of the motions of the enemy, and suffering from the continual rains and the want of provisions. The soldiers murmured; suspicions of treason were circulated in the camp; and Edward by proclamation promised the honour of knighthood and an annuity of one hundred pounds for life to the first man who should bring him intelligence of the Scots. The army now recrossed the river, and on the fourth day, about three in the afternoon, Thomas de Rokesby, galloping up to the king, said: "Sire, the Scots are at the distance of three leagues posted on a mountain, where for the last week they have expected you. I have seen them myself, having been made prisoner, and released that I might claim the reward which you promised." Edward immediately turned to the neighbouring abbey of Blanchland, where he spent the night, and with many of his friends prepared himself by devotional exercises for the expected battle of the next day.

CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1327.

July 20.

July 27.

July 31.

In the morning Rokesby led the army towards the Scots. They were encamped in huts on the summit of a mountain on the right bank of the Wear, at a small distance from Stanhope. At the sight of the English they formed themselves on foot in three divisions on the declivity, with the river between them and the enemy. Edward ordered his men to dismount,

August 1.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1327.

made several knights, and rode through the ranks attended by his principal lords. After a short pause the army marched slowly to the bank of the river; but the Scots remained immoveable in their position; and an English herald was sent to propose, that one of the two nations should retire to a certain distance, and allow its adversary to cross the water, and form on the opposite bank. Douglas replied that he had come there against the will of the king, and should not leave the mountain to please him. If Edward were not content, he might cross over, and drive him away if he could. On the receipt of this uncourteous answer, the English were ordered to lie all night on their arms. The Scots, leaving a division to watch the river, retired to their huts, "where," says Froissart, in his quaint style, "they made marvellously great fires, and, about midnight, set up such a blasting and noise with their horns, that it seemed as if all the great devils from hell had assembled together."

August 4.

The two following days were spent in the same manner; but on the third at dawn the Scots had disappeared. They were discovered in the afternoon, posted on another mountain of still more difficult access, and on the same side of the river; and the king following, pitched his camp in Stanhope Park, opposite to the enemy. In the midst of the night an alarm was created by shouts of "A Douglas! a Douglas! die ye English thieves!" That gallant chieftain had passed the river at a distance with two hundred followers, and entering the rear of the camp, galloped towards the king's tent, the cords of which he cut with his own sword. He killed about three hundred men, and retired with some loss.

August 5.

The object of this nocturnal visit was soon ex-



CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1327.

plained. The next day Edward learned from a prisoner that the whole Scottish army had received orders to assemble in the evening, and follow the banner of the Lord Douglas. Apprehensive of a nocturnal attack, he called his troops under arms, and appointed them their stations during the night. All was tranquil and silent: in the morning two trumpeters were brought in, who declared that the Scots had left their camp at midnight, had crossed the river, and were on their march towards Scotland. But the English disbelieved the account and remained the greater part of the day in the same position. At length the fact was ascertained; to pursue a more active enemy, who was already at the distance of thirty miles, would have been a fruitless task; and the army marched back to Durham, and thence to York, where it was disbanded. Such proved the ludicrous result of this mighty expedition, in which the English commanders were foiled by the superior skill and activity of their foes.<sup>1</sup>

August 6.

August 10.

August 15.

This inglorious campaign was followed by a peace, equally inglorious in the estimation of the people. But the queen and Mortimer had no inclination to continue the war; the proposal from them of a marriage between David, the only son of Robert, and Jane, the sister of Edward, was gladly accepted; and the terms of a future treaty were discussed and arranged by commissioners from the two princes at Newcastle. These were, that there should be final and perpetual peace between the kingdoms of England and Scotland; that David, the Scottish prince, should be married to the sister of Edward, as soon as the parties reached the age of puberty; that the

Dec.

<sup>1</sup> Froissart, i. c. 17, 18. Rym. iv. 301, 312. Lel. Coll. i. 551. Murim. 77. Heming. 268. Scalachronica, 153—155.



- CHAP. II. English king should interpose his good offices with  
 A.D. 1327. the pope for the extinction of such processes against  
 — him as were pending in the papal court; and that  
 Bruce should pay to Edward the sum of twenty thousand pounds, by three instalments, within three years.
- Dec. 10. A parliament was immediately summoned to meet at York; and in it Edward was persuaded to execute a deed of renunciation for himself and his successors of all claims of superiority over the crown of Scotland; by which act both princes were placed on the same footing of independent sovereigns. When this was
1328. March 1. ascertained, Bruce, in a Scottish parliament at Edinburgh, solemnly ratified the treaty; and subsequently
- March 17. Edward did the same in an English parliament at Northampton.<sup>1</sup> Yet no part of this transaction could be said to have had the sanction of the English nation. The summons to the parliament at York, as well as to that at Northampton, had been disobeyed by the principal barons, whose absence testified their disapprobation of the intended measure;<sup>2</sup> and the people loudly execrated the inconsistent conduct of those who advised the young king to renounce his claim to the Scottish crown, though they had made it a capital charge against the younger Spenser that he had not won the same crown for his master. It is

<sup>1</sup> Ford. xiii. 12. Rym. iv. 337. New Rym. ii. 730. Additional articles were signed by both princes, as a security for the future marriage. Robert gave to Edward a bond for 100,000*l.* to be paid at Michaelmas, 1338 (New Rym. ii. 741); and Edward at Northampton engaged to send back to Scotland the stone on which the Scottish kings used to be crowned. It was to be taken to Berwick by the queen mother.—Cat. of Anc. Charters, Introd. 58. The treaty and its ratifications were supposed to be lost, but have been published from the General Register Office, in New Rym. ii. 734, 740. See also Extract ex Chron. Scot. p. 154.

<sup>2</sup> “Therefore no business was done.”—Claus. 2 Edw. III. m. 15. d.



probable that Isabella and Mortimer had their own interest in view. The queen conducted her daughter to Berwick, where the princess was affianced to David, a boy in his fifth year; and Bruce faithfully paid the twenty thousand pounds, which the queen—so we are told—divided between herself and her paramour.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1328.  
July 18.

To a man of ordinary ambition the fate of Gaveston and Spenser in the last reign might have proved a useful lesson; Mortimer not only walked in their footsteps,—he assumed an authority to which they had not aspired. When the council of regency was appointed, it had been directed that out of the number one bishop, one earl, and two barons should daily attend the king, and give him their advice on all matters of importance. But Mortimer superseded them all, took their authority on himself, filled the court with his dependants, placed his creatures as spies round the young monarch, and maintained a guard of one hundred and eighty knights for his own security.<sup>2</sup> Such conduct naturally excited the jealousy of the great barons; his scandalous familiarity with Isabella, the murder of Edward of Carnarvon, who was now as much pitied as he had formerly been blamed, and the public disapprobation of the peace so recently concluded with Scotland, all concurred to embolden his enemies; and associations were formed to remove him from court, and to renew the ordinances which had been enacted and repealed in the last reign. A parliament had been summoned to meet at Salisbury, and the barons had been strictly for-

Oct. 16.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 337, 350, 354, 397. Heming. 269.

<sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2556, 2558. He was also made earl of the marches of Wales, at the same time that John of Eltham, the king's brother, was created earl of Cornwall, and the Butler of Ireland earl of Ormond.—Wals. 129.



CHAP. bidden to arm their attendants and followers. By  
II.  
A.D. 1328. both parties the prohibition was disregarded. Mortimer with a numerous army entered Salisbury, and Henry earl of Lancaster, the nominal guardian of the king's person, and president of the council, halted with an inferior force near Winchester. The favourite resolved to intimidate his enemies. He burst into the room in which the prelates had assembled, forbade them under the peril of life and limb to oppose his interests, and taking with him the king and queen, advanced towards Winchester. From Winchester he led his followers to Leicester, and plundered the ample domain of the earl of Lancaster in the neighbourhood. That nobleman had hitherto retired before Mortimer; he was now joined by the king's uncles, the earls of Norfolk and Kent, and ventured to advance in his turn. But at Bedford he was unexpectedly deserted by the royal earls; and despairing of success, submitted to ask pardon before the two armies, engaged to pay by instalments one half of the value of his estates, and entered into recognisances "not to do, nor procure to be done, "any evil or injury to the king, or the two queens, "or any other, whether great or small, of their council "or household." Of his associates, some were admitted to the king's peace on similar terms; but the lords Beaumont and Wake, Sir William Trussel, and several others, abandoned their country, and sought an asylum in France.<sup>1</sup>

Of the tragedy which followed, both the origin and progress are involved in considerable obscurity. As the discontent of the nation increased, many strange reports were circulated and believed. It was even

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 52. Knyght, 2554.



affirmed that the late king was still alive ; that the body exhibited at Berkeley was that of another person ; and that Edward himself was actually confined in Corfe Castle, under the custody of Sir John Deverel. When the parliament assembled at Winchester, the earl of Kent the king's uncle, the archbishop of York, the bishop of London, with several knights and gentlemen, were unexpectedly arrested on the charge of having conspired to depose the king, and to replace his father, whose death they disbelieved, on the throne. What was the real crime of the earl, whether he had opposed the measures of Isabella and Mortimer, or by his influence over the mind of his nephew had awakened their jealousy, we are ignorant ; but from his confession, and the subsequent proceedings, it is plain that the unfortunate prince was surrounded by the secret agents of the court, who under the guise of friendship drew him into the snare which cost him his life. He received letters, undoubtedly forgeries, from the pope, exhorting him to liberate his brother from prison ; different messengers, most of them apostate friars, brought him from several prelates and gentlemen promises of co-operation and assistance ; he was assured that the exiles in France, and a body of Scots, were prepared to draw their swords in his favour the moment he should unfurl the royal standard ; and Sir John Maltravers, Deverel, and Boeges de Bayonne, not only encouraged him in the notion that the late monarch was alive, but even procured from him letters, which they undertook to deliver to the royal captive. On his examination by Sir Robert Howel, the coroner of the household, he ingenuously confessed these particulars, and acknowledged that the answers which, as soon as they were

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1328.

1330.  
March 11.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1330.  
—

received, had been taken to the queen, were written partly by himself, and partly by his countess, under his direction. When he was arraigned before the peers, he repeated his confession, and threw himself on the king's mercy. Though they adjudged him to suffer the penalty of treason, it was believed that his birth would save him from punishment. But Isabella was inexorable; the son of the great Edward was led by the order of his nephew to the place of execution, and, after a painful suspense of four hours, a felon from the Marshalsea (no other could be found to perform the office) was induced by a promise of pardon to strike off his head.<sup>1</sup>

March 21.

That the earl was in reality innocent was afterwards acknowledged by Mortimer himself, when that nobleman in his turn was led to the scaffold;<sup>2</sup> nor is it probable that the court would have ventured to shed his blood had he not rendered himself unpopular by his haughty and oppressive behaviour.<sup>3</sup> The nation suspected that he had been sacrificed to the policy of the queen and her paramour; and this suspicion was confirmed, when many of the accused, even those who had been implicated by the confession of the earl, were suffered to go at large on their recognisances to answer on a future occasion.<sup>4</sup> To silence

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 129. Rym. iv. 424. Lel. Coll. 476, 552. Murim. 74. Heming. 271.

<sup>2</sup> See the petitions of the countess of Kent and her son.—Rot. Parl. ii. 33, 55. Both say that Mortimer publicly asked pardon of God for the death of the earl.

<sup>3</sup> *Eo minus a populo querebatur, quia pravam habuit familiam, res popularium eundo per patriam auctoritate propria occupantes, et parum vel nihil solventes eisdem.*—Murim. 75. Indeed it is evident, from the frequent complaints in parliament, that all the princes of the blood, and occasionally other powerful lords, were accustomed to take purveyance illegally.—See Rot. Parl. ii. 9.

<sup>4</sup> In the parliament held after Mortimer's execution they were all



CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1330.

—

the voice of the public, the government issued a proclamation, by which the sheriffs were ordered to arrest and imprison every man who should assert that the earl of Kent had suffered for any other cause than treason; or that he had been condemned without the judgment of his peers; or that Edward of Carnarvon, the king's father, was still alive.

Edward was now eighteen, an age when his predecessors had been deemed capable of governing the realm; and Philippa of Hainault, whom he married in 1328, had borne him a son, the same who is so celebrated in history under the name of the Black Prince.<sup>1</sup> He felt the state of dependence in which he was kept, and viewed with concern the past and present conduct of his mother. Nor was he without remorse as to the part which he had acted himself. If his extreme youth could acquit him of the crime of dethroning his father, yet he had given his consent to the execution of his uncle, whose guilt was at the best very doubtful, but whose blood had served to cement the power of Isabella and Mortimer. At last he confided his thoughts to the discretion of the Lord Montacute, who immediately exhorted him to break his chains, and assume the exercise of the royal authority. The king lent a willing ear to the proposal; a design was formed to seize the person of Mortimer, and it was fixed to make the attempt during the session of the parliament at Nottingham.

June 15.

When the time came, Isabella, with her son and her favourite, took up her residence in the castle;

acquitted. The archbishop of York brought an action against his accusers, and laid the damages at 1,000*l*.—Rot. Parl. ii. 31, 32, 54.

<sup>1</sup> Philippa was the youngest daughter of William count of Hainault. She was married to Edward at York on Jan. 24, 1328, and crowned at Westminster on Feb. 18, 1330.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1330.  
—

October.

the prelates and barons were lodged in the town and the neighbourhood. But Mortimer had taken every precaution for his security. A strong guard lay within the walls; the locks of the gates were changed; and the keys were taken every evening to the queen's chamber, and laid on her pillow. Montacute found it necessary to make a confidant of Sir William Eland, the governor, whom he first swore to secrecy, and then acquainted with the royal pleasure. Eland replied that there was a subterraneous passage, leading from the west side of the rock into the castle, which was unknown to Mortimer, and through which he would introduce any number of the king's friends. Montacute, with his associates, fixed the hour, and rode into the country; and the favourite, who had received some dark hints of a conspiracy against himself, attributed their departure to an apprehension that their design had been discovered. In the afternoon he informed the council that an attempt to oppress him and the queen-mother would soon be made by the exiles abroad, in union with Edward's most intimate acquaintance at home. He even charged the king with being privy to the plot, and refused to give credit to his denial. Before midnight Montacute and his friends returned; Eland admitted them by the subterraneous passage; and they were joined by Edward on the staircase leading to the principal tower. They mounted in silence, till they heard the sound of voices in a room adjoining to Isabella's apartment, where Mortimer was engaged in consultation with the bishop of Lincoln and his principal advisers. The door was instantly forced, and two knights, who endeavoured to defend the entrance, were slain. The queen had retired to rest in the adjoining apartment,



CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1330.

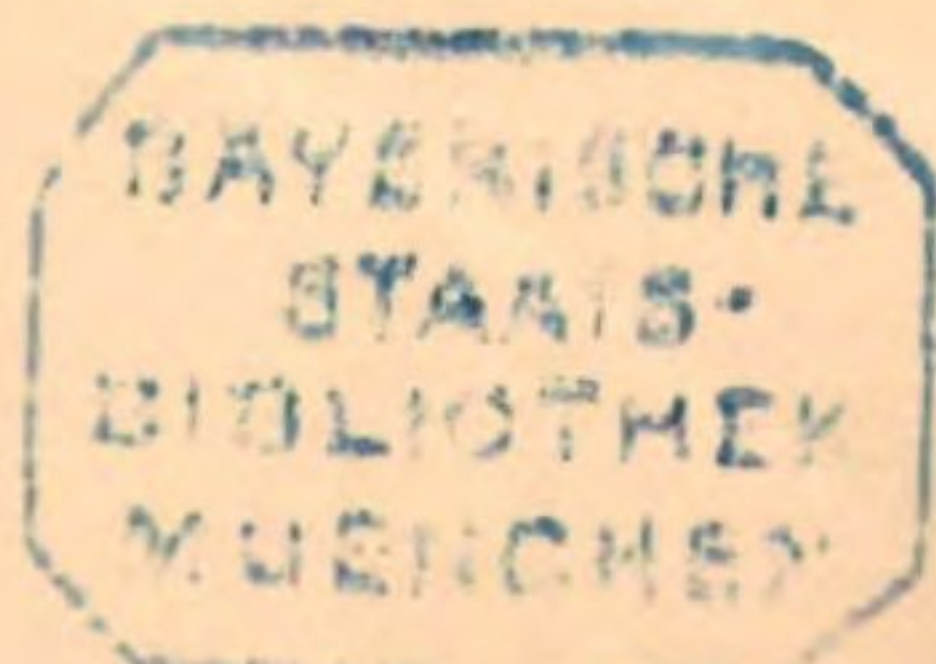
Oct. 20.

Nov. 26.

alarmed at the noise, and conjecturing its cause, she exclaimed, "Sweet son, fair son, spare my gentle Mortimer!" and burst into the room, declaring that he was a worthy knight, her dearest friend, her well-beloved cousin. But in defiance of her tears and exclamations, Mortimer was secured; and the next morning the king announced by proclamation that he had taken the reins of government into his own hands, and summoned a new parliament to meet in a few weeks at Westminster.<sup>1</sup>

By this parliament Mortimer was condemned. The principal charges against him were, that he had fomented the dissensions between the late king and his queen, and falsely persuaded her that she could not return to her husband without danger to her life; that he had illegally assumed that power which was vested by law in the king's council alone; that of his own authority he had removed the late king from Kenilworth to Berkeley, where he caused him to be put to death; that he had induced the present king to march with force of arms against the earl of Lancaster and other peers coming to parliament, and had compelled them to pay excessive fines for the preservation of their estates; that by his agents he had induced the late earl of Kent to believe that the king his brother was alive, and then procured his death on pretence of treason; and that he had embezzled the royal treasures, and had divided with his associates the twenty thousand marks already paid by the king of Scots. The peers retired with the bill of impeach-

<sup>1</sup> See Rym. iv. 452, 473; Knyght. 2555, 2556, 2558; Wals. 130; Heming. 271; Avesb. 8. In the writs directed to the sheriffs, they are ordered to cause to be chosen by the common assent of the county two of the most loyal and sufficient knights or *serjeants*.





- CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1330. — ment, and after some deliberation, returned to the king, declared that all the charges were notoriously true, and, as judges of parliament, condemned Mortimer “to be drawn and hanged, as a traitor and enemy  
Nov. 29. “of the king and kingdom.” He was executed at Tyburn, the first, as it is said, who honoured with his death that celebrated spot. They next proceeded, at the request of Edward, to the trial of his associates, having previously protested that they were bound by law to sit in judgment on none but peers of the land. Sir Simon Bereford, Sir John Maltravers, John Deverel, and Boeges de Bayonne were condemned to death as accomplices of Mortimer; the first in all his treasons, the other three in the deception and consequent execution of the late earl of Kent.<sup>1</sup> Bereford suffered at Tyburn; but as the other three were at large, a price was set on their heads.<sup>2</sup> The queen-mother, at the solicitation of the pope, was spared the ignominy of a public trial;<sup>3</sup> but Edward reduced her income to three thousand pounds, and confined her to the manor of Risings, where she passed in obscurity the remaining twenty-seven years of her life. The

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 42. It is observable that on this occasion the disgusting practice of embowelling was omitted.

<sup>2</sup> They were sentenced to be beheaded after they had been hanged. I know not whether the reward for their apprehension was apportioned by their quality or their demerit; but for Maltravers were offered a thousand marks, for Boeges 100 pounds, and for Deverel 100 marks. The price of their heads was fixed at 500 pounds, 100 marks, and 40 pounds.—Rot. Parl. ii. 53. It was in the same parliament that the murderers of the late king were condemned; see vol. ii. p. 552.

<sup>3</sup> John XXII. wrote to exhort him to shew mercy to his prisoners, and not to expose the shame of his mother. *Obsecramus te, fili, per viscera misericordiæ J. C. ut matris pudori, quantum secundum Deum poteris, velis parcere et ejus lapsum, si quis (quod absit) fuerit, non publicare, sed quantum bono modo poteris, ipsum potius studeas occultare.*—Nov. 7, apud Raynald, iii. 413.



king annually paid her a visit of ceremony; he even added a thousand pounds to her yearly income; but he never more allowed her to assume any share of political power. After these executions he asked the advice of John XXII. for the regulation of his subsequent conduct; and was exhorted by that pontiff to shun the danger of favouritism, and, instead of following the interested counsels of a few individuals, to govern by the united advice of his barons, prelates, and commons assembled in parliament.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1330.

Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, had lived to see the independence of his crown acknowledged by the king of England. At his death he left to Randolph, earl of Moray, the guardianship of his son David, who was only in his seventh year. Formerly many of the barons of each kingdom possessed at the same time lands in the other. These, during the war, had been seized by the respective sovereigns; but it was confidently expected that at the peace they would be restored to their original owners. It seems, however, that by mutual consent, the great body of claimants, both Scots and English, was passed over in silence; only two of the negotiators, the lords Percy and Wake, had the address to insert a particular clause in their own favour, and in favour of the Lord Beaumont, the friend of Mortimer. Percy recovered his lands in Angus and Galloway, and in return an estate in Northumberland was, "by the king's special favour," restored to Douglas, the Scottish negotiator. But Wake and Beaumont had joined the earl of Lancaster;

1329.  
June 7.

<sup>1</sup> ..... Ut circumspectio regia non uni nec duobus communicaret regimen, nec unius vel duorum consilio regeretur, sed generali prælatorum, principum, et aliorum nobilium et communitatum concilio congregato.—Raynald, iii. 430. He at the same time dissuaded the king from going to Ireland.



CHAP. II. the resentment of Mortimer compelled them to leave  
 A.D. 1329. the kingdom; and their outlawry afforded the Scottish  
 — government a plausible pretext to refuse the restoration of their estates. Now, however, that Mortimer had fallen, and the exiles were recalled, Edward demanded that the treaty should be fulfilled in favour of these two barons. Randolph, the guardian of Scotland, required time to consult the parliament; and when the demand was repeated, again returned an evasive answer.<sup>1</sup> In the mean time Wake and Beaumont repaired to the northern counties, where they were joined by all the English lords who claimed lands in Scotland, and by Edward Baliol, the son and heir of John Baliol, whom the king's grandfather had compelled to resign his crown. After some consultation they resolved to appeal to the sword; a resolve which placed Edward in a very delicate situation. On the one side he had sworn to observe the peace, had given his sister in marriage to the young king of Scotland, and had received the stipulated sum of twenty thousand pounds from the guardian of David; on the other, the minority of David offered the most favourable opportunity of recovering that superiority, which he would not have surrendered had not Bruce taken the advantage of similar circumstances to invade England in violation of his oath. His counsellors, however, though they might secretly wish success to the enterprise, determined not to tolerate any open infraction of the treaty; and as soon as it was ascertained that the "querellours" (so the disinherited lords were called) were collecting forces to invade Scotland, the sheriffs of the five northern counties were enjoined to forbid, under pain of forfeiture and

1331.  
Dec. 1.

1332.  
Feb. 24.

March 24.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 461, 471.



CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1332.

—

imprisonment, the passage of armed men through the marches, or the perpetration of any act which could be deemed a violation of the peace. Disconcerted by these orders, Baliol, with his associates, was compelled to alter his plan; and having secretly collected his followers in Holderness, he sailed with about three thousand men from Ravenspur, a port in the mouth of the Humber. Edward was at the time at Wigmore, in the marches of Wales; but on the arrival of the news he appointed the Lord Percy his lieutenant in the north, with full power to punish every infraction of the peace by his own subjects, and to repel the Scots if they should pass the borders with hostile intentions.<sup>1</sup>

Aug. 9.

When we read the adventures of Baliol, we may fancy ourselves transported into the regions of fiction. He lands at Kinghorn in Fife, orders his fleet to the mouth of the Tay, and hastens to meet an enemy whose force is twenty times greater than his own. At Dunfermline he learns that the earl of Marre, the new regent (for Randolph was dead), is at Dupplin, and the earl of March at Auchterarder, each at the head of thirty thousand men. He boldly throws himself between them, passes the river Earn in the dead of the night, and puts to the sword the sleeping defenceless Scots, till the dawn of morning dispels the darkness, and allows the regent to discover his enemy. In the eagerness of revenge that nobleman hurries into a narrow pass, where his numerous followers, unable to arrange themselves in order, offer an easy victory to the English. I shall not startle the faith of the reader by enumerating the thousands of the slain; but the deaths of the earl of Marre, of many barons,

Aug. 6.

Aug. 11.

Aug 12.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 529.



- CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1332. — and of almost all the men-at-arms, sufficiently prove the enormous loss of the Scots. From Dupplin Moor Baliol hastens or rather flies to Perth, while the earl of March, who had not joined in the battle, pursues with equal rapidity. The adventurer has just time to clear the ditch, and erect a defence of palisades, before the enemy arrives. His good fortune, however, befriends him again. The Scottish fleet is destroyed in an attack on the English squadron in the Tay; distrust and scarcity gradually dissolve the army of the besiegers; the ancient friends of his family resort to his standard; and he is crowned at Scone by the bishop of Dunkeld. Astonished at the rapidity of his success, his enemies solicit a suspension of hostilities, and propose a convention of the states to settle the kingdom. Baliol consents; is surprised at Annan by the earl of Moray during the armistice; and with difficulty escapes to the English marches, a solitary and helpless fugitive. It employed him only seven weeks to win the crown; in less than three months he had lost it.<sup>1</sup>
- Aug. 13.
- Sept. 24.
- Dec. 16.
- Sept. 9. When the news of Baliol's first success arrived, the parliament was sitting at Westminster, and had been consulted by Edward respecting the expediency of a voyage to Ireland. They now advised him to postpone every other business, and to repair to the northern counties with the wisest of his council, and a numerous body of forces, to prevent or repel the inroads of the Scots. Another parliament was held at York in December, and to it the king put the question, whether he ought to require from Baliol, who was now king of Scotland, a recognition of the superiority
- Dec. 4.

<sup>1</sup> Ford. xiii. 23—25. Hem. ii. 278. Knyght. 2560, 2562. Scala Chron. 159—161.



CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1332.

—

of the English crown, or to claim the kingdom for himself as heir to Edward I. to whom it had been forfeited; or content himself with requiring some concession as an equivalent from the new king. The members present requested permission to wait till there should be a fuller attendance; and about a month later the prelates, barons, and commons assembled in three separate chambers to deliberate on the subject. But the opinions were so divided, that at the end of five days they had come to no determination; and Edward calling them before him, announced by the chancellor that he would take the advice of the pope and the king of France; and in the mean time order a vigilant watch to be kept in the marches, and have six of his council always near his person, to be prepared for any event which might happen.<sup>1</sup>

1333.  
Jan. 22.

Before Edward put this question to his parliament, he had secretly concluded two treaties with Baliol. By the first the new king acknowledged that the crown of Scotland was a fief belonging to the crown of England; transferred to Edward the town and castle of Berwick, to which other lands were to be added to the yearly value of two thousand pounds, in return for the advantage which he had derived from "the sufferance of his said lord and the good aid of his vassals;" offered to marry the Princess Jane, if her marriage with David Bruce did not proceed; and engaged to grant to that young prince such an establishment as the king of England should think proper. By the second, each monarch bound himself to assist the other with all his power against every domestic enemy. These treaties were to have been

Nov. 23.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 66—69. The first chamber consisted of six prelates and six barons; the second of the other prelates and barons, and the proxies of prelates and barons, and the third of the knights, citizens, and burgesses. Ib.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1333.  
—

ratified in their respective parliaments; but the expulsion of Baliol suspended their effect, and they were in all probability concealed from the knowledge of the public.<sup>1</sup>

But the real wishes of the English king were soon gratified by the impetuosity of the Scots; and their repeated incursions furnished him with the pretext that they had violated the treaty of peace, and induced the English parliament to give its approbation to a renewal of the war. The campaign was opened  
March 3. by Baliol with the siege of Berwick, which was gallantly defended by the earl of March, the commander of the castle, and Sir Alexander Seaton, the governor of the town. Two months elapsed before the king of  
May 15. England arrived; but the operations of the siege were immediately pushed with new vigour; and in a general assault the town was set on fire. The inhabitants, intimidated by the danger, stipulated to open the gates, unless they were relieved before a certain day; and Sir Archibald Douglas, the new regent, anxious to save so important a fortress, passed the Tweed with  
July 11. a numerous army, and offered battle to the besiegers. Edward kept within his intrenchments; and the regent, having thrown a few knights and some provisions into the place, departed the next morning, ravaged Northumberland, and laid siege to the castle of Bamborough, in which Queen Philippa resided. The king now demanded the surrender of the place; the Scots replied that it had been relieved; and the English in revenge hanged one of the hostages, the son of the governor. This act of severity alarmed

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 536—539. In this instrument Baliol says that he had done liege homage and sworn fealty to Edward for the Scottish crown. He even relates the very terms of his oath. Yet there is no evidence or probability that they had ever seen each other since the commencement of Baliol's expedition.



the relations of the hostages that survived; and new agreements were made by the earl of March and Sir William Keith, who had assumed the command of the town, to admit the English within the walls at the end of five days, unless the Scottish army should previously raise the siege, or introduce a body of three hundred men-at-arms into the place between sunrise and sunset of the same day.<sup>1</sup> A messenger was instantly despatched to the regent, and on the afternoon of the fourth day the Scottish army was seen advancing in four bodies to attack the besiegers. Edward drew up his army on Halidon Hill; from which the archers annoyed the enemy, as they struggled through the marshy ground at the foot, and climbed up the declivity of the mountain. The Scots were fatigued and disordered before they could reach their opponents; and the obstinacy with which they fought served only to increase their loss. The regent, six earls, and many barons fell on the field of battle; the fugitives were pursued by Edward and a party of horse on one side, and by the Lord Darcy, and his Irish auxiliaries on the other; and the slaughter is said to have exceeded that of any former defeat. The town and castle were immediately surrendered; and the young king, with his wife, the sister of Edward, was conveyed, for greater security, from Dunbarton into France, where he resided for several years at Château Gaillard.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1333.  
July 16.

July 19.

July 20.

1334.  
Feb. 9.

Baliol was now again seated on the throne of Scotland, and Edward required him to fulfil his former engagements. A parliament was called at Edinburgh;

<sup>1</sup> Compare the documents in Rymer (iv. 564—568) with the very circumstantial account of the siege in the extract from the *Scala Chronica*, published by Lord Hailes, ii. 316, and *Scala Chronica* by Stevenson, 163.

<sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2563, 2564. Ford. xiii. 27, 28. Heming. ii. 275, 276.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1334.  
Feb. 12.

the demands of the king were admitted without opposition; and at first Berwick, then all the country to the east of a line drawn from Dumfries to Linlithgow, was by general consent separated from the crown of Scotland, and annexed to that of England.<sup>1</sup> This impolitic dismemberment of the kingdom enraged the Scots; while the dissensions among the English barons, who had been restored to their estates, encouraged the friends of David. A new guardian or regent was appointed, the cause of independence again triumphed, and Baliol was compelled to take refuge in the lands which he had ceded to Edward. But it would weary the patience of the reader to pursue his history to a greater length. For several years he contrived to struggle against the obstinacy of his opponents and the perfidy of his followers. As long as he was supported by the king of England, he rose victorious from every disaster; but from the moment that Edward determined to claim the crown of France, the war was suffered to languish; fortress after fortress surrendered to the adherents of David; that prince at length ventured to revisit his kingdom; and Baliol, instead of wielding the sceptre of Scotland, was employed in protecting from insult the northern counties of England.<sup>2</sup>

To understand the line of policy pursued by Edward during the remainder of his reign, we must revert to the succession of the French monarchs. Philip IV., surnamed the Fair, died in 1314, and left three sons, Louis, Philip, and Charles, who all, in the short space of fourteen years, successively came to the throne, and

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 590, 614. Rot. Scot. 261—263.

<sup>2</sup> David with his consort landed at Inverbervie, 4th March, 1341. Those who wish to be acquainted with the Scottish transactions of this period may find a satisfactory account in the Annals of Scotland, by Lord Hailes, ii. 163—213.



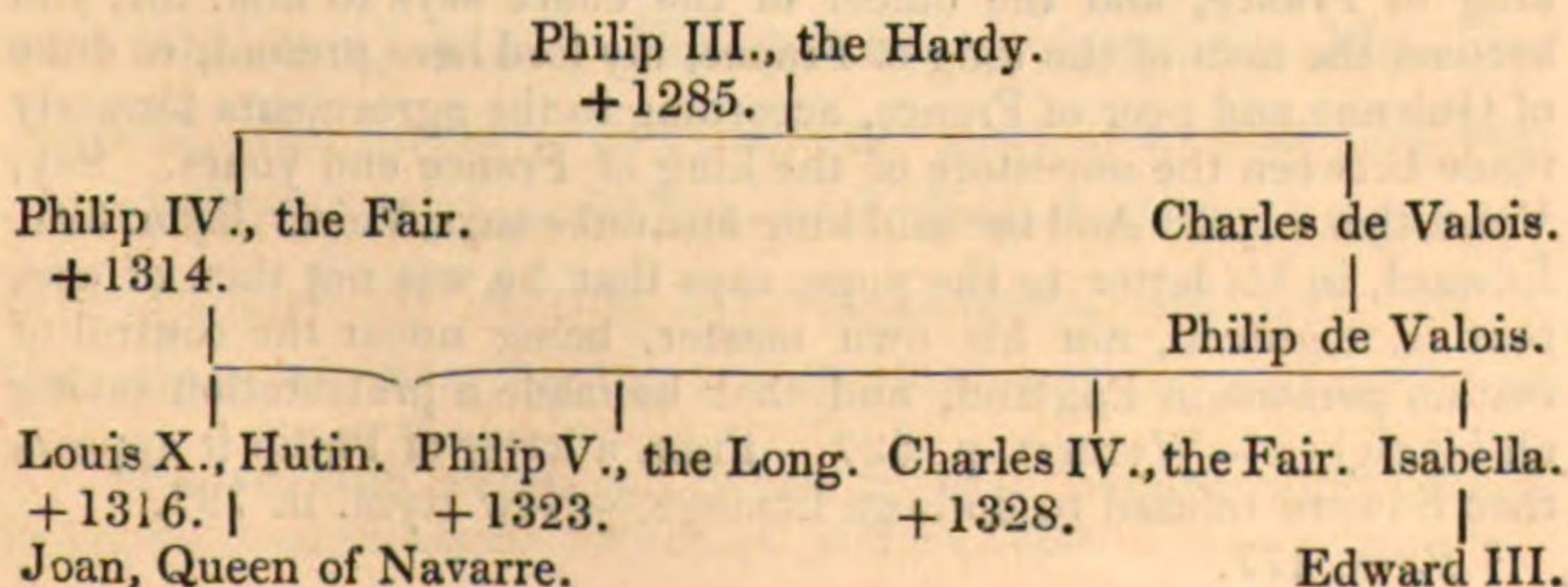
all died without male issue. The eldest of the three, Louis X., died in 1316, and, though he left a daughter, was succeeded by his brother Philip; Philip died in 1322, and, though he left four daughters, was succeeded by the third brother Charles,—the succession in both cases being determined in favour of the nearest heir male, on the principle that, by a fundamental law of the monarchy, females were excluded from the throne. Charles died in 1328, leaving two daughters, who of course were set aside for Philip de Valois, the nearest heir in the male line to Philip III. On the birth of the second daughter more than three months after her father's death, Edward was advised by his parliament, sitting at Northampton, to claim the French crown, as being of all the male descendants of Philip III. the nearest in blood to his uncle the last monarch; and under that pretence, the bishops of Worcester and Lichfield were despatched to France to claim and take possession in the king's name. Whether they arrived in time, is unknown. If they did, the claim was rejected, for Philip was crowned with the full consent of the states in a few days. Nor did the new monarch wait long before he summoned his English competitor to come and do homage for the duchy of Guienne to him, as his liege lord.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1334.

1328.  
May 16.

May 29.

<sup>1</sup> Rymer, iv. 354. Stratford in Ang. Sac. i. p. 29. These rival claims will be better understood from the following table :—





CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1328. — The jealousy excited by these rival claims was never extinguished ; and each prince had, or pretended to have, many causes of complaint against the other. Philip kept possession of several fortresses in Guienne claimed by the king of England ; and Edward, when, after much tergiversation he consented to do homage, did it in general terms, omitting the liege promise of faith and loyalty.<sup>1</sup> In 1331 a partial adjustment of their differences took place ; Philip restored certain castles to Edward ; and Edward, by a public instrument, acknowledged that the homage for Guienne ought not to have been general but liege.<sup>2</sup> The other subjects for contention were referred to the award of arbitrators ; and a confident hope was entertained that peace would be preserved, when the opposite interest which each felt in the affairs of Scotland awakened their former jealousy, and hurried them into hostilities.

1331.  
March 30.

Hence it will be seen that Edward was obliged to maintain, 1st, that females could not inherit the crown, or it would have descended to Joan, as did the crown of Navarre ; 2nd, that the male issue of females was not excluded, or he would have been excluded himself ; 3rd, that the descent of the crown, though confined to males, was regulated by proximity of blood. Now he was the next in blood to the last king, being related to him in the second degree of consanguinity ; whereas, Philip de Valois, his competitor, was related in the third degree only. — See the king's case presented by his envoys to the pope, at the end of Wyrcester, p. 534.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 390. New Rym. ii. 765. To prevent disputes, it was agreed that the ceremony should be performed in the following manner. The king of England puts his hands between those of the king of France, and the officer of the court says to him, Sir, you become the man of the king of France, my lord here present, as duke of Guienne and peer of France, according to the agreements formerly made between the ancestors of the king of France and yours. Say, Voire, that is, yes. And the said king and duke says, Voire. Rym. 391. Edward, in his letter to the pope, says that he was not then of age, that is, eighteen, nor his own master, being under the control of certain persons in England, and that he made a protestation saving all his rights. — Wyrcest. p. 537. From a letter of Philip it appears that Edward refused to do liege homage. — New Rym. ii. 797.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. 477.



CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1331.

—

It had long been the policy of the French crown to support the Scottish kings against the superior power of England. When David was driven from his throne, Philip took him under his protection, gave him an asylum in his dominions, and repeatedly aided his partisans with money and ships. Edward beheld this conduct with displeasure, and laboured, but in vain, to detach the French monarch from the cause of the orphan. He suggested to him different intermarriages between their children, proposed to pay him a considerable sum in return for the restoration of his fortresses, and offered to accompany him in a crusade to the Holy Land.<sup>1</sup> But the jealousy of Philip was not to be laid asleep; every advance was eluded or rejected; and continued irritation induced the king to turn his arms from Scotland against France, and to revive his former claim to the French crown, which by doing homage to Philip he had in fact abandoned long ago. It might flatter the vanity of Edward as a bold, but the event shewed that it was an injudicious measure. Unencumbered with a continental war, he was perhaps equal to the conquest of Scotland. By aiming at too much, he ultimately gained nothing.

July 15.

1332.  
April 26.

By the public the king's determination was attributed to the influence of a stranger and an outlaw, whose previous conduct had brought indelible disgrace on his character. Robert II., count of Artois, had two children, a son Philip, and a daughter Matilda. Robert, the present adviser of Edward, was the son of Philip; but his father had died before the grandfather; and in Artois the succession did not follow the line of descent, but was attached to proximity of

<sup>1</sup> Edward, both before and during the war, published these offers in his own justification.—Rym. iv. 805 ; v. 160.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1332.

1331.  
March 23.

1332.  
March 19.

1337.

blood. Hence it happened, that on the death of Robert II. Matilda obtained the county in preference to her nephew. She died in 1318, and Robert immediately seized Artois by force ; but was soon expelled by Philip V. of France, who claimed it in right of his wife, the daughter of Matilda. Robert acquiesced ; but when Philip of Valois, whose sister he had married, ascended the throne, he demanded a revision of the judgment which had deprived him of Artois. His petition was granted ; and during the process he laid before the court four charters, which he pretended had been purloined, and secreted by Matilda, but which on examination proved to be forgeries. The fabricators of these instruments were condemned and executed ; Robert fled to Namur, and was declared an outlaw. The time of his exile was employed in devising schemes of revenge ; the king and queen of France became the principal objects of his hatred ; and to satisfy it, he had recourse to the spells of the sorcerer, and the dagger of the assassin. Driven from Namur, he came to England, where he insinuated himself into the confidence of Edward, obtained from him a yearly pension of eight hundred pounds, and in return taught him to indulge the flattering but visionary hope of being able to tear the French crown from the brows of Philip, and to place it on his own head.<sup>1</sup>

To carry into execution the mighty designs which he had formed, Edward was advised to solicit the aid of the continental princes and sovereigns. With this view he concluded alliances with Louis of Bavaria,

<sup>1</sup> See a memoir by Mons. de Laverdy, in the account of MSS. in the library of the king of France, ii. 337 ; Froissart, i. 27 ; Rym. v. 19.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1337.

---

emperor of Germany, the dukes of Brabant and Gueldres, the archbishop of Cologne, the marquis of Juliers, the counts of Hainault and Namur, and other princes of inferior consideration and power. He sought out and retained every foreign adventurer who could bring a few men-at-arms into the field; and condescended to cultivate the friendship of Jacob Von Artavelde, the celebrated brewer of Ghent, who had established democratic factions in all the opulent cities of Flanders, and with their aid reigned more absolutely than the earl, the rightful but almost nominal sovereign. Neither did Philip neglect the storm which he saw gathering around him; he took into his hands Edward's possessions in France,<sup>1</sup> and sought to fortify himself with the aid of his neighbours. Among his allies he numbered the kings of Navarre and Bohemia, the dukes of Bretagne, Austria, and Lorraine, the palatine of the Rhine, and most of the petty princes of Germany. Thus more than half of the sovereigns of Europe were arrayed against each other, and the eyes of all Christendom were directed to the issue of the contest.<sup>2</sup>

The king, to defray the expenses of his intended expedition, had recourse to subsidies, tallages, and forced loans; he pawned his jewels and crown; he

1338.

<sup>1</sup> But not actual possession; that would have been a more difficult matter. His commissioners appeared before the seneschal and council in Bordeaux, and said, that the king of France, in consequence of the several rebellions of Edward king of England, duke of Guienne, his liege man, and especially of his reception of the traitor Robert of Artois, had appointed them to take possession and seizin in his name of the duchy of Guienne, and its appurtenances, which they accordingly did, and required him to give orders that they should be obeyed. He replied that he should not, but would inform his master. The same ceremony took place at the gates of two other towns into which they were not admitted.—Thres. des Chart. 37, 38.

<sup>2</sup> Froissart, c. 27, 28. Rym. iv. v. passim.



- CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1338. — seized for his present use the tin and wool of the year; and yet he had the address to make the war popular with the nation, or at least with its representatives.
- Feb. 24. The commons petitioned him to pursue his right; the lords gave their consent,<sup>1</sup> and in the summer of 1338 he sailed with a numerous fleet from Orwell to
- July 16. Antwerp. To his disappointment, he soon learned that it was more easy to purchase the promises than the co-operation of his allies. Though he granted commercial indulgences to the towns of Brabant and Flanders, though he scattered with a lavish hand the treasures which he had brought with him from England, every attempt to draw them into the field was fruitless; and he was compelled to satisfy himself with their respective engagements to join him the next year in the month of July, and to open the campaign with the siege of Cambray. Even this cost him a journey
- Sept. 2. to Coblentz, where the emperor, by investing him with the title of vicar or deputy, gave him authority to receive the homage and to command the services of the princes belonging to the empire.<sup>2</sup> In the spring he summoned his allies to assemble at the appointed time; and about the middle of September he was
1339.  
Sept. 20. able to lead an army of fifteen thousand men-at-arms to the walls of Cambray, which with its territory was comprehended within the ancient limits of the empire. Here he spent four days in laying waste the country;
- Sept. 25. but as soon as he had crossed the borders of France

<sup>1</sup> He says he undertook the war assensu procerum, et ad instantiam communitatis.—Rym. v. 3.

<sup>2</sup> It appears from Rymer that he was at Coblentz till the 6th of September.—Rym. v. 31. Walsingham tells us that the emperor was displeased, because Edward did not, like other princes, offer to kiss his imperial feet; but was answered, that being an *anointed* king, he was exempt from that obligation.—Wals. 146.



the counts of Namur and Hainault fell back, on the pretext that his authority as imperial vicar expired the moment he entered a foreign territory. He dismissed them with thanks for their past services, and continued his march, ravaging the country, and burning the villages for the breadth of twelve leagues, from Bapaume to Peronne and St. Quintin. Here, however, the rest of his allies refused to advance. Why, they asked, should they leave the frontiers of Hainault, whence they drew all their supplies? Let Philip come and seek them, since he had so often sworn that the king of England should never possess two feet of land, nor spend a whole day within the borders of France.<sup>1</sup> Edward reluctantly yielded to their advice, and directed his march towards the Ardennes, when letters were received from different persons in the French army, offering on the part of Philip to fight on the following Thursday, if the king would choose a field of battle in an open plain, without wood, water, or morass. He therefore recalled his detachments, which had spread devastation to the gates of Laon, and waited for the enemy at the village of La Flammengrie. On the Friday evening it was ascertained, from the information of the prisoners, that Philip was arrived at Vironfosse, about five miles distant, and intended to fight the next day. In the morning Edward marshalled his forces on foot in three divisions, with the English archers and Welsh lancers before the men-at-arms; and, mounting a palfrey, rode from banner to banner, recommending to the troops the preservation of his honour. Philip had arrayed in

CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1339.

Oct. 17.

Oct. 22.

Oct. 23.

<sup>1</sup> Phelip de Valoys avoit jurez que nous ne ferrons jammes demeore une jour od ũre host en Fraunce, qil ne nous durroit ba-taille.—Avesb. 47.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1339.

---

similar order his more numerous force; but his ardour for battle was checked by the cooler policy of his council, who represented that the king of England dared only creep along the borders; that such another expedition must be his ruin; and that it was folly to stake a crown on the uncertain issue of a battle, when the benefit of victory might be secured without risk. The English, full of hope and courage, impatiently waited the approach of the enemy; in the evening, their scouts reported that the French were employed in felling trees, opening ditches, and fortifying their camp. The king repaired for the night to Avesnes, and sent word to Philip that he would expect him another day; but learning that the enemy had marched back into the interior, he returned to Brussels, thanked his allies for their exertions, and disbanded his army. Such was the issue of this formidable expedition, in which Edward had uselessly expended the immense treasure which he had drawn from England, and had moreover involved himself in debt to the enormous amount of three hundred thousand pounds.<sup>1</sup>

From the moment that the real object of the king of England was disclosed, the pope Benedict XII. had most earnestly laboured to prevent the effusion of blood. With this view he had repeatedly despatched legates to the contending monarchs, and at last had offered as their common father to take on himself the office of arbitrator, and to weigh with an impartial hand their respective pretensions. But when he learned that Edward had sought the friendship of the emperor Louis, and accepted from him the title of

Oct. 12.

<sup>1</sup> See the king's letter in Avesbury, 47—49; Heming. 309; Knyghton, 2573; Froissart, c. 39, 40, 41.



vicar of the empire, he wrote a long and expostulatory letter, reminding the king that Louis had never been acknowledged as emperor by the Apostolic See; that he had raised up an anti-pope, and endeavoured to plunge the Christian world into schism; that he had been excommunicated by the last pontiff; and that a similar sentence had been fulminated against his abettors. But the king was immoveably fixed in his purpose; he evaded the offers and reproaches of the pontiff by declaring that it was his earnest wish to reconcile Louis with the church, and that he was ready to accede to any honourable terms which Philip or Benedict might propose;<sup>1</sup> and immediately afterwards, at the solicitation of Artaveldt, publicly assumed the title of king of France, and quartered in his arms the French lilies with the English leopards. In two proclamations issued at Ghent, and circulated through the Low Countries and the neighbouring provinces, he set forth his undoubted right to the French crown, of which, by reason of his tender age and ignorance of law, he had been deprived by the insatiable ambition of the Lord Philip de Valois; enumerated all the injuries which he had received from that prince by the invasion of his rights in Guienne, the support of his rebellious subjects in Scotland, and the depredations committed on the English commerce at sea; and concluded with a declaration that he now revoked his former homage and his recognition of Philip, and took upon himself, what was his own hereditary right, the dignity of king, and the government of the kingdom of France.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1339.

1340.  
Jan. 30.

Feb. 1.

This new measure drew from the pontiff a sensible

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 826; v. 88, 128, 146, 156.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. v. 158—163.



CHAP. II.  
A. D. 1340.  
March 5. and affectionate reproof. He wrote to Edward that his own ambition, and the interested advice of his allies, were leading him into difficulties and disgrace; that it was madness for a stranger to rely on the fidelity of the men of Flanders, who had always been noted for disloyalty to their native princes; that he had acted precipitately at the best in proclaiming himself king of France, before he was in possession of any part of that kingdom; that, unless the heirs of females were capable by law of inheriting the crown, he could have no pretensions; and if they were, there existed persons still living, the issue of the daughters of his uncles, who had a nearer, and therefore a better claim; that by doing homage to Philip de Valois he had acknowledged the title of that prince, and by assuming it himself would irritate all the natives of France; that to wrest the sceptre from his rival by force was, in the estimation of every indifferent judge, an impracticable attempt; and that the event would convince him of the perfidy of his allies, who, when he had once exhausted his treasures, would leave him to make the best terms he could with an exasperated and powerful adversary.<sup>1</sup>

Feb. 21. But no arguments could convince the ambition of Edward. To raise money for the payment of his debts and the expenses of another campaign, he determined to revisit England, and left his queen at Ghent as an  
Mar. 29. hostage for his speedy return. From his parliament he obtained an unprecedented supply of the ninth lamb, the ninth fleece, and the ninth sheaf,<sup>2</sup> with an

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 173.

<sup>2</sup> After the deduction of a tenth for the payment of tithe, the ninth part of the remainder is equal in amount to the aforesaid tenth. It was this sort of ninth which the parliament gave to the king. After several experiments he decided, that it should be levied in



additional duty on the exportation of wool for two years; and was preparing to fulfil his engagement, when advice was brought that Philip, to intercept him on his passage, had assembled with the aid of the Genoese and Normans a powerful fleet in the harbour of Sluys. The king immediately collected every vessel in the southern ports, and declared his intention to seek and fight the enemy. The opposition and entreaties of his council were despised. "You are all," he exclaimed, "in a conspiracy against me. I shall go: those who are afraid may stay at home." He sailed with a gallant fleet from Orwell, and the next evening, off Blakenberg, discovered across a neck of land the forest of masts which occupied the harbour. Three knights were landed, who reported at their return, that they had reckoned nineteen sail of unusual dimensions, two hundred ships of war, and a still greater number of smaller vessels. During the night the enemy moved from their anchorage, and at sunrise were discovered in four lines moored across the passage. Their ships carried turrets provided with stones on their mast-heads, and were fastened to each other with chains of iron. Edward placed the strongest of his ships in front, so that every vessel carrying a body of men-at-arms was accompanied by two sail manned with archers; while the noble ladies, who, to the number of fifty, had come to wait on Queen Philippa were intrusted to the protection of a strong guard behind the reserve. At first, the king put out to sea; a movement which impressed the enemy with a notion every parish according to the valuation of certain of the parishioners upon oath, and that, if the amount was not equal to the amount of the tithe according to the taxation of Pope Nicholas in 1292, a sufficient reason should be assigned for the deficiency.—See the *Nonæ* Rolls.

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1340.

June 22.

June 24.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1340.  
—

that he declined an engagement ; but his object was to avoid the sun, which shone full in his eyes ; and soon afterwards, having the wind and tide in his favour, he bore down on the first line of the French. Each commander selected his opponent, and met with a gallant resistance ; but the discharge of the archers gradually cleared the decks of the enemy ; the men-at-arms immediately boarded ; every ship in the first division was captured ; and the banner of England waved triumphantly over the colours of France.

At this important moment arrived the Lord Morley with a fleet from the northern counties ; and the victors with their friends proceeded to attack the three remaining divisions. But a panic struck the second and third lines of the enemy ; the men leaped from their ships, which they could not disengage, into their boats ; and more than two thousand are said to have perished in the waves. The fourth line remained, consisting of sixty large vessels, reinforced by the bravest of those who had escaped from the captured ships. This, though the victory was already won, opposed an obstinate resistance to the conquerors ; and by prolonging the contest till midnight afforded to a few stragglers the opportunity of escaping in the dark. With the exception of these, the whole fleet remained in the hands of the English. Edward is said to have lost two ships, which were sunk, and about four thousand men ; the slain and drowned of the enemy amounted, according to report, to seven times that number.<sup>1</sup> History hardly presents an instance of a naval victory more complete or more sanguinary. The French ministers dared not acquaint

<sup>1</sup> For this battle, see Froissart, c. 49 ; Avesbury, 55, 59 ; Heming, 320, 321 ; Knyght, 2577 ; Rymer, v. 195.



Philip with the disaster ; it was first hinted to him by his buffoon.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1340.

Crowned with the laurels of victory, Edward landed the next morning, repaired to the church of Ardenbourg to return thanks to the Almighty, and hastened to visit his royal consort at Ghent. The report of his arrival soon crowded his court with the principal of his allies, and the treasures which he brought with him gave such activity to their exertions, that in a short time he marched at the head of two hundred thousand men to undertake at the same time the two sieges of Tournay and St. Omer.<sup>2</sup> Yet these mighty preparations, which astonished all Europe, after a few weeks ended in nothing. The force which, under Robert of Artois, advanced towards St. Omer, was dispersed before it reached its destination. A detachment had been surprised in the little town of Arques ; some of the fugitives about midnight reached the camp in the vale of Cassel ; a causeless alarm was raised and propagated with rapidity, and sixty thousand men fled in every direction, leaving behind them their baggage, their arms, and their general.<sup>3</sup> Edward himself surrounded Tournay with a numerous force ; but it was resolutely defended by a garrison consisting of thirty thousand select men. From his camp he wrote, in the true spirit of chivalry, a challenge to Philip de Valois, proposing to him to fight singly, body to body, or to leave the decision of their quarrel to one hundred combatants on each side, or to appoint a day when they should engage with all their

July 26.

<sup>1</sup> The buffoon called the English cowards ; and when the king asked the reason, replied that they had not the courage to leap into the sea like the French and Normans.—Wals. 148.

<sup>2</sup> See his letter to his parliament, Rym. v. 197.

<sup>3</sup> Froissart, c. 61.



CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1340.  
July 30.

forces. The king of France replied, that it was not for him to answer letters addressed to Philip de Valois, but he would observe that Edward, in violation of his homage and fealty, had a second time entered the French territory, and that his sovereign lord would drive him out of it again whenever he should think proper.<sup>1</sup> Philip had resolved to pursue the same policy which had proved so useful the last year, to exhaust the finances of his rival without allowing him an opportunity of gaining any decided advantage. From the neighbourhood of Bouvines, at the short distance of three leagues, he watched, but did not interrupt, the operations of the besiegers. The garrison had turned every useless mouth out of the city; yet at the expiration of some weeks the horrors of famine were severely felt, and the fall of the place was confidently anticipated, unless it should be relieved by the result of a battle. At this crisis Jane of Hainault, the sister to the king of France, and mother to the queen of England, left the convent in which she had resided since the death of her husband, and on her knees besought Edward to consent to an accommodation.<sup>2</sup> Nothing could be more repugnant to his wishes or interests. But the predictions of the pontiff now began to be verified. His treasures were exhausted; his allies refused to fight without money; and he reluctantly acquiesced in an armistice for nine months, in which the Scots were included, and which before its expiration was prolonged for another year.<sup>3</sup>

Sept. 25.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 198—200. He added a verbal message, that he was ready to meet Edward singly on any day, on condition that the victor should succeed to the crown of the vanquished. This is subjoined to the challenge in the copy preserved in the Thresor des Chartres, p. 39.

<sup>2</sup> Froissart, c. 62. Avesb. 64.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. v. 205—281. His excuse to the emperor is that he was



A hope was cherished, that in the interval might be laid the foundation of a lasting peace; but, though the pope employed all the influence which he possessed, nothing could subdue the obstinacy of the two monarchs. Edward indeed was induced to waive his other claims, provided he might enjoy not only the possession but also the sovereignty of Guienne; but the pride of Philip refused to treat on any conditions till his rival had erased from his arms the lilies, and formally renounced the title of king of France.

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1340.

Edward retired in sullen discontent from the walls of Tournay. By the most urgent messages he required money from England; but the exchequer was unable to satisfy his wants; and the clamour of his allies, who demanded the discharge of their arrears, compelled him to borrow of usurers at exorbitant interest.<sup>1</sup> Some of the courtiers improved the opportunity to instil into his mind suspicions of the fidelity of his ministers; and suddenly, without any previous notice, leaving the earl of Derby and other noblemen in pledge with his creditors,<sup>2</sup> he sailed in stormy weather from a port in Zealand, stole unperceived up the Thames, landed about midnight at the Tower, and the next morning displaced the chancellor, treasurer, and master of the rolls, confined three of the judges, and ordered the arrest of most of the officers employed in the collection of the revenue. But the man whom he principally wished to secure, Archbishop Stratford, president of the council, escaped to Canterbury, and set his enemies at defiance. When he was summoned to appear before the king, he appealed in his own

Nov. 30.

compelled by his allies. *Oportuit nos eorum sequi consilia, qui nobis comitivam et auxilium tunc fecerunt.*—Id. 264.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 226.

<sup>2</sup> Id. v. 277.



- CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1341.  
Jan. 1. favour, and in favour of his colleagues, to the provisions of the great charter, renewed the ancient excommunication against those who should violate the liberties of Englishmen, refused to answer before any other judges than his peers assembled in parliament, and reminded the monarch of the fate of his father, who had by his arbitrary proceedings forfeited the love of his subjects. Edward, afraid in his present circumstances to proceed to extremities, condescended to enter into a personal controversy with the primate, and ordered a proclamation to be read in all the churches accusing Stratford of having intercepted the supplies granted to the king, and either appropriated them to himself, or diverted them into different channels.<sup>1</sup> To this proclamation the archbishop opposed a circular letter, in which he victoriously refuted the charge, by showing that it was impossible to collect the taxes for the whole year during the siege of Tournay; and that, if they had been collected, they were already mortgaged for the payment of the debts contracted in the preceding year.<sup>2</sup> The sequel of the quarrel is interesting, as it involved a question respecting the privileges of the peerage. When the parliament assembled, the archbishop obeyed the summons, but was stopped at the entrance of the hall, and hurried into the Court of Exchequer to hear an information which had been lodged against him by the king's order. On the following days he repeatedly attempted to enter, and was repeatedly excluded, with the bishops of Chichester and Lichfield, the late chan-
- Feb. 10.
- Feb. 22.
- April 23.

<sup>1</sup> New Rym. ii. 1143, 6, 7.

<sup>2</sup> Ang. Sac. i. 27—36. The king replied; but the violence of his answer proves that he could not refute the primate—See it in Rymer, 240; Ang. Sac. i. 36. And the whole correspondence in Hemingford, 326—352.



cellor and treasurer. He protested against the injury which was thus offered to the first peer of the realm; the other lords considered it a violation of their privileges; and their opposition compelled the king to adjourn the parliament from day to day. At length he allowed the primate to take his seat; but immediately left the house, and employed Sir John Darcy and Sir William Killesby to accuse him before the citizens of London and the House of Commons. But the lords were not to be diverted from their purpose. They petitioned the king to acknowledge that, when a peer was impeached by the crown, he could not be compelled to plead before any other tribunal than the high court of parliament; and, when Edward objected that such an acknowledgment would be prejudicial to the public interests, and derogatory to the rights of the crown, they requested his permission to refer the question to a committee of four prelates, four earls, and four barons. The report of the committee was unanimously approved, and an address was voted to the king, in which it was stated as an undeniable principle that no peer could be arraigned, or brought to judgment, except in parliament, and by his peers. A doubt, they observed, had been raised, whether a peer, who had been employed in the great offices of the crown, might not, on account of his office, be called before some other court of justice; but it was their opinion that, even in such case, he ought not to be arraigned at the prosecution of the king, nor lose his temporalities, lands, tenements, goods, or chattels, nor be arrested, imprisoned, or outlawed, nor plead, nor receive judgment, except in full parliament, and before his peers.<sup>1</sup> The necessity

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1341.

---

April 28.

April 30.

May 3.

May 7.

<sup>1</sup> They admitted, however, that if a peer had been sheriff, or in



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1341.  
—

of procuring a supply induced Edward to acquiesce ; at the joint prayer of the lords and commons, he received Stratford into favour ; and, when that prelate requested that he might be treated as a peer, and allowed to prove his innocence by a trial in parliament, he consented to his request, on condition that both houses should previously take the subject of supply into consideration. A committee of two prelates and four earls was appointed to receive the answers of the primate ; but their decision was deferred till the next parliament.<sup>1</sup>

Such had been the urgency of the king's wants, as to admit of no delay ; and the lords, clergy, and commons embraced the opportunity to require the redress of their respective grievances. All their petitions were cheerfully granted, embodied in the form of a statute, and published under the great seal ; but Edward had previously signed a paper, in which he protested against them as injurious to the rights of his crown, and declared that what he had conceded through necessity, he would afterwards revoke at his own convenience. As soon as he had reaped the advantage of this dissimulation, he was not ashamed to avow and defend it. In a circular letter to the sheriffs of the counties he stated that the obstinacy of the parliament had threatened the most serious evils ; that it was his duty, in such circumstances, to dissemble ; that he had pretended to assent to their petitions, while in reality he protested against

Oct. 1.

the receipt of the king's moneys, he ought to account for them at the exchequer in person or by attorney ; and also that a peer, if he pleased, might plead before another court, but without prejudice to the rights of the peerage as far as regarded others, or himself on future occasions.—Rot. Parl. ii. 126, 127.

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 127, 131. Stat. of Realm, 1. 295, 7.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1341.

them; and therefore he did now by his own authority, with the assent of his council, revoke and annul the late statute.<sup>1</sup> It was necessary that the other orders should acquiesce till the next parliament; but the convocation of the clergy had already been summoned, and to prevent it from employing the spiritual arms of censure and excommunication in defence of the clerical privileges, Edward wrote to the archbishop, forbidding him, under the severest penalties, to undertake the defence of the pretended statute, or to form any resolution in contempt of the royal authority.<sup>2</sup> Two years elapsed before he ventured to meet his parliament. He had then the address to prevail on both houses to consent to the repeal, on condition that the principal of their requests should be granted; and at the same time ordered the process against the primate "to be erased, and quashed, as contrary to reason and truth."<sup>3</sup>

The failure of the two last campaigns might have weaned Edward from his attachment to continental alliances. But he was destined to experience a more cruel mortification. The emperor, who had concluded a peace with France, revoked his commission of imperial vicar,<sup>4</sup> and the princes of the empire declined to fight any longer under his banner. It is not im-

June 25.

<sup>1</sup> Dissimulavimus sicut oportuit et dictum prætensum statutum sigillari permisimus illa vice—Rym. v. 282. The principal articles of this statute concerned the privilege of the peerage mentioned above, a provision that the clergy should not be unduly interrupted in their courts by the civil officers, an order that all the great officers of the crown should be sworn to observe the Magna Charta, and that at the commencement of each parliament they should be suspended from the execution of their duties for a few days, during which interval they should answer any complaints against them before the House of Lords.—Rot. Parl. ii. 132, 133.

<sup>2</sup> Brad. iii. App. 83.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 139.

<sup>4</sup> Rym. v. 262, 264.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1341.

probable that in these circumstances the quarrel between the two crowns might have been accommodated, had not an event happened which promised to open to the king of England a road into the heart of France. John III., duke of Bretagne, had three brothers, Guy, Peter, and John earl of Montfort. Guy and Peter died before him; but Guy had left a daughter, Jane, who, since the duke had no children, was considered by her uncle and the states heir-apparent to the duchy, and as such had been married to Charles de Blois, nephew to the king of France.<sup>1</sup>

April 30. But when John himself died, his brother Montfort claimed the succession, seized the treasures of the late duke, obtained possession of the principal fortresses, and crossing over to England, did homage, it was said, to Edward as king of France, and his sovereign.<sup>2</sup>

Sept. 7. The cause, however, was carried before the legitimate tribunal, the peers of France, and by them the dukedom was adjudged to Charles de Blois in right of his wife. The king of France immediately sent a strong force under his son and his nephew into Bretagne; the king of England armed in aid of his vassal. It is difficult to justify the conduct of Edward on this occasion; for, if he admitted the claim of Montfort to the exclusion of Jane, he ought also to have admitted Philip's right to the French crown to the exclusion of Isabella and her offspring. Philip was more consistent. For by the laws of the monarchy, though females could not inherit the throne, they could succeed to fiefs equally with males.

The war began to the advantage of Charles, who by

<sup>1</sup> D'Argentré, v. 1—6.

<sup>2</sup> Edward mentions nothing more than *fœdus et amicitiae firmitatem*.—Rym. v. 280.



treachery or surprise made himself master of Nantes, and got possession of the person of his rival. But the interests of the Montforts were still supported by the courage and perseverance of his wife, Jane, sister to the earl of Flanders. As soon as she heard of the captivity of her husband she presented her infant son to the citizens and garrison of Rennes, and exhorted them to defend the cause of the child, the only male issue, besides his father, of their ancient princes. Affected by her tears, beauty, and eloquence, and perhaps still more by the distribution of a liberal donative, they swore to live and die in her service; the rising enthusiasm diffused itself through the neighbouring cities, and the interests of Charles appeared to be rather prejudiced than advanced by the captivity of his competitor. During the winter Jane retired to the fortress of Hennebon, sent her son for greater security to England, and earnestly solicited succours from Edward. In the spring, Charles, with a numerous army, invested the fortress, and the heroine, on horseback, and in armour, directed and encouraged the garrison. On one occasion during an assault she sallied out at the opposite gate, set the camp of the besiegers on fire, retired to the neighbouring castle of Aurai, and shortly after fought her way back into Hennebon. Still no succour arrived; the garrison was thinned by repeated assaults, and enfeebled by famine; and the bishop of Leon had already arranged the terms of the capitulation, when the countess from the highest turret of the castle espied a fleet in the horizon, and exclaimed, "The English! I see the English!" The garrison immediately ran to the ramparts; all thoughts of a surrender were banished; and Sir Walter Manny, with a strong body of troops, who had been detained

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1341.  
October.

1342.  
March.

May.



CHAP. II. forty days by contrary winds, safely arrived in the  
A.D. 1342. harbour.<sup>1</sup>

July.

The force under Manny raised the siege of Hennebon, but was too weak to venture into the field. The countess sailed to England herself, returned with Robert of Artois and a small force of archers and men-at-arms, and besieged and took the city of Vannes. Edward followed in autumn with twelve thousand men; but by attempting too much, effected nothing.

Oct. 5.

He divided his forces into three divisions, with which at the same time he pretended to invest Rennes, Nantes, and Vannes, which had lately been retaken by Charles; but the arrival of the duke of Normandy, the eldest son of Philip, compelled him to concentrate and intrench his forces. The French did the same; and the two armies remained for several weeks during the depth of winter in the vicinity of each other.<sup>2</sup> At this juncture, to the equal satisfaction of both parties, two cardinals arrived, charged to mediate a peace by Clement VI., who had been lately raised to the chair of St. Peter. A truce was concluded for three years and eight months, during which a negotiation for peace should be opened before the pontiff, as a private individual, and the common friend of the two powers.<sup>3</sup> One of the conditions stipulated for the release of John de Montfort; but Philip evaded its execution, and to the complaint of the pontiff answered, that he kept him in prison, not for any public, but for private

1343.  
Jan. 19.

<sup>1</sup> Froissart, c. 70, 71, 79.

<sup>2</sup> Avesb. 98 et seq. Robert died of his wounds.—Rym. v. 349.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. v. 357, 366. The parliament assented that messengers should be sent to the pope, per monstrier et purposer devant le seint pier le pape, come devant meen amy, et noun pas come juge ne come compromessair, les droitz ũre Seign' le Roi sur ses chalenges.—Rot. Parl. ii. 136.



and particular reasons. At the end of three years he escaped from the Louvre disguised as a merchant, arrived safely in England, did homage to Edward as king of France, and returned to Bretagne to die in the castle of Hennebon. By his will he appointed Edward guardian to his son.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A. D. 1345.  
February.  
May 20.  
Sept. 26.

It was not long before the hope of an accommodation, which had been so fondly cherished by the pontiff, was entirely extinguished. Each party daily violated the armistice, and the negotiators, instead of settling the conditions of peace, were employed in discussing complaints and recriminations. The two nations were exasperated by mutual injuries; and their sovereigns sought only a respite to breathe, that they might renew the contest. Preparations for war were made on both sides; Edward obtained grants of wool from his parliament; Philip established the gabelle, the monopoly of salt for the benefit of the crown, which was so long considered an intolerable grievance by the French. These modes of raising money afforded them opportunities of exercising their wit. The king of England declared that his adversary now reigned by *salic* law; and the king of France retorted by denominating Edward "the wool-merchant."<sup>2</sup>

At length the English parliament recommended the renewal of hostilities,<sup>3</sup> and an army proceeded

<sup>1</sup> Id. v. 365. Knyght. 2585. D'Argentré, v. 109.

<sup>2</sup> Contin. Nangii ad ann. 1343. Mezerai, 155.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 147. They begged the king not to suffer himself to be deceived, but to finish the war in a short time, either by battle or treaty (p. 148, 152). The "great men" undertook to pass the sea and adventure with him, the clergy granted him the tenth of their benefices for three years, and the commons two tenths of cities and boroughs, and two fifteenths of the commonalty.—Stat. of Realm, i. 300, 302.



CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1345. —  
June 6. to Guienne under the command of the king's cousin, the earl of Derby, who was reputed the most accomplished nobleman, as well as one of the bravest warriors of the age. He landed at Bayonne, marched to Bordeaux, and soon recovered the greater part of the places which had been conquered by the enemy. The most splendid action in the campaign was fought under the walls of Auberoche. The count of Lisle, the French commander, had ordered twelve thousand men to assemble secretly in the neighbourhood, and immediately invested the place. With four engines they threw showers of stones within the walls, and forced the garrison to take shelter under the ground. The earl of Derby, with three hundred men-at-arms, and six hundred archers, advanced through bye-ways

Oct. 23. to their relief; at supper-time they burst into the French camp; the general and principal officers were killed or taken at table, and the archers with their arrows instantly dispersed every small body of the enemy as soon as it was formed. But the intelligence had now reached the other half of the besieging army, which lay on the opposite side of the place, and the conquerors had still to contend against an enemy six times their number. The victory was secured by the garrison from the castle, who in the heat of the contest charged the rear of the French. Of the whole twelve thousand men, very few escaped. Nine earls and viscounts were made prisoners; nor was there a man-at-arms among the English, who did not return with two or three barons, knights, or esquires, as his share of the captives.<sup>1</sup>

The earl of Derby, having obtained a reinforcement from England, pursued his victorious career,

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 105, 106. Villani, ann. 1345.



while Edward sailed to Sluys to meet the deputies of the cities of Flanders. His object was to persuade the natives to withdraw their allegiance from Earl Louis, their sovereign, and to transfer it to his son, Prince Edward. The majority of the deputies openly testified their disapprobation of the proposal. Artaveldt not only spoke in its favour, but engaged to procure its adoption by the principal cities. At Bruges and Ypres he was successful; but at Ghent his enemies had previously exasperated the inhabitants against him; he met with no civilities on his way through the streets; and had no sooner entered his house than it was surrounded by an enraged populace, demanding his head. The doors were forced; Artaveldt was murdered; and Edward, deprived of his chief support, returned to England. Hither the Flemish deputies followed him, and consoled him for the loss of his demagogue, by engaging never to obey their earl till he should swear fealty to the king of England. Louis lived at Ruremond, despoiled of the greatest part of his territory; but he remained faithful to Philip, declaring that his conscience would never permit him to acknowledge Edward for the king, till he should see him in possession of the crown of France.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1345.  
June 24.

July 17.

July 26.

Sept. 30.

The uninterrupted success of the earl of Derby had proved how much might be effected by English valour, when its exertions were not checked by the councils of interested allies; and Edward having collected a numerous force, consisting solely of his own subjects, sailed from Southampton, with the intention, as he gave out, of invading the southern provinces of France. But whether it were that he sought to deceive the

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 114.



- CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1346. — enemy, or that during the voyage he was dissuaded by Geoffrey de Harcourt, a French refugee, he suddenly altered his course, and anchored in the road of La Hogue, on the coast of Normandy. The province was defenceless; while the fleet burnt all the vessels in the different harbours, the army in three divisions pillaged the country, set fire to the villages, and collected prisoners; Carentan, St. Lo, and Caen, a large and populous city, were taken; and the spoil, with the constable of France, sixty knights, and three hundred of the wealthiest citizens, was sent to the fleet and conveyed to England.<sup>1</sup> Edward's object seems to have been to draw from Guienne the French army of one hundred thousand men, which had entered that province, to cross the Seine, march through Picardy into Artois, join his Flemish auxiliaries, who, to the number of forty thousand, had passed the French frontiers, and then lay siege to the important town of Calais. But on his arrival at Rouen he found the bridge over the Seine broken down, and Philip with a numerous force on the opposite bank. From this moment it became a contest of skill between the two monarchs. The king of England was impatient to pass the river, and bring his adversary to battle before he could be joined by his reinforcements; the king of France sought to confine the English to the left bank of the Seine till he could overwhelm them with the superiority of his force. Edward proceeded along the river, burning the villages, and plundering the towns of Vernon, Mantes, and Poissy; but not a bridge had been left standing, and all his motions were followed and watched by the enemy from the

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. 155. c. 120—122, and the official account in Avesbury, 123.



opposite bank. It was in vain that he sent his light troops to insult the fauxbourgs of Paris; that he reduced to ashes St. Germain, St. Cloud, and Bourg la Reine; and that some adventurers passed the river in boats, and set fire to Neuilly and Boulogne. Philip was not to be diverted from his purpose by the bravadoes of his enemy, or the murmurs of the Parisians. From this situation, which daily became more dangerous, the English were delivered by a successful stratagem. Decamping early in the morning from Poissy, they advanced with expedition towards the capital; but as soon as it was ascertained that the French army was in full march for the same city, they rapidly retraced their steps, cleared the opposite bank with the aid of the archers, crossed by the bridge which the workmen had repaired, and took possession of Pontoise. Chagrined at the success of this manœuvre, and elated by the number of troops that had crowded to his standard at St. Denis, Philip challenged the king of England to fight him on the plain of Vaugirard, or between Pontoise and Franconville. Edward replied that he should always be found ready for battle; but that, as he was in his own dominions, he would not allow any other person to dictate to him either the place or the day.<sup>1</sup> He continued his march, burnt, as he passed, the suburbs of Beauvais, plundered the town of Pois, and fixed his head-quarters at Airaines. Anxious to cross the Somme, he despatched two marshals, with three thousand men, to discover or force a passage. They successively attempted the bridges of Pont de Remi, Long, and Pecquigny; but were foiled in each place,

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1346.  
—

August 17.

August 22.

<sup>1</sup> Heming. 385, 386.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1346.  
—

and returned with the disheartening news to the army. On the same day Philip had fixed his head-quarters at Amiens. The next morning Edward quitted Arraimes; in two hours it was occupied by the enemy. He attempted to surprise Abbeville, but was defeated by the vigilance of the townsmen. In the evening he had the good fortune to carry Oisement by assault, which offered to him the prospect of a lodging for the night; but what course was he to take in the morning? To turn upon his pursuers, or surrender to his adversary? A number of countrymen were brought before him; he tempted them with promises and threats; at last a peasant owned that he was acquainted with the ford of Blanchetaque, near the mouth of the river, and offered for an adequate reward to lead them to the place. The army marched at midnight; but on their arrival at the ford, the tide had not begun to ebb, and at sunrise they beheld the opposite bank lined with twelve thousand men under the command of Godemar du Fay. In this distressing situation they waited for some hours, expecting every moment to be attacked by their pursuers. About ten o'clock it was reported that the river was fordable. Edward gave the word of command in the name of God and St. George; and the men-at-arms plunged into the stream. About the midway they were met by the French cavalry; but the English fought with the courage of despair, and the enemy were routed, with the loss of two thousand men. Philip at his arrival found only a few stragglers on the bank. The rising of the tide compelled him to relinquish the pursuit, and to lead back his army to Abbeville; the English took possession of Crotoi, and found in the port



several vessels laden with the wines of Poitou and Saintonge.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1346.  
—

Hitherto the king had retired rapidly before his pursuers, now he halted to await their arrival. With his motives we are not acquainted; but he must have had some powerful inducement to hazard an engagement with such a disparity of force. To his attendants he merely said, "We will go no further. I am now on the lawful inheritance of my lady mother (the county of Ponthieu), and it is my duty to defend it against my adversary." Of his Flemish allies we have no intelligence. They had entered the French territories three weeks before, and probably had returned, or taken a different direction.

Philip loitered a day at Abbeville, that he might increase his immense force by the addition of a few thousands. To Edward, who had to fight for his liberty and life, the delay was most valuable, as it allowed him to refresh his men after their fatigue, to arrange his plans, and to make the necessary preparations for battle. The spot on which he had determined to receive the enemy was the high ground beyond Creci, lying between the river Maye on the right, and Wadicourt to the left. In the evening he invited his barons to supper, entertained them with cheerfulness, and dismissed them with a promise of victory. When they were gone, he entered his oratory, threw himself on his knees before the altar, and prayed that God would preserve his honour. It was midnight when he retired to his bed; he slept little, and at the dawn of the morning assisted at mass and received the communion with his son, the young

<sup>1</sup> Froissart, c. 123—125. Knyght. 2587, and the official account in Avesbury, 136, 137.



CHAP. II. prince of Wales, who had just reached his fifteenth  
A.D. 1346. year.

August 26.

As soon as the troops had breakfasted, the marshals issued their orders, and each lord, under his own banner and pennon, marched to the ground which had been allotted to him on the preceding day. All were dismounted, to take away the temptation of pursuit or flight. The first division, under the nominal command of the prince, the real command of the earls of Warwick and Oxford, consisted of eight hundred men-at-arms, a thousand Welsh infantry, and two thousand archers. At some distance behind them, but rather on their flank, was placed the second division of eight hundred men-at-arms, and twelve hundred archers. The third, under the command of the king, comprised seven hundred men-at-arms and two thousand archers, and was stationed as a reserve on the summit of the hill.<sup>1</sup> The archers of each division formed in its front, in the shape of a portcullis; and orders were issued that no man should encumber himself with the charge of a prisoner, or quit his post to pursue a fugitive. Edward, on a small palfrey, with a marshal on each side, rode from company to company, speaking to all, exhorting them to defend his honour, and expressing his confidence of victory. About ten o'clock he ordered them to take refreshment. They sat in ranks on the ground, with their bows and helmets before them.

The king of France had marched from Abbeville about sunrise; but the multitude of his followers advanced in so disorderly a manner, that the knights who had reconnoitred the English army advised him

<sup>1</sup> These are the numbers in Froissart. They are evidently too low, or those of the French army too high.



to postpone the battle till the morrow, and employ the interval in marshalling his army. Two officers were immediately despatched, one to the van, the other to the rear, crying out, "Halt, banners, in the name of God and St. Denis." But these orders increased the confusion. By some they were obeyed, by many misunderstood, and by the greater part disregarded. Philip suffered himself to be carried forward by the stream; and, as soon as he saw the English, he lost his temper, and ordered the Genoese to form, and begin the battle.

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1346.  
—

The Genoese were a body of six, or according to some writers, fifteen thousand Italians, who fought with cross-bows under two celebrated leaders, Antonio Doria and Carlo Grimaldi. They were supported by the king's brother, the count d'Alençon, with a numerous cavalry superbly accoutred. The king himself followed with the rest of the army in four divisions; the amount of the combatants has been estimated by different writers at every intermediate number between sixty and one hundred and twenty thousand men.

Never perhaps were preparations for battle made under circumstances so truly awful. On that very day the sun suffered a partial eclipse; birds in clouds, the precursors of a storm, flew screaming over the two armies; and the rain fell in torrents, accompanied with incessant thunder and lightning. About five in the afternoon the weather cleared up, the sun in full splendour darted his rays in the eyes of the enemy. The Genoese, setting up three shouts, discharged their quarrels. But they were no match for the English archers, who received the volley in silence, and returned their arrows in such numbers, and with such



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1346.

---

force, that the cross-bowmen began to waver. The count d'Alençon, calling them cowards, ordered his men to cut down the runaways; but he only added to the disorder. Many of his knights were unhorsed by the archers, and, as they lay on the ground, were despatched by the Welshmen, who had armed themselves with long knives for the purpose.

At length the passage was cleared; the count on one side, and his colleague the earl of Flanders on the other, skirted the English archers, while a numerous body of French, Germans, and Savoyards, forced their way to the men-at-arms under the command of the prince. The second division immediately closed for his support; but the conflict grew fierce and doubtful, and Sir Thomas Norwich was sent to request a reinforcement. Edward, who from a windmill watched the chances of the battle, and the movements of the armies, inquired if his son were killed or wounded. The messenger replied, "No." "Then," said he, "tell " Warwick that he shall have no assistance. Let the " boy win his spurs. He and those who have him in " charge shall earn the whole glory of the day." This answer was hailed as a prediction of victory, and infused new courage into the combatants.

D'Alençon, unable to make any impression on the English in his front, attempted to turn their position by penetrating through a narrow pass on one side of the hill; but he found the outlet barricaded with carts and waggons from the camp, and was repulsed with great slaughter by a body of archers posted behind them. In the mean time Philip, who had hitherto been only a spectator of the action, grew impatient; he hastened with his force to the aid of his brother; and fought, as if it had been his object to refute the



CHAP.

II

A.D. 1346.

taunt of cowardice so often applied to him by Edward. He was wounded in two places; his horse was killed under him; he retired till the blood was stanchèd, and then mounting another charger, rushed into the midst of the combatants. But the day was already lost; his brother with the flower of the French chivalry had fallen; and John of Hainault seizing the king's bridle, and bidding him reserve himself for victory on some future occasion, led him by force out of the field. With a slender escort of five barons and sixty knights he escaped to the city of Amiens.<sup>1</sup>

The flight of Philip did not terminate the contest. Many of the French continued in detached bodies to charge their adversaries; but as their efforts were made without concert, they generally ended in the destruction of the assailants. As the darkness increased, the fighting gradually ceased; the voices of men, seeking the banners from which they had wandered, were no longer heard; and the English congratulated themselves on the repulse of the enemy. The king, ignorant of the extent of his victory, ordered fires to be kindled, and forbade his men to quit their posts. Eager to testify his approbation of the prince, he sprang to meet him, and clasping him in his arms exclaimed, "Fair son, continue your career. You have behaved nobly. You have shown yourself worthy of me and the crown!" The young Edward sank

<sup>1</sup> The elder Villani tells us that the English made use of artillery in this battle; "of bombards, which by means of fire shot small balls of iron with a report like the thunder of God, causing the slaughter of the men, and the overthrow of the horses" (xii. 67). Nor do I see any thing improbable in his statement. It was now some years since heavy cannon had been employed to discharge large balls of stone at sieges; and one of the first improvements would very likely be the construction of smaller pieces to be used in the field. Villani died in the next year after this battle.



CHAP. on his knees, and modestly attributed all the merit to  
II. his father.  
A.D. 1346.

Aug. 27.

The darkness of the night was succeeded by a dense mist in the morning, which equally intercepted the view, and to gain information the king sent out before sunrise a detachment of three thousand men. They soon found themselves in the midst of a body of militia from Beauvais and Amiens, which, ignorant of the preceding events, had marched all night to overtake the army. These men, unsuspecting of danger, and unprepared for battle, were massacred almost without resistance. A similar mistake proved fatal to the archbishop of Rouen, and the grand prior of France, with a numerous body of knights. As the day cleared, thousands of Frenchmen were discovered in the fields, who had passed the night under the trees and hedges, in the hope of finding their lords in the morning. These too were put to the sword by the English cavalry; so that the carnage of the second, is asserted to have exceeded that of the former day.<sup>1</sup>

At noon the king ordered the lords Cobham and Stafford to examine the field of battle. They took with them three heralds and two secretaries, the heralds to ascertain from the surcoats, and the secretaries to record, the names and rank of those who had fallen. In the evening, they presented to him eighty banners with a catalogue of eleven princes and twelve hundred knights. The slain of inferior note were not numbered. Report made them amount to thirty thousand. A truce of three days was proclaimed for the burial of the dead; and the king himself attended in mourning at the funeral service.

<sup>1</sup> See the most interesting detail of this battle in Froissart, c. 126—130.



Among the slain, the most distinguished was John king of Bohemia.<sup>1</sup> Age had not chilled in him the fire of youth ; though blind, he placed himself in the first division of the French ; and as the issue grew dubious, ordered the four knights, his attendants, to lead him into the hottest of the battle, “ that I too,” said he, “ may have a stroke at the English.” Placing him in the midst of them, and interlacing their bridles, they spurred forward their horses, and were almost immediately slain. The reader will probably consider the Bohemian monarch as foolishly prodigal of his life ; by the writers of the age his conduct has been extolled as an instance of unparalleled heroism. His motto, “ Ich dien ” (I serve), was adopted by the prince of Wales, and has been always borne by his successors.

The conquerors beheld with astonishment the result of this bloody and decisive battle. They did not attribute it to their own courage or the imprudence of the enemy, but to the protection of the Almighty, who had thus pronounced judgment in favour of their sovereign ; and the thanksgivings which were offered up in the camp were quickly repeated in every town and village in England. The two kings immediately applied themselves, Edward to improve the advantages of victory, Philip to avert the consequences of defeat. The former, that he might secure to himself a convenient harbour on the French coast, undertook to reduce the port of Calais ; and foreseeing a long and obstinate resistance, ordered huts to be built for the accommodation of the army during the winter. The

<sup>1</sup> Several historians have killed James king of Majorca at Creci. It is probable that he was not present ; it is certain that he did not die till three years later.



- CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1346.  
Sept. 3. latter despatched a messenger with presents to the king of Scotland, exhorting him to seize the opportunity of Edward's absence, and by the invasion of England to avenge his own wrongs, and afford assistance to his ally. Four years had elapsed since David, at the request of the people, had returned with his queen to his native country. His valour and accomplishments had won their esteem, and three successful incursions into the northern counties had gratified their revenge with the plunder of their enemies. The eagerness of the king wanted no additional stimulus; he had long menaced the English frontier; and six days before the battle of Creci, Lionel, the second son of Edward, and guardian of the kingdom, had ordered levies to be made to watch and oppose the motions of "the Scottish insurgents." From Perth David marched with three thousand men-at-arms, and about thirty thousand others mounted on galloways. All were confident of success, at a time when the whole chivalry of England was lying before the walls of Calais, or fighting in the south of France.
1342.  
June 2. He entered Cumberland, took, after a siege of six days, the "pyle of Liddel," put the garrison to the sword, plundered the abbey of Lanercost, and directed his march by Hexham into the bishopric of Durham.
1346.  
Aug. 20. While he lay at Beaurepaire,<sup>1</sup> a country-house belonging to the monks, the English army assembled without his knowledge in Auckland park. It amounted to twelve hundred men-at-arms, three thousand archers, and a body of seven thousand infantry, composed of clergymen, of the militia of the neighbourhood, and of a small band of Welshmen. Queen Philippa, if we may believe the improbable testimony of Froissart,

<sup>1</sup> It is now called Bearpark.



emulating the example of the countess of Montfort, rode among them, and addressed them in kind and animating language, bidding them protect their country from ravage, and the honour of their sovereign from insult. They answered with shouts of applause; she recommended them to God and St. George, and retired to a place of safety.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1346.

Douglas, the celebrated knight of Liddlesdale, had that morning conducted a party of plunderers to Ferry-hill. On his return he was intercepted by the English army at Sunderland bridge, and was fortunate to escape with the loss of five hundred men. On his report David marshalled his army on the moor; the English already stood in array on an eminence near Nevil's Cross. The Scottish cavalry, entangled among the hedges, were exposed to the unerring aim of the archers; and the most distinguished knights were successively unhorsed or slain. After a sharp contest the earl of Moray fell, and the wing which he commanded was dispersed. In the other wing the Stewart maintained but a faint and wavering resistance; in the centre the king saw with dismay the bravest of his knights falling around him. But his pride disdained to flee or surrender, and his nobles, forming a circle for his protection, prolonged the fight till two wounds, one of them from an arrow in the face, brought him to the ground. Coupland, a Northumbrian gentleman, instantly sprang from his charger to seize the royal prey; a violent struggle ensued. Coupland lost two of his teeth; but he secured the king, and with the assistance of eight friends carried him safely through the crowd, and rode with him to his castle of Ogle. The Scots made no longer any

Oct. 17.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 136.



CHAP. resistance; and the Stewart, collecting the fugitives,  
 II. conducted them to their own country.<sup>1</sup>  
 A.D. 1346.

It is singular that on this memorable day the English fought without any commander-in-chief. The archbishop of York, and the lords Henry Percy and Ralf Nevil, had been appointed arrayers of the northern forces; but in the battle they seemed to have possessed equal command, and to have assumed no authority over the other chieftains.<sup>2</sup> The Scots left many thousand men on the field, and among them several noblemen of the highest distinction. The list of prisoners exhibits, in addition to the king, the names of three earls and forty-nine barons and knights. The earl of Monteith, who had been sworn of Edward's privy council, and the earl of Fife, who had done homage to Baliol, were condemned as traitors.<sup>3</sup> The latter owed his life to his relationship to the royal family; the former suffered the punishment of the law. David was reluctantly delivered by Coupland to the sheriff, and conducted in great state to the Tower of London. The captor was knighted, and rewarded with the grant of an ample estate in land.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ford. xiv. 2, 3. Froissart, 135, 136. Heming. 381. Knyght. 2590—2592. Extract ex Chron. Scot. 179.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. 524. In the letter of thanks issued by Prince Lionel, the earl of Angus, and several others, are mentioned with equal commendation.—Rym. 528.

<sup>3</sup> They were condemned by the king in council at Calais on the notoriety of the fact. No trial was granted them; and the sole office of the judges was to proceed to the Tower and pronounce the sentence, such as it had been sent to them by the king.—Rym. v. 549, 550. Rot. Scot. i. 687—689. Fife's mother was niece to Edward I.

<sup>4</sup> He was made a banneret, with an income of five hundred pounds a year.—Rym. v. 542. The same day the king at Calais granted to him, Robert Bertram, and William Silvertop the elder, a general pardon for all former transgressions, on account of their "good services" in the battle of Nevil's Cross.—Rym. v. 543. Coupland was afterwards murdered.—Rym. vi. 494.



When Edward so suddenly changed his course from Bordeaux to La Hogue, he left the gallant earl of Derby to struggle in the defence of Guienne against the powerful army commanded by John duke of Normandy, eldest son to the French monarch. The earl wisely refused to meet his adversary in the field, and the duke marched from Toulouse with fifty thousand foot, six thousand horse, and a long train of military engines. Few places dared to oppose so overwhelming a force; nor was the progress of the torrent checked till it reached the walls of Aiguillon. From May till the end of August, John beleaguered that fortress. He repeatedly employed every resource which ingenuity could discover or force could supply; the army, in four divisions, which relieved each other every three hours, continued the assault for six successive days; towers were erected, engines were discharged, and the houses within the walls were demolished by incessant showers of stones. But Sir Walter Manny and his brave garrison could neither be worn out with fatigue, nor be intimidated by numbers. They repelled the assailants; they burnt the engines; and by frequent sallies they inflicted serious injuries on the besiegers. The duke, unable to succeed by force, attempted to starve the garrison into a surrender. He swore that he would never quit the place till it was in his possession; and to the remonstrances of his officers replied, that he could not in honour violate his oath. After all, it was the victory of Creci that saved Aiguillon; Philip required the presence of his son, and the aid of his army. No sooner was he gone than the earl of Derby issued from Bordeaux, crossed the Garonne, laid waste the Agenois, Saintonge, and Poitou, and carried by storm the rich and

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1346.

August 23.



CHAP. II.  
A.D. 1346.  
Oct. 4. populous city of Poitiers. When he had revenged on these provinces the devastations which the enemy had committed in Guienne, he led back his troops laden with plunder into their winter quarters.<sup>1</sup>

Edward was now engaged in the siege of Calais, a siege which formed a new era in the military history of the age. Contrary to all precedent, not an assault was given, not a single engine was erected against the place. Instead of force, the king relied on the slower but less fallible operation of famine. A numerous fleet blockaded the harbour; and all communication with the interior was intercepted by the lines of the besiegers. John de Vienne, the governor, saw with dismay a town of huts rise around him; he penetrated into the design of the king, and after a strict inquiry turned out of the town every individual who did not possess a sufficient supply of provisions for several months. Men, women, and children, to the number of seventeen hundred persons, advanced in mournful procession to the English camp. Edward ordered them to be received, gave them a plentiful repast, and at their departure distributed to each two pieces of silver.<sup>2</sup> But the garrison began to feel the privations of scarcity, while the besiegers were twice in the week plentifully supplied from Flanders and England; a new inquiry was made, and five hundred more of the inhabitants were driven without the gates. If Vienne relied a second time on the humanity of Edward, he was disappointed. The English lines were shut against them, and the unfortunate sufferers, without covering or provisions, perished miserably between the walls and the camp. Philip did not neglect the

<sup>1</sup> Froissart, c. 117, 118, 119, 132. Villani, ann. 1346. Avesb. 142—144.

<sup>2</sup> Froissart, c. 131.



means in his power to relieve so important a fortress. During the winter two fleets with men and supplies attempted to enter the port. One succeeded, but the other was captured. In spring he ordered all his vassals to meet him on Whitsunday, and, taking with him the ori-flamme, the sacred standard of France, encamped at Wissant, with a hundred and fifty thousand men.<sup>1</sup> There were but two roads by which it was possible to approach the English, along the beach, or over the marshes by the bridge of Nieulay. The former was lined with ships, on board of which had been stationed several thousand archers ; the bridge was strongly fortified, and intrusted to the care of the earl of Derby. To attempt either would probably have been attended with the destruction of the assailants. Proposals of peace were made and refused on any other condition than the immediate possession of Calais. Philip had recourse to the expedient of challenging Edward to a general battle.<sup>2</sup> The king's pride silenced his prudence ; he accepted the challenge ; but the French monarch, taught by the defeat which he had suffered at Creci, retired on the eve of the day which had been appointed. The moment he was gone the arms of England, quartering

CHAP.

II.

A.D. 1346.

1347.

July 27.

July 31.

Aug. 2.

<sup>1</sup> A messenger by sea was taken carrying a letter to Philip from the garrison, declaring that they had eaten their horses, their dogs, and all other animals they could procure, and that nothing remained for them but to eat each other. They assured him that if he did not relieve them soon, they had resolved to attack the enemy, and die with honour in the field, rather than perish with hunger in the town ; and ended in a wish that God might give him grace to make to them and their heirs a return for what they suffered in his service. This letter, which is preserved by Avesbury and Knyghton, was forwarded by Edward.—Knyght. 2593. Avesb. 157.

<sup>2</sup> Froissart gives us a very interesting dialogue between Edward and the bearers of the challenge (c. 143). It is probably a fiction. The historian tells us that the king refused, the king himself, that he accepted the challenge.—Avesb. 165.



CHAP. II. the lilies with the leopards, were seen to wave on the  
 A.D. 1347. castle.<sup>1</sup> It was, however, in vain that the governor  
 solicited terms of capitulation. Edward insisted that  
 he should surrender at discretion; and the inhabitants, who knew that the king had expressed a resolution to punish their habits of piracy, and that his former enmity had been embittered by the obstinacy of their resistance, received the answer with feelings of despair. They met in the market-place to consult; and the common gloom was dispelled by the generous devotedness of Eustace de St. Pierre, who offered to stake his life for the safety of his fellow-townsmen. Five others imitated his example, and the procession walked from the gate to the English camp. It was  
 Aug. 4. headed by Vienne, riding on a palfrey, on account of his wounds; fifteen knights followed with their heads bare, and their swords pointed to the ground; and then came the six townsmen, barefoot and bareheaded, with halters in their hands. By Edward they were received with an air of severity. The governor presented to him his sword, and the keys of the town; and joining his companions in misfortune, implored on his knees the mercy of the conqueror. The king affected to be inexorable, rejected the intercession of his barons, sent for the executioner, and, if he at last yielded, it was with apparent reluctance to the tears and entreaties of his queen Philippa. The prisoners were left to the disposal of their fair advocate, who clothed them, invited them to a plentiful repast, and at their departure made to each of them a present of six nobles.<sup>2</sup> Thus was Calais severed from the French

<sup>1</sup> Knyght. 2594. Avesb. 163—166.

<sup>2</sup> Froissart (c. 144) has dramatised this incident with considerable effect, but I fear with little attention to truth. From his



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1347.  
—

crown after a siege of twelve months. To secure his conquest, Edward expelled the natives who refused to swear fealty to the king of England,<sup>1</sup> and repopled the town with a colony of his own subjects. It rapidly became a place of considerable opulence; it was appointed the general mart for the sale of merchandise exported from England;<sup>2</sup> and it continued to flourish for more than two centuries under the protection of its conqueror and his successors.

Writers have not always sufficiently appreciated the benefits which mankind derived from the pacific influence of the Roman pontiffs. In an age which valued no merit but that of arms, Europe would have been plunged in perpetual war had not pope after pope laboured incessantly for the preservation, or restoration of peace. They rebuked the passions, and checked the extravagant pretensions, of sovereigns; their character, as the common fathers of Christians, gave to their representations a weight, which no other

narrative I have selected the circumstances which seem to harmonize best with the statements of other writers, who merely inform us that on this, the same happened as on most similar occasions, that is, a deputation of knights and citizens in the guise of criminals, implored and obtained the king's mercy. I may, however, observe that even in Froissart there is nothing to prove that Edward designed to put these men to death; on the contrary, he takes notice that the king's refusal of mercy was accompanied with a wink to his attendants, which, if it meant any thing, must have meant that he was not acting seriously.

<sup>1</sup> Philip was careful to provide for the exiles, and gave to them in preference to others the vacant offices in his dominions.—Spondan. 488.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. v. 618. Among those who swore fealty to Edward was the very Eustace de St. Pierre, whose character Froissart has so much embellished. The king gave him most of his former property, and additional lands; and he on his part undertook to maintain by his influence peace among the native population. At his death in 1351 these donations reverted to the crown, because his heirs refused to acknowledge Edward for their sovereign.—See Brequigny, Mem. de l'Acad. xxxvii. 537.



CHAP. II. mediator could claim; and their legates spared neither  
 A.D. 1347. journey nor fatigue to reconcile the jarring interests  
 — of courts, and interpose the olive of peace between  
 the swords of contending armies. As soon as the war  
 recommenced between Edward and Philip, Clement  
 had resumed his pacific endeavours; for two years  
 he ceased not to entreat, to admonish, to reprehend;  
 the violence and obstinacy of his belligerent children  
 did not exhaust his patience; and as soon as the French  
 army had reached Whitsand, the cardinals of Naples  
 and Clermont offered their services to prevent the  
 effusion of blood. But Philip refused to deliver up  
 a town which had so long set at defiance the power  
 of his adversary, and Edward would not forego the  
 expected reward of his perseverance in so tedious a  
 siege. When Calais had fallen, the legates renewed  
 Sept. 28. their offer; each king was now willing to admit of  
 a temporary respite; and an armistice, which was  
 concluded for a few months, was, at the repeated  
 instances of the Holy See, gradually prolonged for  
 six years.<sup>1</sup> It was a breathing time necessary to the  
 king of France, that he might restore his finances  
 and the spirit of his people; it was welcome to the  
 king of England, who could now repose with satis-  
 faction under the laurels which he had gained. The  
 victories of Creci and Nevil's Cross had stamped the  
 reputation of the English, and raised their sovereign  
 to the first rank among the princes of Europe; two  
 of the chief of his opponents, David king of Scots,  
 and Charles de Blois duke of Bretagne,<sup>2</sup> were his  
 prisoners; and not only had he preserved his former

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 588. New Rym. iii. 100.

<sup>2</sup> He had been surprised in his tent at the siege of La Roche d'Errien. But the war was continued in Bretagne by the two ladies, his wife, and the widow of John of Montfort.—Froiss. c. 141.



possessions, but had even added to them the town and harbour of Calais, an important station for his navy, and a convenient opening into the territory of his rival.

CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1347.  
—

During the armistice Edward did not hesitate to embrace two opportunities of displaying that personal courage which was the first requisite in the character of a true knight. Amerigo di Pavia, though an Italian, held a distinguished place in the king's esteem, who had intrusted him not only with the command of his fleet, but with the custody of his late conquest, the town of Calais. Sir Geoffrey de Chargny, the French governor of St. Omer, tempted the fidelity of Amerigo with the offer of twenty thousand crowns. The proposal was accepted by the Italian, not with the intention of betraying his trust, but of punishing the man who sought to stain his honour; and it was mutually agreed that, on the payment of the money, a French force should be privately introduced into the castle on the last night of the year. Edward, who was in the secret, arrived, and landed in the dark with three hundred men-at-arms and six hundred archers; at the appointed hour a messenger from the governor of St. Omer was admitted, and paid down the money, and at midnight twelve French knights and one hundred men-at-arms were introduced by a postern into the area of the castle. They were immediately surrounded and secured; and the English under Sir Walter Manny assailed Chargny, who had halted near the gate of Boulogne. The Frenchman made a gallant but useless resistance; the guard which he had placed at the bridge of Nieulay was overpowered, and, as the means of retreat were cut off, he surrendered with all his companions. Edward in this affray

1348.  
Dec. 31.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1348.

1349.  
Jan. 1.

had fought on foot as a private knight under the banner of Manny, and had nearly paid the forfeit of his temerity. He singled out for his antagonist Sir Eustace de Ribeaumont, a warrior of distinguished valour; twice he received a stroke on his helmet which brought him on his knees; but he recovered himself with the aid of his shield, and ultimately became master of his adversary. It was not till the prisoners had been brought into the castle that the king discovered himself. He invited them to join him at supper, when the prince of Wales and the English knights waited on their guests; and after supper, rising from the table, he took from his head a chaplet of pearls, placed it on the temples of Ribeaumont, and accompanied the present with a high encomium on his merit. "To you, sir knight," said the king, "I adjudge the prize of valour in the action of this morning, and pray you to wear my chaplet during the year for my sake. Wherever you go, tell the ladies that it was given by the king of England to the bravest of knights." Ribeaumont was immediately released; Chargny and his companions paid proportionate ransoms for their freedom.<sup>1</sup>

1350.

There was another occasion, in which the chivalry of Edward exposed his life to greater danger without any better motive for his temerity. The Spanish ports in the Bay of Biscay were inhabited by a race of hardy and adventurous seamen, famed for nautical skill and commercial enterprise, and at all times eager to display their hostility to the English mariners, their

<sup>1</sup> Compare Froissart, c. 148, 149, with Avesbury, 180. Chargny learning afterwards that the Italian lived without any guard in his castle of Fretun, which Edward had given him, surprised him one morning, carried him to St. Omer, and put him to death in the market-place.—Johnes's Froissart, 262.



principal competitors on the ocean. The ships from these ports had formed a large fleet for their common protection, and had sailed up the Channel to the harbour of Sluys under the command of Don Carlos de la Cerda. Their chief object was to trade with the mercantile cities of Flanders; but on their passage they had committed many acts of piracy; and when they were threatened with reprisals, boldly claimed the dominion of the seas, and defied the vengeance of those whom they had injured. De la Cerda, however, aware of the probable consequences, had the prudence to furnish his vessels with warlike stores, and by considerable offers allured on board a number of military adventurers. Edward determined to chastise the insolence of the Spaniards; and unwilling to yield the glory to his captains, took upon himself the command of the fleet.<sup>1</sup> With fifty sail (but the English vessels in point of tonnage and equipment were far inferior to those of the Spaniards) he cruised for three days between Dover and Calais. He sat on the forecastle dressed in a jacket of black velvet, and amused himself with his minstrels, till the appearance of the enemy was announced to him from the head of the mast. Immediately the trumpet sounded; the line was formed; and the king and his knights, having drunk a draught of wine, put on their armour. The Spaniards with the wind in their favour might have declined an engagement; but they disdained to alter their course, and bore down on their opponents. The battle was obstinate and doubtful. August 29. Edward compelled the master to lay his ship in the way of a vessel in full sail. The concussion opened several leaks; nor was the crew able to bail out the

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 679.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1350.  
—

water as rapidly as it entered. The danger was not perceived by the king, whose mind was intent on the battle only; but his attendants, to save their lives, by a bold and desperate effort boarded and captured their adversary. The prince of Wales found himself in a still more dangerous condition. His vessel was on the point of sinking, when the earl of Derby, lately created duke of Lancaster, came to his assistance, and saved him from the waves. In the evening fourteen of the Spanish ships had been captured; but the advantage had been dearly purchased with the loss of many knights of distinction, and of several vessels. Edward landed in triumph at Winchelsea, and was received with joy by the queen, whose servants from the heights had watched the commencement and progress of the battle.<sup>1</sup> The men of Biscay were not dismayed by their loss; but it was soon discovered that the quarrel was equally detrimental to the interests of each party; and a truce for twenty years was concluded at London between the king of England and the “maritime cities of the lordship of the king of Castile.”<sup>2</sup>

1351.  
Aug. 1.

The victories, which had conferred so much honour on Edward, had been purchased, it was said, with the blood of fifty thousand Englishmen; but the memory of this loss was almost obliterated by the calamity which shortly afterwards visited the island, a pestilence as general and destructive as any recorded in history. We first discover it in the empire of Cathai; thence we may trace its progress through different provinces of Asia to the Delta and the banks of the Nile; a south wind transported it into Greece and the Grecian islands; from which it swept the coasts of the Mediterranean, depopulated Italy, and crossed the barrier

<sup>1</sup> Johnes's Froissart, 252—261. Wals. 162. <sup>2</sup> Rym. v. 717.



of the Alps into France. A succession of earthquakes, which shook the continent of Europe from Calabria to the north of Poland, ushered in the fatal year 1348; and though England escaped this calamity, it was deluged from the month of June to December with almost incessant torrents of rain. In the first week of August the plague made its appearance in Dorsetshire; in November it reached London, and thence gradually proceeded towards the north of the island. Of its victims many expired in the course of six hours, and few lingered more than two or three days. From man the exterminating malady spread itself to the brute creation; the carcasses of sheep, horses, and oxen, lay scattered on the fields; they were untouched by birds of prey; and their putrefaction aided the malignity of the disorder. The labours of husbandry were neglected; no courts of justice were opened; the parliament was repeatedly prorogued by proclamation; and men, intent only on their own safety, fled from the care of the infected, and slighted every call of honour, duty, and humanity. When historians tell us that one-half or one-third of the human race perished, we may suspect them of exaggeration; but it is easy to form some idea of the mortality from the fact, that all the cemeteries in London were soon filled; that Sir Walter Manny purchased for a public burial-place a field of thirteen acres, where the Charter-house now stands; and that the bodies deposited in it during several weeks amounted to the daily average of two hundred. It was observed, that though the malady assailed the English in Ireland, it spared the natives. The Scots too were exempt for several months; and the circumstance afforded them a subject of triumph over their enemies, and



CHAP  
II.  
A.D. 1348.  
—

introduced among them a popular oath, “by the foul  
“dethe of the English.” They had even assembled  
an army to invade the neighbouring counties, when  
the contagion insinuated itself into their camp in the  
forest of Selkirk; five thousand men died before they  
disbanded their forces; and the fugitives carried with  
them the infection into the most distant recesses of  
Scotland.<sup>1</sup>

The consequences of the mortality are carefully  
detailed by the contemporary writers. At first the  
reduction in the number of the consumers effected  
a proportionate reduction in the price of all merchant-  
able articles; in the second year the prices rose with  
a rapidity and to a height which alarmed the govern-  
ment.<sup>2</sup> The ravages of the pestilence had been  
chiefly confined to the lower orders;<sup>3</sup> for the more  
wealthy, by shutting themselves up in their castles,  
and declining all unnecessary communication with the  
neighbourhood, had in a great measure escaped the  
infection. But hence rose a scarcity of labourers for  
the cultivation of land, and of artisans to construct or  
repair the implements of husbandry. To remedy the  
evil, Edward published a singular proclamation, pro-  
hibiting the relief of mendicants able to work, and  
compelling all men and women in good health, under  
the age of sixty, and without visible means of sub-  
sistence, to hire themselves as servants, at the same

1349.  
June 18.

<sup>1</sup> Knyght. 2599. Wals. 198. Ford. xiv. 7. Rym. 655, 658. Edward himself, speaking of the number of the dead, uses the vague expressions of, *non modica pars populi*, and *magna pars populi*.—Rym. v. 668, 693. New Rym. iii. 316, 621.

<sup>2</sup> Knyghton gives the following as the low prices, 2599. A horse worth forty shillings now costs 6*s.* 8*d.*—a fat ox, 4*s.*—a cow, 1*s.*—a heifer, 6*d.*—a fat wether, 4*d.*—a sheep, 3*d.*—a lamb, 2*d.*—a large pig, 5*d.*—a stone of wool, 9*d.* The next year ordinary prices were increased four-fold.—Id. 2601.

<sup>3</sup> *Maxime operariorum et servientium*.—Rym. v. 693.



wages as in former years, to any masters who should be willing to employ them. The execution of these orders was intrusted to the sheriffs, bailiffs, and other officers, who were ordered to seek out all such persons within their respective jurisdictions, and at the same time to take care that no master should employ more of them than his proportionate number.<sup>1</sup> But in spite of fines, imprisonment, and the pillory, the ingenuity and avarice of the labourers contrived to elude the provisions of the proclamation; during the harvest the most exorbitant wages were demanded and given; and for their own benefit the proprietors judged it expedient to waive their claim of rent from their farmers, and the lords of manors to suspend the compulsory labours of their villeins.<sup>2</sup> But in the next parliament the ordinance was converted into a statute; the amount of the wages to be given to different classes was determined; and new penalties were enacted against the transgressors.

The piety of the age attributed this destructive visitation to the anger of the Almighty; but in speculating on the causes which provoked that anger,

<sup>1</sup> Knyght. 2600. Rym. v. 693. Stat. of Realm, 1, 307.

<sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2601. He mentions the following as exorbitant wages—a mower received a shilling a day with his victuals; a reaper eighteenpence a day and his victuals.—Id. 2600. The ordinary wages of workmen are thus stated in the act of parliament:—hay-makers per day, without victuals, 1*d.*; mowers, ditto, 5*d.*; reapers in the first week of August, 2*d.*; ditto, in the next and succeeding weeks, 3*d.*; thrashers per quarter of wheat or rye, 2½*d.*; ditto of barley, beans, peas, and oats, 1½*d.*; carpenters per day, 2*d.*; masons, 3*d.*; tilers, 3*d.*; thatchers, 3*d.*; plasterers, 3*d.*; labourers, 1½*d.*; Masters of the above trades, one penny per day more than their men. No man was allowed to work out of his neighbourhood, except the inhabitants of Staffordshire, Lancashire, Derbyshire, Craven, and the marches of Scotland and Wales, who had always been accustomed to seek employment during the harvest in all parts of England.—Rot. Parl. ii. 234. Stat. of Realm, 1, 311.



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1349.  
—

every writer seems to have been swayed by personal prejudices, or local considerations. All, however, embrace the opportunity to inveigh against the prevailing extravagance of dress, the silk hoods and party-coloured coats of the men, their deep sleeves and narrow confined waists, the indecent shortness of their hose, and the ridiculous length of their pointed shoes, the bushy beard before, and the tail of hair behind.<sup>1</sup> Some had even the temerity to extend their censure to the females, whom they affected to describe as having renounced the native modesty of the sex, to ape the manners, and adopt in a great measure the dress of the men. No lady of distinction, if we may believe them, could now ride on a palfrey; she must be mounted on a spirited charger. Her head was encircled with a turban, or covered with a species of mitre of enormous height, from the summit of which ribbons floated in the air like the streamers from the head of a mast. Her tunic was half of one colour, and half of another; a zone deeply embroidered, and richly ornamented with gold, confined her waist, and from it was suspended in front two daggers in their respective pouches. Thus attired she rode in the company of her knight to jousts and tournaments, partook of the different diversions of the men, and by her levity and indiscretion afforded food to the lovers and retailers of scandal.<sup>2</sup> Whatever

<sup>1</sup> Chaucer, 198. Gaguin, apud Spond. 488.

<sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2507. In 1363 a statute was passed to repress extravagance of dress, to which in the preamble is attributed the poverty of the nation. Its prohibitions extend to six classes; 1. Labourers and workmen; 2. Masters and yeomen; 3. Gentlemen and esquires whose income does not exceed 100 marks per annum, and merchants and tradesmen whose goods are valued at 500*l.*; 4. Persons of the same degree as the last, but with lands or goods of twice the value; 5. Knights with an income not exceeding 200 marks



the reader may think of these censures, he must be entertained with the descriptions. But there is one discovery which I must not omit, that of the fanatics denominated Flagellants, or Whippers. It was their peculiar felicity not only to know that the mortality had been sent in punishment of sin, but to be in possession of the only means by which the remission of sin could be effected. Divided into companies of male and female devotees, under a leader and two masters, they stripped themselves naked to the waist, and publicly scourged themselves, or each other, till their shoulders were covered with blood. This expiatory ceremony was repeated every morning and afternoon for thirty-three days, equal in number to the years which Christ is thought to have lived upon earth; after which they returned to their former employments, cleansed from sin by “the baptism of blood.” The Flagellants appeared first in Hungary; but missionary societies were soon formed, and they hastened to impart the knowledge of the new gospel to foreign nations.<sup>1</sup> They spread with rapidity over Poland, Germany, and the Low Countries. From France they were excluded at the request of the pope, who had issued a severe constitution against them;<sup>2</sup> but a colony reached England, and landed in London, to the number of one hundred and twenty men and

per annum; 6. Ditto with an income of 400 marks or more. For each class the cloth is regulated by a fixed price. The use of silk, cloth of gold, gold and silver, and precious stones and furs, is absolutely forbidden to the three first; of cloth of gold, of cloaks, mantles, and gowns, trimmed with the more precious furs, to the two next. The last were allowed to wear all these things, with the exception of ermine and jewels. Ladies belonging to the two last classes might wear jewels in their head-dress.—Rot. Parl. ii. 278.

<sup>1</sup> Johnes's Froiss. ii. 263. Bzov. ad ann. 1349.

<sup>2</sup> L'Evesque has given us two stanzas of one of their hymns, p. 531. They run in the following strain :—

Through



CHAP.  
II.  
A.D. 1349.  
—

women. Each day at the appointed hour they assembled, ranged themselves in two lines, and moved slowly through the streets, scourging their naked shoulders, and chanting a sacred hymn. At a known signal all, with the exception of the last, threw themselves flat on the ground. He, as he passed by his companions, gave each a lash, and then also lay down. The others followed in succession, till every individual in his turn had received a stroke from the whole brotherhood. The citizens gazed and marvelled, pitied and commended; but they ventured no further. Their faith was too weak, or their feelings were too acute; and they allowed the strangers to monopolize to themselves this novel and extraordinary grace. The missionaries made not a single proselyte, and were compelled to return home with the barren satisfaction of having borne their testimony in the face of an unbelieving generation.<sup>1</sup>

Through love of man the Saviour came,  
Through love of man he died;  
He suffered want, reproach, and shame,  
Was scourged, and crucified.  
O! think then on thy Saviour's pain,  
And lash the sinner, lash again.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 169. Avesb. 179, 180. Murim. 103. Stow, 246.



## CHAPTER III.

## EDWARD III.

RENEWAL OF THE WAR IN FRANCE—VICTORY OF POITIERS—  
 LIBERATION OF THE KING OF SCOTS—PEACE WITH FRANCE—  
 RELEASE OF KING JOHN—WHO RETURNS AND DIES—WAR IN  
 SPAIN—VICTORY OF NAVARETTE—CONFISCATION OF GUIENNE—  
 SICKNESS AND DEATH OF THE BLACK PRINCE—DEATH OF THE  
 KING—AMENDMENTS IN THE LAWS AND ADMINISTRATION OF  
 JUSTICE—CONSTITUTION AND FORMS OF PARLIAMENT—MANNER  
 OF RAISING TAXES—CONSTITUTION OF THE ARMY AND NAVY.

EDWARD had now awaked from the dream of his ambition. Convinced by experience that the French crown lay beyond his reach, he offered to renounce his pretensions in exchange for the sovereignty of the provinces, which he held as a vassal in his own right, and in the right of his queen. By Philip the proposal was rejected with scorn; John, his son and successor, discovered, perhaps feigned, a willingness to accept it. When the envoys of the two powers met at Guisnes to prolong the armistice, they agreed that such an arrangement offered the only basis on which could be founded the hope of a permanent peace; and promises were given and received that the necessary renunciations on each side should be made in the presence of the new pontiff, Innocent VI.; that the prelates and barons of both kingdoms should signify their assent; and that each monarch should subject himself and his

CHAP.  
 III.  
 A.D. 1349.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1349.  
—

1355.  
Oct. 6.

dominions to the censures of the pope, in case he should ever violate the treaty. But this prospect, so consoling to the friends of humanity, was closed by the pride of the French people. The prelates and barons of England sent their procurators with full powers to the court of Innocent; but those of France declared that they would never suffer their king to surrender a sovereignty which formed the brightest jewel in the French crown.<sup>1</sup> Edward complained of the bad faith of his adversary; indignation urged him again to arms; and a plan of combined operations was concerted between him and his eldest son, now called from the colour of his armour, the Black Prince. The latter opened the campaign with an army of sixty thousand men. The orders issued to the soldiers were to pillage, burn, and destroy; and, that they might extend their ravages over a wider tract of country, they were divided into several "battles," with directions to keep during the march at a certain distance from each other. From the walls of Bordeaux the prince led his plunderers through the county of Armagnac to the foot of the Pyrenees; and turning to the north, continued his devastations till he arrived before the city of Toulouse. Two days were spent in fruitless attempts to provoke the enemy to battle; on the third he passed the Garonne by a ford, resumed his destructive career, and gave to the flames the suburbs of Carcassone, and the burgh of Narbonne. But the measures which had been taken to assemble a numerous army in his rear admonished him to return. The enemy retired at his approach; the English, loaden with plunder, marched back to Bor-

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 794—799, 808, 816. Knyght. 2607. Wals. 170. Murim. 105.



deaux; and the young Edward could boast, that in the short space of seven weeks he had laid in ashes more than five hundred cities, towns, and villages, in a populous district, which for a century had not been visited with the horrors of war.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1355.

During this expedition the king of England marched from Calais at the head of a gallant army; but all his plans were disconcerted by the superior policy of John, who cautiously shunned an engagement, but was careful, as he retired before his adversary, to lay waste the country around him. The English had not reached Amiens when the want of provisions compelled them to return. A scanty supply was procured in the Boulonnois; and they entered Calais on the tenth day after their departure from it. Here the French monarch sought to amuse Edward with proposals for a general battle; while his allies the Scots surprised Berwick, poured over the borders, and spread devastation through the northern counties. But at the first intelligence the king hastened to England, met his parliament at Westminster, obtained a liberal aid for six years, and ordered his forces to assemble in Northumberland. Berwick was recovered by the sole terror of his approach; and at Roxburgh he purchased from Baliol his patrimonial property in Galloway, together with his rights to the Scottish throne. That prince, advanced in age and without children, gladly surrendered a barren and disputed title for the present sum of five thousand marks, and

Nov. 2.

Nov. 12.

Nov. 6.

Nov. 25.

1356.  
Jan. 20.

<sup>1</sup> See the official account in Avesbury, 210—226. Carcassone was as large as York, Narbonne but little less than London.—Ibid. 220. The pretext for such devastations was that the French king drew a considerable part of his revenue from these provinces, and that by ravaging them his means of continuing the war would be proportionably abridged.—Ibid.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1356.  
—

a yearly rent of two thousand pounds.<sup>1</sup> From Roxburgh Edward marched through the Lothians with the banner of Scotland displayed before him; and the English, meeting no enemy, divided themselves into small bodies, and reduced to ashes every farm-house, village, and town, within twenty miles of the sea-coast. At Edinburgh their progress was again arrested by the want of provisions. A fleet, indeed, carrying a plentiful supply, had sailed for the harbour of Leith; but it had been driven back by a strong northerly wind; and Edward reluctantly ordered the army to return to England. The Scots hovered on its rear, and consoled their revenge with the slaughter of the few stragglers who loitered behind. The havoc caused by this expedition was long remembered by the natives, who in their subsequent incursions into England animated themselves to similar depredations by the cry of “the burnt Candlemas.”<sup>2</sup>

July 6.

The next year was signalized by the ever-memorable victory of Poitiers. The honour and plunder of the late campaign stimulated the prince of Wales to a similar attempt in a different direction. With a small army of twelve thousand men he left Bordeaux, ascended the Garonne as far as Agen, and turning to the left, overran the fertile provinces of Querci, Limousin, Auvergne, and Berri. Conquest was not his object, but to inflict on the natives the injuries of war, and to enrich his followers at the expense of the enemies. The harvest was trodden under foot; the cattle were slaughtered; the wines and provisions

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 832—844, 850, 859. Rot. Scot. i. 788, 799. Baliol died in 1363. Knyght. 2627.

<sup>2</sup> Avesbury, 235—238. Knyght. 2611. Lel. Coll. i. 566. Ford. xiv. 13.



which the army could not consume were destroyed; the farm-houses, villages, and towns were reduced to ashes; and every captive able to pay his ransom was conducted to Bordeaux. He turned from Issodun and Bourges, which threatened a vigorous resistance; but took Vierzon by storm, and Romorantin by setting it on fire. In this desolating expedition it does not seem to have occurred to the young prince that it was dangerous to penetrate so far into a powerful kingdom, or that his retreat might probably be intercepted by a more numerous force. The king of France had ordered his vassals to join him at Chartres, and crossing the Loire at Blois, pushed forward to the city of Poitiers. Edward, when it was too late, had commenced his march for the same city; but it was his misfortune to know nothing of his enemy but from vague and suspicious reports, while his own motions were accurately observed, and daily notified to the French monarch. One day, after a fatiguing march, the English had reached in the afternoon the village of Maupertuis, about five miles from Poitiers, when their van unexpectedly fell in with the rear of the enemy. The danger of his situation immediately flashed on the mind of the prince. "God help us," he exclaimed, "it only remains for us to fight bravely."<sup>1</sup>

In stating the amount of the hostile armies, historians are greatly at variance; but of their relative numbers a probable estimate may be formed from the testimony of Sir Thomas Gray, that John had eight thousand, Edward one thousand nine hundred coats of arms under his command.<sup>2</sup> This superiority, however, was partially balanced by the advantage of a position most unfavourable to the operations of the

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1356.

Sept. 4.

Sept. 17.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 155—157.

<sup>2</sup> Scala Chron. 175.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1356.

Sept. 18.

cavalry, which formed the real, the only strength of the French army. It was a rising ground, covered with vineyards, and intersected with hedges, accessible only in one point through a long and narrow lane, which in no part would admit of more than four horsemen abreast. In the morning the prince ordered his men-at-arms to form on foot in front of the road; one half of his archers he posted before them in the favourite figure of a portcullis or harrow; the other half he ordered to line all the hedges between the main body and the moor on which the enemy was encamped. John arrayed his army in three divisions on foot, under the separate command of his cousin the duke of Orleans, of his three eldest sons, and of himself and his fourth son, a youth in his sixteenth year. He retained on horseback only three small bodies, one of which, consisting of three hundred knights and esquires, selected from the whole army, was destined for the hazardous attempt of dispersing the archers in front of the English line. These arrangements were hardly completed when the cardinal Talleyrand Perigord arrived on the field, and with uplifted hands besought John to spare the blood of so many noble knights; nor stake on the uncertain issue of a battle the advantages which he would certainly obtain by negotiation. His repeated entreaties wrung from the king a reluctant consent; and riding to the prince, he represented to him the danger of his situation. "Save my honour," said the young Edward, "and the honour of my army, and I will readily listen to reasonable conditions." "Fair son," replied the cardinal, "you have answered wisely. Such conditions it shall be my task to procure." The legate was indefatigable in his endeavours. He rode from



army to army; he laboured to subdue the reluctance of the prince, and to lower the confidence of the king. Edward offered to restore his conquests, his spoil, and his captives, and not to bear arms against France for seven years. John, at the persuasion of the bishop of Chalons, and Eustace de Ribeaumont, demanded as his ultimatum, that the prince and a hundred of his knights should surrender themselves prisoners of war. The proposal was indignantly rejected; the prospect of a pacification vanished; and the night was spent in preparations for battle. To judge from the opposite numbers, no doubt could be entertained of its issue; but the recollection of the battle of Creci cheered the English with a gleam of hope, and occasionally staggered the confidence of their enemies.<sup>1</sup>

With the dawn of light, the trumpets summoned the two nations to their respective posts. The English had improved the interval to throw up trenches, and form a barricade of waggons, where their position seemed the least difficult of access. The French had made no other alteration than to place a body of reserve under the duke of Orleans in the rear, and to give the command of the first division to the two marshals, Arnold d'Andreghen and John de Clermont. The cardinal Talleyrand was again in the field; but his entreaties were fruitless, and he was told that so much importunity displeased the king, and might be attended with disagreeable consequences to himself. He then rode to convey the tidings to the prince, who coolly replied: "God defend the right!" and the departure of the legate was made the signal for the commencement of the battle. The French marshals, at the head of their cavalry, fearlessly entered the

Sept. 19.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 169.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1356.  
—

lane, and were suffered to advance without molestation. At last the order was given; the archers behind the hedges poured in destructive volleys of arrows; the passage was choked with men and horses in the agonies of death; and the confusion became irremediable, from the increasing pressure of the rest of the column. A few knights forced their way through every obstacle; others broke down the hedges, and in small bodies reached different points in front of the English; but not one could penetrate as far as the main body. The arrows were directed with too sure an aim to be eluded by address, and flew with a rapidity not to be resisted by ordinary armour. D'Andreghen was unhorsed and taken; Clermont was killed; the survivors, dismayed by their fate, paused, then retired slowly, and at last fled with precipitation to the second division, which received them within its ranks.

But that division now began to waver. The archers, the terror of the men-at-arms at a distance, advanced in front, and a body of six hundred English was unexpectedly seen to cross a neighbouring hill, and fall on the left flank. The knights in the rear hastily left their banners to secure their horses, and the lords who had the charge of the three princes, alarmed for their safety, sent them to Chauvigni under a guard of eight hundred lances. The departure of so large a body was mistaken for a flight, and the whole division in a few minutes dispersed.

The men-at-arms under Edward had hitherto been spectators of the combat. "Sir," said Sir John Chandos to the prince, "the field is won. Let us mount, and charge the French king. I know him for an intrepid knight, who will never flee from an enemy.



“It may be a bloody attempt; but, please God and  
 “St. George, he shall be our prisoner.” The advice  
 was approved, and the army advanced from the in-  
 closures to the moor, which had become the theatre  
 of battle. The duke of Athens, constable of France,  
 was the first to throw himself in their way; his shout  
 of “Mountjoy and St. Denis!” was answered by the  
 national cry of “St. George for Guienne!” and in a  
 few minutes the duke, with the greater part of his  
 followers, was slain. The German cavalry next  
 charged the English; but were easily dispersed, with  
 the loss of the three earls, their commanders. Lastly,  
 John himself, animated by despair (for his reserve  
 had fled already), led up his division on foot, and  
 fought for honour, when it was evidently too late to  
 fight for victory.<sup>1</sup>

When kings have fallen or have been taken in  
 battle, it has always been the fashion to describe them  
 as performing prodigies of valour; but John does not  
 owe his reputation to flattery or pity; it had been  
 previously established in several engagements, and  
 was equally acknowledged by friends and foes. For  
 a while he maintained the unequal contest. He had  
 received two wounds in the face; was beaten to the  
 ground; and was surrounded by a host of adversaries,  
 each of whom was anxious to secure so noble a prize.  
 A young knight, bursting through the crowd, bent  
 his knee, and requested him to surrender, or he would  
 lose his life. He asked for his cousin, the prince of  
 Wales. “He is not here,” returned the knight, “but

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 160. In relating the events of this battle, Froissart's arrangement is sometimes evidently erroneous. Thus he kills the constable of France before the flight of the three princes, and describes him as fighting after their flight. I have placed them in the order in which I conceive them to have happened.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1356.

“surrender to me, and I will conduct you to him.”  
“But who are you?” inquired the king. “Denis de  
“Morbecque,” he replied, “a knight of Artois, but  
“compelled to serve the king of England, because  
“I have been banished from France.” John surren-  
dered to him; and his son Philip was made prisoner  
at the same time.<sup>1</sup>

Thus ended the battle of Poitiers, in which the  
whole chivalry of France was defeated by a handful  
of Englishmen, and the king became the captive of  
the prince whom, he persuaded himself, he had in-  
closed in his toils. If on such an occasion the youth-  
ful mind of the conqueror had betrayed symptoms of  
vanity, it would have been pardonable; but Edward’s  
moderation in victory added to the admiration which  
he had inspired by his conduct in battle. There were  
in his army many knights, who could have disputed  
with him the palm of personal bravery; there was  
not perhaps one his equal in the more amiable accom-  
plishments of modesty and courtesy. He behaved  
to his royal captive with all the respect due to a  
sovereign, waited on him at table, soothed his afflic-  
tion by reminding him of his valour, and assured him,  
that in the estimation of all who had witnessed his  
conduct, he had that day fairly won “the prize and  
“garland” of chivalry.<sup>2</sup> The next morning he con-  
tinued his march with his prisoners to Bordeaux, and  
having concluded a truce for two years with the  
dauphin, the regent of France, returned to England  
in the spring. He landed with John at Sandwich,  
and proceeded by easy journeys to London. His

1357.  
March 23.

May 5.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 161. This writer’s account is full; a few additional  
particulars may be gleaned from the French and English historians.  
The names of the slain and of the captives may be seen in Avesbury,  
252.

<sup>2</sup> Froiss. c. 164.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1357.  
—

father had given the necessary directions for his entry into the capital, under the pretence of doing honour to the king of France; an unwelcome honour, which served to remind that monarch of his captivity, and to make him the principal ornament in the triumph of his conqueror. Arches were thrown across the streets, tapestry, plate, and arms were suspended from the windows, and the road was lined with crowds of spectators. The lord mayor at the head of more than a thousand citizens, divided into companies, distinguished by their respective devices and colours, proceeded to meet the prince and his attendants in Southwark. The king of France was mounted on a cream-coloured charger with magnificent trappings; the young Edward rode on a small pony, without any thing to distinguish him; but he did not elude the eager eyes of the spectators, who hailed with loud acclamations the conqueror of Poitiers. Some hours elapsed before the cavalcade could reach Westminster Hall, where the king was seated on his throne, surrounded by his prelates and barons. When John entered he rose, descended to embrace him, and led him to partake of a splendid banquet. The palace of the Savoy, and afterwards the castle of Windsor, was allotted to him and his son for their residence.<sup>1</sup>

May 24.

According to a notion, which had been prevalent for ages, the prisoner of war became the absolute property of the captor. The man, who might have deprived him of life, had acquired a right to his person; and, as he was swayed by avarice or generosity, passion or caprice, prolonged or shortened the detention of the captive. Edward, aware of the inconveniences arising from this system, had long attempted to abolish

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 170. Knyght. 1615. Murim. 110.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1357.

---

it, by withdrawing prisoners of consequence from the custody of individuals, and placing them under his own control. From those whom he dared not offend, he purchased their captives for a stipulated sum; others he compelled to surrender them at a price fixed by his council. Thus he secured two great advantages. He was enabled to retain in captivity the prisoner whose release might be prejudicial to his interests; and, as he was careful to demand more than he had given, was sure to replenish his coffers from their ransoms. At Nevil's Cross the king of Scotland, in the battle of Poitiers the king of France, had fallen into the hands of two obscure individuals, who surrendered their captives at the command of the sovereign, and thankfully accepted the remuneration which he assigned them.<sup>1</sup> Had he still entertained the chimerical design of conquering the two kingdoms, he would not have consented to the release of these monarchs; but he resolved to draw more solid advantages from his victories, and willingly entered into negotiations respecting the amount and the conditions of their ransoms. David was the first who had lost his liberty, and he remained eleven years the prisoner of his brother-in-law. He was permitted to visit Scotland, and confer with his subjects; but the demands of Edward were high; the Scots were poor and obstinate; and the unfortunate prince, after several

1351.

<sup>1</sup> Thus Coupland gave up the king of Scots, and received with the rank of a banneret lands to the yearly value of 600*l.*—Rym. iii. 542. Morbecque was less fortunate. Though the king of France declared that he was prisoner to Morbecque, who gave up his claim to Edward (Rym. vi. 72), an action was brought against him by an esquire, Barnard de Troie, who maintained that he himself was the real captor (Rym. vi. 154). Morbecque died before the cause was decided in the marshal's court. Edward occasionally allowed aid to the agents of Troie to pursue the suit (Rym. vi. 509, 510), but we are not acquainted with the result.



fruitless attempts, returned to his prison. Three years later another negotiation was opened; the ransom of David was fixed at ninety thousand marks, to be paid by equal instalments in nine years: Edward confirmed the treaty; the day for its execution was appointed, and commissioners were named, to give freedom to the king, and receive hostages for the payment of the money.<sup>1</sup> To his bitter disappointment, the king of France, a friend and ally, despatched an envoy to Scotland with powers to conclude a treaty, and distribute among the nobility forty thousand crowns. It was a paltry sum; but the glitter of the money furnished an argument which Scottish poverty could not resist. The parliament abandoned their king, refused to furnish the hostages for his release, and engaged to make war upon England.<sup>2</sup>

But Edward's expedition to Haddington and Edinburgh taught the Scots to doubt the policy of their engagements with France, and they consented to meet the English commissioners to treat of the liberation of their king, and a perpetual alliance between the two crowns. Their partiality, however, for the French induced them to protract the negotiations: for the space of three months difficulties were objected, explanations demanded, and expedients suggested and withdrawn; but the victory of Poitiers roused them from their apathy, and they now became as eager in making their proposals, as they had hitherto been backward in accepting the proposals of Edward. At length it was agreed that "Sir David, king of Scotland" (so Edward condescended to term him for the first time), should be set at liberty on the following conditions: that during the next ten years there

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1354.  
July 13.  
Oct. 5.

1357.  
July 12.

Oct. 3.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 791. Rot. Scot. i. 768—771. <sup>2</sup> Ford. xiv. 9.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1357.

—  
1357  
1358

Oct. 5.

Nov. 1.

should be a truce between the two powers; that the king of Scotland should pay the king of England one hundred thousand marks in twenty half-yearly instalments; and that in default of payment on any occasion, David should again surrender himself a captive within thirty days after the term had expired. To the faithful observance of these articles the Scottish prince swore on the gospels, and as an additional security named for hostages twenty heirs of the principal families in the kingdom, with nine earls, three of whom in rotation should always remain in the custody of the king of England. Edward, however, was not satisfied; and the deputies of the Scottish prelates, barons, and burghers, severally gave their bonds, by which these orders separately, and all the members individually, made themselves responsible for the payment of the whole, and of every part of the sum stipulated by the treaty. David immediately received his freedom, and returned to his own country.<sup>1</sup>

But the Scots soon discovered that they had it not in their power to fulfil their engagements. After two payments they fell into arrears; Edward complained; excuses were offered, and at first accepted; but his wants rendered him impatient, and for eight years the amity between the two crowns seemed perpetually

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 31, 33—38, 40—64. Murim. 111. After this Edward never, except in the treaty for the union of the two crowns, gave him the title of king of Scotland, but called him our dear brother Sir David of Brus, or of Scotland. Robert the successor of David complained, but obtained no other satisfaction than a declaration that the omission of the title should not invalidate the acquittances given for the payment of the ransom.—Rot. Scot. i. 953. Both by Edward and Richard II. Robert is always in official documents designated as the head of a party in Scotland, “le noble et puissant Prince Robert, notre chier cousyn d’Escosse, et les grantz de sa partie.”—Ibid. ii. 13, 57.



on the point of being interrupted. It was not that David was unwilling, but unable, to satisfy the obligation. He repeatedly visited his brother-in-law; and on one occasion came to an understanding with him, that on his demise without issue, the English king, who still claimed as the representative of Baliol, should ascend the Scottish throne, but on conditions which should preserve inviolate the rights and customs and independence of that kingdom. The very mention of such a project alarmed the pride of the Scots; and David had the prudence to desist from the attempt, and to open a new negotiation with Edward. After many discussions an agreement was made, by which all the penalties incurred by former failures were annulled, and a truce was granted for the long term of five-and-twenty years, on condition that the Scots should annually, during that period, pay into the English treasury the sum of six thousand marks; but a proviso was added, giving to either party, at the expiration of four years, the option of recommencing hostilities after six months' previous notice; stipulating, however, at the same time, that, if David were the aggressor, he should still be bound to the payment of the six thousand marks per annum; but if Edward, he should receive no more than the remaining balance of the original ransom.<sup>1</sup> It so happened that at the end of four years the king of England was engaged in war, and unwilling to draw on himself additional hostilities from Scotland, he consented to abandon his former demands, and to receive four thousand marks per annum, during fourteen years, which, with what had already been paid, would make up the first sum of ninety thousand marks.<sup>2</sup> David died soon after-

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1357.

1363.  
Nov. 27.

1365.  
June 12.

1369.  
July 20.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 426, 468.

<sup>2</sup> Id. vi. 632.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1369.

wards; but the great truce (so it was called) was carefully observed, and the money was faithfully paid by Robert his successor, the first of the house of Stuart who sat on the Scottish throne.

1357.  
March 23.

But to adjust the rival claims of the kings of England and France was a matter of infinitely greater difficulty. By the pope's mediation a form of peace, subject to the approbation of Edward, had been agreed upon at Bordeaux, before the prince of Wales and his captive sailed to England.<sup>1</sup> Two legates followed them to London, and the negotiations recommenced. Edward required an enormous ransom for the king and the other prisoners, and demanded, in return for his renunciation of all claim to the crown of France, the restoration of the provinces which had formerly belonged to his ancestors, to be holden by him in full sovereignty without any dependence on the French monarch. These were hard and galling conditions, yet such as perhaps might be justified by the existing state of affairs. The king of France was a captive; his son, the regent, was without authority; in some provinces the peasants had risen in arms, plundering and demolishing the castles of the nobles; others were pillaged by parties of marauders, who formerly belonged to the English army, but were now disavowed by Edward; in Paris the provost of the merchants at the head of the populace set the royal authority at defiance; and in Normandy the king of Navarre declared war against the regent, and was suspected of aspiring to the throne, as heir in the female line to Louis le Hutin. John, though he explained, and hesitated, and delayed, at length acceded to Edward's demands: the necessary instruments were

1359.  
March 24.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 319.



sealed; and two prisoners of war returned to France to lay the treaty before the states, and obtain their ratification. But when their contents were disclosed, they were received with horror. Every Frenchman felt for the degradation of his country; and a peremptory refusal was unanimously returned. Edward complained that he was again deceived by the insincerity of his adversaries, and bade them prepare for war at the termination of the truce. They endeavoured to retort the charge, by maintaining that the unreasonableness of his demands was a proof that he did not wish them to be accepted.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1359.

Aug. 12.

In the beginning of autumn the king sailed from Sandwich with eleven hundred transports, conveying the most numerous and best-appointed army which had been raised in England for more than a century. From Calais this mighty host marched in three divisions at a considerable distance from each other, with long trains of waggons in the two intervals.<sup>2</sup> In defiance of the season and of the enemy, they forced

Oct. 28.

Nov. 4.

Nov. 30.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 134. Knyght. 2616. Wals.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vi. 142. Froissart gives a curious account of the baggage of the army. "I must inform you that the king of England and his rich lords were followed by carts loaden with tents, pavilions, mills, and forges, to grind their corn, and make shoes for their horses, and every thing of that sort which might be wanting. For this purpose there were upwards of six thousand carts, each of them drawn by four good and strong horses, which had been transported from England. Upon these carts were also many vessels and small boats, made surprisingly well of boiled leather; they were large enough to contain three men, to enable them to fish any lake or pond, whatever might be its size; and they were of great use to the lords and barons during Lent; but the commonalty made use of what provisions they could get. The king had besides thirty falconers on horseback loaden with hawks; sixty couple of strong hounds, and as many greyhounds; so that every day he took the pleasure of hunting or fishing. Many lords had their hawks and hounds, as well as the king."—Johnes's Froiss. c. 208.



CHAP. their way through Picardy, Artois, and Cambresis, as  
 III. far as Rheims, where the kings of France were gene-  
 A.D. 1359. rally crowned. It was Edward's intention to have  
 — the ceremony performed on himself in that city; but  
 it was so gallantly defended by the archbishop and  
 the inhabitants, that after wasting seven weeks before  
 it, the king raised the siege and marched into the  
 1360. duchy of Burgundy. The duke Philip, unable to pro-  
 Jan. 20. tect his people against so powerful an enemy, pur-  
 March 10. chased a truce for three years by an engagement to  
 pay the sum of fifty thousand marks,<sup>1</sup> on the condition  
 that he should remain neutral; that his dominions  
 should be free from contributions and hostilities; that  
 his subjects should have permission to serve either  
 prince out of the limits of Burgundy; and that, if a  
 majority of the French peers should acquiesce in the  
 coronation of Edward as king of France, the dissent  
 of the duke should be considered as a violation of the  
 treaty.<sup>2</sup>

While Edward remained in Burgundy the English  
 nation was thrown into confusion by the sudden ap-  
 pearance of a French fleet, which swept the Channel,  
 and insulted the coast with impunity. Winchelsea  
 March 16. was taken and pillaged; and the report of the bar-  
 barities which had been exercised on the captives  
 induced men of every profession, clergy as well as  
 laity, to arm themselves in defence of their country.  
 The king of France for greater security was by com-  
 mand of the council removed from place to place;  
 troops were collected in the ports the most exposed  
 to the enemy; all merchant vessels were seized for  
 the king's use; the maritime counties were compelled

<sup>1</sup> 200,000 moutons d'or.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vi. 161—164. Scala Chr. 190.



to furnish a certain proportion of men-at-arms; and a fleet of eighty sail, with fourteen thousand men on board, was placed under the command of Sir John Paveley, prior of the Knights Hospitallers. The French now thought it prudent to retire; but the English, to revenge the atrocities committed at Winchelsea, followed them to their own coast, and took and plundered the small isle of Sein on the coast of Bretagne.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1360.  
—  
March 26.

From Burgundy Edward turned to the north, followed the course of the Seine, and within a fortnight planted his banner before the gates of Paris. During the festival of Easter the operations of war were suspended by mutual consent; but it was in vain that the papal legates attempted to open a negotiation. The lofty pretensions of the king of England were met with equal obstinacy by the dauphin; whose confidence was strengthened by the numbers that crowded to his standard, by the severity of the weather, and by the distress of the English from the scarcity of provisions. After sending an idle challenge to his adversary, and wreaking his vengeance on the suburbs by setting them on fire, Edward decamped, with a threat that in the summer he would pay the capital a second and more formidable visit. Necessity compelled him to take the shortest road to Bretagne. At Guillardon he was overtaken by the chancellor of France, with new proposals of peace. They were rejected; the chancellor persevered, and the king hastened his march. The precipitation of the English was like that of a defeated army, seeking to escape the pursuit of a victorious enemy; their route was

March 31.  
  
April 2.

April 7.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 167, 168, 180. According to the royal writs, the French put all the inhabitants of Winchelsea to the sword. Transcripts for New Rymer, 5.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1360.  
April 13.

covered with the dead bodies of men and horses, the victims of want and fatigue; and in the neighbourhood of Chartres they found themselves exposed to one of the most dreadful storms recorded in history. The violence of the wind, the bulk of the hailstones, the incessant glare of the lightning, and the sight of the thousands perishing around him, awakened in the heart of the king a sense of the horrors occasioned by his ambition. In a fit of remorse he sprang from his saddle, and stretching his arms towards the cathedral of Chartres, vowed to God and the Virgin that he would no longer object to proposals of peace, provided they were compatible with the preservation of his honour.<sup>1</sup>

May 8.

The negotiation now advanced with greater speed. On the 7th of May an armistice was concluded; on the 8th the treaty, emphatically called "the great peace," was signed at Bretigni by commissioners from each party. The king of England renounced his pretensions to the crown of France, and his claim to the ancient patrimonial possessions of his family, Normandy, Anjou, Touraine, and Maine; he restored all his conquests, with the exception of Calais and Guisnes; and reserved to himself Poitou and Guienne with their dependencies, and the county of Ponthieu, the inheritance of his mother. The dauphin, on the part of his father, consented that Edward and his heirs should possess for ever the full sovereignty of the countries secured to him by the treaty; that a ransom of three million crowns of gold should be paid for John within the course of six years; and that Edward should receive and detain as hostages, twenty-five French

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 209. According to Knyghton 6,000 horses perished on that day.—Knyght. 2624. Scala Chron. 193.



barons, sixteen of the prisoners made in the battle of Poitiers, and forty-two burghers from the most opulent cities in France.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1360.  
—

The king immediately hastened to England, and John was sent to Calais, that he might the more easily communicate with his son, the dauphin, who for that purpose repaired to Boulogne. Many unexpected difficulties sprung up; explanations were repeatedly demanded and given by each party, and three months elapsed before the treaty was solemnly ratified. Even then the ratification contained an important departure from the original articles. John was anxious to obtain from Edward his renunciation of all claim to the French crown; Edward to obtain from John a renunciation of the sovereignty over Guienne, Poitou, and Ponthieu. Yet these renunciations were not made; not that either of the kings refused to abide by the original treaty, but because the lawyers held, that no renunciation would be valid till all the other provisions were carried into execution. It was, however, mutually agreed, that every cession stipulated by the treaty should be made as soon as possible; that then the renunciations should be faithfully exchanged in the church of the Augustinians at Bruges, on the next feast of the Assumption, or at the latest on that of St. Andrew. In the mean time each monarch pledged his word that he would make no use of his claim, and that as far as the interest of the other was concerned it should be considered as formally renounced.<sup>2</sup>

May 18.

July 8.

Oct. 24.

After these preliminary steps the treaty was ratified with more than usual solemnity at Calais. Edward

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 175—196. Two crowns of gold were equal in value to an English noble.—Transcripts for New Rym. 55.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vi. 219—298.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1360.  
—  
Oct. 24.

and John met in the church of St. Nicholas, ascended the steps, and knelt together on the platform of the altar. The papal envoy, Audoyne, abbot of Cluni, who celebrated mass, turned to them after the consecration, holding the paten with the host on it in his hand, and having by his side the bishops of Winchester and Boulogne, who supported the missal. He recapitulated in their hearing the chief articles of the treaty, to which they were going to swear. Then Edward, after a short pause, addressed the king of France:—"Fair brother," said he, "I warn you, that it is not my intention to be bound by this oath, unless you on your part faithfully observe all the articles of the treaty." John signified his assent, and placing one hand on the paten, and the other on the missal, swore by the body of Christ and the holy gospels. He was followed by Edward; and a similar oath was administered to twenty-four French, and to twenty-seven English princes and barons.<sup>1</sup>

But John's authority had been impaired by his misfortunes, and he found it an easier matter to promise than to perform. After much opposition and repeated delays, he had been able to transfer to Edward the several districts mentioned in the treaty; but such was his poverty, that in four years he had not paid one-third of his ransom; and so stubborn was the opposition of his barons, that he never dared to make the renunciation of sovereignty to which he had bound himself. Whatever was the cause of the delay, no man questioned the king's honour; but the sincerity of his son was deemed more problematical. It was under the plea of that sovereignty that former

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 233. In the ratification of the treaty Edward did not assume his usual title of king of France.



CHAP.

III.

A.D. 1360.

kings of France had annexed to their crown the possession of many among the fairest provinces in the kingdom; and it was suspected that the reluctance of the dauphin arose from the hope that the same claim might hereafter afford him an opportunity of incorporating with his own dominions those which by the treaty had been secured to Edward and his successors.

It should, however, be admitted that the French government had also just reason of complaint. During the war, the liberality and reputation of Edward had drawn to his standard soldiers of fortune from every nation in Europe. These men could live only on the harvest reaped by their swords; and when the king ordered them to surrender the fortresses in which they had been quartered, they refused to obey, kept possession in defiance of the two monarchs, and supported themselves with the plunder of the country. It is computed that "the companies" (so they were named) amounted at one period to forty thousand men. The number is probably exaggerated; but they associated together, received every new comer into their ranks, and defeated a powerful army, which had been raised, and sent against them by the king of France. It was in vain that Edward issued threatening proclamations; the companies continued to plunder the French territories, till a liberal present and the prospect of greater advantages induced them to join the armies in Spain and Italy.<sup>1</sup>

Besides the difficulty arising from the hostilities of "the companies," there was much in the conduct of Edward himself which awakened suspicion. The particulars have not been transmitted to us; but we have a letter from the pontiff, in which Innocent entreats

1362.  
Jan. 13.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 212, 213. Rym. vi. 341. Scala Chr. 201.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1362.

Nov. 20.

1363.  
March 13.

Dec. 30.

him, for the sake of his own honour, and in reverence to his oath, to remove every doubt respecting his intentions, and to observe the treaty in all its articles.<sup>1</sup> Among the hostages in the custody of the king were four princes of the blood royal of France, and on that account called the lords of the fleurs de lys: the duke of Orleans, brother to king John, the dukes of Anjou and Berri, his sons, and the duke of Bourbon, his cousin. These were anxious to revisit their country; and Edward had assented to their request, on the condition that certain parts of the treaty should be explained in his favour, and that certain castles should be delivered into his hands. The explanations were given, and the four princes were bound to remain at Calais till the castles should be surrendered.<sup>2</sup> But in the surrender, unforeseen difficulties occurred; and the duke of Anjou, violating his parole, proceeded to Paris.<sup>3</sup> His father immediately resolved to visit the king of England; and to his council, which attempted to dissuade him, nobly replied, that if honour were banished from every other place, it should find an asylum in the breast of kings. He was desirous to exculpate himself from any connivance in the escape of the duke of Anjou, to obtain a modification of some articles in the treaty, and to provide for the security of his dominions during his intended crusade for the deliverance of the isle of Cyprus. But his courtiers could understand nothing of these reasons, and maintained that love and not honour was the real motive of his journey. He was received by Edward with every token of affection, resided in the Savoy with the three lords of the fleurs de lys, and spent

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 347.

<sup>2</sup> Id. 396, 400, 405, 410, 411.

<sup>3</sup> Id. 452.



some weeks in giving and receiving entertainments. But before he could transact any business of importance he was attacked with a dangerous illness, and after he had lingered a few weeks, expired. The king ordered his obsequies to be performed with royal magnificence,<sup>1</sup> and sent the corpse with a splendid retinue to France, where it was interred among the ashes of the French monarchs in the abbey church of St. Denis.

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1363.

1364.  
April 8.

May 7.

The death of John made no change in the existing relations between England and France. Charles, his successor, much as he disliked, was not yet in condition to violate with impunity the peace of Bretigni. The war, which still continued in Bretagne, between the two competitors, Charles of Blois and the young earl of Montfort, might have endangered the continuance of the peace; but the kings by mutual agreement allowed them to decide their quarrel by force of arms, and each without giving offence to the other sent assistance to his ally. Fortunately for the interests of both nations Charles was killed at the battle of Auray. The king of France after some delay acknowledged Montfort as the lawful duke; and that prince with Edward's consent did homage to him as his sovereign. Still the ravages of the "companies" gave occasions of complaint, and threatened to lead to a resumption of hostilities. Edward finding that his proclamations were disregarded, offered to march against them in person; but Charles had no wish to see the king of England again at the head of an army in the heart of France, and discovered an expedient, which in a great measure delivered his people from the oppression of these formidable banditti.

Sept. 29.

1365.  
April 12.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 217. Murim. 118.



CHAP. III. At this period the kingdom of Castile, which com-  
 A.D. 1350. prised the larger portion of Spain, was governed by  
 March 26. Don Pedro, who deserved and obtained the significant  
 epithet of "The Cruel." He ascended the throne at  
 the age of fifteen, began his reign by ordering, at the  
 instigation of his mother, the murder of his father's  
 mistress Leonora de Guzman, and distinguished each  
 following year by the most cruel executions, dictated  
 by avarice, suspicion, or caprice. He had married a  
 French princess, Blanche de Bourbon; but his affec-  
 tions were captivated by a Spanish lady, Maria di  
 Padilia, and his virtuous but unfortunate queen was  
 kept for years in confinement under the care of  
 Hinestrosa, uncle to the king's mistress. His tyranny  
 at last provoked resistance; the insurgents were com-  
 pelled to seek an asylum in Arragon; and Pedro  
 declared war against the king of Arragon as the  
 protector of the exiles. Among these were two of  
 the sons of Leonora de Guzman, Enrique, count of  
 Trastamare, and Tello, count of Biscay. Pedro im-  
 mediately wreaked his vengeance upon the three  
 remaining brothers, Fadrique, Pedro, and Juan; and  
 added to them several other noble victims, the queen  
 dowager of Arragon, the wife of Tello, and Juan of  
 Arragon, with his consort. Blanche herself shortly  
 afterwards experienced a similar fate, and was be-  
 lieved to have perished by poison. The king of  
 Arragon, unable to withstand the superior power of  
 his enemy, gladly purchased a peace; and the exiles,  
 to elude the vengeance of Pedro, retired into France.<sup>1</sup>  
 To this circumstance that kingdom owed its deliverance  
 from the "companies." It was proposed that Don  
 Enrique should lead them under his banner against

<sup>1</sup> Mariana, xvi. 18; xvii. 6.



the tyrant; the king of France and the pope engaged to advance the money for the expedition; and the celebrated Du Guesclin concluded the treaty with the chiefs of the adventurers.<sup>1</sup> With the addition of the French knights, who were eager to punish the murderer of Blanche, they marched through Arragon to the number of thirty thousand cavalry, and placed Enrique on the throne of Castile without a battle. It was in vain that Pedro summoned his military tenants. They rejoiced at the distress of the despot, who fled through Portugal to Corunna, threw himself on board a vessel in the harbour, and with his three daughters arrived in safety at Bayonne.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1361.  
—

1366.

The king of England, soon after the peace of Breigny, had united all his dominions between the Loire and the Pyrenees into one principality, and had bestowed it on his eldest son with the title of prince of Aquitaine. The young Edward, who had married his cousin Joan, countess of Kent, and relict of Sir Thomas Holand, kept his court at Bordeaux at the time when Pedro landed at Bayonne, and the reader may perhaps blush for "the flower of chivalry," when he hears of the cordial welcome and cheering promises which were given to the Castilian. The prince advanced to meet him; received him with honour; assured him of his friendship and protection, and engaged to replace him on the throne from which he had been driven.<sup>3</sup> Pedro, indeed, stood before him covered with the blood of his wife, of his three illegitimate brothers, and of many other illustrious and innocent victims. But the merit or demerit of

1361.

1366.  
Sept. 23.

<sup>1</sup> Edward forbade them to enter Spain, Dec. 5, 1365.—Rym. vi. 481.

<sup>2</sup> Froiss. c. 228, 229.

<sup>3</sup> See the treaties between them in Rymer, vi. 512—533.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1366.

1367.  
Feb.

April 1.

the suppliant was not the subject of consideration; as an hereditary sovereign, despoiled of his crown, he had a claim on the pity of every true knight; he was willing to repay with liberality the aid which should be afforded him; and if further justification were necessary, it might be found in the connection which had long subsisted both by blood and treaty between the royal houses of England and Castile. Information of Edward's design was secretly transmitted to "the companies." The name of their favourite leader shook their fidelity, and twelve thousand men, under Sir John Calverly and Sir Robert Knowles, abandoned the standard of Enrique, and hastened to Guienne. The consent of the king of Navarre, without whose permission the army could not have passed the Pyrenees, was purchased by the grant of Guipuscoa and the promise of a liberal donative; and three bodies of cavalry, each of which amounted to ten thousand men, marched in succession through the valley of Roncesvalles, the supposed scene of the exploits of the fabulous Orlando. It was in the depth of winter; the snow beat in the faces of the troops; and to cold and fatigue was added the want of provisions in a barren and mountainous district. At Pampeluna, the army was relieved through the fear rather than the friendship of the king of Navarre; and from Pampeluna the young Edward continued his march to the frontiers of Castile.<sup>1</sup> Two days before the battle he sent a letter by a herald to Don Enrique. In it he expressed his surprise that a prince of such noble qualities, and the son of a king, should prove disloyal to his sovereign; observed that he was come in pursuance of

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. c. 234, 235.



CHAP.

III.

A.D. 1367.

April 2.

former treaties to replace Pedro on the throne; and offered his mediation to spare the effusion of blood, and restore friendship between the two brothers. Enrique in his answer maintained that Pedro had forfeited the crown for his crimes; that he himself had been called to the succession by God and the people; and that it was his duty, which he would perform, to repel injury by injury, and uphold the honour and independence of Castile. This answer closed every prospect of peace, and both armies prepared for the battle on the morrow.<sup>1</sup>

April 3.

The next morning the plains between Navarette and Najora were covered with the two armies. Enrique brought into the field sixty thousand infantry, thirty thousand cavalry, ten thousand archers, and four thousand French knights and esquires, who had followed Du Guesclin to Spain, to revenge the fate of Blanche de Bourbon. The army of the prince did not amount to thirty thousand men; but the disparity was more in the numbers than in real force; for the Spanish foot soldiers, though with their slings they might annoy the cavalry at a distance, were of little use in close combat; and the men-at-arms under the prince were veterans, who had long been inured to victory. At the very onset Tello, the brother of Enrique, fled with his division; but the battle was obstinately maintained by the exertions of Enrique himself, and the courage of Du Guesclin. At length the latter was made prisoner; the French men-at-arms were dispersed; their opponents attacked the Spaniards in flank; and Enrique

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 554—557. The letters in Froissart are very different from the real letters published by Rymer. That amusing writer collected his information from hearsay, and of course was frequently the dupe of ignorant or deceitful narrators.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1367.

mounting his genet, fled to Calahorra, and thence proceeded to his friend the king of Arragon at Valencia.<sup>1</sup> Six thousand of the enemy remained on the field of battle. The prisoners amounted to two thousand,<sup>2</sup> whom the sanguinary Pedro had prepared to immolate to his revenge. At the request, however, of the prince, a request which he dared not refuse, he pardoned them, with the exception of Gomez Carillo, accepted their homage, and proceeded to take possession of Burgos, which immediately opened its gates. In a few weeks deputies from the several provinces swore allegiance to their former sovereign; but he no sooner recovered his crown than he was harassed with the demands of his allies, which he had not the power, perhaps not the inclination, to satisfy. He amused the prince, however, with protestations of his good faith; persuaded him to put the army in cantonments in the neighbourhood of Valladolid, and promised to go to Seville and return thence by Whitsunday, with money sufficient to fulfil all his engagements. Whitsunday came; three more weeks were suffered to elapse, and still there was no intelligence of Don Pedro. Edward began to be alarmed; he saw his army wasting away through the heat of the climate, and suffering through the want of provisions, and despatched a few knights to discover the king of Spain, and enforce his demands. They found him at Seville, and returned with an answer, which convinced the prince that no reliance was to be placed on the faith of the ungrateful Castilian. He imme-

June 6.

June 26.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 557. Knyght. 2629. Mur. 120. Froiss. c. 239. Du Guesclin paid 100,000 doubles d'or for his ransom.—Thresor des Chart. 303. On a former occasion he had been taken by Sir John Chandos, and had then paid 40,000 francs d'or.—Ibid.

<sup>2</sup> Wilkins, Con. iii. 67.



diately put his army in motion, and returned through the kingdom of Navarre into his own territories. Thus ended this glorious, but, as the sequel proved, most unfortunate expedition. The tyrant recovered his throne at the expense of his ally; and the prince returned to Bordeaux with an exhausted treasury and a shattered constitution.<sup>1</sup>

The reader is aware that none of the renunciations stipulated by the peace of Bretigni had been hitherto made by either of the parties. With whom the blame should rest, it is now difficult to determine. By the French writers it is attributed to Edward, who had neglected to send his messengers to Bruges at the time appointed; and who perhaps wished to retain his claim to the French crown till he should see all the articles of the treaty faithfully executed. The English, on the contrary, accuse the insincerity of the king of France; and it must be confessed that there appears much in his conduct to require explanation. It was in vain that Edward demanded the arrears of the ransom of John, the return of the prisoners who had broken their parole, and the substitution of new hostages in the place of those who were dead. Every claim was artfully eluded. Charles seemed to wait for an opportunity of recovering the advantages lost by his father; and the circumstances of the time were of a nature to flatter him with the hope of success. The natives of the ceded districts, and even many among those of Guienne, loudly expressed their discontent under the government of the English, whose avarice monopolized every situation of profit, and whose arrogance claimed the merit of every successful engagement. The vigour, which had once

<sup>1</sup> Froiss, c. 240, 241.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1367.

1368.

distinguished the king, had begun to disappear, and a gradual decay with increasing years equally enfeebled his mind and body. The Black Prince, whose very name had formerly struck terror into every enemy, had brought from Spain a disease, which baffled the skill of his physicians, and reduced him to such a state of weakness that he was unable to mount on horseback. He had grown melancholy and morose. Plunged by the bad faith of Pedro into an abyss of debt, he could neither defray the expenses of his court, the most magnificent in Europe, nor fulfil his contracts with the troops who had followed him into Spain. He removed "the companies," who began to plunder, by giving them a tacit permission to resume their depredations on the French territory, and, to satisfy the growing demands of his creditors, proposed to the states the imposition of a hearth-tax for the five following years. Several provinces cheerfully gave their consent; the count of Armagnac, and most of the lords whose lands skirted the foot of the Pyrenees, maintained that it would be a violation of their privileges. Necessity made the prince obstinate, and the discontented barons repaired to Paris, appealed from the oppression of their immediate, to the protection of their superior lord, the king of France.<sup>1</sup>

Charles by his wary and successful policy had obtained from his subjects the flattering epithet of "the wise." On the present occasion he acted with his usual caution. The appeal was neither received nor rejected; but he secretly assured the appellants of his protection, promised to indemnify them against the resentment of the prince, and under different pretexts detained them for twelve months in his capital. In

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. 242, 244.



the meanwhile he employed his brother the duke of Anjou, who had been appointed governor of Langue-  
 doc, to foment the discontent of the Poitevins, and  
 despatched emissaries to tempt the fidelity of the lords  
 and burghers in Ponthieu. An alliance was also  
 concluded between him and Don Enrique, who had  
 again entered Castile with a fair prospect of success,  
 and was actually employed in the siege of Toledo, the  
 capital of the province. In return for the aid to be  
 furnished to him by France, the Spanish prince en-  
 gaged to enter as a principal into any war which  
 Charles might wage against the king of England,  
 particularly during the following spring. In a short  
 time he was joined by Du Guesclin at the head of two  
 thousand knights, defeated his rival in battle, and  
 pursued the fugitive to the strong castle of Montiel.  
 During the siege of that fortress, either by accident  
 or treachery, the two brothers were brought into the  
 presence of each other in the tent of a French knight;  
 they immediately grappled; Pedro threw Enrique on  
 the floor; but in the struggle Enrique despatched his  
 adversary with a poniard. From that moment op-  
 position ceased; Enrique mounted the throne a second  
 time, and found himself at leisure to fulfil his engage-  
 ment with the French monarch.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
 III.  
 A.D. 1368.

Nov. 20.

1369.  
 March 14.

March 24.

At the appointed time Charles threw off the mask,  
 and summoned the prince of Aquitaine to appear in  
 his court and answer the complaint of his vassals.  
 The young Edward replied that he would obey, but

Jan. 25.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 598, 622. In *L'Art de vérifier les Dates* (i. 757), we are told, que la plupart des modernes sont dans l'erreur en rapportant la mort de don Pedre á l'an 1369; but the treaty mentioned above shows that they are correct; as it proves that he was alive on the 20th of *November*, 1368, and all the authorities agree that he was slain in the spring of the year.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1369.  
—

May.

at the head of sixty thousand men ; an idle vaunt, which he had never the power to execute. His father, more apprehensive of the result, seriously offered to renounce his claim to the French crown, and to the provinces of Normandy, Maine, and Anjou, on condition that Charles should equally renounce his right of sovereignty over the provinces now possessed by the king of England. The proposal was referred to the French peers, who advised their sovereign to reply by a denunciation of war. Ponthieu, Poitou, and Guienne were immediately entered by hostile armies ; the swords of the invaders were aided by the disaffection of the natives ; and after a decent delay all the English possessions in France were annexed by a judicial sentence to the French crown. Conquest followed conquest ; and at the end of six years Charles had not only recovered the districts lost by his father, but had also made himself master of the far greater part of Guienne.

June 11.

Edward, however, did not tamely surrender his transmarine dominions. He convoked his parliament, inveighed with bitterness against the perfidy of Charles, reassumed the title of king of France, and offered to

June 19.

every adventurer the possession of such fiefs as he might conquer in that kingdom.<sup>1</sup> As a French fleet rode triumphant in the Channel, he ordered all his subjects between the ages of sixteen and sixty, without distinction of layman or ecclesiastic, to be arrayed for the defence of the country.<sup>2</sup> Reinforcements were

July 6.

Nov.

sent to the Black Prince, and his brother the duke of

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 229, 300, 302. Rym. 621, 626.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vi. 631. He previously asked the consent of the prelates in parliament, *queux prelatz granterent de ce faire en eide du Roialme, et de seinte Esglise.*—Rot. Parl. ii. 302.



CHAP.  
III.  
A. D. 1369.

---

Lancaster landed with an army at Calais ; but Charles had forbidden his generals to hazard an engagement ; and while the English pillaged the country, the French extended their conquests by the capture of towns and fortresses. The prince with his wife and son lay in the castle of Angoulême, a prey to disease and vexation, till he was roused from inactivity by the intelligence that the dukes of Anjou and Berri were advancing from different points to besiege him with their united forces. He declared that his enemies should find him in the field ; his standard was unfurled at Cognac ; and there was still such a magic in his name, that the French princes disbanded their armies, and garrisoned their conquests. Among these was Limoges, the capital of le Limousin, which had been surrendered by the cowardice, perhaps betrayed by the perfidy, of the bishop and the inhabitants. Edward, who had always distinguished them with particular marks of his favour, swore by the soul of his father, that he would punish their ingratitude or perish in the attempt. A month was spent in undermining the walls ; early in the morning fire was put to the temporary supports ; and at six o'clock a wide breach opened a way into the heart of the city. The inhabitants immediately abandoned all hope of defence ; and men, women, and children threw themselves at the feet of the prince soliciting mercy. It seemed as if the vindictive soul of Don Pedro had been transfused into the breast of the English hero ; no prayers, no representations could mollify his resentment ; and orders were issued for the promiscuous massacre of the whole population. “ There was not “ that day,” says Froissart, “ a man in Limoges, with “ a heart so hardened, or so little sense of religion, as

1370.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1370.

---

“not to bewail the unfortunate scene before his eyes. Upwards of three thousand men, women, and children were slaughtered. God have mercy on their souls ! for they were veritable martyrs.”

The French knights, who formed the garrison, eighty in number, drew themselves up with their backs to a wall, resolved to sell their lives as dear as possible ; and the English, dismounting, that they might be on the same footing with their opponents, advanced to the attack. The superiority of numbers was balanced by the courage of despair ; and the prince, who from his litter was a spectator of the combat, felt so delighted with the prowess displayed by each party, that he offered by proclamation, life and the liberty of ransom to those who might choose to surrender. The survivors gladly accepted the boon ; the city was pillaged and reduced to ashes.<sup>1</sup>

The reader has often had occasion to admire the character of the Black Prince. By the contemporary writers he is portrayed as the mirror of knighthood, the first and greatest of heroes. But the massacre of Limoges has left a foul blot on his memory. Among a thousand similar instances, it proves that the institution of chivalry had less influence in civilizing the human race than is sometimes ascribed to it. It gave indeed to courage some external embellishments ; it regulated the laws of courtesy ; it inculcated principles, often erroneous principles, of honour ; but the sterner and more vindictive passions were effectually beyond its control ; and the most accomplished knights of the age occasionally betrayed a ferocity of disposition which would not have disgraced their barbarian

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. iv. 94, 101—106. Murim. Cont. 125. Wil. Wyrres. 436.



ancestors of the sixth century.<sup>1</sup> But the military career of the prince was now terminated. The effort had exhausted his enfeebled constitution; and by the advice of his physicians he returned to England, where, at a distance from the court and from political concerns, he lingered for six years, cheering the gloom which hung over him with the hope that his second son Richard (the eldest was dead) would succeed to the crown, and uphold the renown of his family.

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1370.

All the great military operations of the English during Edward's reign seem to have been conducted on the same plan, of penetrating into the heart of France, and staking the success of the campaign on the issue of a general battle. But the policy of his rival taught him to avoid an engagement. Sir Robert Knowles, at the head of the English army, was permitted to march at his pleasure through Picardy, Champagne, and Brie, to insult the walls of the capital, and to return to winter quarters on the borders of Bretagne.<sup>2</sup> On another occasion the duke of Lancaster with equal ease led his troops through the very centre of the kingdom, traversing Picardy, Champagne, Burgundy, and Auvergne, till he arrived in Guienne.<sup>3</sup> But such expeditions, though they inflicted severe calamities on the wretched inhabitants of the country, were attended with occasional losses, and gave the invaders no permanent advantage; while the French steadily pursued the same plan of dismembering the English territories, and of securing

July.

1373.  
July 20.

<sup>1</sup> I may add, that chivalry also generated and nourished a profound contempt for the other orders in society. The Black Prince spared the lives of the *knights*, who held Limoges against him; but shed with pleasure the meaner blood of the inhabitants, three thousand men, women, and children!

<sup>2</sup> Froiss. ii. c. 16, 20.

<sup>3</sup> Murim. Cont. 128.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1373.  
—

1372.  
June 23.

every conquest with strong fortresses and garrisons. The only action of consequence during the war was fought between the English and Spanish fleets in the road of Rochelle. When Pedro, king of Castile, fell by the hand of his bastard brother, his two daughters, Constance and Isabella, resided in Guienne, whence they came to England, and were married to two sons of Edward, the former to the duke of Lancaster, the latter to the earl of Cambridge.<sup>1</sup> The duke immediately assumed the arms and title of king of Castile, and Don Enrique, convinced that the security of his crown depended on the success of the French, entered with greater cheerfulness into the war. The Spanish fleet lay before Rochelle, to intercept the succours which were expected from England under the earl of Pembroke, who during two days maintained the unequal contest. The ships of the enemy were of greater bulk, better prepared for action, and supplied with cannon; and the courage of the English served only to add to the magnitude of their loss. Not a sail escaped. The earl was taken; most of his ships, with the military chest, were sunk.<sup>2</sup>

1375.  
Feb. 11.

June 27.

In the year 1374 England retained of her transmarine possessions only Calais, Bordeaux, Bayonne, and a few places on the Dordogne. Edward, weary of this succession of disasters, obtained a truce, which at short intervals was repeatedly prolonged till his death. The pope continually exhorted the kings to convert the truce into a peace; but their resentments were too violent, their pretensions too high, to allow any adjustment. Charles demanded the restoration

<sup>1</sup> They were both illegitimate; but don Pedro, after the death of Maria di Padilea, took an oath that she was really his wife, and declared her daughters his heirs.—Mariana, xvii. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Froiss. c. 34—36. Murim. Cont. 128, Wil. Wyr. 437.



CHAP.

III.

A.D. 1376.

March 12.

of Calais, and the repayment of the sums which had been advanced as part of the ransom of his father; Edward spurned these conditions, and insisted that his adversary should renounce all claim to the sovereignty of Guienne.<sup>1</sup>

In the judgment of the people, an unfortunate, is always an incapable, administration. As long as the king was surrounded with the splendour of victory, his commands were cheerfully obeyed, and his wants readily supplied by his admiring and obsequious subjects. But when his good fortune began to fail, they freely criticised the measures of his government, blamed his ministers, and with every grant of money wrung from him some new concession. The duke of Lancaster, who, during the illness of his elder brother, and the declining age of his father, had assumed the reins of administration, became the object of public hatred; and the prince of Wales, whether it were that he was jealous of the ambition, or really disapproved of the conduct of the duke, lent his name and influence to the opposition.<sup>2</sup> The parliament (it was long known among the people by the name of the Good parliament) coupled with the grant of a supply, a strong, though respectful, remonstrance. The commons, by the mouth of their speaker, Sir Peter de la Mere, steward to the earl of March, enumerated the plentiful aids which the king had obtained from his people, and the immense sums which he had received

April 28.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 51, 35, 68, 100.

<sup>2</sup> This fact we learn from the continuator of Murimuth, a contemporary. (*Quo principe extincto*) *protinus extinctus est cum eo effectus parlamenti. Nam illi de communitate, cum quibus ipse tenebat, non sunt talem exitum dicti parlamenti sortiti, qualem pro meliori habuisse sperabant* (p. 134.) See also transcript of a contemporary chronicle, *Archæol.* xx. 215.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1376.  
—

for the ransoms of the two kings of Scotland and France; and asserted their firm conviction, that if the royal revenue had been faithfully administered, there could have been no necessity of laying additional burdens on the nation. They hinted that the present administration was unequal to the task of conducting the public business; and requested that ten or twelve new members might be added to the council. Though they did not venture to mention the duke himself, they impeached several of his favourites of extortion, of selling illegal grants, of raising loans for their own profit, and of purchasing the king's debts at a low price, and paying themselves in full out of the treasury. The lord Latimer, the chamberlain, was expelled from the council for ever, and put under arrest; the lord Nevil was deprived of all his offices; and Richard Lyons, William Elys, John Peeche, and Adam Bury, farmers of the customs and of certain monopolies, were thrown into prison and placed at the king's mercy.<sup>1</sup> The next object of prosecution was Alice Perrers, a married woman of distinguished wit and beauty, who had been lady of the bedchamber to Queen Philippa, and after her death had acquired so powerful an ascendancy over the mind of the king, that she had obtained a grant of the jewels belonging to her deceased mistress,<sup>2</sup> and was allowed by him to dispense the royal favour. Confident in her own power, she affected to despise the indignation of the public. On one occasion at a tournament in Cheapside she appeared on a white palfrey, in splendid attire, as lady of the sun, and mistress of the day; on other occasions she abused her influence with the king to impede the due administration of justice in

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 322—329.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vii. 28.



favour of those who had purchased her protection. To check the presumption of this woman, the following ordinance was made: "Whereas complaint has been brought before the king, that some women have pursued causes and actions in the king's courts by way of maintenance, and for hire and reward, which thing displeases the king; the king forbids that any woman do it hereafter, and in particular Alice Perrers, under the penalty of forfeiting all that the said Alice can forfeit, and of being banished out of the realm."<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1376.  
—

While the commons were thus engaged in the work of reform, they suddenly lost their firmest support by the death of the prince of Wales.<sup>2</sup> This event was deplored as a national misfortune; but the duke of Lancaster, if we may believe a contemporary chronicler, took the opportunity to propose that the succession to the crown should be settled on the heirs male of the king, to the exclusion of females, a settlement which, by passing over the line of Lionel, his elder brother, would have rendered the duke himself the next heir after Richard of Bordeaux, then in his tenth year, the only surviving son of the Black Prince.<sup>3</sup> The commons refused their concurrence; and, as if they sought to mark the ambition of Lancaster, petitioned that the child might be introduced to parliament as heir-apparent to the throne. Their

June 8.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 329. Murimuth (p. 134) says they petitioned that she might be removed from the king's person; Walsingham repeats the same (p. 189), and most modern writers tell us that she actually was removed. But it appears from the rolls that nothing more was done than is mentioned above.

<sup>2</sup> He died at Canterbury, and was buried in the cathedral, where his tomb may be still seen.

<sup>3</sup> It has been published in Archæol. xxii. 212. I believe the statement, both because it explains the introduction of Richard of Bordeaux into parliament, and many occurrences in the next reign.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1376.  
June 25.

request was granted. The archbishop of Canterbury presented the young prince to the two houses, calling him the fair and perfect image of his father, the successor to all his rights, and of course the apparent heir to the crown. The commons received him with acclamations of joy, and preferred another petition that he might be declared prince of Wales; but their eagerness was checked by the lords, who replied, that the grant of such honours "belonged not to the prelates or barons either in or out of parliament, but exclusively to the sovereign, who usually exercised his prerogative on some great festival." They promised, however, to represent the wish of the commons to the king, and to support it with all their influence.<sup>1</sup>

The power of the "Good parliament" expired with the prince of Wales, and many of their petitions were now refused by the king. After the dissolution, the new council of twelve was removed;<sup>2</sup> the duke of Lancaster resumed the chief place in the administration, and his former partisans were restored to favour. They immediately wreaked their vengeance on their accusers. Sir Peter de la Mere, the speaker, who had made himself peculiarly obnoxious, was arrested under false pretences, and closely imprisoned in the castle of Nottingham or Newark; and William of Wickham, the celebrated bishop of Winchester, was accused of several misdemeanors in his office of chancellor, and, without being heard, was condemned by Skipwith, one of the judges, to forfeit his temporalities, and to keep himself at the distance of twenty miles

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 330.

<sup>2</sup> The king is said to have been irritated by the refractory conduct of the earl of Warwick, one of the number.—Murim. Con. 135.



from the king's person. In the next parliament the majority of the commons was composed of the duke's creatures, who had been illegally returned by the sheriffs at his request; and his steward, Sir Thomas Hungerford, was appointed the speaker. The court, however, found it a difficult task either to silence the members who had belonged to the last parliament, and who demanded the trial or liberation of Sir Peter de la Mere; or to satisfy the prelates, who required justice to be done to their colleague the bishop of Winchester. To intimidate the latter, the duke espoused the defence of Wycliffe, who had been summoned before the prelates on a charge of teaching heterodox tenets; and as the minority in the commons was supported by the inhabitants of London, threw out some hints of taking into the king's hands the liberties of the city. Accompanied by the lord Percy, whom he had lately made earl marshal, he attended at the trial of Wycliffe; but the injurious words which he addressed to Courtenay, bishop of London, excited considerable indignation, and the audience, rising in a tumult, declared that they would protect the prelate at the danger of their lives. The next morning the populace assembled, demolished the Marshalsea, proceeded to the Savoy, the duke's palace, and not finding him there, reversed his arms as those of a traitor, and killed a clergyman whom they mistook for the lord Percy. The bishop by his entreaties prevailed on these misguided men to retire to their homes; but the duke was not to be appeased by their subsequent offers of submission. The mayor and aldermen were deprived of their offices, which he immediately filled with his own dependents.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
Jan. 27.

Feb. 19.

Feb. 20.

<sup>1</sup> Murim. Cont. 135—137. Wals. 190, 192. Stow, 273, 275.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

The sitting of the parliament had been interrupted by this tumult. As soon as it was resumed, an aid was granted of a poll-tax of one shilling on every beneficed clergyman, and of fourpence on every other individual, male or female, above the age of fourteen years, mendicants only excepted; and in return the king published a general pardon for all trespasses, negligences, misprisions, and ignorances, because he had now completed his jubilee, the fiftieth year of his reign.<sup>1</sup> Feb. 22. The next day the commons presented seven bills for the reversal of the judgments given in the last parliament, but before they could receive the royal assent an end was put to the session by a message from the king. Feb. 24.

From this time Edward lived in obscurity at Eltham, abandoned to the care or mercy of Alice Perrers. As he daily grew weaker, she removed with him from Eltham to Shene, but kept him in ignorance of his approaching dissolution. On the morning of his death she drew the ring from his finger and departed. The other domestics had separated to plunder the palace; but a priest, who chanced to be present, hastening to the bed of the dying monarch, admonished him of his situation, and bade him prepare himself to appear before his Creator. June 21. Edward, who had just strength sufficient to thank him, took a crucifix into his hands, kissed it, wept, and expired.<sup>2</sup>

The king had been once married, to Philippa of

<sup>1</sup> In the rolls it is said to be now his jubilee, the fiftieth year of his reign; yet it is certain that his fiftieth year expired in the preceding month. From this pardon the bishop of Winchester was excluded by name.—Rot. Parl. ii. 364. In June, however, by the influence of Alice Perrers, to whom he made a valuable present, he obtained the restoration of his temporalities.—Stow, 275. Rym. vii. 148

<sup>2</sup> Walsing. 192.



Hainault, who died in 1369, and was buried at Westminster. She bore him a numerous family, seven sons and five daughters ; of whom three sons and one daughter survived him. His death happened in the sixty-fifth year of his life, and the fifty-first of his reign.

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

In personal accomplishments Edward is said to have been superior, in mental powers to have been equal, to any of his predecessors. More than usual care had been bestowed on his education ; and he could not only speak the English and French, but also understood the German and Latin languages. His elocution was graceful, his conversation entertaining, his behaviour dignified, but also attractive. To the fashionable amusements of hunting and hawking he was much addicted ; but to these he preferred the more warlike exercise of the tournament ; and his subjects, at the conclusion of the exhibition, often burst into transports of applause, when they found that the unknown knight, whose prowess they admired, proved to be their own sovereign.<sup>1</sup> Of his courage

<sup>1</sup> It is to Edward's partiality for these exhibitions that we are indebted for the celebrated order of the Garter. The date of its institution had been long a subject of doubt ; but that question has in a great measure been set at rest by the accounts of the Great Wardrobe, from December 1345 to January 1349, which have lately been published by Sir Harris Nicolas, with a very instructive memoir, in *Archæologia*, xxxi. p. 1—163. Among the variety of articles delivered from the wardrobe for the use of the king and his guests at different festivals and *hostiludi*, no mention is made of such an ornament as the garter before his return from France in October, 1347 ; but after this, and in the next year, we meet with entries, of a streamer powdered with blue garters ; of a cloak, tunic, supertionie hood, and two jupons for the king, all powdered with garters, having buckles and pendants of silver gilt ; of a bed for the king powdered with garters, having this motto " *Hony soit q. mal y pense ;*" of twelve blue garters embroidered with gold and silk, and having the same motto (*ibid.* 3, 34, 40), and, in another document, of twenty-four garters given by Prince Edward to the knights com-



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

as a combatant, and his abilities as a general, the reader will have formed a competent opinion from the preceding pages. The astonishing victories, which cast so much glory on one period of his reign, appear to have dazzled the eyes both of his subjects and foreigners, who placed him in the first rank of conquerors; but the disasters which clouded the evening of his life have furnished a proof that his ambition was greater than his judgment. He was at last convinced that the crowns of France and Scotland were beyond his reach; but not till he had exhausted the strength of the nation by a series of gigantic but fruitless efforts. Before his death all his conquests, with the exception of Calais, had slipped from his grasp; the greater part of his hereditary dominions on the continent had been torn from him by a rival, whom he formerly despised; and a succession of short and precarious truces was sought and accepted as a boon by the monarch who in his more fortunate days had dictated the peace of Bretigni.

panions of the Garter—*militibus de societate Garterii*.—*Ibid.* 160. Here we have in 1348 all the elements required for the constitution of the order. It already existed, at least in an inchoate state. In 1450—we have no documents for the intermediate year—it had been fully established; for we then find the king, in company with the knights of the order, keeping the feast of St. George at Windsor, on April the 23rd, and the same again in the following year.

But these accounts throw no light on the question, why did Edward select the device of a garter with the inscription “*Hony soit q. mal y pense*,” or “Shame to him, that thinks evil therein.” We find that he varied his motto—*dictamen regis*—on many occasions. After his return from France we have, 1st, the motto just mentioned; 2nd, at Oxford in the same year, the following worked in his tunic and shield:—

Hay, hay, the wythe swan,

By Godes soule I am thy man;

and 3rd, a third—“*It. is. as. it. is.*”—worked on the border of his doublet at his plays on the feast of the Epiphany.—*Ibid.* 34, 43, 44. Assuredly such fancies originated in accidental occurrences, too trifling in themselves to deserve the notice of history.



Still the military expeditions of Edward, attended as they were with a great expenditure of money and effusion of blood, became in the result productive of advantages, which had neither been intended nor foreseen by their author. By plunging the king into debt, they rendered him more dependent on the people, who, while they bitterly complained of the increasing load of taxation, secured by the temporary sacrifice of their money permanent benefits both for themselves and posterity. There was scarcely a grievance, introduced by the ingenuity of feudal lawyers or the arrogance of feudal superiority, for which they did not procure a legal, and often an effectual, remedy. It was not indeed a time when even parliamentary statutes were faithfully observed. But during a reign of fifty years the commons annually preferred the same complaints; the king annually made the same grants; and at length by the mere dint of repeated complaint and repeated concession, the grievances were in most cases considerably mitigated, in some entirely removed.

I. One of the most intolerable of these grievances was that of purveyance, which, in defiance of former enactments, continued to press heavily on the people. Wherever the king travelled, every horse and carriage within many miles on each side of the road was put in requisition for the conveyance of his suite, which seldom amounted to less, often to more, than one thousand persons. All these lodged themselves at discretion in the neighbourhood, exacted provisions from the inhabitants both clergy and laymen, and on many occasions wantonly destroyed what they were unable to consume. In the same manner purveyance for the king's table and household was made



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

by his officers, wherever he stopped; orders were issued to different counties to supply his usual places of residence with meat, corn, forage, and every article necessary for the support of man and beast; and, as often as it seemed expedient, provisions were seized for the use of the royal garrisons, of the expeditions which sailed to the continent, and occasionally of the armies stationed in foreign parts. Nor was this privilege confined to the king, or the members of his family; it was often, though illegally, assumed by the great officers of state, occasionally by noblemen, whose power had raised them above the laws. Originally, indeed, it had been intended that in every case full payment should be made to the owners; but numberless frauds and extortions were practised by the purveyors, who took whatever they pleased, fixed the price themselves, and in consideration of presents, burdened some to relieve others. Nor was it easy to obtain payment. Often the claimants were referred by the treasurer of the household to the sheriff of the county, and again by the sheriff to the officers of the Exchequer; every demand was subject to the most jealous investigation; legal subtleties were employed to elude or delay payment; and the creditor was often compelled, after a fruitless pursuit for several years, to relinquish his claim through lassitude and despair. Edward to every remonstrance replied, that he would not surrender one of the most valuable rights of the crown, but that he was always ready to concur in any measures which might serve to lighten the burden to his subjects. By successive statutes it was enacted that the right of purveyance should be confined to the king, the queen, and the heir to the throne; that even *they* should provide



their own horses and carriages; that the persons of their household should be billeted on the inhabitants by the officers of each township; that all disputes respecting the price should be decided by the constable and four jurors of the neighbourhood; that payment of small sums should be made within twenty-four hours, of larger sums in four months; that all infractions of these orders should be cognizable before the justices of peace; and that the transgressors should be treated as robbers and felons, according to the nature of the offence.<sup>1</sup> Thus a strong barrier was at last opposed to the extortions and encroachments of the purveyors; but the right itself was obstinately retained by succeeding monarchs, and three centuries elapsed before it was completely abolished in the reign of Charles II.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

II. Much also was done at this period to clear the administration of justice from the most revolting of the abuses with which it was polluted. It has already been observed that the king's courts were originally established more for the advantage of the monarch than of the people; and his officers acted as if they had been fully aware of this object. They seem to have thought that, if they could only pour large sums

<sup>1</sup> All these grievances with their remedies are repeatedly noticed in the Rolls, ii. 9, 12, 140, 161, 166, 167, 168, 169, 171, 203, 228, 229, 260, 269, 319, 446. The following account by the canon of Dunstaple of the purveyance for Edward, first prince of Wales, during his stay at St. Alban's and Langley in 1294, will explain fully the nature of this grievance. *Ducenta fercula per diem suæ coquinæ sufficere non valebant, et quicquid expendere(t) in se vel suis, non dato pretio capiebat. Ministri ejus omnia victualia ad forum venientia, et etiam caseum et ova et quidquid venale fuit, vel in domibus burgensium latuit non venale, auferebant, et vix cuiquam talliam reliquerunt. A pistoribus etiam et brasiatricibus panem et cerevisiam ceperunt, et non habentes panem et cerevisiam sibi facere compulerunt*—Chron. Duns. 632.

<sup>2</sup> 12 Charles II. c. 24.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

of money into the exchequer, they might enrich themselves and their dependents with impunity at the expense of the suitors. The rolls of parliament are filled with complaints of their injustice; and many of the improvements which we at present enjoy are owing to the pertinacity with which the commons annually repeated their complaints. The sheriffs, coroners, and escheators were armed with powers which rendered them the tyrants of their respective counties. By repeated acts it was provided that they should be selected from the opulent landholders within the shire, and that they should no longer hold their offices in fee for a term of years, but be constantly removed at the expiration of twelve months; provisions which gave to the aggrieved the opportunity of meeting his oppressor on an equality in a court of justice, and secured to him a fund for the payment of any damages which might be awarded.<sup>1</sup> The conservators of the peace were gradually intrusted with additional powers; they were authorized to take sureties for good behaviour, were appointed justices to hear and determine felonies and trespasses, and were ordered to hold their sessions four times in the year.<sup>2</sup> Severe penalties were enacted against the "maintainers of false quarrels," that is, those who lodged groundless informations, or suborned false witnesses, or conspired to retard the decision of litigated cases. To silence the complaint, and remove the temptation, of bribery in the judges, a competent addition was made to their salaries;<sup>3</sup> and, as a check

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 15, 229, 261, 355.

<sup>2</sup> Stat. of Realm, 258, 264-6, 283, 346, 388-9. Rot. Parl. ii. 271.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. ii. 141. The salary of the chief justice of the King's Bench was 40*l.* per annum, of a puisne judge 40 marks.—Dugd. Orig. Jurid. xl.



on the proceedings in the courts, it was ordained that all informations should be laid, and all pleas should be held, in the English, instead of the French language.<sup>1</sup> This was the most valuable improvement. The parties in the cause, who before were ignorant of what was said in their favour or against them, could now satisfy themselves, whether their interests had been betrayed or defended; and, what was of still greater importance, the knowledge that the spectators understood the language of the proceedings operated as a powerful stimulus to fidelity in the advocate, and impartiality in the judge.<sup>2</sup>

Another improvement, the benefit of which is still felt by the inhabitants of these realms, was, the Statute of Treasons passed in “the blessed parliament,” as it was called, in 1351. High treason is of all civil offences the most heinous in the eye of the law, which for that reason subjects the culprit to the utmost severity of punishment. Yet this crime was so loosely defined, that the judges claimed the power of creating constructive treasons, and frequently convicted of that offence persons whose real guilt amounted only to felony or trespass. Thus in the year 1347 a knight of Hertfordshire had confined a man in his castle, and detained him a prisoner till he paid a ransom of ninety pounds. This was a common practice at the time; but at the trial the offender was adjudged to suffer the penalty of treason, because he had “ac-  
“croached,” or drawn to himself the exercise of a power

<sup>1</sup> Stat. of Realm, 273.

<sup>2</sup> In the statute itself it was, however, added, that though causes should be pleaded, shown, defended, answered, debated and judged in English, they should be entered and enrolled in Latin.—Statutes of the Realm, 375, 376. It is remarkable that the next parliament was opened in the English language.—Rot. Parl. li. 275.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

belonging to the sovereign. The decision created a general alarm ; and the commons petitioned the same year that it should be declared in parliament what act constituted such an accroachment, as should deprive the lord of the advantage of the forfeiture, and the delinquent of the benefit of clergy. An evasive answer was returned from the throne, that the nature of such acts was sufficiently declared in the judgments themselves. But the commons persevered ; and when in 1351 they granted an aid, they renewed their petition, and extorted a satisfactory answer. It was determined that treason should, for the future, be confined to seven offences ; the compassing or imagining the death of the king, or of his consort, or of their eldest son and heir ; the violation of the queen's person, or of the wife of the king's son and heir, or of the king's eldest daughter not being married ;<sup>1</sup> the levying of war within the realm, or the adhering to the king's foreign enemies, which should be proved by some overt act to the satisfaction of a competent jury ; the counterfeiting of the great seal ; the counterfeiting of the current coin of the realm ; and the murder of certain great officers of state, or of the king's judges in the actual exercise of their duty. We should not, however, attribute this limitation to enlightened views in the legislature. It was probably owing to considerations of individual interest. For other transgressions, if the offender forfeited his lands, they reverted to the lord of the fee, of whom he held them ; but in convictions

<sup>1</sup> Why was the legislature so anxious to guard the honour of the eldest daughter exclusively, and that only as long as she was unmarried ? Probably that the king might not lose the opportunity of marrying her, and with it the aid which he had a right to demand of his tenants on that occasion. He could demand no aid at the marriage of his younger daughters.



for high treason the lands were for ever lost to the lord, and from that moment annexed to the crown. Hence it became an object to the king to give the utmost extension to the law of treason, and to the mesne lords to confine it within the narrowest limits.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

III. The people had now learned to appreciate the utility of frequent parliaments. These assemblies offered them protection from the insolence and extortion of the officers of the crown, and repeatedly procured for them the confirmation of their liberties from the sovereign. They “amended errors, removed abuses, and enforced the execution of the new statutes, which, had it not been for their vigilance, would speedily have fallen into desuetude.”<sup>2</sup> During the reign of the king’s father the “ordainers” had appointed that parliament should be holden (not called) at least once a year: but as the right of the “ordainers” might be questioned, this statute was re-enacted by legitimate authority, and frequent requests were made that it should be faithfully observed.<sup>3</sup> But Edward stood not in need of such admonitions; his wants perpetually compelled him to solicit the aid of his people; and more than seventy writs for the meeting of parliament were issued during the fifty years of his reign.

As every thing connected with the history of these assemblies must be interesting to an Englishman, I shall attempt to delineate the form which they assumed, and the manner in which they were conducted

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 239.

<sup>2</sup> Pur maintenance de ditz articles et estatutz, et redrescer diverses mischiefs et grevances que viegnent de jour en autre—faire corrections en Roialme des erroours et fauxtees, si nuls y soient trovez.—Rot. Parl. ii. 271, 355.

<sup>3</sup> Stat. of Realm, i. 265, 374. Rot. Parl. ii. 271, 355.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

during this period. A full parliament consisted of the three estates, the clergy, the lords, and the commons.

1. The reader will recollect that the dignitaries of the church were summoned to appear in person, the chapters and inferior orders by their representatives; that they obeyed with reluctance; and that at length they succeeded in obtaining an exemption from the burden. There can be no doubt that, while they continued to sit with the lords and commons, they possessed the same authority as either of their co-estates;<sup>1</sup> nor do they appear to have forfeited it, even when they were suffered to exchange attendance in parliament for attendance in convocation. They were summoned, indeed, by the archbishop, but at the requisition of the king, and for the same purpose as the lords and commons. They were called together “to treat, consult, and ordain, with respect to such matters as should be submitted to them on the part of the crown,” either by the king in person, or by the royal commissioners, “and to give their advice, aid, and consent, to those measures which should then be ordained for the defence and profit of the church and the state.”<sup>2</sup> As, however, they sat in a dif-

<sup>1</sup> They attended, *ad tractandum cum prælatis, magnatibus et aliis proceribus regni super negociis, pro quibus dictum parliamentum summonitum fuit, et ad consenciendum hiis, que in eodem parlamento super negociis illis contigerit ordinari.*—Rot. Parl. i. 189.

<sup>2</sup> *Ad tractandum, consulendum et ordinandum super negociis prædictis, quæ vobis et illis ibidem plenius ex parte nostra exponentur, et suum consilium et auxilium impendendum, necnon ad consentiendum hiis, que tunc pro defensione et utilitate ecclesiæ et regni utrorumque, favente domino, contigerit ordinari.*—Rot. Parl. ii. 450. On this account the clergy are sometimes said to have been in the parliament, though they really sat in convocation; which makes it difficult to determine at what period they ceased to attend conjointly with the lords and commons. The last time in which their presence can be inferred with certainty from the rolls was the year 1332, when



ferent place, refused to interfere in civil enactments, and communicate with the king through the prelates, who were members of the house of lords, the word parliament soon came to signify, in common acceptation, the other two estates assembled by a royal summons to consult with the king.

2. The second estate, “the great men of the land, “or peers of the land”—so are they usually designated in the official documents of the age—were tenants by barony, or in chief of the crown. They were divided as now, into lords spiritual and lords temporal. At first the former amounted to a great number; for writs were issued to every ecclesiastic who, in virtue of his benefice, held any portion of land in chief of the king. This to the less opulent proved an intolerable burden; for parliaments were often called twice or even thrice in the year, and holden in very distant parts of the kingdom. Hence in place of personal attendance they were accustomed to send excuses or proxies, or attorneys, till so many by degrees obtained an entire exemption, that the lords spiritual were reduced to a few priors, several abbots, and the twenty bishops. The lords temporal, as in former times, were still denominated “the greater barons,”<sup>1</sup> a denomination which aptly distinguished those who had enfeoffed a great number of knights with lands in their respective baronies, from others,

they refused to take into consideration one of the subjects proposed by the king, because it had no relation to the church.—Rot. Parl. ii. 64.

<sup>1</sup> Les grauntz de la terre; les piers de la terre; magnates terræ; procures terræ.—Rolls and Writs, passim. Qui tiennent par baronie, et queux sont et seront somonez par brief.—Rolls, ii. 368. When the abbot of St. James’s without Northampton was summoned by writ, he pleaded successfully against it, que riens ne tient en chef du Roy ne par baronie.—Parl. Writs, ii. div. ii. 199.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

who could command the services of only two or three.<sup>1</sup> The first of these the king was *compelled* to summon; for without their attendance, or that of the major part of them, those who were present constantly refused to act, and prayed permission to wait for a full parliament. But, as he descended the scale, he was at liberty to follow his own judgment; and, whilst there was neither law nor custom to draw the exact line of demarcation between the greater and lesser barons, he could admit or exclude according to his own interest or pleasure. In the course of time, by the extinction of families; by alienations in consequence of sales, gifts, and bequests; by the partition of baronies among co-heiresses, and by the dismemberment of properties which by forfeiture or escheat had fallen to the crown, and had been granted out again in different proportions, it frequently happened that the lineal representatives of the former "great men of the land" had descended from the high station once occupied by their ancestors, and that men of new families in comparison had risen on the scale of property and influence. Hence in the selection from these two classes the sovereign seems to have exercised his own discretion. Some of them we find to have been summoned only once, some oftener, some to every parliament during one particular reign, and some to every parliament during their lives. The same irregularity is observable with respect to their heirs, who

<sup>1</sup> Barones Majores.—Parl. Writs, i. 1; ii. div. ii. 181. Baronia Comitum Reginaldi, summa CCXV. milites. Baronia Simonis de Bello campo, XLIII. mil. Walter Fitzwilliam, baro de Northumberland, iii. mil.—See Lib. Nig. Scac. 131, 198, 329. No inference can be drawn from the addition of sire, monsire, and seigneur to the name, for we find all these occasionally given to the same person.—See Rolls, ii. 61, 65, 68, 69, 110, 112, 118.



in some cases are constantly summoned, in some occasionally, and in others never.<sup>1</sup> To account for all these anomalies by the supposal of omissions in the lists on the part of the clerks, and of absence, sickness, or nonage on the part of the barons, offers a very unsatisfactory solution of the difficulty. The more reasonable conclusion is that the selection of members, with an exception perhaps in favour of the earls, depended on the pleasure of the sovereign; that the only qualification demanded was that they should be landed proprietors holding in chief of the crown, and that no man could claim a writ as of right, on the mere ground that he himself previously, or his ancestors before him, had possessed a seat in virtue of such writ in parliament.

In addition to the greater barons, the privy counselors, the judges, and the chancellor with his clerks, were also summoned. Their attendance was required to aid in protecting the rights of the crown, and in deciding the numerous suits at law brought before the lords. There was indeed some difference in the form of the writ; for these were called “to advise and “treat with the king and the rest of the *council*,” the barons “to advise and treat with the king and the “other *prelates and great men* ;” but as far as may be deduced from the language of the rolls, several of them, the judges at least, sat, deliberated, and voted,

<sup>1</sup> See the excellent remarks of Sir N. Harris Nicolas on “Baronies “by Tenure,” xvii. I will add one instance of the irregular manner in which writs were issued. In 1311 Edward II. summoned a parliament to meet in August, and afterwards prorogued it to November. For each meeting writs were issued; for the first to fifty-five barons; for the second to thirty-eight. Of the fifty-five included in the first, thirty-three were omitted in the second; and eighteen were included in the second, who had been omitted in the first.—Parl. Writs, div. ii. 38, i. 57.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

as if they possessed equal authority with any other members of the house.<sup>1</sup>

3. The third estate, "the little men of the commons,"<sup>2</sup> was composed of two orders, the knights of the shires, and the representatives of the cities and boroughs. 1. The shires that returned members amounted only to thirty-six; for the counties palatine of Durham and Chester, and the provinces of North and South Wales, held parliaments of their own, the first under the presidency of the bishop, the others under that of their respective justiciaries.<sup>3</sup> The number of representatives from each county varied at first from two to four,<sup>4</sup> but was afterwards fixed by custom at two. These assembled together, and formed a body second only in importance to the greater barons. They were, the most of them, allied by descent or marriage to the first families in the land; they spoke in the name of their constituents, all the knights and free-tenants in their several counties; and hence their wishes, conveyed in the modest form of petitions, commanded attention and deference both from the house of peers and the sovereign. In every contest for the crown they were brought forward to bear the brunt of the battle; and it was to their courage and perseverance that the people of England owed the better part of their liberties. They were chosen or

<sup>1</sup> They were appointed on committees.—Rolls, ii. 61, 113. They joined in the grant of money—*est assentu et accorde par—et tous les justices de l'Engleterre* (103); and they gave their assent with the other lords to the petitions of the commons (154).

<sup>2</sup> *Les petitz de la commune*.—Ibid. 104.

<sup>3</sup> Parl. Writs, i. 4, 390; ii. 510, App. 132. Occasionally representatives from Wales were summoned to the English parliament.—Ibid. 364.

<sup>4</sup> In 1283 and 1294 four knights were summoned (Parl. Writs, i. 10, 26), in 1290 two or three.—Ibid. 21.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

appointed to be chosen in the county court; but from the moment that their importance became manifest, both the crown and the lords began to interfere in the elections, and sought to secure the agency of the sheriff, who, confident of impunity, often returned whom he pleased, sometimes returned himself.<sup>1</sup> 2.

The representatives of the cities and boroughs were resident inhabitants elected by their fellow-citizens and burgesses.<sup>2</sup> Their number varied annually; for the crown relied on the discretion of the sheriffs, and these officers, though they were careful to forward writs to the more opulent towns, admitted or excluded the others according to their own caprice or judgment.<sup>3</sup> This class of members, as it consisted wholly of merchants and tradesmen, was to the great men of the land an object of contempt. They had, however, the wisdom to make common cause with the knights; on every emergency they lent to the latter the weight of their number; and in the course of a few years the two orders were so blended together that every distinction between them was obliterated. Both were called to parliament under the same form of writ, “to consent to whatever might be ordained by common advice;” both were empowered by their constituents to act in their name; of both at their election it was required that they should find sureties for their personal attendance, and should possess property within the county, to the end that the sheriff

<sup>1</sup> Rolls, ii. 310. Stat. of Realm, i. 394.

<sup>2</sup> *Qi deivont eslire de eaux meismes tieles qi dievont respondre pur eux.*—Ibid. 368. Though the writ to the sheriffs of London required two only to be sent, sometimes as many as six were chosen; but the object appears to have been that two of them might always attend. *Ita quod duo ipsorum semper sint parati.*—Parl. Writs, ii. div. ii. 359.

<sup>3</sup> Brady on Boroughs, 310.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

might be able to levy by distress the fines to which they should become liable for neglect of duty;<sup>1</sup> and both were entitled to a salary from their constituents for their time of service, from the day of their departure to that of their return. Their wages may be stated at four shillings per day for a knight and two shillings for a citizen or a burgess.<sup>2</sup> Hence it happened that, whilst the more opulent boroughs were solicitous to send representatives to parliament, the poorer towns sought to escape that honour, that they might not be burthened with the expense. Several petitions to that purpose are still extant.<sup>3</sup>

The parliament was seldom opened on the very day mentioned in the writs; but its commencement was adjourned by proclamation till the majority of the members had arrived.<sup>4</sup> They met at an early hour in

<sup>1</sup> See the returns of the members, with the names of their sureties, collected by Sir F. Palgrave in *Parl. Writs*, passim.

<sup>2</sup> The wages of the knights were raised by a county rate; those of the citizens and burgesses by a rate on their constituents. At first the writs ordered them to be paid their reasonable expenses at the rate usually allowed in similar cases; but after the year 1313, it grew by degrees into a custom to specify the sum in the writ addressed to the sheriff or mayor, which sum varied from 2s. 6d. to 5s. for the knights, and from 1s. 8d. to 2s. for the others.

<sup>3</sup> *Rolls of Parl.* i. 327; ii. 459. *Rym.* vi. 502, 593.

<sup>4</sup> Many of those summoned did not attend. Thus in the parliament which met at Carlisle on the 21st of January, 1307, of ten earls, one was excused by the king, and one absent in Wales; of seventy-six barons and bannerets, two were excused by the king, three by the justices, one was in Wales, and two sent their attorneys; of twenty bishops, one was excused, ten sent proxies: of forty-eight abbots, one was excused, thirty-two sent proxies, and two engaged by letter to assent to whatever might be determined. The freeholders of Shropshire, instead of representatives, sent an attorney, *ad consentiendum pro eisdem hiis, que fieri contingerent in isto parlamento et ad faciendum ulterius, &c.*—*Rot. Parl.* i. 188—191. The chancellor examined the proxies and attorneys, and laid the names of the defaulters before the king, who had it in his power to punish them by fine.—*Ibid.* i. 350; ii. 146, 147.



the morning,<sup>1</sup> and in the presence of the king, or, if his absence were unavoidable, in that of the regent or royal commissioner. One of the ministers, generally the chancellor, addressed them in a speech of some length, explaining the events which had occurred since the last session, enumerating the principal subjects proposed for their consideration, and displaying in strong colours the solicitude of the king for the peace and prosperity of his faithful people. Two committees and a clerk of parliament were then appointed. The duty of the committees was to hear and try the petitions which might be presented; of the clerk to record the transactions of the parliament, and to publish two proclamations in different parts of the city and suburbs. The first forbade any person besides the king's officers and the guards for the preservation of the peace to carry arms during the session; reserving, however, to the earls and barons the right of wearing their swords, except in the council and in the royal presence. The second prohibited in the neighbourhood of the palace every kind of game likely to interrupt the free access of those who had business at the parliament.<sup>2</sup>

The opinion that the several estates sat and voted together derives no support from the language of the rolls. It is evident that as their grants, their petitions, and their interests were different, they would deliberate separately; and we find that the chancellor, after he had proposed to them in common the subjects for their consideration, pointed out to them different

<sup>1</sup> At the hour of prime.—Ibid. ii. 316. At eight in the morning.—Ib. 321.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. ii. 126, 135, et passim. The games consisted in throwing bars across the streets, pulling off the hoods or hats of the passengers, laying hold of them, &c.—Ibid.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

chambers, in which they should assemble to frame their answers, and decide on their petitions.<sup>1</sup> Occasionally they had no communication with each other. Thus in 1282 the representatives of the counties and boroughs south of Trent met the king's commissioners at Northampton, those north of Trent at York on the same day, and both granted him a thirtieth, on condition that "the great men" should grant an equal sum. In 1360 the commons were divided into five different bodies, deliberating at the same time in five different places, Westminster, Worcester, Taunton, Lincoln, and Leicester.<sup>2</sup> In fact, there was at first no great reason why the several estates should be in communication with each other; for the clergy confined their attention to the concerns of the church; to the lords were submitted the higher interests of the state; and the commons were employed in matters of trade and commerce, as best suited to their habits and condition of life. It was long before the advice of the latter was required by the crown; and when Edward at last condescended to ask it, the sequel proved that it was to obtain a pretext to call upon them for money. They could not, he afterwards observed, refuse to aid him in the prosecution of those plans into which he had been led by their advice. Taught by experience, they sometimes declined the task. In 1347 he requested their opinion, and received the following answer: "Most dread lord, as to your war and the array of your army, we are so

<sup>1</sup> Parl. Writs, i. 10, 12. New Rym. iii. 468.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 136, 165. The year assigned for their separation is 1339, when the commons refused to grant the same aid as the lords without instructions from their constituents. But it is evident that at that very time they deliberated separately (Rot. Parl. ii. 104); and we find them deliberating separately long before.—Ibid. 64, 66, 69.



“ ignorant and simple that we cannot give you advice. CHAP.  
 “ We therefore beg your gracious lordship to excuse III.  
 “ us, and with the advice of the great men, and of A.D. 1377.  
 “ the sages of your council, to ordain what you may  
 “ judge to be for your honour and the honour of your  
 “ kingdom; and whatever shall be thus ordained with  
 “ the agreement and consent of you, and of the great  
 “ men aforesaid, we shall also approve, and hold to be  
 “ firm and established.”<sup>1</sup>

In the language of the time the law was said to emanate from the will of the king, at the petition of the subject. But it seems to have been a principle universally recognised, that no one estate could, without its consent, be bound by any such law granted at the prayer of another. Before the dismissal of the parliament<sup>2</sup> the king called the members before him; the petitions of the clergy, the lords, and the commons were successively read; and the answers were given, which had been previously settled in the council. If the object of the petition was confined to the interests of the body which petitioned, the grant of the king was deemed sufficient; but if in any of its bearings it could affect the other estates, their assent was also required. In what manner they

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 165. To give answers, and deliver addresses it was necessary to appoint a speaker. It has been said that Sir Thomas Hungerford is the first upon record. In 1377 il avoist les paroles pur les communes.—Ibid. 374. But Sir Peter de la Mere preceded him immediately, and Sir William Trussel thirty-four years before.—Ibid. 136.

<sup>2</sup> The two houses were often dismissed at different times, as soon as they had finished the business allotted to them. Sometimes the knights of shires were dismissed, and the citizens and burgesses were detained.—Ibid. 64, 69, 310. The form of dismissal seems to indicate that they were still liable to serve again when called upon.—Rot. Parl. i. 159. There are also instances in which they were required to attend a second time.—Brad. i. 152. 157.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

gave their assent is unknown. Sometimes perhaps it was procured by previous communication between the different bodies; sometimes it might be signified by acclamation before the king. It should, however, be observed that the clergy, in pursuance of their resolution to abstain from all interference in secular matters, seldom, perhaps never, gave their assent to the petitions of the lords or commons. If they found themselves aggrieved, they prayed for redress in the next parliament.

The principle which has just been described was the chief weapon with which the commons fought all their battles. To every unjust imposition, every oppressive ordinance, they opposed the unanswerable argument that their assent was necessary to render it legal. In 1346 Edward, by proclamation, compelled every owner of land to furnish horsemen and archers in proportion to his estate, and required for the same purpose a certain sum of money from every city and borough. The commons petitioned against the ordinance, on the ground that it had been issued without their assent. Edward replied, that it was a measure of necessity, and had been adopted by the advice and with the consent of the lords. They renewed their petition, and repeated their argument. The king promised that the ordinance should not form a precedent for the future exaction. Still they were not satisfied, but added remonstrance to remonstrance, till it was at last enacted that ordinances of that description, issued without the common consent of parliament, should be deemed contrary to the liberties of the realm.<sup>1</sup> In the same spirit they required and obtained a declaration that no petition of

<sup>1</sup> Brad. i. 160, 166, 170, 239.



the clergy should be granted till the council had ascertained that its provisions would not be prejudicial to the rights of the lords or commons.<sup>1</sup> But when they asked in addition that no statute or ordinance should be made at the prayer of the clergy without the previous assent of the commons, stating as a reason that the clergy would observe no statute made without their assent and at the sole prayer of the commons, the request was dismissed with a qualified refusal.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

The reader, however, is not to suppose that because the petition was granted, the object of the petitioners had been obtained. Much still remained to be done. It was first to be moulded into the form of a statute or ordinance by the clerks in chancery, and then to be sent by royal authority to the judges, sheriffs, coroners, and other royal officers, that it might be published in all courts, fairs, and markets.<sup>3</sup> But the king, satisfied with the aid which he had obtained, dismissed the parliament, and thought little of the petitions which he had granted. Sometimes they were entirely forgotten; at others they were formed into statutes, but never published; often they were so altered in the principal provisions as not to reach the grievance which they were originally designed to abolish. As a remedy for this abuse, the commons began to require

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 149.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. Hence perhaps we may infer that the clergy did sometimes give their assent to the petitions of the commons; but no trace of such practice appears on the rolls.

<sup>3</sup> Stat. of Realm, i. lxxxvi. 25. Originally the terms, statute, constitution, establishment, provision, and ordinance, were used indiscriminately; in later times we meet occasionally with a distinction between ordinance and statute, as if the first were only of local or temporary, the latter of general and perpetual obligation. Many statutes were at first passed as ordinances for an experiment of their utility, and afterwards enacted as statutes.—Ibid. 252, 280.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

that the more important of their petitions should be put into proper form, and published during the parliament in the presence of the king, and before the two houses. They could then appeal to them as matters of record; and if they were not observed by the royal officers, could inquire into the cause in the next session.<sup>1</sup> To this petition, though it seems to have been acted upon, no answer appears on the rolls. It was at the best an inadequate remedy; and the commons had yearly to complain that though statutes were made, they were seldom carried into execution.<sup>2</sup> The king moreover claimed the right of amending them afterwards, with the advice of his council.<sup>3</sup> But a check was given to the exercise of this claim in 1354. The ordinances of the staple were then confirmed in parliament; and at the same time it was enacted that no alteration or addition should be made in time to come without the assent of the two houses.<sup>4</sup>

The commons, from their situation in life, were best acquainted with the wants and the grievances of the nation; and while they were employed in originating new statutes, or soliciting the execution of the old, the lords, according to ancient custom, devoted themselves to the exercise of their judicial duties, compromising the disputes among their own members, examining the cases of individuals who complained of oppression, and determining those points of law on which the judges had not dared to pronounce of their own authority in the king's court. The number of petitions on these subjects, presented in the more early parliaments, is enormous; towards the close

<sup>1</sup> Stat. of Realm, 165, 201.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 241.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 265, et passim.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 257.



of Edward's reign they seem to have diminished. But in 1372 a singular species of fraud was discovered. Attorneys and barristers practising in the courts of law procured themselves to be returned knights of the shire, and improved the opportunity to introduce the cases of their clients among the petitions which were presented to the king in the name of the lower house. To correct the abuse, it was enacted that no practising lawyer should for the future be chosen knight of the shire, and that if any such lawyer had been returned for that parliament, he should forfeit his wages.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

But besides these legislative assemblies of the three estates, the king was accustomed to call occasionally a great council, of certain prelates and barons, or of prelates, barons, and knights. It was not that any ordinance emanating from such meetings could possess the full force of law; but the king pretended a wish to avail himself of their advice, whilst, generally at least, he sought to obtain their previous consent to some measure in contemplation, that he might thus incur a less share of public odium, and secure to himself the support of a powerful party. Nor did he confine himself to councils of the higher classes of his subjects. We meet with several composed of ship-owners and mariners, of tradesmen and merchants, of inhabitants of the marches and the sea-coast, either summoned individually by name, or returned in obedience to the royal writ by counties, cities, and boroughs, for the purpose of advising with the king, or the king's commissioners, on matters with which they were supposed to be particularly conversant.<sup>2</sup> The following

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 310.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. i. 455; ii, 107, 120, 456. Rym. v. 232, 405, 548; vi. 639.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

are two singular instances of this practice. 1. Edward I., after the subjugation of Scotland in 1296, resided for a considerable time at Berwick, where he formed the design of rebuilding that town on a new plan, with the hope that it would quickly grow into a great and opulent mart. With this view he ordered the mayors and bailiffs of the trading towns in England to proceed to the election of deputies, "the most competent to devise, dispose, and arrange a new town for the greater benefit of the king and of the commerce of the kingdom;" and to send to him the persons elected in a state of readiness to proceed further on his service. They met him at Bury St. Edmunds; and the result was, that he issued new writs to twenty-nine individuals by name, to resort to him in the first week of the new year for the same purpose, in whatever part of England he might be found, and then compelled them to proceed to Berwick immediately after Easter. 2. In 1303 a proposal had been submitted to him for raising the amount of the customs without application to parliament. For this purpose the lord mayor received an order to send to the king two or three deputies from each of the ten companies of foreign merchants settled in London, to whom he offered certain additional privileges in return for the payment of higher duties on imports and exports; and they (for their existence in England depended on the royal pleasure) were thus induced to assent to conditions which they dared not openly oppose. It now remained to try the experiment on the native merchants, who, it was not doubted, would follow the precedent set them by the foreigners. Writs were issued to the sheriffs, stating that the king had been given to understand that his subjects engaged in trade



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

were desirous to obtain the privileges granted to foreigners, on the same terms which had been accepted by the latter; and commanding them to send, for that purpose, to the Exchequer at York two representatives from every city and borough within their respective counties. But Edward was disappointed. The merchants assembled in council, encouraged each other to resist; and returned an unanimous answer, that they would not consent to any increase of the maltolte, or to the levy of any new duties, or to the payment of any but the ancient customs.<sup>1</sup>

IV. The reader will recollect the concession which was extorted from the necessities of the first Edward by the firmness of Archbishop Winchelsea, and the earls of Hereford and Norfolk. From that period it became illegal to levy an aid, or impose a tallage, by the sole authority of the sovereign. Neither of his successors was disposed to recognise a statute which made them dependent on the bounty of their subjects; nor did they hesitate occasionally to raise money in defiance of its provisions. But, if the wars of the third Edward were in many respects calamitous both to foreigners and natives, in one they proved highly advantageous to the people of this kingdom. They compelled him annually to solicit an aid: on the one hand, the jealousy with which the two houses viewed his claim of imposing tallages, induced them to be more liberal in their grants; on the other, their libe-

<sup>1</sup> Parl. Writs, i. 49, 50, 134, 135. Rot. Scot. i. 39, 40. We occasionally meet with the mention of a mercantile officer called mayor of the staple or of the merchants, who were chosen by deputies from the principal trading towns, summoned by writs, out of several names presented to them by the king.—Parl. Writs, ii. App. 287. This officer was sometimes commissioned by the king to confer with the council of merchants in his name.—Parl. Writs, ii. 196.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

ality rendered him less anxious to exercise his claim ; and thus, during the course of a long reign, was firmly established the *practice* of what before was the *law*, the right of the people to tax themselves. Edward, to defray the enormous expenses of his wars, had recourse to every expedient which the ingenuity of his ministers could devise. Sometimes he pawned the jewels of the crown ; frequently he extorted forced loans or gifts from the most opulent of the clergy ;<sup>1</sup> once he seized all the tin which had been wrought during the year in Cornwall, giving the owners security for the payment at the end of two years.<sup>2</sup> On none of these occasions does the parliament appear to have interfered ; but, when in 1332 he imposed on all cities, boroughs, and ancient demesnes of the crown, a tallage amounting to a fifteenth of the moveables, and a tenth of the rents, the two houses granted him a legal aid, on condition that the tallage should be withdrawn.<sup>3</sup> In 1339 he renewed the maltolte, the tax on wool, which had raised so loud an outcry against the tyranny of his grandfather. Both lords and commons petitioned against it, because it had been imposed without their consent, and it was enacted by statute, that after the expiration of two years no more than the ancient duty should be levied. But Edward three years later having secured the concur-

<sup>1</sup> See for forced gifts from forty shillings to one hundred pounds, Rym. iv. 543—553, 563.—For a forced loan of 7,000*l.* id. v. 347.—Another of twice that amount, id. v. 491, 492.—A third, id. v. 577, 583. The lenders received letters patent empowering them to demand and receive the amount of their respective loans out of the customs on wool and hides exported from various parts named, sometimes from whatever port they chose.

<sup>2</sup> Id. v. 39. All who refused, or concealed their tin, are termed rebels in the writ, and ordered to be punished with imprisonment and forfeiture.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 66, 446, 447.



rence of the lords, assembled a council of merchants, and obtained from them the grant of forty shillings on every sack of wool which should be exported. It seems to have been contended that this duty did not concern the commons, because it would fall on the foreign purchaser; but they took the first opportunity to remonstrate, on the ground that it actually fell on the grower, as the merchant now refused to give the accustomed price, on account of the additional duty. Edward, however, was resolute. He replied that the duty was mortgaged to his creditors, and must continue; but that, as it had been granted for two years only, he would not revive it.<sup>1</sup> Indeed, nothing could induce him to renounce in express terms the right which he claimed. When he revoked the tallage mentioned above, he promised never to impose another, “except in the manner that had been done by his ancestors, and as he might reasonably do.” And within a few weeks of his death, to a request that no common aid or charge should be imposed without the assent of the two houses in full parliament, he replied that it was not his intention to do so, unless in time of great necessity, for the defence of the realm, and when it might reasonably be done.<sup>2</sup>

1. The most ancient method of raising a supply was by a tallage on moveable property, varying according to circumstances from the fiftieth to a seventh, and descending from the highest classes down to the villeins; and it is interesting to observe how rapidly the art

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 104, 105. It was continued in all five years from 1343 to 1348.—Ibid. 140, 161, 201. In their grant of the last year the commons added as two conditions, that it should cease entirely at Michaelmas, and that in time to come no imposition, tallage, or charge by loan, or in any other manner, should be made by the king’s privy council without their grant and assent in parliament.—Ibid.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 66, 366.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

of taxation improved in every succeeding reign. Under John each individual was permitted to swear to the value of his own property, and the bailiffs of prelates, earls, and barons, swore in the place of their lords. The oaths were received by the itinerant justices, who for that purpose proceeded regularly from hundred to hundred ; and according to the returns of the justices, the tax in its due proportion was levied by the sheriffs.<sup>1</sup> By Henry III. every man was compelled to swear not only to the amount of his own moveables, but to that of the moveables belonging to his two next neighbours ; and, if the accuracy of his statement was disputed, the truth was inquired into by a jury of twelve good men of the county. The commissioners were not the justices, but four knights appointed by the justices ; and they were instructed to inquire into the value of every species of personalty with the exception of church-ornaments, books, horses, arms, gold, silver, jewels, furniture, the contents of the cellar and larder, and hay and forage for private use. Under the Edwards the commissioners were appointed immediately by the crown. They called before them the principal inhabitants of each township, and bound four, six, or more of them by oath to inquire into the value of the moveables possessed by each householder on the day mentioned in the act, which was generally the feast of St. Michael. By moveables they were to understand not only corn, cattle, and merchandise, but money, fuel, furniture, and wearing apparel ; and if any such articles had been sold, removed, or destroyed, since the day specified, they were yet to include them in the amount. The ex-

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 72, anno 1207. This is the most ancient form known. If a man concealed or removed his goods, or swore to a lower value, he was imprisoned, and the goods were forfeited.



ceptions allowed were few. The knights and esquires did not return their armour, horses, or equipments, their plate of gold, silver, or brass, their clothes or jewels, or those which belonged to their wives; and persons of inferior rank were exempted from payment for one suit of clothes for the husband, and another for the wife, one bed, one ring, a clasp of gold or silver, a silk sash or girdle for daily use, and a cup of silver or porcelain. It is evident that in these inquiries, as the temptation was great, so also were the means of concealment. But the ingenuity of the commissioners kept pace with the artfulness of the defaulters; each year new regulations were issued from the Exchequer; and sometimes within a short period the amount of the tax from the same township was nearly doubled.<sup>1</sup> This growing evil occasioned nume-

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. i. 227, 239—242, 450, 451; ii. 447. New Rymer, i. 177, et passim. Parl. Writs, passim. Dunst. 235, 477. The assessments for the borough of Colchester in the years 1296 and 1301 are still extant.—Ibid. i. 228—238, 243—265. The reader will see how expert the commissioners had become in the short space of five years. The following instance is taken at random; but the same difference is observable in all. The value of the moveables of William Miller:—

At Michaelmas, 1296:

|                              | s. | d. |
|------------------------------|----|----|
| 1 quarter of wheat . . . . . | 3  | 6  |
| 1 ditto of oats . . . . .    | 2  | 0  |
| 1 pig . . . . .              | 2  | 0  |

At Michaelmas, 1301:

|                             | s. | d. |                              | s. | d.  |
|-----------------------------|----|----|------------------------------|----|-----|
| Money . . . . .             | 13 | 4  | A seat . . . . .             | 0  | 4   |
| A silver clasp . . . . .    | 0  | 9  | A quarter of wheat . . . . . | 4  | 0   |
| A ring . . . . .            | 1  | 0  | Ditto of barley . . . . .    | 3  | 0   |
| A suit of clothes . . . . . | 10 | 0  | 2 ditto of malt . . . . .    | 4  | 0   |
| A bed . . . . .             | 3  | 0  | 2 hogs . . . . .             | 10 | 0   |
| A mappa . . . . .           | 0  | 9  | 2 pigs . . . . .             | 3  | 0   |
| A towel . . . . .           | 0  | 6  | 1 lb. of wool . . . . .      | 3  | 0   |
| A pot, of brass . . . . .   | 2  | 0  | Fagots . . . . .             | 2  | 6   |
| A dish, ditto . . . . .     | 1  | 0  |                              |    |     |
| A cup, ditto . . . . .      | 0  | 8  |                              | £2 | 3 4 |
| Andirons . . . . .          | 0  | 6  |                              |    |     |



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

rous remonstrances. The people complained that the collectors entered their houses, and searched every apartment;<sup>1</sup> that they defrauded the king, and that they received bribes to spare some, while at the same time through pique and resentment they aggrieved others. In 1334 the parliament had granted a tenth from the cities, boroughs, and ancient demesnes, with a fifteenth from the rest of the kingdom; and Edward, to remove all cause of discontent, appointed commissioners in every county with powers to compound at once for a certain sum with the several townships. The arrangement gave universal satisfaction. In subsequent years the subsidies were calculated from the compositions of 1334; and the different quotas were raised by private assessments among the inhabitants themselves.<sup>2</sup>

2. But in addition to tallages, the financiers of the age had discovered several other methods of raising money. The duty on the exportation of wool and hides furnished a plentiful source of revenue. By ancient custom the king's officers levied in the out-ports half a mark on every sack of wool, the same sum on three hundred wool-fells, and a whole mark on the last of hides.<sup>3</sup> But Edward, by the illegal imposition of the maltolte, had proved that these articles could bear a considerable increase of duty, which would fall, it was contended, not on the native merchant, but on

<sup>1</sup> In the returns are carefully mentioned the very rooms in which the different articles were found.—Dunst.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. ii. 447, 448. This was effected by inserting in all subsequent grants a condition, that the subsidy should be levied in the same manner as the last, and without increase. *A lever en la manere comme la darreine quinzismes feust levee, et ne mye en autre manere.*—Ibid. 148. *Saunz nul encresce.*—Ibid. 159.

<sup>3</sup> To give an advantage to the English over the foreign merchant, wherever the former paid a mark, the latter paid a pound.—Ibid. 273.



the foreign consumer ; and, when the second war with France demanded extraordinary exertions, the custom was annually raised by parliamentary authority, till in course of seven years it had reached fifty shillings on the sack of wool, the same sum on twelve-score wools, and five pounds and a mark on the last of hides.<sup>1</sup>

3. In addition, the king also received the duty afterwards known by the appellation of tonnage and poundage, of two shillings on every tun of wine imported, and of sixpence on every pound of goods imported or exported. It was granted, on condition that he should keep a fleet at sea for the protection of commerce, and was at first voted from year to year, not by the two houses of parliament, but by the citizens and burgesses, who alone were concerned in the pursuits of trade.<sup>2</sup> Soon, however, it was discovered that the new duty, as far as regarded imports, was paid in reality by the consumers ; and the lords and commons, instead of petitioning against it, as they had done against the maltolte, made it legal by granting it themselves.<sup>3</sup> 4. In 1371 the clergy voted a supply to the king of fifty thousand pounds, to be levied on their benefices ; and the laity an equal sum, to be raised by assessment on the different parishes. Taking the number of parishes to be forty-five thousand, it was calculated that the charge on each would

<sup>1</sup> Foreigners instead of 2*l.* 10*s.* paid 3*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.*, and instead of 5*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.* the sum of 6*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.*.—*Ibid.* 300. The sack of wool contained 26 stone, or 364 pounds.—*Ibid.* 142. It differed greatly in quality and price. In 1343 the parliament raised the price 50 per cent., when the best wool, or that of Shropshire and Lincoln, sold at 14 marks the sack, exclusive of the duty, and the worst, or that of Cornwall, at no more than 4 marks.—*Ibid.* 138. Hence it appears that there is a mistake in the estimate of the goods of William Miller mentioned before. Probably for 1 lb. we should read 1 stone—petra, not libra.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* 310.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* 317.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

amount to the average sum of twenty-two shillings and threepence. The parliament was dismissed; but, when the returns were made, it was found that the number of parishes was not much more than eight thousand six hundred, and the sum raised would not exceed ten thousand pounds. To repair the error, the king summoned a great council, composed of a certain proportion of lords and prelates, and one of the two members who sat in the last parliament as representatives of each county, city, and borough. In the writs which he issued on the occasion, he named the persons whose presence he required, and observed, that if he did not summon a full parliament, it was to relieve his people from a part of the additional expense. This council acted, however, with all the authority of a legitimate parliament. The returns of the bishops and sheriffs were examined; a new calculation was made; the rate was raised to one hundred and sixteen shillings per parish; collectors were named by the knights of the shires; and over them were appointed surveyors to inspect their proceedings.<sup>1</sup> It is singular that an assembly, consisting of the most intelligent persons in the kingdom, should have adopted so erroneous a calculation; but the fact may teach us to doubt the accuracy of some of their other statements, respecting the overgrown opulence of the clergy, and the enormous sums said to be drawn from England by the court of Rome.

V. By these and similar expedients the king was enabled to maintain the armies which were so long the terror of France, and which raised to so high a pitch the military renown of the nation. The feudal constitution, as it had been settled by the first

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 304. Brady, i.161.



William, was adapted to the purpose of defence, but unfavourable to projects of conquest. The king could indeed summon to his standard all the male population of the country, but the exercise of this right was lawful only in actual danger of invasion; he could also compel his tenants to follow him to foreign war with a number of horsemen proportionate to the number of knights' fees which they held of the crown; but the obligation of service was limited to forty days,—too short a space for operations which were to be conducted on a great scale, and in a distant country. Hence former kings, in their wars in France, had been willing to accept of pecuniary aids instead of personal attendance, and to raise armies of mercenaries both from their own subjects and foreign adventurers. The passion for the crusades gave a wider extension to this system, which was again restricted as the crown grew more and more impoverished under Richard, John, and Henry III. The Edwards appear to have followed no uniform plan, but to have raised their armies in such manner as circumstances suggested. Sometimes they acted with, sometimes without, the previous advice of their parliament. Occasionally they issued letters to their military tenants, soliciting their services as a favour rather than a duty, and *praying* them to bring into the field all the force which it was in their power to raise.<sup>1</sup> On other occasions they *summoned* them to join the royal standard on a certain day, with a denunciation of punishment against the defaulters. The writs were intrusted in the first place to the care of the sheriff, who sent a copy to each individual in the county, holding by barony of the crown, and for

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ii. 783; iii. 531.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

the information of the lesser tenants ordered proclamation to be made in all the courts, fairs, and markets.<sup>1</sup> The laity were commanded to attend personally, and to bring with them the number of men specified in their tenures, with an exception in favour of the aged and infirm, who were permitted to serve by substitutes;<sup>2</sup> the clergy and females received orders to send the whole service which they owed; and both were generally excused, if they preferred to pay the accustomed fine, sometimes of twenty pounds, sometimes of forty marks for each knight's fee.<sup>3</sup> It was the duty of the constable and marshal to array them as soon as they arrived, and to take care that no fraud was committed in the number of men, or the state of their equipment.<sup>4</sup> But in addition to these two methods of raising forces, in the wars, for the subjugation both of Scotland and France, mercenary armies were requisite; and we find the

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 562.

<sup>2</sup> Intersitis cum servitio nobis debito.—Rym. ii. 73. Qui ad portandum arma potentes non existunt, tales ad diem et locum prædictos ad servitium suum nobis debitum pro ipsis faciendum transmittant, quales ad illud faciendum ydoneos esse constat.—Rym. ii. 75.

<sup>3</sup> Dictis die et loco habeatis servitium nobis debitum paratum ad proficiscendum nobiscum.—Ibid. p. 74, 76; see also ii. 650, 767; iii. 148, 464; Parl. Writs, i. 155.

<sup>4</sup> Several of these muster-rolls still exist, and the comparison of them with the black book of the Exchequer will shew that the knights' service owing from the *great barons* to the crown had diminished since the reign of Henry II., in the proportion of at least ten to one. This may have been caused partly by the dismemberment of the immense property held by some of the more ancient barons, partly by a custom adopted by the king of retaining for the crown immediately the service of the knights, when he gave away the lands which had fallen into his possession. This, however, could hardly have been the cause of the same diminution in the baronies attached to bishoprics and abbeys. Thus the bishop of Lincoln, in the reign of Henry II., owed the service of 60 knights, the bishop of Bath and Wells that of 20 (Lib. Nig. 263, 87); but in the reign of Edward I. the former owed only the service of five, the latter of two.—Parl. Writs, i. 197, 228.



king entering into contracts for voluntary service with barons and knights, who engaged to furnish a certain number of men during a given period. Their wages, which were to be paid a quarter of a year in advance, must appear enormous, if we consider the relative value of money in those and the present times: eight shillings or six and eightpence per day to an earl or baron, four to a banneret, two to a knight, one to an esquire or man-at-arms, and sixpence to an archer on horseback. The horses were valued as soon as the men joined their standard; and if they perished during the campaign, were to be replaced or paid for by the king. It was stipulated that prisoners, whose ransoms did not amount to five hundred pounds, should remain with the captors; and that all others should be yielded to the king for a reasonable consideration.<sup>1</sup>

The duties of the military tenants of the crown could be easily ascertained from their tenures, and to have exacted from them services to which they were not obliged, might have proved a dangerous experiment. But the liberties of the lower orders were ill defined; their resistance was less to be feared; and from them the king purveyed men for his armies with as little ceremony as he took provisions for his household, or provender for his horses. On the principle that, whoever had taken an oath of fealty to the king was bound to risk his life in the defence of the country, they had been divided into classes according to their respective property, were compelled twice in the year to appear completely armed before the constables of the hundred, and might at any time be called out and

<sup>1</sup> See the indentures, and orders for payment in Rymer, v. 325, 327, 330, 450, 545.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

arrayed by officers appointed by the king.<sup>1</sup> It was indeed understood that they were not to be marched out of their own county except in case of invasion; but pretexts were easily invented to excuse or justify the violation of that privilege. Whenever an army was wanted for the invasion of Wales or Scotland, they were told that it was better to fight in the territory of the enemy, than to wait till that enemy had crossed the borders, and lighted up the flames of war in their own country. Soon the same reasoning was applied to the expeditions against France. The French, it was said, had conspired to abolish the English name; they had already entered the king's territories on the continent; they were preparing to land a powerful army in England; if then the king's lieges wished to save themselves from subjection, they must cross the sea, and inflict on the enemy the very calamities with which they had been threatened.<sup>2</sup> On such occasions, however, it was necessary to make a selection; otherwise the multitude of the combatants must have produced scarcity, insubordination, and defeat. Sometimes all the men of a few counties contiguous to the scene of war were called out;<sup>3</sup> more frequently a certain number was demanded, and officers were appointed to choose the strongest and most opulent in each class.<sup>4</sup> In 1282 Edward

<sup>1</sup> Under the penalty of culvertage (culvert, a turn-tail) that is, perpetual slavery.—Matt. Paris, 196. Rym. iv. 687.

<sup>2</sup> Among many instances, see Rym. v. 489; vi. 614.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. iii. 548, 554; v. 828.

<sup>4</sup> Id. iii. 157, 481, 775, 784; iv. 114, 534; v. 829. De validioribus et potentioribus. Des meilleurs, et plus vaillauntz, et plus soeffisauntz. In all such cases they were to be paid by the king: Ad vadia nostra. The writs give to the commissioners the authority to "choose and try." I suspect, however, that the number of men was first assessed on the different townships, and the men furnished by them were received or rejected by the arrayers.



ordered the sheriffs to send to the army in Wales every man, whose income was rated at more than twenty pounds per annum;<sup>1</sup> in 1297 he summoned all of the same class to join him on horseback, and accompany him in his expedition to Flanders.<sup>2</sup> Edward II. in 1324, sent commissioners into every county with the most ample powers to raise forces for his intended expedition against France. They were empowered to inquire, with the aid of a jury, or by any other means, the names of all the men-at-arms within the shire; to array all without exception whom they judged proper for the service; and to send a faithful return of every particular to the officers of the royal wardrobe. At the same time it was made known by proclamation, that if any person were convicted of having offered a present to the commissioners, he should forfeit eighty times, the receiver one hundred and sixty times, its value.<sup>3</sup> In like manner when Edward III. in 1346 prepared for the expedition which has been rendered so celebrated in history by the victory of Creci, he summoned every man-at-arms in the kingdom, if he were in good health, to attend personally; if he were not, to send a substitute; and ordered all, who possessed lands of the yearly value of five pounds or more, to furnish men-at-arms, hoblers, and archers, in proportion to their incomes.<sup>4</sup> On all these occasions, if we may judge from the language of the writs, the levy was

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Wall. 11 Ed. I. apud Brad. iii. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. ii. 767.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. iv. 107, 108.

<sup>4</sup> Rym. v. 489, 490. Rot. Parl. ii. 160, 170. See other instances in the transcripts for the New Rymer, p. 22—26, 37. On June 1st, 1359, the city of London is ordered to provide, against the 16th of that month, 150 archers on horseback, furnished with clothes and suitable arms at the cost of the city.—Ibid. p. 41.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

conducted in the most arbitrary manner; the selection when it was made, depended on the caprice or the partiality of the arrayers; and every act of disobedience was punished with forfeiture and imprisonment. Of these grievances the commons frequently complained; and to appease them, it was enacted that no man should be compelled to serve against his will; or to find archers, hoblers, or men-at-arms, unless he were bound by his tenure; or to march out of his own county, unless in case of actual invasion.<sup>1</sup> But Edward seldom respected these statutes; he always justified himself by the plea of necessity; and the commons were compelled to be content with the promise that the past should not be drawn into a precedent for the future. The law had provided that men raised in this manner should be paid by the king from the time of their leaving their homes; but it appears that they were frequently removed at the expense of the shire; another grievance, the subject of much, but fruitless, complaint.<sup>2</sup>

When the army had assembled, it was found to consist of four principal descriptions of force. 1. The men-at-arms, the first in importance and dignity, were heavy cavalry, covered, or more properly encumbered, with armour of iron from head to foot, bearing a shield for defence, and employing as offensive weapons the lance, the sword, the battle-axe, or the mace. They comprised the knights, with their esquires and followers. If we may believe the assertion of Edward I., it was part of the prerogative to compel not only each tenant of a knight's fee from the crown, but every freeholder of land to the yearly value of twenty

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 3, 11, 239. Stat. of Realm, i. 255, 321.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 149.



pounds, to take up the degree of a knight, and to furnish himself with the barbed horse, the arms, and the armour befitting his new rank. When this had been done, he was bound to serve at the king's cost, as often as he was required, whilst it remained at the option of men of less property to join the army or not. In consequence of such claim on the part of the crown, commissions were issued from time to time to ascertain, through the inquest of a jury, the real income of all the free tenants in every hundred; then followed a proclamation fixing a distant day, before which all who were liable were ordered to comply with the obligation; and lastly, the sheriff took into the king's hands the real estates of each defaulter, till he had satisfied by fine for his disobedience. To the minor proprietors these proceedings were sources of disquietude and expense; some succeeded in purchasing an occasional respite, some an entire exemption; and, as an alleviation to the others, the king at times suspended the obligation for some years, or limited it to the possessors of higher incomes; till at last it came to be confined to those whose lands were estimated at the yearly value of fifty pounds.<sup>1</sup> But to men of more ample fortune, and more aspiring

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

<sup>1</sup> Reges Angliæ consuevimus.....viginti libratas terræ.....Parl. Writs, i. 249. The arms were to be received from the king himself (a nobis,—ibid.); but whether from him personally, or from some one commissioned by him, does not appear. Knights were bound to serve ad vadia nostra ad voluntatem nostram, quandocunque, &c. But of persons not knighted it was said, veniant, si voluerint, ad nostra vadia.—Parl Writs, i. 267. The punishment of defaulters may be seen, ibid. p. 258. Instances of fines paid for a respite or exemption occur, ibid. 218, 220, 221. They appear to have been regulated by the income of the petitioner, as one pays 20*l.* for a respite of three years, whilst another for the same sum purchases an exemption for life. The income which induced the obligation of knighthood is £20, 30, 40, 50, and 100.—See Writs and Rym. passim.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

mind, that which the former sought to shun as a burden, then, proved an object of ambition. They generally sought the honour from the hands of the general in the field of battle, and in sight of both armies; and immediately, to give proof of their valour, hastened to the post of greatest danger, or engaged in some hopeless or romantic expedition. The lower class of knights were called bachelors; but the knight bachelor, if he brought with him into the field a train of esquires and followers equipped like himself, was entitled to bear his pennon, a long, narrow ensign terminating in a point; and if he were sufficiently opulent to retain not only esquires, but knights in his service, he might, with the approbation of the prince, display a square banner, and assume the name and honour of a banneret. This distinction belonged of course to earls and barons, who possessed several knights' fees; yet, as it was exclusively attached to the dignity of knight-hood, even they were forbidden to unfurl their banners till they had been admitted into the order.

2. The hoblers were another description of cavalry, more lightly armed, and taken from the class of men rated at fifteen pounds and upwards. They were mounted on inferior horses, and equipped according to the provisions of the Statute of Winchester. In the armies which invaded Scotland, they formed a considerable force; in the expeditions to France, they were less numerous.<sup>1</sup>

3. From the names recorded in Domesday, it appears that archery was a favourite exercise among the Anglo-Saxons; and there is sufficient evidence that for some centuries after the Conquest, both the long bow and crossbow were employed as offensive wea-

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iv. 115, 534; vi. 615.



pons in the hands of the foot soldiers.<sup>1</sup> Under the Edwards the superiority of the former was fully established. The average length of the bow was six feet, of the arrow half the length of the bow. The English archer used it vertically, drew the arrow not to the breast but to the ear, and could send it with good aim to the distance of twelve score yards.<sup>2</sup> That the victories gained by the English during the reign of Edward III. were owing to the use of this destructive weapon, is asserted by contemporary writers, and partially acknowledged by the king himself.<sup>3</sup> Proclamation was made that all persons should practise archery on the holidays out of the hours of divine service; and every game, which might withdraw their attention from that exercise, was strictly forbidden.<sup>4</sup> In battle the archers were drawn up in open lines, one behind the other, so as to resemble in some measure the form of the spikes in a portcullis, or harrow.<sup>5</sup> They necessarily fought on foot; but from the moment their importance became known, every knight was anxious to mount a few of them on horseback, that they might accompany him in all his expeditions, and

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

<sup>1</sup> In the most ancient assize of arms of the 36th of Henry III. footmen out of the forests are to have bows and arrows, in the forests bows and bolts.—Mat. Paris, post adver. In the summons of the 48th of the same king each township is ordered to send a certain number of foot soldiers armed with lances, *bows and arrows*, swords, *crossbows*, and hatchets.—Apud Brad. ii. 241. The first of these authorities seems to show that the crossbow was peculiar to the inhabitants of the forests.

<sup>2</sup> No one was allowed to shoot at a mark under eleven score.—33 Hen. VIII. c. 9.

<sup>3</sup> Froiss. ii. 128, 160. Unde toti regno nostro honorem et commodum, nobis in actibus nostris guerrinis subventionem non modicam dinoscitur provenisse.—Rym. vi. 417.

<sup>4</sup> The forbidden games were coits, hand-ball, foot-ball, stick-ball, canibuca, and cock-fighting.—Rym. ibid. et 468.

<sup>5</sup> Froiss. ii. 128, 158.



CHAP. employ their skill in his favour. Edward himself had  
 III. a body-guard of one hundred and twenty archers, se-  
 A.D. 1377. lected from the strongest men in the kingdom.<sup>1</sup>

4. In the last place came the rest of the foot soldiers. In general levies they were provided with arms according to the provisions of the assize; but when a small number only was demanded from each county, they were all furnished with skull-caps, quilted jackets, and iron gloves.<sup>2</sup> Among them was constantly a large proportion of Welshmen, armed with lances, and dressed in uniform at the king's expense. These proved of great utility, wherever the country was mountainous, and ill adapted to the operations of cavalry.<sup>3</sup>

In addition to the military men, the army was attended by a multitude of artisans and labourers, pressed by the sheriffs and forwarded at the cost of the king. Innumerable writs are still in existence, allotting them to different counties, and pointing out their respective trades. We meet with blacksmiths, carpenters, sawyers, quarrymen, masons, woodcutters, ditchers, miners, and ropemakers, who were thus torn away by scores from their families and business, and compelled to suffer the hardships and encounter the dangers of a military expedition.<sup>4</sup>

When the king summoned his military tenants, the earl constable and earl marshal held the principal commands under the sovereign; but in armies raised by contract, he appointed two or more marshals, whose duty it was to array the forces, and to direct their movements. The officers who undertook the charge of the cavalry were called constables; the infantry

<sup>1</sup> Rym. v. 856; vi. 617.

<sup>3</sup> Id. iv. 803; v. 9; vi. 508.

<sup>2</sup> Id. iii. 784.

<sup>4</sup> See Rot. Scot. i. 195.



was divided and subdivided into thousands, hundreds, and twenties, commanded by their respective leaders, centenars, and vintenars.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

VI. On one occasion Edward made it his boast that his predecessors had always possessed the dominion of the seas between England and France.<sup>2</sup> The fleet by which this superiority had been obtained and preserved consisted of a few galleys and other ships belonging to the crown; of a squadron of fifty-seven sail which the cinque ports were compelled by charter to furnish as often as they were demanded by the king;<sup>3</sup> of a fleet of galleys supplied according to contract by Genoese adventurers;<sup>4</sup> and lastly, of the merchantmen belonging to the different ports; for

<sup>1</sup> The muster-roll of the army which besieged Calais is still extant, and will give the reader an exact insight into the composition of an English army. Under the king were,

|                                                                                                                                 | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----|----|
| The prince of Wales at <i>per day</i> . . . . .                                                                                 | 1 | 0  | 0  |
| The bishop of Durham . . . . .                                                                                                  | 0 | 6  | 8  |
| 13 earls, each . . . . .                                                                                                        | 0 | 6  | 8  |
| 44 barons and bannerets . . . . .                                                                                               | 0 | 4  | 0  |
| 1046 knights . . . . .                                                                                                          | 0 | 2  | 0  |
| 4022 esquires, constables, centenars, and leaders .                                                                             | 0 | 1  | 0  |
| 5104 vintenars, and archers on horseback . . .                                                                                  | 0 | 0  | 6  |
| 335 pauncenars . . . . .                                                                                                        | 0 | 0  | 6  |
| 500 hoblers . . . . .                                                                                                           | 0 | 0  | 6  |
| 15,480 archers on foot . . . . .                                                                                                | 0 | 0  | 3  |
| 314 masons, carpenters, smiths, engineers, tent-makers, miners, armourers, gunners, and artillery-men, at 12d. 10d. 6d. and 3d. |   |    |    |
| 4474 Welsh foot, of whom 200 vintenars, at . . .                                                                                | 0 | 0  | 4  |
| The rest at . . . . .                                                                                                           | 0 | 0  | 2  |

Total, 31,294 men besides the lords, and 16,000 mariners in 700 ships and boats.—Brady, iii. App. No. 92.

<sup>2</sup> Progenitores nostri reges Angliæ domini maris et transmarini passagii totis præteritis temporibus extiterunt.—Rym. iv. 722. La navie, say the commons, estoit si noble, et si plentinueuse, que touz les pays tenoient et appelloient notre Sr le Roi de la mier.—Rot. Parl. ii. 311. See also Rot. Scot. i. 442.

<sup>3</sup> Id. iii. 478, 1012; iv. 283, 730; v. 619.

<sup>4</sup> Id. iii. 604; iv. 710; v. 560.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

at this period the same vessel served alternately for the purposes of commerce and war; and a large ship after having discharged its cargo, and taken on board a complement of forty mariners, forty armed men, and sixty archers, was equal to meet any enemy.<sup>1</sup> The king claimed the right of purveyance of ships as well as of other articles. As occasion required, he issued orders for the seizure of a certain number of vessels, sometimes of all that could be found in any of the English harbours; and at the same time appointed commissioners to press mariners and others into his service, till they had collected a sufficient number to man them.<sup>2</sup> Thus he was enabled to procure conveyance for the armies which he transported to the continent; and on one occasion he left England with a fleet of eleven hundred sail of all descriptions. But it was not only in the time of war that the owners found that their ships lay at the king's mercy. As often as any of his family or servants crossed the sea, vessels were forcibly impressed for their passage;<sup>3</sup> even when the bishop of Durham came to the parliament in London, the king's officers seized for the transport of his servants and provisions three ships in the ports of Newcastle and Hartlepool.<sup>4</sup> It is true that on all these occasions the owners were paid the

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Scot. vi. 167. The armed men and archers were paid as usual. The mariners received 3d. per day.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 211, 429, 950; v. 4, 80, 232, 242, 282, 300, 563, 816; vi. 716. New Rym. iii. 215. Rot. Scot. i. 482. The commissioners for impressing sailors were the captains of the king's ships, each being authorized to impress a certain number, probably that at which his vessel was rated. The captain of the Trinity is repeatedly required to impress 130 men.—See transcripts for the New Rym. ii. 14, 19, 28.

<sup>3</sup> New Rym. v. 304, 335, 599, 615, 729; vi. 590; vii. 48. Id. iii. 313.

<sup>4</sup> Id. v. 778.



usual charges;<sup>1</sup> but such interruptions of trade were prejudicial to the merchants, and before the close of the king's reign the shipping of England had considerably decreased.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

In time of war it was customary to forbid the captains of traders to sail without convoy, under the penalty of forfeiting their goods and chattels. On one occasion a general embargo was laid on all the ports in the nation; and no vessel was permitted to sail till the owner had given security that it should carry provisions to the army in Scotland.<sup>3</sup>

As soon as the fleet was collected, it was placed under the command of an officer named the admiral, and appointed by the crown. If it were numerous, it was divided into two squadrons, one of which comprised all the ships belonging to the ports north of the mouth of the Thames, the other all those which came from the ports to the south or west of the same river. Each was intrusted to the care of an admiral invested with the most extensive powers to enforce discipline and punish offences.<sup>4</sup> Of the prizes which were made, the ships belonged to the king; the cargo and prisoners were divided between him and the captors.<sup>5</sup> In what proportion this division was made is uncertain; but according to the agreement with the adventurers from Genoa, both were to share alike.<sup>6</sup> In 1357 a singular case was brought before the king for decision. A French squadron, which had plundered some Portuguese merchantmen, fell in with the English fleet, and was captured. The ships were

<sup>1</sup> The charge for a large ship from Dover to Calais was 3*l.* 3*s.* 4*d.*; for a smaller, 2*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.*.—Rym. vi. 590.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 311; iii. 5, 86.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. iv. 717, 723.

<sup>4</sup> Id. iii. 475; iv. 71, 726—728; vi. 170; vii. 127.

<sup>5</sup> Id. vii. 29.

<sup>6</sup> Id. vi. 762.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

condemned as prizes; but, the original owners reclaiming their goods, the cause was argued in the court of the admiral, and the demand was refused. Dissatisfied with this judgment, they appealed to the king in council, under the plea that, by a late treaty between the two crowns, Portuguese property was to be protected even in an enemy's vessel. But Edward confirmed the judgment of the admiral, and in a letter to the king of Portugal observed, that, had the goods been shipped on board the French vessels by the owners, they would have come under the provision in the treaty; but that having been captured by the enemy, they had ceased to be Portuguese property, and of course could not be claimed by the original proprietors.<sup>1</sup>

VII. In this place I may direct the attention of the reader to the state of the English church during the fourteenth century. 1. The rivalry which has already been mentioned still existed between the civil and ecclesiastical judicatures, and each continued to accuse the encroachments of the other. That their mutual complaints and recriminations were not unfounded, will appear probable, if we reflect that the limits of their authority had not been accurately defined, and that many causes had different bearings, under one of which it might belong to the cognizance of the spiritual, and under another to that of the civil judge. The latter, however, possessed an advantage which was refused to his rival, in the power of issuing prohibitions; by which he stayed the proceedings in the spiritual court, and called the parties to plead before himself. If we may believe the celebrated Grosseteste, these prohibitions, by the ingenuity of

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 14.



the lawyers, and the presumption of the judges, had been multiplied beyond all reasonable bounds; the cognizance of all kinds of causes was gradually withdrawn from the ecclesiastical tribunals; and the bishops and their officers were perpetually interrupted and harassed in the exercise of their undoubted jurisdiction. It was natural that the sovereign should uphold the pretensions of his own courts; but his necessities often forced him to lend an unwilling ear to the complaints of the clergy, who, as often as they voted an aid, were careful, like the commons, to make the grant depend on the redress of their grievances. By this expedient they extorted a few occasional indulgences. Edward II. allowed the spiritual courts to determine certain causes in defiance of lay prohibitions;<sup>1</sup> and Edward III. granted that clerks convicted of any other capital crime than treason should be delivered to their ordinaries to be condemned by them to perpetual imprisonment and penance; that civil courts should be forbidden to inquire into the proceedings of the spiritual courts in causes notoriously within their jurisdiction; and that no prelate should be impleaded before the lay judges without the special command of the sovereign.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

2. The popes as supreme pastors continued to require pecuniary aids to enable them to conduct the government of the universal church; and the people, in proportion as they were oppressed with taxes for the wars against Scotland and France, complained of the

<sup>1</sup> They are deadly sins, for which public penance was enjoined; the repairs and ornaments of churches; repairs of the walls of churchyards; tithes, if the demand do not exceed one-fourth of the value of the benefice; mortuaries; defamation; and perjury.—Stat. 13 Ed. I. st. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 151—153, 244. Stat. 18 Ed. III. st. 3.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

---

moneys, which were also raised towards the support of the court of Rome. The papal revenues in England arose from four principal sources. 1. The Peter-pence had been established under the Anglo-Saxon princes, a tax of one penny on every householder, whose chattels were valued at thirty-pence; and it had been settled on the popes as a voluntary donation towards the relief of the English pilgrims. It appears to have been fixed by custom at a certain, instead of an uncertain sum, which still remained the same after the lapse of five centuries, notwithstanding the great increase of the nation in wealth and the number of inhabitants. The pontiffs now wished it to be collected in the manner of the original grant; but the demand was strenuously and effectually resisted; and the aggregate sum paid by the prelates to the papal collector amounted to no more than two hundred pounds.<sup>1</sup> 2. The reader will recollect the grant of the census, as it was called, of one thousand marks, which had been made by King John, as an acknowledgment that he held the crown in fee of the sovereign pontiff. The amount was not very considerable in itself; but the payment conveyed with it the idea of vassalage, and the pontiffs were annually compelled to remind the successors of John of the obligation. If their friendship chanced to be necessary to the king, the admonition was received with respect and obedience; if it were not, some excuse was invented, and the payment was deferred. At the death of Edward I., no less than seventeen thousand marks had become due; by his son every demand was faithfully dis-

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. i. 220. It amounted to 201*l.* 9*s.*; about 2*l.* more than is mentioned in the register of the Vatican. But in that register Durham is omitted.



charged; and the third Edward imitated the conduct of his father, till he engaged in the chimerical project of wresting the crown of France from its possessor. The popes waited with impatience for the return of peace, and in 1366 Urban V. demanded the arrears of the last thirty-three years, with a hint that if the claim were resisted, he should enter a suit in his own court for the recovery of the penalties contained in the original grant. When the parliament met, the king assembled the lords spiritual and temporal in the white chamber at Westminster, communicated to them the papal demand, and solicited their advice. The prelates requested a day to consult in private, and returning the next morning, answered, that neither John nor any other person could subject the kingdom to another power, without the consent of the nation. The temporal peers concurred in their opinion; it was communicated to the commons, who willingly expressed their assent; and the public instrument was drawn up in the name of the king, lords, and commons, repeating the answers of the bishops, and adding, that the act of John was done without the consent of the realm, and against the tenor of the oath which he had taken at his coronation. It was then resolved by the lords and commons (the king and prelates had withdrawn) that, if the pope attempted to enforce his claim by process of law, or by any other means, they would resist and stand against him to the utmost in their power.<sup>1</sup> This solemn determination set the question at rest for ever.

3. The origin of the payment of *first fruits* has been referred to the presents which in the more early ages every bishop, when he was consecrated, and every

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 289, 290.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

priest at his ordination, was expected to make to the officiating prelates and their attendants. By Gregory the Great it was abolished; after his death it sprang up again; and as the amount of the gift was regulated by the value of the benefice, it insensibly grew to be rated at one year's income. In many dioceses it was exacted from all the inferior clergy; in the court of Rome at every promotion; whence, as many prelates obtained their sees by papal "provisions," the first fruits of most bishoprics were gradually absorbed by the papal treasury.<sup>1</sup> In England, Pandulf, bishop of Norwich, is said to have been the first who exacted this tax from his clergy, on the plea of the incumbrances with which he found himself burthened.<sup>2</sup> In 1246 Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, obtained from Innocent IV. the first year's income of all benefices in his province, which might become vacant during the six following years;<sup>3</sup> and other prelates repeatedly applied for similar grants to succeeding pontiffs. At length Clement V., alleging in excuse the urgent necessities of the Roman church, reserved for his own use all the first fruits which might arise in the course of two years;<sup>4</sup> and some time after his successor John XXII. imitated his example, but extended the term to three years.

4. In this place it may be proper to notice the manner in which the provisions to bishoprics devolved on the church of Rome. After the concession of the Magna Charta, it became the custom, that on the vacancy of any see, the chapter should solicit a *congé d'élire*, to choose by the majority of suffrages, or by way of compromise, the future bishop, and to present

<sup>1</sup> De Marca, lib. vi. c. 10, 11.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. i. 462.

<sup>2</sup> Ang. Sac. i. 410.

<sup>4</sup> Rym. ii. 75.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

him to the king for the royal approbation. That approbation was signified to the metropolitan, if the church were subject to him, or to the pope, if it were a metropolitical see. When the election had been confirmed by the pope or metropolitan, the confirmation was notified to the king, who received the homage of the new bishop, and gave him the temporalities of his bishopric.<sup>1</sup> In the course of this complex proceeding, difficulties frequently occurred. To secure proper persons for the episcopal office, and to prevent undue influence in the choice, so many minute and rigorous regulations had been introduced by the canons, that it was easy for the pope or the metropolitan, if he were so inclined, to discover sufficient cause for the rejection of almost any individual. The metropolitan, indeed, as from him there lay an appeal to the pope, was careful to exercise his authority with moderation; but the judgment of the pope was definitive; and it was usual for our monarchs to exert all their influence at the court of Rome, to free themselves from an obnoxious, and to exalt a favourite, prelate. By degrees the popes drew to themselves the right of institution, which had formerly belonged to the metropolitans, and by means of "provisions" appointed to a great number of bishoprics. Nor did the monarch view the alteration with displeasure. He generally found the pontiff more tractable than the chapters; and, if he occasionally acquiesced in the papal choice, might in return expect that equal attention would be paid to his own recommendation. He was probably a gainer by the change.

On such occasions it had been customary for the pope to send a copy of the "provision" to the king,

<sup>1</sup> Id. iv. 61. Rot. Rom. 10 Ed. III. apud Brad. iii. App. 116.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

with a request that he would grant the temporalities of the see to the new bishop.<sup>1</sup> It happened that in the first of Edward I., while the king was on his way from the Holy Land, the pope appointed Robert de Kilwardby to the archiepiscopal see of Canterbury. The council admitted the new primate, but with a protestation that the provision was contrary to the rights of the crown, and a declaration that for the future the king would not hold himself obliged to grant the temporalities to prelates so provided.<sup>2</sup> Six years later Robert accepted the dignity of cardinal, and resigned his archbishopric. As the resignation was made in the papal court, the pontiff, according to custom, appointed his successor; but, probably on account of the protestation of the council, omitted in his letter to the king the usual request concerning the temporalities. The omission created a demur; but at length, on the supposition that it had been an error of the clerk, it was overlooked.<sup>3</sup> Twenty-three years elapsed, when William de Gainsborough was preferred to the bishopric of Worcester; and in the bull of provision the pope was made to intrust to his care the temporalities as well as the spiritualities of that see. The addition did not escape the observation of the royal officers; it was declared to be an invasion of the right of the king, to whom alone, and not to the pope, belonged the power of granting the temporalities; and the bishop, for having received the bull, was condemned to pay a fine of one thousand marks. To evade, however, the difficulty, without having recourse to negotiation with the pontiff, the

<sup>1</sup> Rym. i. 305.

<sup>2</sup> Claus. 1 Ed. I. m. 11, apud Brad. iii. App. 32.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. ii. 1072.



following expedient was adopted. Gainsborough, by a formal instrument, renounced every clause in the bull which might be prejudicial to the rights of the crown, and acknowledged that he could receive the temporalities of the bishopric from no one but the king; and Edward, satisfied with this renunciation, delivered the temporalities to him, and allowed him to do homage.<sup>1</sup> Still, however, as the court of Rome persisted in the use of the same form, the crown continued to require from each bishop a similar renunciation, which was regularly made from that time till "provisions" were finally abolished in the reign of Henry VIII.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

But the "provisions" to bishoprics did not create such general dissatisfaction as those to inferior benefices. All the complaints which had been made in the reign of Henry III. were repeated; that the rights of the patrons had been invaded; that livings were given to clergymen who did not reside within the kingdom, and were even ignorant of the language; and that the wealth of the English church was occasionally employed in supporting those who advocated the cause of the enemies of England. The popes condescended to reply, that they had used their right with moderation; that, in general, they appointed none to benefices who were not the king's subjects; and that, if they ever broke that rule, it was in favour of the cardinals, who were employed to support his interest in the Roman court.<sup>3</sup> The real fact was, that the pontiffs, particularly after they had fixed their residence on this side of the Alps, were reduced to such

<sup>1</sup> Spelm. Con. ii. 435.

<sup>2</sup> See numberless instances in Rymer, passim. In 1324 Edward II. made a solemn protest against the clause (iv. 61).

<sup>3</sup> Rym. iii. 97, 187.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.

indigence, that they could not maintain their ministers without external resources ; and our monarchs, though they might be occasionally offended, were not sincere in their hostility to a practice, the utility of which they experienced themselves. By soliciting “provisions” for their servants, they exonerated themselves from the obligation of remunerating them out of the revenues of the crown ; and scarcely a year was suffered to pass in which they did not obtain several grants of this description in favour of their own chaplains.<sup>1</sup>

On these different accounts the popes had generally several officers in England employed more in a temporal than spiritual capacity. It was their duty to collect and transmit the moneys belonging to the apostolic chamber, to execute the letters of provision, to serve citations, and to notify the judgments given in the papal courts in cases of appeal, or on beneficiary matters. To the crown they were always objects of jealousy. They were most strictly forbidden to attempt any thing derogatory from the rights of the king ; their persons were occasionally searched ; every suspicious instrument was seized and laid before the council ; and on the slightest provocation they were prosecuted, imprisoned, or banished.<sup>2</sup> The papal procurator, before he could enter on the execution of his office, found it necessary to swear, that he would be loyal to the king and keep his counsel ; that he would execute no orders which might be prejudicial to the rights of the crown or of the subject ; that he would publish no letters which he might receive from the pope or any other person till he had shown them to the council ; and that he would not send money out of

<sup>1</sup> In 1275 Edward obtained three at the same time.—Rym. ii. 55.  
In 1306 he obtained six.—Id. ii. 982.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. iii. 187.



the kingdom without the royal license.<sup>1</sup> But no prince seems to have carried this jealousy farther than Edward II. When John XXII. had sent the bishops of Vienne and Orange to negotiate a reconciliation between him and his consort Isabella, though they had previously informed him that they brought with them no letters of any description, which could affect his interests or those of any of his subjects, the constable of Dover received an order to address them on their landing in the following terms:—"My lords, "it is my duty to charge every stranger, who enters "this land, to inform our lord the king of the cause of "his coming; but this is unnecessary, as I am assured "you have already done so. It is, however, my duty "also to forbid you, in the name of our lord the king, "to bring with you, or to do any thing which may be "prejudicial to the king, his land, or any of his subjects, under the penalties which thereto belong; "or to receive or execute hereafter any order that "may arrive, and prove to be prejudicial to him, his "land, or his subjects, under the same penalties." After this uncourteous speech, he treated them with every attention, and informed the king of their arrival.<sup>2</sup>

In the last year of Edward I. the different claims of the pontiffs became the subject of parliamentary investigation. An unanimous resolution was taken by the king, lords, and commons, to put an end to all causes of complaint, and Testa, the papal procurator, was severely reprimanded before the two houses, forbidden to repeat his former exactions, and strictly enjoined to keep for the king's use the moneys which he had levied. At the same time writs were directed to the sheriffs, to arrest all persons who had been

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

1307.

March 22.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vi. 709.

<sup>2</sup> Id. iv. 206.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1307.

April 4.

June 27.

employed by him, and to bring them before the king on a certain day, to answer the complaints of the aggrieved. It is impossible to acquit Edward of duplicity on this occasion. The cardinal bishop of Sabina visited him during the sitting of parliament; as soon as it was dissolved, the king took Testa and his associates under the royal protection, and granted them permission to levy the first fruits, to perform all acts done by their predecessors, and to transmit the moneys which they had collected to the pontiff in bills of exchange. The cardinal soon afterwards departed; and the papal officers were immediately opposed by the officers of the crown. They exhibited the king's letters; but were told that these letters included the words "as far as is in our power;" now it was not in the king's power to surrender the rights of the crown; and of consequence the protection which they had obtained was of no force. From this decision they appealed to Edward himself, who replied by an order for the observance of the parliamentary prohibitions. His death, which happened a few day later, left the question in this unsettled state.<sup>1</sup>

So it remained during the reign of Edward II., and the first part of that of his successor. But in the year 1343 the act of Edward I. was read in parliament, and an additional act was passed, forbidding, under the pain of forfeiture, any person to bring into the realm, or receive, or execute provisions, reservations, or letters of any other description, which should be contrary to the rights of the king or of his subjects; ordering all such letters to be seized wherever they might be found; and commanding all provisors or

<sup>1</sup> See the whole proceeding related in the Rolls of Parliament, i. 219—223.



others, who in consequence of such letters, should institute actions against the patrons of benefices, or their presentees, to be brought before the king to receive that judgment which he should award.<sup>1</sup> In the next parliament it was determined that the penalty to be incurred by offenders against the last act should be outlawry, perpetual imprisonment, or abjuration of the realm. In 1351 it was provided by a new statute that ecclesiastical elections should be free, and the rights of patrons should be preserved; that if the pope by provision or reservation disturbed such rights and elections, the collation should fall to the king in all cases where he or an ecclesiastical person were the patron, or the lay patron neglected to exercise his right; and that if the king's presentee were afterwards molested by the provisor, then the said provisor, his procurators, executors, and notaries, should be imprisoned, and fined at the mercy of the king, and make full compensation to the person aggrieved.<sup>2</sup> With this statute the clergy were not content. In the place of one invasion of right it substituted another. Instead of protecting the freedom of canonical election against the interference of the pope, it abolished such freedom in favour of the king, on the groundless plea that the nomination had originally belonged to the crown, and that when the conditions, on which free elections had been conceded, were no longer observed, the crown ought to be replaced in its original situation.

Two years later an addition was made to the provisions of this statute. It always happened that the presentee applied for protection to the royal, the provisor to the papal courts; and that the latter by

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1343.

1344.

1351.

Feb. 9.

1353.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 144, 145.

<sup>2</sup> Stat. of Realm, i. 316.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1353.

spiritual censures endeavoured to prevent the execution of the judgments given in the former. It was therefore enacted that whosoever should draw any of the king's subjects to plead in a foreign court on matters, the cognizance of which belonged to the king's courts, or should by such means seek to defeat the judgments given in the king's courts, should be allowed two months to answer for his contempt; and at the expiration of that term should, with his procurators, attorneys, executors, notaries, and maintainers, be put out of the king's protection; his lands, goods, and chattels forfeited to the king, and his body, if found, imprisoned, till it were ransomed at the king's will.<sup>1</sup>

In 1364 all the former statutes on this subject were confirmed, and the penalties of the last were extended to all persons who had procured, or should procure, personal citations to plead in a foreign court, or had obtained, or should obtain, in the said court any ecclesiastical benefices within the realm; and in the same punishment were involved all their maintainers, concealers, abettors, aiders, fautors, and sureties. To this new statute the dukes, earls, barons, and commons agreed, "if it should so please the king;" but the prelates added to their consent a protest, that they did not mean to assent to any thing "which might be, or which might turn, to the prejudice of their dignity or estate."<sup>2</sup>

1373.

In 1373 the commons again addressed the king, complaining of the papal provisions, and of the demand

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 252. Stat. of Realm, i. 329.

<sup>2</sup> Stat. of Realm, i. 386. Rot. Parl. ii. 284, 285. These enactments were called the Statutes of Provisors and Premunire. The latter word is taken from the beginning of the writ, preparatory to the prosecution, *præmunire facias*—Forewarn, &c.



of the first fruits; but Edward replied, that his envoys were treating on these subjects with the pontiff, and that he could not consent to any innovation till he should know the result.<sup>1</sup> It was agreed by the two powers to suspend all proceedings in their respective courts, and to send ambassadors to Bruges, where the matters in dispute might be amicably adjusted, and at the same time a peace be negotiated with France under the papal mediation. The consequence was, that Edward remitted all penalties enacted by the statutes against provisors; and Gregory XI. revoked every reservation which had been made by himself or his predecessors, but had not yet taken effect; confirmed all the king's presentees in the actual possession of their benefices, without requiring from them the payment of the first fruits; imposed silence on all the provisors (they were six in number) who had causes pending in his courts; and empowered the bishops to visit the livings which had been given to cardinals, and to reserve, in defiance of prohibition or appeal, so much of the income as they thought necessary for the repairs of the church and buildings.<sup>2</sup> The king seems to have been satisfied; but the commons the next year presented to him two more petitions, repeating and exaggerating their former complaints. They were coldly received. He had, he returned,

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1373.

1374.

1375.

1376.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 320. A little before, the commons had petitioned that no clergyman should be one of the great officers of state; and Edward had replied that he should take the advice of his council. I mention this merely to observe, that the real ground of the petition appears on the rolls; namely, that laymen for mal-administration might be punished with the forfeiture of their lands and chattels; but the clergymen were so secured by their privileges, that it was difficult to bring them to justice, whatever had been their conduct while they were in power.—Rot. Parl. ii. 304.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vii. 33, 83—88.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1376.

already applied a sufficient remedy, and was still in treaty with the pontiff respecting the matters contained in their long and tedious addresses.<sup>1</sup>

From the preceding detail, the reader will have collected an accurate notion of this controversy. Of the primacy of the pontiff, or of his spiritual jurisdiction, there was no question; both these were repeatedly acknowledged by the commons in their petitions, and by the king in his letters. But it was contended that the pope was surrounded by subtle and rapacious counsellors, who abused, for their own emolument, the confidence of their master;<sup>2</sup> that by their advice he had "accroached" to himself a temporal authority to which, as it invaded the rights of others, he could have no claim; and that when repeated remonstrances had failed, it was lawful to employ the resources of the civil power in the just defence of civil rights. It was in vain that the pontiff, on account of his pre-eminent dignity in the church, claimed a right to dispose of its revenues for its advantage; the new statutes were put into execution; and the same legislators, who received with deference the doctrinal decisions and disciplinary regulations of their chief pastor, visited with the severest penalties of the law the clergymen who procured from him the provision to a benefice in opposition to the rights of the patron. This is an important occurrence in our history, as it proves beyond contradiction that the

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. ii. 337—340.

<sup>2</sup> In the preamble to the statute of the 38th of Edward III. it is said to have been enacted among other reasons, *en eide et confort du pape, qui moult sovent a estee truble par tieles et semblables importuns clamours et impetrationes, et qui y meist voluntiers convenable remedie, si sa segūtete estoit sur ces choses enfourmee.*—Stat. of Ream, i. 385.



distinction between the spiritual and temporal power of the pope, which is maintained by the Catholics of the present day, was a principle fully recognised and asserted by their Catholic ancestors many centuries ago.

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1376.  
—

In the obstinacy with which the court of Rome urged the exercise of these obnoxious claims, it is difficult to discover any traces of that political wisdom for which it has been celebrated. Its conduct tended to loosen the ties which bound the people to the head of their church; to nourish a spirit of opposition to his authority, and to create a willingness to listen to the declamations, and adopt the opinions of religious innovators. To disputes respecting the questionable limits of the spiritual and temporal jurisdictions succeeded a more important controversy on points of doctrine; and before the close of Edward's reign a new teacher appeared, who boldly rejected many of the tenets which his countrymen had hitherto revered as sacred; whose disciples for more than a century maintained a doubtful contest with the civil and ecclesiastical authorities; and whose principles, though apparently eradicated, continued to vegetate in secret till the important era of the Reformation. I may be allowed to add a few notices respecting the life of this extraordinary man.

VIII. It is about the year 1360 that the name of Wycliffe is first mentioned in history. He was then engaged in a fierce but ridiculous controversy with the different orders of friars. They had been established in England for more than a century; and by their zeal, piety, and learning, the usual concomitants of new religious institutions, had deservedly earned the esteem of the public. Some taught with applause



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1376.

in the universities ; many lent their aid to the parochial clergy in the discharge of their ministry ; several had been raised to the episcopal dignity ; and others had been employed in difficult and important negotiations by their sovereigns.<sup>1</sup> The reputation and prosperity of the new orders awakened the jealousy of their rivals. Fitz-Ralph, archbishop of Armagh, openly accused them before the pontiff ; and Wycliffe, treading in the footsteps of Fitz-Ralph, maintained at Oxford that a life of mendicity was repugnant to the precepts of the gospel, and that the friars in practice and doctrine were involved in the guilt of fifty heresies. The men whom he attacked endeavoured to justify themselves by the example of Christ, who was supported by the alms of his disciples ; and Wycliffe replied with this nice distinction ; that Christ, though he received, did not ask ; while the friars, not content with spontaneous offerings, extorted others by their importunity and falsehoods. This controversy had no immediate result ; but it is mentioned as the origin of that violent hostility to the friars, which Wycliffe displayed in every subsequent stage of his life.

1361.  
Oct. 20.

Archbishop Islep had founded Canterbury-hall in Oxford for a warden and eleven scholars, three of whom with the warden should be monks of Christchurch, the other eight secular clergymen. In conformity with the statutes, the prior of Christchurch presented to him in 1363 the names of three monks ; he chose that of Wodehall, who was accordingly installed in the office of warden. Two years later, at a time, if we may believe the subsequent pleadings, when all the monks were lawfully absent, Wycliffe, one of the clerical scholars, obtained for himself the

1363.  
March 13.

1365.  
Dec. 9.

<sup>1</sup> See Collectanea Anglo-Minoritica, passim.



appointment of warden from the archbishop, and then closed the hall against the re-admission of Wodehall and his fellows. But four months did not elapse before Islep died; and Langham, his successor, alleging that the appointment of Wycliffe was in opposition to the charter of foundation, and obtained at a time when his predecessor from age and sickness was in a state of mental imbecility, commanded the new warden to make place for the old. On his refusal, the archbishop sequestrated the living of Pageham, which belonged to the hall; but Wycliffe appealed to the pontiff, and by this expedient obtained a respite for three years. At length the contending parties appeared in the papal court at Viterbo, and delivered their respective statements; but at the next sitting Benger, a clerical scholar, who prosecuted the appeal on the part of Wycliffe, was not in attendance; two adjournments followed to give him time to appear; the cause then proceeded in his absence, and judgment was finally given in favour of Wodehall.<sup>1</sup> Wycliffe yielded to the united authority of the king and the pontiff, but with feelings of resentment, to which his contemporaries attributed those bitter and envenomed invectives with which he afterwards assailed the court of Rome, as well as the monastic orders.<sup>2</sup>

He had obtained the honorary title of one of the

<sup>1</sup> See the original documents in Lewis, 235, and Vaughan, i. 406.

<sup>2</sup> "For that he was justly deprived by the archbishop of Canterbury from a certayne benefice."—Contemp. writer in *Achæol.* xii. 253. The license for the impropriation of the living of Pageham stated that it was for the support of a body consisting of four monks and eight clergymen. The lawyers therefore maintained that it had fallen to the crown; because from the time when Wycliffe obtained possession all had been at first clergymen, and afterwards all monks; but Edward confirmed the grant to the Hall in 1372 on the payment of a fine of 200 marks.

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1365.

1366.  
April 23.

1370.  
May 11.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1370.  
—  
1374.

king's chaplains, and as such strenuously maintained in the university the rights of the crown against the pretensions of the pontiff. His name stands the second on the list of commissioners appointed to meet the papal envoys at Bruges, for the purpose of adjusting in an amicable manner the disputes between the two powers.<sup>1</sup> He was afterwards preferred to a prebend in the collegiate church of Westbury, being already in possession of the rectory of Fylingham, which he exchanged for that of Lutterworth, both in the diocese of Lincoln.

To accept of preferment was so contrary to the principles which he afterwards taught, that it is probable he had not yet determined to embrace the profession of a reformer. He continued, however, to lecture at Oxford, and imitated in his manner of life the austerity of the men whom he so warmly opposed. He always went barefoot, and was clad in a gown of the coarsest russet.<sup>2</sup> By degrees he diverted his invectives from the friars to the whole body of the clergy. The pope, the bishops, the rectors, and curates, smarted successively under the lash. Every clergyman was bound, he contended, to imitate the Saviour in poverty as well as virtue. But clerks possessioners, so he termed the beneficed clergy, did not imitate the poverty of Christ. "They were choked  
" with the tallow of worldly goods, and consequently  
" were hypocrites and antichrists."<sup>3</sup> By falling into sin, they became traitors to their God, and of course forfeited the emoluments of their cures. In such cases it became the duty of laymen, under pain of damnation, to withhold from them their tithes, and

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 41.

<sup>2</sup> Lel. Col. iii. 409.

<sup>3</sup> MS. of Prelates, c. 40, apud Lewis, 37.



to take from them their possessions.<sup>1</sup> To disseminate these and similar principles, he collected a body of fanatics, whom he distinguished by the name of “poor priests.” They were clad like himself, professed their determination never to accept of any benefice,<sup>2</sup> and undertook to exercise the calling of itinerant preachers without the license, and even in opposition to the authority of the bishops.

CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1374.

The coarseness of Wycliffe's invectives, and the refractory conduct of his poor priests, soon became subjects of astonishment and complaint. In the last year of Edward, while the parliament was sitting, he was summoned to answer in St. Paul's before the primate and the bishop of London. He obeyed; but made his appearance between the two most powerful subjects in England, the duke of Lancaster, and Percy the lord marshal. Their object was to intimidate his opponents; and the attempt was begun by Lancaster, who ordered a chair to be given to Wycliffe. Courtenay, the bishop of London, replied that it was not customary for the accused to sit in the presence, and without the permission, of his judges. A vehement altercation ensued, and the language of Lancaster grew so abusive, that the populace rose in defence of their bishop, and had it not been for his interference, would have offered violence to his reviler. Though the duke escaped with his life, his palace of the Savoy was pillaged in the tumult, which has been

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. p. 266.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 192. Cont. Murim. 136. Wycliffe wrote a treatise entitled “Why poor priests have no benefice.” It is published by Lewis, p. 287. The reasons for refusing benefices are three:—1. The dread of simony. 2. The danger of mispending the revenues, which belong to the poor. 3. The hope of doing more good by moving from place to place.



CHAP.  
III.  
A.D. 1374.

1377.  
June 21.

already described. Wycliffe found it necessary to make the best apology in his power, and was permitted to depart with a severe reprimand, and an order to be silent for the future on those subjects which had given so much cause for complaint.<sup>1</sup>

In a few days the king expired; the sequel of Wycliffe's history will be related under the reign of the next monarch.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 191. Cont. Murim. 137. Lel. Coll. i. 183; iii. 379. Harpsfield, 683. Fuller, 135.



## CHAPTER IV.

## RICHARD II.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emp. of Germ.</i>                           | <i>K. of Scotland.</i> | <i>K. of France.</i> | <i>K. of Spain.</i> |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Charles IV. 1378.                              | Robert II. ...1390     | Charles V. 1380      | Henry II. ....1379  |
| Winceslaus.                                    | Robert III.            | Charles VI.          | John I. ....1390    |
|                                                |                        |                      | Henry III.          |
| <i>Popes.</i>                                  |                        |                      |                     |
| Gregory XI. 1378. Urban VI. 1389. Boniface IX. |                        |                      |                     |

GOVERNMENT OF THE KINGDOM DURING THE MINORITY—INSURRECTION AND EXCESSES OF THE PEOPLE—WYCLIFFE—HIS DEATH AND DOCTRINES—INVASION OF SCOTLAND—PROSECUTION OF MINISTERS—ASCENDANCY OF THE DUKE OF GLOUCESTER—EXECUTION OF THE KING'S FRIENDS—RICHARD RECOVERS HIS AUTHORITY—STATUTES OF PROVISORS—THE KING GOES TO IRELAND—ATTAINDER OF THE DUKE OF GLOUCESTER AND HIS ADHERENTS—JUDGMENT OF THE DUKES OF HEREFORD AND NORFOLK—ILLEGAL CONDUCT OF RICHARD—HE GOES TO IRELAND—HENRY OF LANCASTER REBELS—KING MADE PRISONER AND DEPOSED—HENRY CLAIMS THE CROWN.

WHILE Edward yet lay on his death-bed, a deputation of the citizens of London waited on Richard of Bordeaux, the son and heir of the Black Prince. They offered their lives and fortunes in support of his right to the crown, advised him to leave Shene, and to make the Tower his residence, and solicited his mediation to reconcile them with his uncle, the duke of Lancaster. The young prince (he was in his eleventh year) was instructed to receive them graciously, and

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1377.  
June 21.



CHAP. to signify his assent to their petitions. The same day  
 IV.  
 A.D. 1377. his grandfather died; and the next afternoon Richard  
 — made his entry into the capital. Triumphal arches  
 June 22. had been erected; pageants were exhibited; and  
 conduits running with wine displayed the wealth  
 of the citizens, and exhilarated the loyalty of the  
 populace.<sup>1</sup>

Three weeks were employed in performing the  
 obsequies of the late, and preparing for the coronation  
 of the new, king. On the appointed day Richard rose  
 at an early hour, and attended at the matins and mass  
 July 16. in his private chapel at Westminster. The procession  
 assembled in the great hall, the passage from which to  
 the abbey church had been covered with scarlet cloth.  
 The clergy, abbots, and prelates led the way; they  
 were followed by the great officers of the crown; and  
 last of all came the young prince under a canopy of  
 blue silk, borne on spears of silver by the barons of the  
 cinque ports. While the Litany was chanted by the  
 choir, Richard lay prostrate before the altar, whence he  
 was conducted to his throne on a platform raised in  
 the middle of the nave. As soon as he had taken the  
 usual oath, the archbishop, accompanied by the mar-  
 shals, successively explained its obligations to the  
 people from the four sides of the platform, and in-

<sup>1</sup> I will mention one of these pageants that the reader may form  
 some idea of the taste of our ancestors. In the market of Cheapside  
 was erected a building in the form of a castle, out of which ran two  
 streams of wine. On its four turrets were placed four girls, dressed  
 in white, and of the same age with the king. As he approached,  
 they blew towards him small shreds of gold-leaf; then showered  
 upon him florins made of paper, and coming down, helped him and  
 his attendants to wine out of cups of gold. To conclude the ex-  
 hibition, an angel descended from the summit of the castle, and  
 offered to the king a golden crown. Every street exhibited some  
 pageant or device; but the merchants of Cheapside obtained the  
 praise of superior ingenuity.—Wals. 194, 195.



quired whether they were willing to have the young prince for their king. Their assent was given in loud acclamations; and Richard was anointed, crowned, and invested with the different insignia of the royal dignity. A solemn mass followed; at the offertory he descended to present on the altar bread and wine and a mark of gold; and returning to his throne, received the homage of his uncles, and the earls and barons. As soon as he had communicated, the young king, exhausted with fatigue, was conveyed in a litter to his own apartment; but after a short repose was again summoned to the great hall, where he created four earls and nine knights, and partook of a splendid but tumultuous banquet. The day was concluded with balls, minstrelsies, and the usual festivities of the age.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

The next morning the prelates and barons held a great council to arrange the form of the new government during the minority of the king, and chose, “in aid of the chancellor and treasurer,” twelve councilors, two bishops, two earls, two barons, two bannerets, and four knights. The ascendancy which the duke of Lancaster possessed at the close of the last reign, his wealth and power, and his known ambition, had created a prevalent opinion that he would snatch the first opportunity to place the crown on his own head. To the surprise of his enemies he cheerfully acquiesced in the appointment of the council, and retired with

July 17.

<sup>1</sup> Walsingham has preserved the whole order of the coronation (195—198). The duke of Lancaster commanded it to be enrolled.—Rym. vii. 158. Sir John Dymock attended as champion with his two esquires; the lord steward, constable, and marshal, rode up and down the hall on their chargers to maintain order—Wals. 127. The claims to the different offices on this occasion may be seen in Lel. Coll. i. 253.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1377.

---

his suite to the castle of Kenilworth. But though he was thus apparently excluded from the administration, in common with his brothers, the new earls of Cambridge and Buckingham, he had been careful to procure places in the council for several of his creatures, whose appointment kept alive the jealousy of his opponents, and gave rise to many specious, but perhaps unfounded, reports.<sup>1</sup>

It was the misfortune of the new king to find himself, at the very commencement of his reign, involved in an expensive war. The truce between England and France had expired before the death of Edward; and Charles had taken the opportunity to renew hostilities, and add to his former conquests.

August 21. His fleets insulted the English coasts; the Isle of Wight was plundered; the town of Hastings was burnt; and though the enemy had been repulsed from Southampton by the earl of Arundel, the maritime towns were continually exposed to their visits, and the merchants were impoverished by the interruption of commerce. In these expeditions the French obtained the co-operation of the Spaniards, whose hostility had been embittered by the impolitic pretensions of the duke of Lancaster in the right of his wife to the crowns of Castile and Leon. With an exhausted treasury it was impossible for the new government to oppose the enemy on the sea, or to check his progress by land; the king summoned parliament after parliament to demand the aid of his people; and these assemblies, imitating those of the last reign, accompanied every grant with petitions, which procured the confirmation of the statutes already enacted,

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 162. Wals. 198. Rot. Parl. iii. 386.



and led to the acquisition of new and valuable privileges, still enjoyed by the house of commons at the present day. CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1377.

Richard's first parliament showed how low the influence of the duke of Lancaster had declined. The majority in the commons consisted of the members who had been arrayed against him in 1376; and the new speaker was Sir Peter de la Mere, the very man whom he had imprisoned on account of his activity on that occasion. Oct. 13. The archbishop of Canterbury opened the session with a speech, in which he recommended Richard to the affection of his people, because he was not an elected king, but the true heir and representative of their former monarchs; returned them thanks for the attention which they had always paid to his interests, since the death of his father; and requested their advice how the enemies of the realm might be effectually opposed with the least burden to the nation, and the greatest honour to the new sovereign. The commons replied that they could not venture to answer of themselves so important a question, and solicited the aid of twelve peers, with "my lord of Spain" (the duke of Lancaster) at their head. The moment Richard had signified his assent, the duke arose, bent his knee to the king, and alluding to the reports which had been circulated, said that the commons had no claim on him for advice. They had charged him with that which amounted to treason. Though he might be unworthy, he was still the son of a king, and one of the first lords in the realm; nor would he sit down under the imputation, or apply to any business, till his character had been cleared. The blood which flowed in his veins was the blood of men who had been renowned for their faith and loyalty. There had never



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

been a traitor among his ancestors of either line, nor would he be the first to sully the fair fame of two noble families. Marvellous indeed it would be, if, bound as he was by nature to be loyal, and with more to lose by treason than any other man in the kingdom, he should still be a traitor. Let then his accusers come forth. He was ready to meet them, as if he were the poorest knight, either in single combat, or in any other way that the king and his peers might award.<sup>1</sup>

This speech created a considerable ferment. The prelates and lords arose together, surrounded the duke, and entreated him to be pacified, "for no mortal living would give credit to such imputation." The commons then came and protested their belief of his innocence, and in proof of their sincerity, referred to the choice which they had previously made of Lancaster himself to be their principal counsellor. At last he suffered himself to be persuaded, consented to forget all that was passed, and declared that he would be satisfied with the enactment of a severe law for the punishment of the inventors and propagators of similar falsehoods.<sup>2</sup>

After this pacification the commons, having presented several petitions, were ordered to withdraw, and to return on an appointed day to receive the answers of the king and the lords. In one point, and that of great importance, they proved successful. Two citizens, John Phillpot and William Walworth, merchants of London, were appointed treasurers to receive the moneys arising from the new aid, of two-tenths on the towns, and two-fifteenths on the counties, and to

<sup>1</sup> This speech is entered on the rolls, probably at the demand of the duke.—Rot. Parl. iii.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.



employ them solely in defraying the expenses of the war. In another point their wishes were but partially gratified. They had petitioned that eight new councillors, the great officers of state, the chief justices, and all the individuals admitted near the king's person, should be named by the lords, and certified to the commons in parliament. The lords appointed a new council of nine members to continue in office one year, to whom were added eight others according to the request of the commons ; and reserving to themselves the nomination of the chancellor, chamberlain, and steward of the household during the minority, left to the king himself the selection of his other companions and servants. To a third request, that a "parliament might be holden once every year at a convenient place, to redress delays in actions at law, and to decide finally those cases in which the judges differed in opinion," it was replied, that the existing statutes should be put in execution, and the place of meeting be determined by the king.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1377.  
—

Before the close of the session Alice Perrers was abandoned by her former patron to the resentment of the commons. She was arraigned before the peers on the act passed the last year, to prohibit females from soliciting causes in the king's courts for hire and reward ; and was accused of having procured from the deceased monarch the revocation of Sir Nicholas Dagworth's appointment to an office in Ireland, and a full pardon for Richard Lyons, who had been convicted of several misdemeanors at the prosecution of the commons in parliament. The prelates and lords

Nov. 22.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 6, 7, 16. During these proceedings the lords appear to have acted on the principle, that by the minority of the king, the rights of providing for government had devolved upon themselves.



CHAP. resolved that she should be tried by jury, before a  
 IV. committee of the house, consisting of the duke of  
 A.D. 1377. Lancaster and four earls. She was found guilty, and  
 — condemned to banishment, and the forfeiture of all  
 her lands, tenements, goods, and chattels.<sup>1</sup>

1378. The hopes of the nation had been raised by the  
 August. promises, they were afterwards depressed by the in-  
 activity, of the duke of Lancaster. That prince, who  
 had received the whole of the last subsidy, conducted  
 an army to Bretagne, besieged the town of St. Malo,  
 lay during several weeks before the walls, and then  
 returned to England without fighting the enemy, or  
 achieving a single conquest. The Scots at the same  
 time violated the truce, burnt Roxburgh, and sur-  
 prised Berwick, which was soon recovered by the earl  
 of Northumberland. Several petty engagements were  
 fought at sea ; but the commanders who chiefly dis-  
 tinguished themselves on either side proved to be  
 private adventurers ; Mercer, a Scot, who with a few  
 ships scoured the German Ocean, and carried off a  
 fleet of merchantmen from the port of Scarborough ;  
 and Phillpot, a citizen of London, who, equipping a  
 small squadron at his own charge, fell in with Mercer,  
 and, after a sharp engagement, took him prisoner, and

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 12—14. In this trial there occurred much which is very repugnant to our present notions and practice. 1. Not only were the depositions of the witnesses very unsatisfactory, but six of the jury were examined against the accused. It should, however, be observed, that this was consistent with the ancient practice, which selected the jury from the persons supposed to be, from their own knowledge, the best acquainted with the guilt or innocence of the prisoner. In the present case it consisted of sixteen knights and esquires of the late king's household, who from their situation had been in the habit of witnessing the conduct of Perrers. 2. When judgment was about to be pronounced, it was observed that the punishment in the late act extended only to the forfeiture of goods and chattels, not of lands and tenements. To get over the difficulty, the lords who had concurred in passing that act declared that it had always been their intention to include lands and tenements.—Ibid.



captured sixteen Spanish vessels. Phillpot was received with acclamations by his fellow-citizens; but was severely reprimanded by the council, for having presumed to levy war without the royal permission.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1378.  
—

The next parliament met at Gloucester, at a time when the minds of the people were soured by taxation and disappointment. On the introduction of the commons into the royal presence, their speaker, Sir James Pickering, having craved the king's indulgence, if he should say any thing displeasing to him or the lords, detailed their objections to the grant of a new subsidy, which were answered by Sir Richard le Scrope, the steward of the household. Emboldened by their success in the last year, they now requested permission to inspect the accounts of the treasurers, which was granted as a matter of favour but not of right, with a protestation that it should not hereafter be drawn into precedent. They next petitioned for a copy of the enrolment of the tenths and fifteenths, that they might learn in what manner they had been raised; and this was also granted, with an observation that it proceeded from the king's good pleasure, and not in consequence of their request. Lastly, they demanded that six peers and prelates should be sent to their chamber to give them advice; but the lords refused, declaring that they would revert to the ancient custom of appointing a committee of their members to consult in private with a committee similarly appointed by the other house. Though the commons were repeatedly urged to the despatch of business, and told that by their delay they added to the burden of those who had to pay their expenses, they proceeded leisurely and with much deliberation.

Oct. 20.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 211.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1378.

On inquiry, however, they were satisfied that the subsidy had been impartially assessed, and lawfully expended ; their objections were silenced ; and a new aid by an additional impost on wool, wool-fells, and skins, was cheerfully granted.<sup>1</sup>

1378.  
Dec. 9.

During the war in Bretagne the French had successively obtained possession of every fortress, with the exception of Brest, which the duke, John de Montfort, had surrendered to Richard in exchange for a competent estate in England. Charles flattering himself that he was secure of his conquest, by a definitive judgment annexed the duchy to the French crown ; a precipitate and injudicious measure, which instantly awakened all the national prejudices of the Bretons. They combined to assert their independence, recalled their duke, expelled the French, and earnestly solicited assistance from England. The first expedition under Sir John Arundel was dispersed by a storm, in which the general and the greater part of the men-at-arms perished. A second army was raised, and placed under the command of the earl of Buckingham, the king's uncle. He crossed from Dover to Calais, directed his march through the heart of France, and was permitted to advance without opposition, according to the usual policy of the enemy. But by the time he had reached the borders of Bretagne, another, and not less singular, revolution had happened. Charles

1379.  
Dec.

died, the Bretons transferred their jealousy from the French to their allies ; and Montfort, after balancing long between the two parties, yielded to the wishes of his subjects, and made his peace with the regency which governed France during the minority of Charles VI. The earl spent the winter in Bretagne ; and at the

1380.  
July 21.

Sept. 16.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 34, 38.



return of spring was happy to escape with his army from the perfidy and hostility of the natives.<sup>1</sup>

The ministers had obtained ample grants of money in the two first years of this reign; in the third the expense of the war in Bretagne compelled them to solicit an additional aid, and to confirm by these frequent appeals to the generosity of the nation that control, which the house of commons had lately assumed over the public moneys. It was no longer necessary to petition for the accounts of the treasury; they were offered spontaneously; and in return was granted a capitation tax graduated according to each person's rank and estate.<sup>2</sup> It had been calculated to

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
April 11.

1379.  
April 25.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. xxvii. xxxiii.—xlvi. Murim. Cont. 148, 149.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 56, 57, 58. As the scale is curious, I shall subjoin an abridgment of it.

|                                                                                                                                                                                      | £  | s. | d.  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|-----|
| 1. The dukes of Lancaster and Bretagne were rated at ...                                                                                                                             | 6  | 13 | 4   |
| 2. The justices of the King's Bench and Common Pleas, and the chief baron of the Exchequer . . . . .                                                                                 | 5  | 0  | 0   |
| 3. An earl, an earl's widow, and the mayor of London . . . . .                                                                                                                       | 4  | 0  | 0   |
| 4. A baron, banneret, knight equal in estate to a banneret, their widows, the aldermen of London, mayors of great towns, serjeants-at-law and great apprentices of the law . . . . . | 2  | 0  | 0   |
| 5. A knight, esquire who ought to be a knight, their widows, apprentices who followed the law, jurats of great towns, and great merchants . . . . .                                  | 1  | 0  | 0   |
| 6. Sufficient merchants . . . . .                                                                                                                                                    | 0  | 13 | 4   |
| 7. Esquires, their widows, the widows of sufficient merchants, attorneys-at-law . . . . .                                                                                            | 0  | 6  | 8   |
| 8. Others of less estate in proportion . . . . .                                                                                                                                     | 0  | 3  | 4   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                      | or | 0  | 2   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                      | or | 0  | 1 0 |
| 9. Each married labourer for himself and wife . . . . .                                                                                                                              | 0  | 0  | 4   |
| 10. Single men and women not mendicants . . . . .                                                                                                                                    | 0  | 0  | 4   |

—Rot. Parl. iii. 57, 58.

The clergy, who possessed the right of taxing themselves, adopted a similar rate.

|                                             | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------------------------------|---|----|----|
| Archbishops paid . . . . .                  | 6 | 13 | 4  |
| Bishops and other spiritual peers . . . . . | 4 | 0  | 0  |



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1379.

1380.  
Jan. 16.

Nov. 5.

produce above fifty thousand pounds, but fell short of half that sum; and to supply the deficiency a new demand was made upon parliament. The commons vented their discontent in complaints. They required that the council should be dismissed, that the king should govern with the aid of his usual officers, the chancellor, treasurer, keeper of the privy seal, chamberlain, and steward of the household, and that these ministers should be chosen in parliament. All their petitions were granted; even a committee of finance, consisting of lords and commoners, was appointed, with powers to inquire into the expenses of the royal household, and of the offices of government; and into this committee were introduced, by a condescension hitherto unknown, three representatives of the cities, two of them aldermen of London, and one an alderman of York. Mollified by so many concessions, they voted a tenth and a half within the cities and boroughs, a fifteenth and a half without.<sup>1</sup> Yet these grants did not prove sufficient to cover the current expenses of the year; and when the chancellor, a few months later, informed them that one hundred and sixty thousand pounds were requisite to liquidate the debt of the nation, they pronounced the demand “out-  
“rageous and insupportable,” and prayed the king

|                                                                 | £ | s. | d. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---|----|----|
| All having benefices above the yearly value of 200 <i>l</i> .   | 2 | 0  | 0  |
| from 100 <i>l</i> . to 200 <i>l</i> .                           | 1 | 10 | 0  |
| from 66 <i>l</i> . 13 <i>s</i> . 4 <i>d</i> . to 100 <i>l</i> . | 1 | 0  | 0  |
| from 40 <i>l</i> . to 66 <i>l</i> . 13 <i>s</i> . 4 <i>d</i> .  | 0 | 13 | 4  |
| from 20 <i>l</i> . to 40 <i>l</i> .                             | 0 | 10 | 0  |
| from 10 <i>l</i> . to 20 <i>l</i> .                             | 0 | 5  | 0  |
| All other clergymen                                             | 0 | 2  | 0  |

Monks and nuns paid per head, according to the value of the houses to which they belonged, 40*d*. or 20*d*. or 12*d*. or 4*d*.—Wilk. Con. iii. 141, 142.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 73, 74, 75.



and the lords to fix on a lower sum, and point out the least oppressive mode by which it could be raised. Three plans were offered to their choice; a capitation tax, or a duty on the sale of merchandise throughout the realm, or the imposition of a tenth or fifteenth after the ancient manner. A long debate ensued. The commons proposed to raise one hundred thousand pounds by the capitation tax, of which two-thirds should be paid by the laity, one-third by the clergy; but the clergy replied, that they would admit of no invasion of their rights; they had always enjoyed the liberty of taxing themselves, and would carefully preserve it. Let others perform their own duty and they would perform theirs. At last it was resolved to impose a tax of three groats per head on every male and female of fifteen years of age: but for the relief of the poor it was provided, that in the cities and towns the aggregate amount should be divided among the inhabitants according to their abilities, so that no individual should pay less than one groat, or more than sixty groats for himself and his wife.<sup>1</sup> The parliament was immediately dismissed; but the collection of the tax gave occasion to an insurrection, which threatened the life of the king, and the very existence of the government.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1380.  
—

Dec. 6.

At this period a secret ferment seems to have pervaded the mass of the people in many nations of Europe. Men were no longer willing to submit to the impositions of their rulers, or to wear the chains

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 88—90. The clergy in convocation granted a similar tax of 6s. 8d. from all prelates, priests both regular and secular, and nuns, and of one shilling from all deacons and inferior clerks.—Conc. iii. 150. The commons assert on this occasion that the wealth of the clergy amounted to one-half of that of the laity.—Rot. Parl. iii. 90.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1380.

---

which had been thrown round the necks of their fathers by a warlike and haughty aristocracy. We may trace this awakening spirit of independence to a variety of causes, operating in the same direction ; to the progressive improvement of society, the gradual diffusion of knowledge, the increasing pressure of taxation, and above all to the numerous and lasting wars by which Europe had lately been convulsed. Necessity had often compelled both the sovereigns and nobles to court the goodwill of the people ; the burghers in the towns, and inferior tenants in the country, had learned, from the repeated demands made upon them, to form notions of their own importance ; and the archers and foot soldiers, who had served for years in the wars, were, at their return home, unwilling to sit down in the humble station of bondmen to their former lords. In Flanders the commons had risen against their count Louis, and had driven him out of his dominions ; in France the populace had taken possession of Paris and Rouen, and massacred the collectors of the revenue. In England a spirit of discontent agitated the whole body of the villeins, who remained in almost the same situation in which we left them at the Norman conquest. They were still attached to the soil, talliable at the will of the lord, and bound to pay the fines for the marriage of their females, to perform customary labour, and to render the other servile prestations incident to their condition. It is true that in the course of time many had obtained the rights of freemen. Occasionally the king or the lord would liberate at once all the bondmen on some particular domain, in return for a fixed rent to be yearly assessed on the inhabitants.<sup>1</sup> But

<sup>1</sup> See for instance New Rym. i. 204.



the progress of emancipation was slow; the improved condition of their former fellows served only to embitter the discontent of those who still wore the fetters of servitude; and in many places the villeins formed associations for their mutual support, and availed themselves of every expedient in their power to free themselves from the control of their lords. In the first year of Richard's reign a complaint was laid before parliament, that in many districts they had purchased exemplifications out of the domesday book in the king's court, and under a false interpretation of that record had pretended to be discharged of all manner of servitude both as to their bodies and their tenures, and would not suffer the officers of their lords either to levy distress, or to do justice upon them. It was in vain that such exemplifications were declared of no force, and that commissions were ordered for the punishment of the rebellious. The villeins by their union and perseverance contrived to intimidate their lords, and set at defiance the severity of the law.<sup>1</sup> To this resistance they were encouraged by the diffusion of the doctrines so recently taught by Wycliffe, that the right of property was founded in grace, and that no man, who was by sin a traitor to God, could be entitled to the services of others; at the same time itinerant preachers sedulously inculcated the natural equality of mankind, and the tyranny of artificial distinctions; and the poorer classes, still smarting under the exactions of the late reign, were by the impositions of the new tax wound up to a pitch of madness. Thus the materials had been prepared; it required but a spark to set the whole country in a blaze.

It was soon discovered that the receipts at the

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 21, 45. Stat. of Realm, ii. 2.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
—

May 30.

treasury would fall short of the expected amount; and commissions were issued to different persons to inquire into the conduct of the collectors, and to compel payment from those who had been favoured or overlooked. One of these commissioners, Thomas de Bampton, sat at Brentwood in Essex; but the men of Fobbing refused to answer before him; and when the chief justice of the Common Pleas attempted to punish their contumacy, they compelled him to flee, murdered the jurors and clerks of the commission, and carrying their heads upon poles, claimed the support of the nearest townships. In a few days all the commons of Essex were in a state of insurrection, under the command of a profligate priest, who had assumed the name of Jack Straw.

The men of Kent were not long behind their neighbours in Essex. At Dartford one of the collectors had demanded the tax for a young girl, the daughter of a tyler. Her mother maintained that she was under the age required by the statute; and the officer was proceeding to ascertain the fact by an indecent exposure of her person, when her father, who had just returned from work, with a stroke from his hammer beat out the offender's brains. His courage was applauded by his neighbours. They swore that they would protect him from punishment, and by threats and promises secured the co-operation of all the villages in the western division of Kent.

June.

A third party of insurgents was formed by the men of Gravesend, irritated at the conduct of Sir Simon Burley. He had claimed one of the burghers as his bondman, refused to grant to him his freedom at a less price than three hundred pounds, and sent him a prisoner to the castle of Rochester. With the aid of a



body of insurgents from Essex, the castle was taken, and the captive liberated. At Maidstone they appointed Wat the tyler of that town leader of the commons of Kent, and took with them an itinerant preacher of the name of John Ball, who for his seditious and heterodox harangues had been confined by order of the archbishop.<sup>1</sup> The mayor and aldermen of Canterbury were compelled to swear fidelity to the good cause; several of the citizens were slain; and five hundred joined them in their intended march towards London. When they reached Blackheath their numbers are said to have amounted to one hundred thousand men. To this lawless and tumultuous multitude Ball was appointed preacher, and assumed for the text of his first sermon the following lines:

When Adam delved and Evé span,  
Who was then the gentleman?

He told them that by nature all men were born equal; that the distinction of bondage and freedom was the invention of their oppressors, and contrary to the views of their Creator; that God now offered them the means of recovering their liberty, and that, if they continued slaves, the blame must rest with

<sup>1</sup> For these different particulars see Knyghton, 2633; Walsingham, 247, and Stowe, 283, 284. Some writers have described Ball as one of Wycliffe's disciples. That he was an itinerant preacher, and he declaimed with equal vehemence against the clergy, is certain. But he was rather the precursor, as he is styled by Knyghton (2644, 2655), than the follower of Wycliffe; for he took up the profession of an itinerant preacher long before, even during the lifetime of Archbishop Islep, who died in 1366. By that prelate, and his successors Langham and Sudbury, and by several bishops, he had been repeatedly excommunicated for preaching "errors, and schisms, and scandals against the pope, the archbishops, bishops, and clergy."—See Wilkins, Conc. iii. 64, 152. When, however, Wycliffe began to dogmatize, he adopted some of the doctrines of the new teacher, and ingrafted them on his own.—Wals. 275.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
—

themselves; that it was necessary to dispose of the archbishop, the earls and barons, the judges, lawyers, and questmongers; and that when the distinction of ranks was abolished, all would be free, because all would be of the same nobility, and of equal authority. His discourse was received with shouts of applause by his infatuated hearers, who promised to make him, in defiance of his own doctrines, archbishop of Canterbury, and chancellor of the realm.<sup>1</sup>

By letters and messengers the knowledge of these proceedings was carefully propagated through the neighbouring counties. Everywhere the people had been prepared; and in a few days the flame spread from the southern coast of Kent to the right bank of the Humber.<sup>2</sup> In all places the insurgents regularly pursued the same course. They pillaged the manors of their lords, demolished the houses, and burnt the court rolls; cut off the heads of every justice, and lawyer, and juror, who fell into their hands; and swore all others to be true to King Richard and the commons; to admit of no king of the name of John;<sup>3</sup> and to oppose all taxes but

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 275. According to Straw's confession after his condemnation, the leaders at Blackheath secretly determined to get possession of the person of the young king, that they might appear to act under his authority; to destroy all the privileged orders in the church and state, preserving only the mendicant friars to perform the offices of religion; then to make away with the king himself, and to appoint kings of the commons in every county.—See it in Walsingham, 265.

<sup>2</sup> Several of these letters have been preserved. Some of them are in rhyme, containing enigmatical or cant expressions, and are signed by Jakke Milner, Jak Carter, Jak Treweman, probably feigned names, and by Jon Balle.—See them in Knyghton, 2637, and Stowe, 294.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 89. Nullum regem qui vocaretur Joannes, alluding to the duke of Lancaster, who was believed to exercise the royal authority under the name of his nephew, and therefore regarded as the author of the tax.—Wals. 248.



fifteenths, the ancient tallage paid by their fathers. CHAP.  
The members of the council saw with astonishment IV.  
the sudden rise, and rapid spread of the insurrection; A.D. 1381.  
and, bewildered by their fears and ignorance, knew  
not whom to trust, or what measures to pursue.

The first who encountered the rabble on Black-  
heath was the princess of Wales, the king's mother,  
on her return from a pilgrimage to Canterbury. She  
liberated herself from danger by her own address;  
and a few kisses from "the fair maid of Kent" pur- June 11.  
chased the protection of the leaders, and secured the  
respect of their followers. She was permitted to join  
her son, who with his cousin Henry earl of Derby,  
Simon archbishop of Canterbury and chancellor, Sir  
Robert Hales, master of the Knights of St. John and  
treasurer, and about one hundred serjeants and knights,  
had left the castle of Windsor, and repaired for  
greater security to the Tower of London. The next June 12.  
morning the king in his barge descended the river to  
receive the petitions of the insurgents. To the  
number of ten thousand, with two banners of St.  
George, and sixty pennons, they waited his arrival  
at Rotherhithe; but their horrid yells and uncouth  
appearance so intimidated his attendants, that instead  
of permitting him to land, they took advantage of the  
tide, and returned with precipitation.<sup>1</sup> Tyler and  
Straw, irritated by this disappointment, led their men  
into Southwark, where they demolished the houses  
belonging to the Marshalsea and the King's Bench,  
while another party forced their way into the palace  
of the archbishop at Lambeth, and burnt the furniture  
with the records belonging to the chancery.

<sup>1</sup> "When they perceived his barge," say Froissart, "they set up  
such shouts and cries, as if all the devils in hell had been in their  
company."—Froiss. lix.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
June 13.

The next morning they were allowed to pass in small companies, according to their different townships, over the bridge into the city. The populace joined them; and as soon as they had regaled themselves at the cost of the richer inhabitants, the work of devastation commenced. They demolished Newgate, and liberated the prisoners; plundered and destroyed the magnificent palace of the Savoy, belonging to the duke of Lancaster; burnt the Temple with the books and records; and despatched a party to set fire to the house of the Knights Hospitallers at Clerkenwell, which had been lately built by Sir Robert Hales. To prove, however, that they had no views of private emolument, a proclamation was issued, forbidding any one to secrete part of the plunder; and so severely was the prohibition enforced, that the plate was hammered and cut into small pieces, the precious stones were beaten to powder, and one of the rioters, who had concealed a silver cup in his bosom, was immediately thrown with his prize into the river.<sup>1</sup> To every man whom they met they put the question, "With whom holdest thou?" and unless he gave the proper answer, "With King Richard and the commons," he was instantly beheaded. But the principal objects of their cruelty were the natives of Flanders. They dragged thirteen Flemings out of one church, seventeen out of another, and thirty-two out of the Vintry, and struck off their heads with shouts of triumph and exultation. In the evening, wearied with the labour of the day, they dispersed through the streets, and indulged in every kind of debauchery.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 249. Knyght. 2635. The Savoy had been rebuilt by Henry duke of Lancaster. It was the most magnificent palace in England.—Ibid.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 252. Stowe, 285, 288.



During this night of suspense and terror, the princess of Wales held a council with the ministers in the Tower. The king's uncles were absent; the garrison, though perhaps able to defend the place, was too weak to put down the insurgents; and a resolution was taken to try the influence of promises and concession. In the morning the Tower-hill was seen covered with an immense multitude, who prohibited the introduction of provisions, and with loud cries demanded the heads of the chancellor and treasurer. In return, a herald ordered them, by proclamation, to retire to Mile-end, where the king would assent to all their demands. Immediately the gates were thrown open; Richard with a few unarmed attendants rode forward; the best intentioned of the crowd followed him; and at Mile-end he saw himself surrounded with sixty thousand petitioners. Their demands were reduced to four: the abolition of slavery; the reduction of the rent of land to fourpence the acre; the free liberty of buying and selling in all fairs and markets; and a general pardon for the past offences. A charter to that effect was engrossed for each parish and township; during the night thirty clerks were employed in transcribing a sufficient number of copies; they were sealed and delivered in the morning; and the whole body, consisting chiefly of the men of Essex and Hertfordshire, retired, bearing the king's banner, as a token that they were under his protection.<sup>1</sup>

But Tyler and Straw had formed other and more ambitious designs. The moment the king was gone, they rushed at the head of four hundred men into the Tower. The archbishop, who had just celebrated mass, Sir Robert Hales, William Apuldore, the king's

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.

June 14.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 317.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.

confessor, Legge, the farmer of the tax,<sup>1</sup> and three of his associates, were seized, and led to immediate execution.<sup>2</sup> As no opposition was offered, they searched every part of the Tower, burst into the private apartment of the princess, and probed her bed with their swords. She fainted ; and was carried by her ladies to the river, which she crossed in a covered barge. The Royal Wardrobe, a house in Carter-lane, was selected for her residence.<sup>3</sup>

June 15.

The king joined his mother at the Wardrobe ; and the next morning as he rode through Smithfield, with sixty horsemen, encountered Tyler at the head of twenty thousand insurgents. Three different charters had been sent to that demagogue, who contemptuously refused them all. As soon as he saw Richard, he made a sign to his followers to halt, and boldly rode up to the king. A conversation immediately began ; Tyler, as he talked, affected to play with his dagger ; at last he laid his hand on the bridle of his sovereign ; but at the instant Walworth, the lord mayor, jealous of his design, plunged a short sword in his throat. He spurred his horse, rode about a dozen yards, fell to the ground, and was despatched by Robert Standish, one of the king's esquires. The insurgents who witnessed the transaction drew their bows to revenge the fall of their leader, and Richard would inevitably have lost his life, had he not been saved by his own intrepidity. Galloping up to the archers, he exclaimed : " What are you doing, my lieges ? Tyler was a traitor.

<sup>1</sup> See Knyght. 2633, 2635.

<sup>2</sup> In Walsingham may be seen a long account of the death of the archbishop (p. 250). His head was carried in triumph through the streets on the point of a lance, and fixed on London bridge. That it might be the better known, the hat or bonnet worn by him was nailed to the skull.—Wilk. Conc. iii. 153.

<sup>3</sup> Froiss. lix.



“Come with me, and I will be your leader.” Waver-  
ing and disconcerted, they followed him into the fields  
at Islington; whither a force of one thousand men-at-  
arms which had been collected by the lord mayor and  
Sir Robert Knowles hastened to protect the young  
king; and the insurgents falling on their knees begged  
for mercy. Many of the royalists demanded permission  
to punish them for their past excesses; but Richard  
firmly refused, ordered the suppliants to return to their  
homes, and by proclamation forbade under pain of death  
any stranger to pass the night in the city.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
—

On the southern coast the excesses of the insurgents  
reached as far as Winchester; on the eastern, to  
Beverley and Scarborough;<sup>2</sup> and, if we reflect that  
in every place they rose about the same time, and  
uniformly pursued the same system, we may reason-  
ably suspect that they acted under the direction of  
some acknowledged though invisible leader. The  
nobility and gentry, intimidated by the hostility of  
their tenants, and distressed by contradictory reports,  
sought security within the fortifications of their  
castles.<sup>3</sup> The only man who behaved with promptitude

<sup>1</sup> The history of this insurrection has been transmitted to us, with many variations in the minor circumstances, by Walsingham, 247—278; Knyghton, 2633—2644; and Froissart, lvii—lxii.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. 5 Rich. II. 32, 95.

<sup>3</sup> The duke of Lancaster was at this time negotiating with the Scots on the borders. Besides the destruction of his property at the Savoy, reports were brought to him that the same excesses had been committed in his castles of Leicester and Tutbury; and that two bodies, of ten thousand men each, were lying in wait to intercept him on his return. Other reports stated that his enemies acted under the commands of the king, who had always feared, and now sought to prevent, his ambition. All these reports were false (*quæ de facto falsa erant*.—Knyght. 2644); but they induced his officers at Pomfret to refuse him admission to his duchess, and the earl of Northumberland to exclude him from the castle of Bamborough. He retired to Edinburgh, till he was honourably recalled by his nephew.—Knyght. 2640—2642.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
—

and resolution, was Henry Spenser, the young, warlike bishop of Norwich. In the counties of Norfolk, Cambridge, and Huntingdon, tranquillity was restored and preserved by this singular prelate, who successively exercised the offices of general, judge, and priest. In complete armour he always led his followers to the attack; after the battle he sat in judgment on his prisoners; and before execution he administered to them the aids of religion.<sup>1</sup> But as soon as the death of Tyler and the dispersion of the men of Kent and Essex were known, thousands became eager to display their loyalty; and knights and esquires from every quarter poured into London to offer their services to the king. At the head of forty thousand horse, he published proclamations, revoking the charters of manumission which he had granted, commanding the villeins to perform their usual services, and prohibiting illegal assemblies and associations.<sup>2</sup> In several parts the commons threatened to renew the horrors of the late tumult in defence of their liberties; but the approach of the royal army dismayed the disaffected in Kent; the loss of five hundred men induced the insurgents of Essex to sue for pardon; and numerous executions in different counties effectually crushed the spirit of resistance. Among the sufferers were Lister and Westbroom, who had assumed the title and authority of kings in Norfolk and Suffolk, and Straw and Ball, the itinerant preachers, who have been already mentioned, and whose sermons were supposed to have kindled and nourished the insurrection.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 263, 264.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vii. 316.

<sup>3</sup> Knyght. 2643. Wals. 265, 268. When Tresilian, one of the judges, tried the insurgents at St. Alban's, he empannelled three



When the parliament met, the two houses were informed by the chancellor, that the king had revoked the charters of emancipation, which he had been compelled to grant to the villeins; but at the same time wished to submit to their consideration, whether it might not be wise to abolish the state of bondage altogether. The minds of the great proprietors were not, however, prepared for the adoption of so liberal a measure; and both lords and commons unanimously replied, that no man could deprive them of the services of their villeins without their consent; that they had never given that consent, and never would be induced to give it, either through persuasion or violence. The king yielded to their obstinacy; and the charters were repealed by authority of parliament.<sup>1</sup> The commons next deliberated, and presented their petitions. They attributed the insurrection to the grievances suffered by the people from, 1st, the purveyors, who were said to have exceeded all their predecessors in insolence and extortion; 2nd, from the rapacity of the royal officers in the Chancery, and Exchequer, and the courts of King's Bench and Common Pleas; 3rd, from the banditti, called maintainers, who, in different

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
Nov. 9.

juries of twelve men each. The first was ordered to present all whom they knew to be the chiefs of the tumult, the second gave their opinion on the presentation of the first, and the third pronounced the verdict of guilty or not guilty. It does not appear that witnesses were examined. The juries spoke from their personal knowledge. Thus each convict was condemned on the oaths of thirty-six men.—Wals. 276. At first, on account of the multitude of executions, the condemned were beheaded; afterwards they were hanged and left on the gibbet as objects of terror; but as their bodies were removed by their friends, the king ordered them to be hanged in chains; the first instance in which I have met with express mention of the practice.—Wals. 278. According to Holinshed the executions amounted to 1,500.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 99, 100.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.

counties, supported themselves by plunder, and arming in defence of each other, set at defiance all the provisions of the law;<sup>1</sup> and, 4th, from the repeated aids and taxes, which had impoverished the people, and proved of no service to the nation. To silence these complaints, a commission of inquiry was appointed; the courts of law and the king's household were subjected to regulations of reform; and severe orders were published for the immediate suppression of illegal associations.<sup>2</sup> But the demand of a supply produced a very interesting altercation. The commons refused, on the ground that the imposition of a new tax would goad the people to a second insurrection. They found it, however, necessary to request of the king a general pardon for all illegal acts committed in the suppression of the insurgents, and received for answer, that it was customary for the commons to make their grants before the king bestowed his favours. When the subsidy was again pressed on their attention, they

<sup>1</sup> The existence of the maintainers is a glaring proof of the inefficient administration of justice at this period. They united in large bodies, plundered extensive districts, put to death those who opposed them, compelled the others to pay ransoms for their liberty, and attended the courts, where pleas were held, in such numbers as to intimidate witnesses, juries, and judges. But of all the maintainers those of Cheshire and Lancashire were the most feared. They often made inroads into the neighbouring counties to the distance of one hundred miles. One of their great objects was to carry off the daughters of men of property. Each captive was of course made the pretended wife of one of the party; and a message was sent to her parents, advising them of her marriage, and requiring them to send her fortune to the husband under the peril of their lives. When this was obtained, the unfortunate female was generally restored to her family, but with an admonition, that if any person ill-treated her on account of what had passed, the offender should forfeit his life. As the king's writs did not run in the county palatine, these miscreants were protected from prosecutions brought against them for crimes committed in other parts.—See the Rolls, iii. 42, 62, 81; Stat. of Realm, ii. 9, 27.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 100—102.



replied, that they should take time to consider of it, but were told that the king would also take time to consider of their petition. At last they yielded; the tax upon wool, wool-fells, and leather was continued for five years;<sup>1</sup> and in return a general pardon was granted for all loyal subjects, who had acted illegally in opposing the rebels, and for the great body of the insurgents, who had been misled by the declamations of the demagogues.<sup>2</sup> This favour, however, was said

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1381.  
—  
Dec. 13.

<sup>1</sup> That the tax upon wool might not by repetition be at length claimed as a right, they inserted the following clause in the grant. Combien qe riens n'y ad le Roi es dites subsidies sinoun par lour grant.—104.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 103. At first several towns were excepted; but on the representation of the commons it was extended to all but Bury St. Edmund's (p. 118). Many individuals were also excepted by name from the cities of London, Winchester, and Canterbury, and the counties of Norfolk, Suffolk, Kent, Essex, Hertford, Middlesex, Sussex, and Somerset. They amounted to 286.—Ibid. 111. The other proceedings of this parliament are highly interesting, as they point out to posterity the original cause of loans to the public on *parliamentary security*. A grant, continuing the duty on wool, wool-fells, and leather, for four years, had been made to the king, that he might undertake an expedition into France. To raise money on the credit of this grant, he called a council of merchants, those of London by themselves, and two or three from every town in England. They replied that it would be necessary to have the security of parliament. In consequence a new parliament was called (2nd August, 1382). The knights of the shires proposed to the lords to leave the business to the merchants, "for they understood such affairs better than any other estate in the realm." A committee of fourteen merchants from the lower house was appointed, who, after repeated consultations, reported, that on former occasions merchants, who had lent money to the crown, had been ruined by malicious prosecutions, under pretence that they had defrauded their sovereign; that the experience of the past was a sufficient warning to them to refuse loans of money to the crown on any consideration; but that, if the lords and commons would advance to the king the sum required (40,000*l.*), the merchants would lend an equal sum to them on their respective securities. This was not accepted, and the parliament was dissolved.—Rot. Parl. iii. 123. Afterwards, however, when it was found that the crown, by the vexatious proceedings mentioned by the committee, had defeated its own purpose, and that no money could be borrowed by the king on his own credit, ministers were



CHAP. IV.  
A.D. 1382. Jan. 22. to have been granted on occasion of the king's approaching marriage, and at the intercession of his intended queen, Anne of Bohemia. She was the daughter of the late emperor Charles IV., and sister of Winceslaus, king of the Romans; a princess of great accomplishments, and of still greater virtue, who during the twelve years of their union possessed the affections of her husband, and after her death was long remembered by the people under the appellation of the "good Queen Anne."

1377.  
Jan. 13. While the principal nations of Europe were thus agitated by popular tumults, the Christian world had been thrown into confusion by the opposite pretensions of two competitors for the papacy. Gregory XI., about seventy years after his predecessors had fixed their residence in France, returned, against the unanimous advice of the cardinals, to Rome. At his death three-fourths of the Sacred College consisted of Frenchmen; and the Romans, jealous of their preponderance, surrounded the conclave, and with the most alarming menaces demanded an Italian pope.

1378.  
March 27. To appease them, the archbishop of Bari was chosen, and assumed the name of Urban VI. For some months he exercised the pontifical authority without opposition; but his severity alienated his friends, and irritated his enemies; the French cardinals seceded to Anagni; and under pretence that the former election had been made through the influence of terror, chose another pontiff, the cardinal of Geneva, who Sept. 21. called himself Clement VII. Clement was imme-

obliged to solicit the aid of parliament: and the reader will, in the next reign, witness the whole legislature join in giving sufficient security to those who were willing to advance money for the public service.



diately acknowledged by France, and the allies of France, the kings of Scotland, Spain, Sicily, and Cyprus; England and the rest of Europe continued in their obedience to Urban. From Rome and Avignon, their respective residences, the two pontiffs lanced their anathemas, and preached up crusades against one another. For the latter purpose Urban had invested the warlike bishop of Norwich with extraordinary powers; and the king's council encouraged the plan, with the intention of directing the expedition against France; for the war with that kingdom was still continued, though of late years it had been confined on both sides to a few predatory incursions by land, and the capture of merchant vessels at sea. With the consent of parliament a contract was signed between the king and the bishop; the former engaged to contribute the produce of a fifteenth lately granted by the laity towards the expense of the enterprise; and the latter to serve against France for the space of a year with two thousand five hundred men-at-arms, and an equal number of archers.<sup>1</sup> It was determined that the first object of the army should be to aid the citizens of Ghent, who after the great battle of Rosebecque, and the reduction of Flanders, still bade defiance to the power of their count and of his patron, the king of France. The prelate took Grave-lines by assault; defeated an army of twelve thousand men; entered Dunkirk with the fugitives; and became master of the coast as far as Sluys. Had he been assisted, as he had reason to expect, this promising commencement might have terminated successfully. A numerous body of men-at-arms was indeed assembled at Dover; but the duke of Lancaster, whose

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1378.

---

1382.  
Dec. 6.

1383.  
May.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 145, 147.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1383.

Oct. 26.

1384.

offers had been rejected by parliament, and who envied the progress of his rival, is said to have detained them on the coast; and the bishop was joined by none but needy and desperate adventurers, who perplexed his counsels, and controlled him in the command. To satisfy their wish of plunder, and comply with the request of the citizens of Ghent, he undertook the siege of Ypres. The place was long and valiantly defended; the king of France approached with twenty thousand men-at-arms; the men of Ghent retired; and the English, in a state of mutiny, fled before the arrival of the enemy. A part took possession of Bourbourg; and having repelled the first assault of the pursuers, obtained permission to retire with their booty to Calais. The bishop threw himself into Gravelines; and, after a short defence, demolished the fortifications, and returned to England.<sup>1</sup> But here his bad success exposed him to the persecution of his enemies. He was accused in parliament of having received a bribe of eighteen thousand franks of gold from the enemy, and of having broken his contract with the king by returning before the twelve months of his service were expired. From the first of these charges he cleared himself to the satisfaction of his judges; but when he attempted to justify his return by the necessity of the case, his defence was not admitted. He had brought, it was replied, that necessity on himself by his own neglect or imprudence; and was therefore condemned to lose his temporalities, till such time as he had paid the full

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 298—305. Knyght. 2671, 2672. Rym. vii. 372, 382, 385, 391, 395, 399. Froiss. li. lxxv. Froissart may be accurate in his account of the sieges and battles, but it is evident from the Rolls and documents in Rymer, that he was misinformed as to the real object of the expedition.



damages to the king. Besides the bishop, four of the principal knights, who had joined in the expedition, were arraigned on a charge of having sold the stores and provisions to the enemy for twenty thousand francs, and were condemned to pay that sum into the exchequer, and to remain in prison till they should make their peace with their sovereign.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1384.  
—  
March 6.

Before we proceed to the subsequent transactions of this reign, it will be proper to resume the history of Wycliffe. The insurrection of the commons had created a strong prejudice against the new doctrines of that reformer. It may be, that the itinerant preachers had improved on the lessons of their master: but, if we can believe the assertions of the contemporary writers, we must admit, that their sermons were calculated to awaken in the people a spirit of discontent and insubordination, and to bring into contempt the established authorities, both in church and state. A few weeks before the death of the late king, eighteen propositions, selected from the works and lectures of Wycliffe, and relating to the temporal possessions of the church, and the use of ecclesiastical censures, had been laid before Gregory XI.; and about the end of the year, in consequence of the papal letters, the rector of Lutterworth was summoned to explain his opinions in the presence of the primate, and of the bishop of London.<sup>2</sup> To prepare for the day of trial, he first published a defence of part of his doctrine, in language the most bold and inflammatory. Soon afterwards he composed a second apology, in which, though he assumed a more moderate tone, he

1377.  
May. 22.

Dec. 28.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 133—158. Rym. vii. 424—427.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 201—204. Lewis, 254—265. Wilk. Con. iii. 116, 117, 123.



CHAP. avowed his willingness to shed his blood in the de-  
 IV. fence of his assertions. There is, however, reason to  
 A.D. 1377. believe, that the new apostle was in no haste to grasp  
 — the crown of martyrdom. At his trial he exhibited  
 to the prelates the same paper, but with numerous  
 corrections and improvements. It begins with a pro-  
 fession of his readiness to submit to the correction of  
 the church, and a revocation of whatever he may have  
 taught contrary to the doctrine of Christ. He then  
 proceeds to notice the several propositions, which he  
 explains, qualifies, and defends; but occasionally, to  
 impart to them something like a rational meaning,  
 is compelled to make use of quibbles and evasions,  
 which seem unworthy of a sensible or of an honest  
 man.<sup>1</sup> This paper, however, such as it might be, was  
 admitted by the bishops as orthodox; and its author  
 was dismissed with an order to abstain from the use  
 of language so calculated to perplex and mislead the  
 ignorant. By some, it is said, that the two bishops  
 were intimidated by a message from the princess of  
 Wales: by Wycliffe himself his escape was considered  
 and celebrated as a triumph.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thus, for example, he had taught that "charters of perpetual inheritance were impossible, that God himself could not give to man civil possessions for ever." He now declared that by words "for ever," he meant after the day of judgment. His opinions were therefore consonant to the first principles of religion, and did not affect civil possessions at present. Again, he had taught that "if there was a God, temporal lords might lawfully and meritoriously take away worldly goods from a delinquent church." He protested that by this doctrine it was not his meaning that temporal lords might take away such goods of their own authority: but that if there were a God, he was almighty; if he was almighty, he had the power to command temporal lords to take away the goods of the church; and if he should command them, then they might do it lawfully and meritoriously. There are many other explanations of a similar nature.—Wals. 206, 207.

<sup>2</sup> I have no doubt that I have placed the three writings put forth



From this period, till the insurrection of the commons, the rector of Lutterworth employed himself in directing the operations of the poor priests, and gradually turned his attacks from the possessions to the doctrines of the church. As soon as tranquillity was restored, the bishop of London succeeded the primate, who had been murdered; and one of his first measures was to call a synod of divines, in which four-and-twenty opinions, zealously inculcated by the new preachers, were censured; ten as heretical, fourteen as erroneous, and of dangerous tendency.<sup>1</sup> It chanced that, while the synod was sitting, an earthquake shook the metropolis; a circumstance, which the policy, or the fanaticism, of Wycliffe converted into a proof of his doctrine. "The erth tremblide," he writes, "for they put an heresie upon Crist and the seyntes in hevyne. Fay (faith) land, mannus voice answeyde for God, als it did in tyme of his passione, when he was dampnyde to bodely deth."<sup>2</sup> From this condemnation he appealed to the protection of the duke of Lancaster, by his disciples Hereford and Rapyng-

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1377.

1382.  
May 17.

June 20.

by Wycliffe about this time in the order in which they originally appeared. The first—by some writers described as the last—"The Answer to a Motley Doctor"—bears evidence on the very face of it, that it was composed just after the arrival of the bulls, and the appointment of the delegates. The other two are apologies in defence of his opinions which had been censured by the pope, accompanied by certain glosses and qualifications which are calculated to remove or disguise what was most offensive in them. One of them is called "Aliqualis Responsio ad Bullam," and written in a tone of boldness and defiance; the other is more moderate in its language, and more exculpatory in its explanation. To whom the first was addressed or presented, is unknown; from its title and tone I should think that it was written to be circulated in the university; the other was presented to the delegates, and appears to have been accepted by them as satisfactory. The last may be seen in Walsingham (206); all three in Lewis (318, 319). For a different arrangement, consult Mr. Vaughan's Wycliffe, i. 387.

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Conc. iii. 157. <sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2650.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1382.  
July 13.

don; but that prince rejected the application; the messengers themselves were compelled, after some tergiversation, to recant;<sup>1</sup> and a royal mandate was sent to Oxford, suspending Wycliffe from the office of teaching, and ordering all his works to be seized and forwarded to the archbishop in their existing state, without erasure or alteration.<sup>2</sup> Unwilling, however, to bend to the storm, he sought to shelter himself under the protection of the parliament; and presented a petition "for the maintenance of the Christian faith," by which he artfully endeavoured to array in favour of his tenets the passions and prejudices of the nation. He prayed, that the error of those, who had condemned the doctrine of the itinerant preachers, might be amended and published; that Christ's own doctrine respecting the eucharist might be openly taught in the churches; that the members of the religious orders might have full liberty to secularize themselves; that tithes might be applied to those purposes only, for which they were ordained by God's law, and the pope's law; and that no more taxes should be laid upon the people; but that the wants of the nation should be supplied from the incomes of delinquent clergymen, and the superfluous revenues of the church, which were in reality the patrimony of the poor.<sup>3</sup>

In this petition he was partially successful. Immediately after the synod, the bishops had procured an act of parliament, which stated that, whereas several persons, under the mask of extraordinary sanctity and in a particular sort of garb, went from place to place,

<sup>1</sup> The whole process, with the evasions, the excommunication and recantation of Hereford and Rapyngdon, may be seen in Wilkins, Con. iii. 160—166, 167, and Knyght. 2655.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vii. 363.

<sup>3</sup> Wals. 283. MS. C. C. C. apud Lewis, p. 83.



preached without authority in churches, churchyards, fairs and markets, inculcated false doctrines, excited dissensions between the different estates, prevailed on the people to support them by open force, and refused to obey the citations of their ordinaries; the sheriffs should be bound, on the certification of the prelates, in the chancery, to arrest such offenders and their abettors, and to confine them till they were willing to plead in the ecclesiastical courts. On the representation of the commons, that this act had been passed without their consent, and that they did not mean to subject themselves to the jurisdiction of the prelates in any other manner than their ancestors had been, it was repealed with the approbation of the king and the lords.<sup>1</sup> But Wycliffe's success ended here. His appeal on doctrinal matters, from a spiritual to a lay tribunal, scandalized some of his most powerful partisans; and the duke of Lancaster, hastening to Oxford, advised him to submit to the judgment of his ordinary. He reluctantly assented, read a confession of faith in presence of the primate and the bishops of Lincoln, Norwich, Worcester, London, Salisbury, and Hereford, and retiring to the rectory of Lutterworth, was suffered to remain there without further molestation. Two years afterwards, as he was assisting at the mass of his curate on the feast of the Innocents, at the moment of the elevation of the host, a stroke of apoplexy deprived him of the use of his tongue, and of most of his limbs. He expired on the last day of the year 1384.<sup>2</sup>

Before I proceed, I may be allowed to add a few

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 124, 141. Gascoigne apud Lewis, 286. Lel. Coll. iii. 409.

<sup>2</sup> Wood, Ant. Oxon. 189.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1382.  
—

particulars respecting the character and sentiments of this extraordinary man. Exemplary in his morals, he declaimed against vice with the freedom and severity of an apostle ; but, whether it were policy or prejudice, he directed his bitterest invectives almost exclusively against the clergy. His itinerant priests formed indeed an honourable exception ; they were true evangelical preachers ; but the rest, the pope, bishops, dignitaries, and the whole body of “ clerks possessioners,” were no better than liars and fiends, hypocrites and traitors, heretics and antichrists. That many among them, as must always happen in old and wealthy establishments, may have deserved some of these appellations, is probably true ; but the zeal of the new apostle could make no discrimination ; and he determined to lay the axe to what he deemed the root of the evil, their worldly possessions. He contended that they were bound to lead a life of poverty, in imitation of their master ;<sup>1</sup> that their temporalities were given to them to be employed to the honour of God ; and, therefore, might be lawfully taken away, as soon as they were diverted to any other purpose ;<sup>2</sup> that to pay tithes and dues to an incumbent, who spent his income in vanity and luxury, was to co-operate in his sins ; and that secular lords were not only permitted, but bound, under pain of damnation, to deprive of its possessions a church habitually delinquent.<sup>3</sup> It will not excite

<sup>1</sup> Apud Lewis, p. 293. He maintained that the man, who taught it to be lawful to endow churchmen, was the greatest of heretics and antichrists.—*Dialog. iv. 15.* His seven arguments in favour of this doctrine were answered by Woodford, *Fascicul. Rer. expetend. i. 221—230.*

<sup>2</sup> Wycliffe’s explanation, apud Lewis, 325, xvii.

<sup>3</sup> *Dicimus non solum quod illis licet hoc facere, sed quod debent sub pœna damnationis gehennæ, cum debent de sua stultitia pœnitere, et satisfacere pro peccato, quo Christi ecclesiam macularunt.*



surprise, if invectives so coarse, and doctrines so prejudicial to their interests, alarmed and irritated the clergy. They appealed for protection to the king and the pontiff; but though their reputation and fortunes were at stake, they sought not to revenge themselves on their adversary, but were content with an order for his removal from the university to reside on his own living. If the reader allot to *him* the praise of courage, he cannot refuse to *them* the praise of moderation.

On many points of doctrine it is not easy to ascertain the real sentiments of this reformer. In common with other religious innovators, he claimed the twofold privilege of changing his opinions at will, and of being infallible in every change; and when he found it expedient to dissemble, could so qualify his doctrines with conditions, or explain them away by distinctions, as to give an appearance of innocence to tenets of the most mischievous tendency. For the church as it originally existed, and as it continued to exist for a thousand years, he professed the most unfeigned veneration. It was then pure in doctrine, perfect in discipline, and free from the contagion of avarice. But at the expiration of the tenth century, the prediction in the Apocalypse was literally fulfilled. The great dragon, who had been chained for a thousand years, was loosed; and the first use which he made of his liberty was to spread his agents, the new religious orders, over all parts of the Christian world.

—Trial. iv. 18. Yet he afterwards attempted to explain it away. "If this be errour, as they seyn falsy, then the king and secular lords may take no farthing ne farthing worth fro a worldly clerk, tho he owe him and his liege men never so much good, and may well paye it and wole not."—Great Sentence of Curse expounded, apud Lewis, p. 99.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1382.  
—

From that moment faith, discipline, and morality were corrupted; and the re-establishment of the Gospel was reserved for the exertions of Wycliffe and his "poor priests."<sup>1</sup>

His favourite maxim, that dominion or the right to property is founded in grace, seems to have been generated from a strange amalgamation of feudal and theological notions. He argues, that forfeiture is confessedly the punishment of treason: now every sin is a treason against God; of course the sinner must forfeit whatever he holds of God, and consequently all right to authority or property; since, of whomsoever he may hold them immediately, originally they are derived to him from God.<sup>2</sup>

He admitted seven sacraments with the Catholic church; but differed from it in explaining the nature of the eucharist, and the contract of matrimony. On the former, if he frequently made use of orthodox language, he still more frequently taught a doctrine similar to the impanation of Luther. In his Confession, where he might be expected to speak plainly, he has intrenched himself behind so many unintelligible distinctions, that it will be difficult for the most acute logician to discover his meaning;<sup>3</sup> in his other works he repeatedly teaches that at the consecration the bread becomes the very body of Christ which suffered

<sup>1</sup> Trialog. iv. 32, 33.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 17. In favour of this opinion he advances eleven arguments, answered by Woodford, 232—250.

<sup>3</sup> Sæpe confessus sum et adhuc confiteor quod idem corpus Christi in numero, quod fuit assumptum de virgine . . . ipsum, inquam, idem corpus et eadem substantia est vere et realiter panis sacramentalis seu hostia . . . non tamen audeo dicere quod corpus Christi sit essentialiter substantialiter corporaliter vel ydemptice ille panis . . . conceditur quod corpus Christi est quantumcunque varie quantificatum ibi, cum sit quælibet pars quantitativa illius hostiæ, &c. &c.—Confessio Mag. Joan. Wyclyff, apud Lewis, 272,



on the cross; so that the nature of bread is not destroyed, but is exalted into a substance of greater dignity.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1382.  
—

On matrimony he hazarded several extraordinary opinions; that the usual contract, in which it is said, "I take thee to wife," contains a falsehood, and is consequently void; that, however, the consent of the mind is sufficient without any expression of that consent in words; but that women, who have passed the time of childbearing cannot lawfully be married, either with words or without them. His arguments on these subjects are mere verbal quibbles.<sup>2</sup>

The priests, who truly preached the Gospel, were, in his opinion, the real and the only members of the hierarchy; all, who opposed them, were antichrist, and the proctors of Satan. Of these he numbered twelve classes, beginning with the pope, and ending with the mendicant friars.<sup>3</sup> Yet he affirmed, that "prelates and priests ordeyned of God, comen in the stede of apostles and disciples, and that the pope is highest vicar that Christ has here in earth."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "It is verray Goddus body in fourme of brede . . . . it is verray Goddus body and verray brede."—Knyght. 2649. "The right faith of Christen men is this, that this worshipful sacrament is bread and Christ's body."—MS. apud Lew. 78. See Trialog. iv. 4, 27. "The sacrifice of the kirk is maad in two thingis togidre; that is, the visible spicis of elements and invisible flesch and blood of our Lord Jhu Crist, sacrament and thing of the sacrament . . . . this thing that is seen is breed; but this that the faith askyth to be enformed, the bred is the body of Crist."—Wycliffe's Apology, p. 47.

<sup>2</sup> Take for example his argument against the contract. No woman is a man's wife till she has given her consent; but in the marriage ceremony the man says, "I take thee to wife," before the woman has given her consent; therefore he says what is false; and consequently the contract is null.—See Trial. iv. 20, 22; Woodford, 214.

<sup>3</sup> Trialog. iv. 26.

<sup>4</sup> MS. of prelates, apud Lew. p. 129.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1382.  
—

He inculcated the doctrine of purgatory, and strenuously maintained the efficacy of the mass;<sup>1</sup> but while he admitted the necessity, he censured the multitude of ceremonies,<sup>2</sup> and loudly inveighed against the custom of singing in the churches.<sup>3</sup> He also disapproved of indulgences, sanctuaries, and pilgrimages, as calculated rather to enrich the clergy than to nourish devotion.<sup>4</sup>

Wycliffe's opinions, echoed and re-echoed from the pulpits of his "poor priests," made numerous proselytes. Men crowded to hear the new preachers. The novelty of their manner, the severity with which they arraigned the real or imputed vices of their spiritual superiors, and the boldness of their invectives against the dues, the claims, and privileges of the clergy, interested the passions, and won the assent of their hearers. But there was another weapon which the rector of Lutterworth wielded with equal address and still greater efficacy. In proof of his doctrines he appealed to the Scriptures, and thus made his disciples judges between him and the bishops. Several versions of the sacred writings were even then extant; but they were confined to libraries, or only

<sup>1</sup> "The seying of mass with clenness of holy life, and brenning devotion full much, and neet honds, most pleaseth God almighty, and profiteth to christen souls in purgatory."—MS. apud Lew. 131.

<sup>2</sup> Trial. iv. 11.

<sup>3</sup> "When there ben fourty or fifty in a queer, three or four proud and lecherous lorels shullen knack the most devout service that no man shall hear the sentence, and all other shullen be dumb, and looken on them as fools. And then strumpets and thieves praisen sire Jack, or Hobb and William the proud clerk, how smallen they knacken their notes, and seyn that they serven well God and holy church, when they dispisen God in his face, and letten other men of their devotion and compunction, and stirren them to worldly vanity."—MS. of prelates, apud Lew. 134.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 137, 350.



in the hands of persons who aspired to superior sanctity.<sup>1</sup> Wycliffe made a new translation, multiplied the copies with the aid of transcribers, and by his poor priests recommended it to the perusal of their hearers. In their hands it became an engine of wonderful power. Men were flattered by the appeal to their private judgment; the new doctrines insensibly acquired partisans and protectors in the higher classes, who alone were acquainted with the use of letters; a spirit of inquiry was generated; and the seeds were sown of that religious revolution, which in little more than a century astonished and convulsed the nations of Europe.

The king had now reached his seventeenth year. The resolution and intrepidity which he had displayed during the insurrection seemed to portend a fortunate and glorious reign; and the qualities of his heart were recommended by the superior beauty of his person, and the elegance of his manners. But, to whatever cause it were owing, to the inexperience and prodigality of his youth, or to the ambition of his uncle, or the turbulence of his people, his reign from this period became a succession of errors and misfortunes, which involved him repeatedly in distress, and ultimately cost him his crown and life. The ministers, whom

<sup>1</sup> "The hole byble was long before Wickliffe's days by vertuous  
"and well learned men translated into the English tong, and by  
"good and godly people with devotion and soberness wel and reve-  
"rently red."—Sir Tho. More, Dialog. iii. 14. The same is asserted  
by Archbishop Cranmer. "It is not much above one hundred years  
"ago since scripture hath not been accustomed to be read in the  
"vulgar tongue within this realm; and many hundred years before  
"that it was translated and read in the Saxons' tongue . . . and  
"when this language waned old and out of common usage, because  
"folk should not lack the fruit of reading it, was translated again  
"into the newer language, whereof yet also many copies be found."  
Strype's Cranmer, App. 242.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1382.

---

1383.  
Nov.

1384.

April 29.

design or accident placed near his person, were not selected from the higher classes in the state; and when, as it was natural to expect, by their attention they had secured his attachment, the favour which they enjoyed was construed into a crime, and every benefit which they received was deemed an injury by the more noble and ancient families. This systematic opposition to his favourites exasperated the mind of the king, and induced him to lend an attentive ear to the jealousies and apprehensions suggested by the officious friendship of those around him. The reader will recollect, that at first the duke of Lancaster was the chief object of suspicion; and that the reports which had then been circulated, on no better ground perhaps than his great power, and his proximity to the throne, had been renewed during the late insurrection. The prince thought proper to seek an asylum at the Scottish court; nor did he return till the king by proclamation bore testimony to his innocence, and authorized him to travel with a body-guard, for the better security of his person.<sup>1</sup> When the bishop of Norwich had closed his ill-fated crusade, the duke concluded an armistice with France, in which the Scots were comprehended; but, as they still continued the war, he led a numerous army across the borders, burnt the huts of which their towns were composed, and inflicted on them a more serious injury by cutting down their forests, in which they had been accustomed to elude the pursuit of the English.<sup>2</sup> At his return from this expedition, the reports of his disloyalty were revived; and during the parliament at Salisbury, a

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 318, 319.

<sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2673. He assures us for this last purpose no fewer than 80,000 axes were employed at the same time.—Ibid.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1384.  
—

Carmelite friar put into the king's hands the written particulars of a real or pretended conspiracy to place the crown on the head of his uncle. Richard was advised to communicate it to the duke; who swore that it was false, offered to prove his innocence by battle, and required that the informer might be committed to close custody for future examination. The friar persisted in his story, and was given to the care of Sir John Holand, the king's uterine brother,<sup>1</sup> who strangled him with his own hands during the night, and ordered his body to be dragged through the streets in the morning as that of a traitor. This dark and mysterious murder did not remove the secret suspicions of Richard; but the Lord Zouch, whom the friar had mentioned as the author of the memorial, declared on his oath that he was ignorant of its existence; and the earl of Buckingham, another of the king's uncles, bursting into the room with his sword drawn, swore he would murder the first man who should charge his brother with treason.<sup>2</sup> The king dissembled; and Lancaster crossed the sea to obtain a prolongation of the armistice. A resolution was, however, taken to arrest him on his return; but he disappointed his enemies, and shut himself up in his strong castle of Pontefract, till the king's mother, by repeated journeys and entreaties, reconciled the uncle and nephew, and also obtained a full pardon for her own son, Sir John Holand.<sup>3</sup>

May.

<sup>1</sup> The princess of Wales had for her first husband Sir Thomas Holand, who in right of his wife was created earl of Kent, and Lord Wake of Lydell. She bore him two sons, Thomas Holand, who inherited the honours of his father, and John Holand, afterwards created earl of Huntingdon, and duke of Exeter.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 309, 310.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. vii. 446.—In a parliament held about the end of the year, a petition was received from the celebrated Alice Perrers. Soon



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1384.

1385.  
May.

In consequence of a treaty concluded at Paris, the king of France had sent to Scotland an aid of one thousand men-at-arms under the command of Vienne, with a subsidy of forty thousand livres in francs of gold, and armour for the equipment of a thousand Scottish knights and esquires. It is amusing to read in Froissart the complaints of the Frenchmen after their arrival. The country was wild; the people were uncivilized; even Edinburgh, the capital, was inferior to the provincial towns of Tournay or Valenciennes. There were no banquets, no balls, no tournaments. The strangers were compelled to purchase the coarsest fare at an exorbitant price; and the jealousy of the natives refused forage for their horses, and hourly laid snares for their lives. For a long time only two of the nobility, the earls of Douglas and Moray, condescended to visit them; and when they were at last introduced to the king, they were shocked at "his red bleared eyes, of the colour of sandal-wood, which convinced them that he was no warrior." It was the interest of the French to commence the campaign immediately; but the Scots demanded to be paid for fighting their own battles; and the forty thousand livres were distributed among them before they could

after her condemnation, Sir William Windsor, her husband, had presented a bill of errors against it. He stated in particular, that she had been impeached as a *feme sole*, though she had long been his wife; that she was tried in her absence; and that to obtain a favour from the king, the act of which she had been convicted, was a very different thing from soliciting causes in the courts, which alone had been forbidden by the statute. In return he obtained the restoration of her lands, with the exception of four manors, on condition that he served with one hundred men-at-arms against France. He was now dead, and at her petition the judgment against her was entirely revoked, with a proviso that all alienations of property made in consequence of it should be deemed valid.—Rot. Parl. iii. 40, 186, 327.



be brought into the field.<sup>1</sup> They burst at length into Northumberland, and took three castles in the marches; but the approach of Richard with an army of eighty thousand men compelled them to retire with precipitation.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1385.  
—

This was the first time that the young king had appeared at the head of an army; but his progress was arrested at York by an unfortunate circumstance, which cast a gloom over the sequel of the expedition. In the city, or its neighbourhood, the son of the earl of Stafford, one of the royal favourites, was basely assassinated by the hand of Sir John Holand. The father and the relatives of the slain loudly demanded

July.

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. iii. xii. Rym. vii. 484. The livre was the nominal pound of 20 sols (Rym. *ibid.*); and 63 livres, 17 sols, 6 deniers, was the value of a mark, or eight ounces of gold.—*L'Art de vérifier les Dates*, i. 604. The money was distributed among men of every rank from the prince of Scotland, who received 5,500 livres, to John Gray, who was compelled to content himself with ten.—*Ibid.* The quarto register of Robert II. quoted by Mr. Pinkerton, in his *History of Scotland* (vol. i. p. 165), contains the agreement between the Scots and their auxiliaries before they began their expedition. It provides for the safety of persons bringing provisions to the army in its march to the borders, and forbids pillage under the penalty of death. All are to wear a white cross of St. Andrew before and behind. If a Frenchman insult a Scot, he is to be arrested by the Scots, and brought before his own chief, and vice versâ. The punishment for a riot is the loss of horse and armour, if the offender be a knight; of a hand or an ear if he be not. The same punishment is to be incurred by the man who shall set fire to a church in England, kill a woman or child, or commit a rape. The prisoner shall belong to the man who first received his hand.

<sup>2</sup> These 80,000 men in the “*Ordinaunce of Three Battailes*” published in the *Archæol.* xxii. 13, dwindle down to about one-fifth of that number. Little reliance is to be placed on the ancient historians when they state the amount of armies; but I doubt whether the “*Ordinaunce*” contains the whole number of fighting men that accompanied Richard. It mentions all that were retained by the king and the lords. But were there no others, “the raskaldry,” as Hardyng terms them? In *Rymer*, v. 557, we have an account of the retinues of the lords in an expedition into Scotland, amounting to 480 men-at-arms, and 480 archers; but we afterwards find that they were accompanied by 2,400 archers de la commune.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1385.

July 8.

August 1.

August 30.

justice ; the queen-mother implored the mercy of her son in favour of his brother. But Richard, who had not forgotten the death of the friar, was inexorable. He confiscated the property of the assassin, and threatened him with the gallows, if he ever left the sanctuary of St. John of Beverley. In a few days the unhappy mother died of grief ; her guilty son waited till the anger of the king had subsided, obtained his pardon, and married Elizabeth, second daughter of the duke of Lancaster.<sup>1</sup>

From York the king proceeded to Durham, where, in a council of war, the army was divided into three battles and two wings, and a code of laws was enacted for the maintenance of discipline during the expedition. Thence this mighty host advanced by slow marches to the borders ; but there they met no enemy. The king of Scots, sensible of his inability to arrest, did not attempt to oppose their progress. Edinburgh, Dunfermline, Perth, and Dundee were reduced to ashes ; and the vanguard had reached the walls of Aberdeen, when advice was received that the Scots were ravaging the counties of Westmoreland and Cumberland, and that Vienne had actually laid siege to Carlisle. By the advice of the duke of Lancaster, it was resolved to march back to the frontier, and to intercept the enemy on their return ; but during the night fresh suspicions were infused into the mind of the king by the chancellor, Sir Michael de la Pole ; and the next morning he angrily told his uncle,

“ You, sir, may go with *your* men, wherever you think

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 316. Froissart attributes the murder to Holand's wish to be revenged for the death of one of the esquires, who in a quarrel had been killed by an archer belonging to Sir Ralph Stafford.—Froiss. xiii.



“ best. I with mine shall return to England.” “ Then  
 “ I shall follow you,” rejoined the duke; “ for there  
 “ is not a man in your company who loves you as well  
 “ as I and my brothers; and if any one but yourself  
 “ dare advance the contrary, I am ready to throw him  
 “ my glove.” The army was disbanded; and the  
 Scots and French boasted that the havoc which they  
 had wrought in Cumberland and Westmoreland more  
 than balanced the destruction caused by the English  
 in Scotland.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1385.

In the next parliament the king confirmed the  
 honours which he had bestowed during the expedition  
 on the borders of Tiviotdale. His uncles, the earls  
 of Cambridge and Buckingham, who had been created  
 dukes of York and Gloucester, were invested with the  
 sword, coronet, and cap of state, and received for the  
 support of their new dignity a grant of lands from  
 the crown to the yearly value of one thousand pounds.  
 Henry of Bolingbroke, son to the duke of Lancaster,  
 and Edward Plantagenet, son to the duke of York,  
 were made earls of Derby and Rutland; Robert de  
 Vere earl of Oxford, with the title of marquess of  
 Dublin, obtained a grant for life of the revenue of Ire-  
 land, on condition of paying the yearly sum of five  
 thousand marks into the exchequer; and Michael de  
 la Pole was created earl of Suffolk, with the reversion  
 of the estate of the late earl on the deaths of his  
 widow and of the queen. Richard trusted that the  
 princes of the blood, pleased with their own honours,  
 would view the preferment of these two favourites  
 with less jealousy;<sup>2</sup> but at the same time, to cut off  
 the ambitious hopes of his uncle Lancaster, he declared

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 316, 317. Froiss. xiv. xv. xvi. Ford. xiv. 49, 50.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 205—210. Rym. vii. 482, 505. Knyght. 2675.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1385.

Roger earl of March, the grandson of Lionel duke of Clarence, the presumptive heir to the throne.<sup>1</sup>

During the sitting of parliament an embassy from Portugal arrived in London. A few years before, Ferdinand, the late king, had concluded an alliance against the king of Castile, with the duke of Lancaster and the earl of Cambridge, who advanced pretensions to the succession of that crown in right of their respective wives. The earl, with a small but gallant army, sailed to Lisbon; the duke had engaged to follow him; but his departure was prevented by the insurrection of the commons; and Ferdinand, finding himself unequal to the contest, concluded a peace with his adversaries. This king had forcibly carried off Leonora, the wife of Lorenzo d'Acunha, who was crowned queen, and bore him a daughter named Beatrice. While the earl of Cambridge remained at Lisbon, his son John was married to the princess. They were both of the same age, in their tenth year; but the earl, at his departure, refused to leave his son behind him; and Ferdinand soon after gave the princess, his only child, in marriage to John king of Castile, his former enemy. That prince, at the death of his father-in-law, demanded the crown in right of his wife. His claim was admitted by the nobility; but the four cities of Lisbon, Coimbra, Oporto, and Ourique, declared that they would never acknowledge the pretensions of an illegitimate daughter, whose mother's husband was still alive, and offered the crown to John, natural brother to the late king, and grand master of the order of Avis; who, to preserve himself on the throne, solicited the aid of the duke of Lancaster against their common enemy. The duke accepted

1383.  
Oct. 20.

1385.  
April 6.

<sup>1</sup> *Lel. Coll.* ii. 481.



the proposal with pleasure; Richard was glad of any pretext to remove him out of the kingdom: and of the supply voted for the year, one-half was appropriated to defray the expenses of the expedition.<sup>1</sup> The winter was spent in collecting an army of twenty thousand men, in which were two thousand men-at-arms and eight thousand archers. Before its departure, the king presented his uncle, and the queen presented the duchess, with rich crowns of gold. The expedition sailed from Plymouth,<sup>2</sup> touched at Brest to relieve the garrison, and landed at Corunna. By the reduction of Galicia, a road was opened into Portugal, where the duke was met by King John, and to cement their friendship a marriage was celebrated between that prince and Philippa, the eldest daughter of Lancaster, by his first wife. But the next campaign proved unfortunate. The English army wasted away under the heat of the climate; the conquests made in the last year were rapidly lost; and the duke himself, to recover his health, was compelled to quit Portugal, and to take up his residence in Guienne. But these disasters were repaired by his policy. The duke of Berri had proposed to marry Catherine, Lancaster's only issue by his present wife Constantia, and heiress to her mother's pretensions to the crown of Spain. It was contrived that intelligence of this proposal should be conveyed to the king of Castile, who immediately took the alarm, and offered to compromise the quarrel between the families, by the marriage of Henry, his son and heir, to the same princess.<sup>3</sup> The

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1385.

1386.  
July 9.

Aug. 9.

1387.  
May.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 204.

<sup>2</sup> It was escorted by a Portuguese squadron of ten ships of wonderful magnitude, and of six galleys, some of which were worked with three hundred oars.—Knyght. 2676.

<sup>3</sup> Froiss. ix. 24, 46. Walsing. 342.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1387.

1388.

offer was accepted. Constantia waived her claim to the throne in favour of her daughter; the succession after the death of the present king was settled on Henry and Catherine, and their issue, and in failure of them, on the issue of the duke of York by Isabella, the sister of Constantia. Two hundred thousand crowns were paid to Lancaster to defray the expenses of the late expedition, and an annuity of one hundred thousand florins was settled on him, and another to the same amount on the duchess, during their respective lives. Henry and Catherine were married, and created prince and princess of Asturias. Their issue reigned over Spain for many generations.<sup>1</sup>

1386.

If Richard mistrusted the ambition, he soon found reason to lament the absence of Lancaster, whose authority had hitherto checked the warmer passions and more precipitate counsels of his brother, the duke of Gloucester. But that prince now assumed the ascendancy; fomented the discontent of the nobility; new modelled the government; and left to his nephew little more than the empty title of king. The French, encouraged by the absence of the army in Spain, had seriously formed the design of invading England. Their preparations of arms, provisions, and ships were immense. Every baron and knight seemed ambitious of retaliating on the English those injuries which Englishmen had so frequently inflicted on France; the cavalry and infantry collected for the expedition exceeded one hundred thousand men; and the fleet, which had assembled in the port of Sluys, to use the exaggeration of a contemporary, was so numerous, that if the vessels had been laid side to side, they would have formed a bridge from one

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 603. Knyght. 2673. Wals. 342.



country to the other. The intelligence of this formidable armament spread universal dismay ; but levies were made, beacons erected, and troops assembled in the most favourable situations. The earl of Arundel received the command of the fleet, with instructions to destroy the ships of the enemy as soon as they had landed their forces ; and orders were issued to the troops to lay waste the country before the invaders, and to avoid a general engagement.<sup>1</sup> The confidence of the nation revived ; but the opportunity was seized by the great barons, under the guidance of the duke of Gloucester, to plot among themselves the overthrow of the administration. They contended that the king's officers converted the public revenue to their private emolument ; that the commons, by continual taxation, had been impoverished ; that the higher classes could not procure the payment of their rents ; and that the tenants were in many places compelled to abandon their farms through distress.<sup>2</sup> How far these evils were chargeable on the administration, it is impossible to ascertain ; that the young king was lavish of expense in his household, we know ; but it is also true that during the last year he had voluntarily remitted to the people a tenth and fifteenth, which had been granted to him in parliament.<sup>3</sup> The intended invasion, from unforeseen occurrences, was delayed from week to week, till it became necessary to postpone it to the following year ; and Richard

<sup>1</sup> Froiss. viii. 7, 8. Knyght. 2679. The constable of France had ordered a fortress of wood to be formed of frame-work, and to be shipped for the use of the king, after he should have landed. But during the voyage from Treguier to Sluys his fleet was dispersed, and three ships with the frame-work and carpenters were taken. Richard ordered it to be put together, and exhibited at Winchelsea.—Froiss. viii. 15. Knyght. 2679.

<sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2685.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. vii. 471. Rot. Parl. iii. 98.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1386.

Oct. 1.

summoned a parliament to meet at Westminster, in which the two parties made the experiment of their strength. The session was opened by a speech from the earl of Suffolk, the chancellor, who informed the houses that in a great council at Oxford the king had proposed to lead an army into France in support of his right to the French crown; that it would be their duty to deliberate on the expediency or in expediency of such a measure; and that if it met with their approbation, they must be careful to provide the funds which would be necessary to defray its expense. But the lords and commons, instead of applying to these subjects, returned with a joint petition for the removal of the ministers and the members of the council, particularly of the chancellor, whom it was intended to impeach as soon as he should be deprived of office. Richard, if we may believe the suspicious assertions of his enemies, resolved at first to seize and imprison the chief of his opponents; but having sounded the dispositions of the mayor and citizens, and finding that he could not rely on their assistance, he abandoned the design, retired to his palace at Eltham, and ordered the two houses to proceed to the consideration of the supply. They refused to obey until he should grant their petition, and return to his parliament.

Oct. 23.

After a struggle of almost three weeks he came to Westminster, dismissed the obnoxious ministers, gave the seals to the bishop of Ely, and appointed the

Oct. 24.

bishop of Hereford treasurer. But this condescension, instead of mollifying, encouraged his adversaries; and the commons resolved to impeach the earl of Suffolk, the late chancellor, of high crimes and misdemeanors. Richard ordered them to send to him a deputation of forty knights; and received a refusal,



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1386.

---

under the pretence that the lives of the deputies would be in danger. At length a compromise was effected, and the king attended in parliament, as soon as he had obtained a promise that none of his favourites or counsellors should be molested, excepting the chancellor.<sup>1</sup>

The first instance of a prosecution by the commons in parliament occurred about the close of the last reign, and has been noticed already; this is the second, but of greater interest, from the more elevated rank and important situation of the accused. The bill of impeachment was divided into seven heads, charging the earl with having obtained from the king grants beyond his deserts, and contrary to his oath;<sup>2</sup> with having enriched himself by defrauding the crown; and with having put the great seal to illegal charters and pardons. He had intrusted his defence to his brother-in-law, Sir Richard Scrope; but the lords observed that it would be more to his honour if he should conduct it himself, and he went through the different charges in order, contending that the more criminal of them were unfounded; and that the others did not include any legal offence. As to his deserts he would

<sup>1</sup> Compare Knyghton (2680—2683) with the Rolls of Parliament (iii. 215, 231, 233, 242, 374.)

<sup>2</sup> In taking the oath as chancellor, he had sworn not to permit the loss "or disherison of the king, but to do and seek his profit "as far as he could do it with reason." Hence it was maintained that knowing the king's wants, he could not accept of any grant from him. He replied that the words had not that meaning; that he could accept a grant from the king as well as any other person; and that the grant to him, with those to the duke of Gloucester and others, was confirmed in parliament. But in the judgment pronounced against him, it was said that no confirmation of the grant could be found on the rolls; a direct falsehood, as it is entered there exactly in the same words as the grant to Gloucester himself, to which no objection was made. *Præsentibus prælatis, proceribus, magnatibus, ac tota communitate.*—Rot. Parl. iii. 206, 209.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1386.  
—

be silent, but hoped that what he had suffered for the king would not be forgotten. Here, however, Sir Richard Scrope interposed. The accused, he remarked, had served in war thirty years as a knight banneret without disgrace or reproof; had thrice been a captive in the hands of the enemy, twice as a prisoner of war, once as envoy to a foreign state; and had been governor of Calais, admiral of the fleet, and often ambassador from the king. Nor was he raised from a low situation to the dignity of an earl, but was at the time, and had long been, a privy councillor, and chancellor, and possessed the property necessary for the support of that rank which was next to the rank of an earl. The managers for the commons were heard in reply, and the earl in rejoinder; after which, at the petition of his accusers, he was given in custody to the lord constable, and immediately enlarged upon bail. Within a few days the king and lords agreed in their award, by which he was acquitted on four charges; on the others his answers were pronounced insufficient; and he was therefore adjudged to forfeit the several sums specified in those charges, and to be confined in prison during the king's pleasure.<sup>1</sup> It is needless to say that soon after the dissolution of the parliament he was released.

This prosecution deserves to be remembered by posterity, as it confirmed to the commons their new claim of impeaching the ministers of the crown; but both the proceedings and the result seem to prove that the administration of Richard had not been so arbitrary and oppressive as we might otherwise have been led to suppose; and will justify a suspicion that the prosecution of the chancellor had been under-

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 216—220.



taken for the purpose of intimidation rather than of punishment. But now the objects of the party in opposition to the court more clearly unfolded themselves, and it was proposed to imitate the precedents of the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward II., by establishing a permanent council with powers to reform the state of the nation. To such a measure the king declared that he would never give his assent. He threatened to dissolve the parliament; and the commons, to terrify him, sent for the statute by which Edward II. had been deposed from the throne.<sup>1</sup> At length one of the lords represented to him, by desire of the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel, that if he should persist in his refusal, his life would be in danger; that the lords and commons would separate without his permission; and that he would then see in what a forlorn and abandoned state he would be left.<sup>2</sup> His obstinacy was subdued; and with a reluctant hand he signed a commission to eleven prelates and peers, besides the three great officers of state, appointing them a permanent council to inquire into the conduct of the officers in his household, courts of law, and every part of the kingdom; into the accounts of the treasury, the gifts and pardons which had been granted, and the alleged grievances of the people; to hear and determine all complaints which could not be redressed by common course of law; and to provide such remedies for all abuses as should appear to them good and profitable.<sup>3</sup> The duke and earl were of the number; and, as the majority of their colleagues belonged to the same party, they possessed, in effect, the whole power of the

Nov. 19.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 233.<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 374.<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 375, 376. Stat. of Realm, ii. 39.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1386.

government. To protect them in the execution of their office, the commons petitioned that from the moment any opposition should be made to their authority, the payment of the subsidy, which had been voted, should cease; and that the authors, advisers, or abettors, of such opposition should for the first offence be liable to forfeiture and imprisonment, and for the second to the loss of life or member.<sup>1</sup> Richard gave his assent; but refused to extend the duration of the commission beyond twelve months; and at the close of the session had the courage to protest openly and in person against any thing done in that parliament, which might turn to his prejudice, or prove contrary to the liberties and prerogatives of his crown.<sup>2</sup>

Nov. 28.

1387.

The commissioners appear to have commenced their labours with examining the accounts of the officers employed in the collection of the revenue; and the sequel affords a strong presumption that the royal administration had been foully calumniated. We hear not of any frauds discovered, or of defaulters punished, or of grievances redressed.<sup>3</sup> The earl of Arundel alone, who had been appointed admiral of the fleet, reflected a lustre on the new administration. On different occasions, during the season, he captured one hundred and sixty sail of vessels richly laden, and principally with wine; he relieved the garrison of Brest, and took two forts in the neighbourhood of the town, of which

<sup>1</sup> Knyght. 2692. Stat. of Realm, ii. 42.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. 222, 225.

<sup>3</sup> Froissart, indeed, tells us that Sir Simon Burley was fined 200,000 francs, and imprisoned. But his whole narrative differs so widely from the authentic particulars contained in the Rolls, that it deserves no credit. It seems to be made up of every flying report which reached him.



CHAP.

IV.

A.D. 1387.

—

he burnt one towards the sea, and delivered the other to the care of the governor. Thence sailing to Sluys, he destroyed the ships in the harbour, landed his troops, and laid waste the country to the distance of ten leagues.<sup>1</sup>

It was not, however, to be expected that a prince, who had now reached his twentieth year, and who had in a more early age given proof of abilities and courage, would tamely acquiesce in his own degradation, or that his favourites would neglect to provide for their security by endeavouring to restore the ascendancy of their protector. To emancipate himself from the actual control of the commissioners, Richard made a journey on one occasion to York, and on another to Chester. Wherever he came, his arrival was distinguished by some act of grace. The gentlemen of the county, and the chief burghers in the towns, were invited to the court of their young sovereign; and few refused to wear his livery, and bind themselves by oath to stand in his defence against all manner of men. At Shrewsbury he held a council of several judges, and a few days afterwards another at Nottingham;<sup>2</sup> in which he enjoined them on their allegiance to inform him what was the law of the land on the different questions which should be laid before them. In their reply they maintained, that the commission which had superseded the king in the exercise of the royal authority was subversive of the constitution; that those who intro-

Feb.

July.

August 20.

August 25.

<sup>1</sup> Knyght. 2692, 2693. Wals. 326.

<sup>2</sup> At the first of these councils were present Sir Robert Bealknap, chief justice, Sir John Holt, and Sir William Burgh, justices of the King's Bench, and Sir John Cary, chief baron of the Exchequer; at the second the same persons, with the exception of the chief baron, and with the addition of Sir Robert Tresilian, lord chief justice, Sir Roger Fulthorpe, justice of the King's Bench, and John Lokton, the king's serjeant-at-law.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1387.  
—

duced the measure, and those who exhorted the king to agree to it, were liable to capital punishment, and all who compelled him to assent, or prevented him from exercising his rights, were traitors: that the king, and not the lords and commons, had the power to determine the order in which questions should be debated in parliament; that the king could dissolve the parliament at pleasure, and that those who acted in defiance of such dissolution were traitors; that the lords and commons could not, without the king's permission, impeach his officers and justices; that both the member who moved for the statute of the deposition of Edward II. and he who brought it to the house, were traitors; and that the judgment given against the earl of Suffolk was erroneous in all its parts. They affixed their seals to this answer, and promised on their oaths to keep it secret; but the next day it was betrayed by Sir Roger Fulthorpe, one of the number, to the earl of Kent, and was by him communicated to the duke of Gloucester.<sup>1</sup>

August 26.

Richard, ignorant of this unfortunate discovery, proceeded to make arrangements for the resumption of the royal authority, at the expiration of the year allotted to the commissioners. To secure a majority in the next house of commons, he sent for the sheriffs, who, if we believe some writers, gave him slender hopes of success. It was determined to arrest the most obnoxious of his opponents, and to send them to take their trials before the judges who had already given their opinions on the question of law; and for this purpose Thomas Usk was appointed sub-sheriff of Middlesex, and John Blake, the referendary, was employed to prepare a bill of indictment for a conspiracy

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 232, 233. Knyght. 2692—2696.



against the royal prerogative.<sup>1</sup> Sir Nicholas Brembre, who had been thrice mayor of London, undertook to secure the fidelity of the citizens; and even swore the different companies to be ready to live and die with the king, and to oppose his enemies to the last breath. The commission was to expire on the nineteenth of November; and on the tenth Richard entered the capital. He was received with unusual expressions of joy and respect; the mayor and principal citizens wore his livery of white and crimson; and an immense crowd accompanied him to the church of St. Paul's, and thence to his palace at Westminster.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1387.

Nov. 10.

Elated with his reception, the king retired to rest; the next morning he learned with astonishment that a numerous body of forces had reached the neighbourhood of London under the command of the duke of Gloucester, and the earls of Arundel and Nottingham, the constable, admiral, and marshal of England. They had concerted their measures with such secrecy as to elude suspicion, and had carefully watched all his motions on his return to the capital. A royal proclamation was issued the next day, forbidding the citizens to lend assistance, or to sell provisions, to the armed force in the neighbourhood; but the following morning the confederates, advancing to Hackney with forty thousand men, sent a letter into the city, in which they assured the mayor and aldermen that their only object was to deliver the king from the hands of the traitors who kept him in thralldom; commanded

Nov. 11.

Nov. 12.

<sup>1</sup> I have neglected many circumstances mentioned by historians, as I consider them mere fictions invented by the king's enemies; the intention of indicting the framers of the commission I have admitted, as the indictment itself is still extant on the Rolls, p. 234.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 234. Knyght. 2696. Wals. 330. Mon. Evesh. 85.



CHAP. IV.  
A.D. 1387. Nov. 13. them with severe threats to give their aid to the same loyal cause ; and required an immediate answer. The ensuing day they were joined at Waltham Cross by the earls of Derby and Warwick ; and these five noblemen, Nov. 14. in presence of the commissioners, “appealed” (such was the term they used) five of the king’s favourites of treason. Richard, unable to resist, consented to receive the complaints of the lords appellants on Nov. 17. the next Sunday. They entered the city with every precaution against the pretended treachery of their enemies ; stopped to examine all the houses in the Mews ; and kept the king waiting two hours on his throne in Westminster Hall. But in his presence they behaved with the semblance of humility. At the entrance of the hall, on the lower and on the upper step of the throne, they bent the knee before him. He arose, gave his hand to each, and bade them present their petition. They began with the most solemn protestations of attachment and loyalty ; then accused of treason the archbishop of York, the duke of Ireland, the earl of Suffolk, Sir Robert Tresilian, false justice, and Sir Nicholas Brembre, false knight ; and lastly, throwing their gauntlets on the floor, offered severally to prove the truth of the charge by single combat. Richard answered, that he would summon a parliament, in which justice should be done ; and that in the mean time he took both parties under the royal protection. He then invited the appellants into another room, where they partook of refreshment with him in the most friendly manner.<sup>1</sup>

It now became evident that flight alone could save the obnoxious councillors. The earl of Suffolk, on the second attempt, succeeded in reaching the fron-

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 229. Knyght. 2697—2701. Wals. 330, 331.



tiers of France ; the archbishop effectually concealed himself in the vicinity of Newcastle ; and the duke of Ireland repaired to the northern borders of Wales. Here, however, he received letters from the king, authorizing him to raise forces, and promising to join him on the first opportunity. With joy he unfurled the royal banner ; and his hopes were encouraged by the accession of Molyneux, the constable of Chester, with a strong body of archers. The intelligence of his rising was received with secret pleasure by the duke of Gloucester, who now ventured to disclose his real designs. He consulted several clergymen and sages of the law, in what cases a vassal would be justified in giving back his homage ; and in a meeting at Huntingdon agreed with the earls of Arundel and Warwick, and Sir Thomas Mortimer, “ to depose “ Richard, and take the crown under his own custody.” It was afterwards pretended that in adopting this resolution they had no design to deprive the king of the royal dignity in earnest, but merely to intimidate him by reducing him for a few days to the condition of a private individual. But whatever might be their real intention, it was defeated by the opposition of the earls of Derby and Nottingham, who, though they were willing to pursue the favourites unto death, would never consent to deprive the king of his crown.<sup>1</sup> In the mean time the duke of Ireland at the head of five thousand men rapidly advanced towards the Thames. His first object was to pass that river, probably in consequence of secret instructions from Richard ; but the appellants, acquainted with his motions, marched in the night by different roads from the neighbourhood of London, and occupied all

<sup>1</sup> See the charges against the duke (Rot. Parl. iii. 376), with his answer (ibid. 379).



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1387.  
Dec. 20.

the passes before his arrival. He first made his appearance at Radcot. The width of the bridge had been diminished, so that only one man could cross at a time; three barriers were raised athwart it; and the earl of Derby lay behind with a powerful force. Aware of the danger, he turned immediately to seek another passage, but was met in front by his enemy of Gloucester, and followed by the earl of Derby, who on his departure had crossed the bridge. In this emergency the duke threw off his armour, plunged into the river, and, quitting his horse, swam to the opposite bank. It was growing dark, and a report fortunately prevailed that he had been drowned. Molyneux, one of his valets, and a boy were killed; a few perished in the waters; the rest were stripped completely naked, and told that they might return home. After a lapse of some weeks it was announced that the duke had escaped to Ireland.<sup>1</sup>

Dec. 26.

The appellants, on their return to London, took from the mayor the keys of the city, and required an audience of the king, who had retired into the Tower. The intimidated monarch yielded to all their demands. A proclamation was issued for the arrest of the fugitive archbishop, duke, and earl; eleven of the royal confidants were secured in different prisons; and ten lords and knights, with the ladies Poynings, Mohun, and Molyneux, were dismissed from court, and compelled to give security for their appearance before the next parliament. That Richard in his distress might not have a single person to whom he could unbosom himself, even his confessor, the bishop of Chichester, was forbidden to come into his presence.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 236. Knyght. 2701—2703. Wals. 332.

<sup>2</sup> Knyght. 2705. Wals. 333. Otterburne, 174. Rym. vii. 566, 567, 568.



In the writs which had already been issued for the convocation of parliament, the king had instructed the sheriffs to return such knights of the shire as had not taken any part in the late quarrel. These writs were now recalled, and new ones were issued in the accustomed style.<sup>1</sup> As soon as the parliament had been opened by the chancellor, the duke of Gloucester rose, knelt to the king, and complained that he had been suspected of aspiring to the crown; but Richard immediately interrupted him by strongly asserting his own conviction of the innocence of his uncle. The lords appellants then exhibited thirty-nine articles of impeachment against the five appellees; the latter, with the exception of Sir Nicholas Brembre, who was in prison, were called, but did not answer to their names; and judgment was immediately prayed against them for their default. But the decision was put off till the next day; and all the judges, with the exception of Sir William Skipwith, were arrested on their seats in court, and committed to separate cells in the Tower.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1388.  
Jan. 1.

Feb. 3.

The next morning the king called upon "the sages of the common and civil law" to give to the lords their opinion respecting the bill of impeachment; who unanimously declared that it was in all its parts informal and illegal. The peers, however, resolved to proceed; they were bound, they said, by no other law than the law and custom of parliament; the kingdom of England had never been governed by the civil law; nor would they, in the exercise of their jurisdiction, be guided by the practice of the lower courts. With the assent of the king the appeal was declared to be "good

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 566. Rot. Parl. iii. 400.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 228—236. Knyght. 2706. Wals. 334.



CHAP. "and effectual according to the law and course of  
 IV. "parliament." The appellants again demanded judg-  
 A.D. 1388. ment; but the house adjourned till the next day,  
 — when the demand was repeated, and the primate  
 instantly rising, observed, that in obedience to the  
 Feb 5. canons, which forbade the clergy to interfere in judg-  
 ments of blood, he and the other prelates should  
 depart; but that, before their departure, they would  
 protest that their absence should neither create any  
 prejudice to their own rights as peers, nor detract  
 from the effect of such judgment as might be given  
 by the temporal lords without their concurrence.  
 All the bishops and abbots immediately left the house.<sup>1</sup>

Eight days were spent in examining the bill of im-  
 peachment. It gave a detailed history of the conduct  
 of the appellees from the commencement of the late  
 parliament; attributed to them several projects too  
 absurd to deserve belief; and averred that their con-  
 stant aim had been to compass the destruction of the  
 lords commissioners, the appellants, and their asso-  
 ciates. Of the thirty-nine articles contained in this  
 instrument, fourteen were declared to amount to  
 treason: the accused were found guilty of them all;  
 and the duke, the earl, and Tresilian were separately  
 Feb. 13. adjudged to suffer the death of traitors, and to forfeit  
 their property to the king. The fate of the archbishop  
 of York, on account of the novelty of the case, was  
 reserved for future deliberation; and in the mean  
 time, his temporalities were confiscated. But of these  
 victims three were already beyond their reach. The  
 earl of Suffolk had arrived at Paris. He was kindly  
 received by the French king, but died of despair  
 before the end of the year. The duke of Ireland had

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 236, 237, 244.



found an asylum in Holland; and the archbishop was still concealed in Northumberland.<sup>1</sup> But Tresilian, who had disguised himself, and occupied a lodging in front of the palace, was betrayed by a servant, brought before the lords, and hurried away to execution. The next day the same fate befel Sir Nicholas Brembre, who in vain protested his innocence, and offered wager of battle to his accusers.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1388.  
Feb. 19.

Feb. 20.

After a short interval, the four judges of the King's Bench, the chief baron of the Exchequer, and the king's serjeant-at-law, were impeached of treason by the commons, on the ground, that knowing the traitorous intention of those who proposed the questions at Shrewsbury and Nottingham, they had, to please them, given answers contrary to law. They all replied in the same manner, that their answers had been extorted from them by threats, and that therefore they hoped for mercy. Fulthorpe added, that he had the next day disclosed the whole business to the earl of Kent. They were remanded; but Blake and Usk, who replied, that whatever they had done, had been done by the king's orders, were told that their defence was an aggravation of their crime, because they knew that the king was not his own master, but under the control of the appellees. They were con-

March 2.

March 3.

March 4.

<sup>1</sup> The duke died at Louvain in 1392, of a wound received in hunting a wild boar; to the duchess was allowed 100 marks per annum for her support. The archbishop, at the request of the government, was translated by the pope from York to St. Andrew's. But as the Scots did not admit the authority of Urban, he sailed to Flanders, accepted a small curacy, and served it till his death. The bishop of Ely, the chancellor, was translated to York, Fordham of Durham to Ely, Skirlaw of Bath and Wells to Durham, and Ergham of Salisbury to Bath and Wells. By these translations the friends of the appellants were exalted, those of the king depressed.—Rym. vii. 574—577. All these changes took place during the sitting of parliament.—Rot. Parl. 237, 238. Knyght. 2709.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1388.

March 6.

demned and executed. The judges were soon afterwards called in, and informed, that by award of the high court of parliament, they had been condemned to suffer the penalties of treason; but at the very moment the bishops entered the house, and begged that a stop might be put to the effusion of so much blood. At their intercession the lives of the condemned were spared; but they were banished for life, and confined in different cities in Ireland.<sup>1</sup>

The same day the bishop of Chichester, the king's confessor, was impeached of having used threats to the judges at Nottingham, concealed the objects of the traitors, and exposed by his connivance, the whole realm to danger. He replied that no threats had ever been used to the judges; that he was under the obligation of secrecy as to the answers; and that he had taken care that no evil should arise from the transaction. He was condemned to exile in Ireland.<sup>2</sup>

If revenge or intimidation had been the object of Gloucester, he might now have been satisfied; but his thirst for blood was still unappeased; and four knights, the earliest and steadiest friends of the king, were impeached by the commons as aiders and accomplices of the traitors already condemned. They pleaded not guilty, and offered to prove their innocence as true knights in any manner which the lords should award. It had become the policy of the royalists to prolong the deliberations; and eight days were con-

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 238—241. They were disposed of in the following manner:—Sir Rob. Bealknap, at Drogheda, with an allowance of 40*l.* per ann.; Sir John Holt, ditto, 40 marks; Sir Rog. Fulthorpe, Dublin, 40*l.*; Sir Will. Burgh, ditto, 40 marks; Sir John Cary, Waterford, 20*l.*; John Lokton, ditto, 20*l.*

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 241, 243, 244. Cork was assigned for his residence, with permission to receive 40 marks per annum from any of his friends who might allow him so much.



sumed in investigation and debate, till the approach of the Easter holidays suggested the necessity of adjournment. On the last day the lords and commons granted the king a subsidy till the feast of Pentecost; and took an oath to stand by the lords appellants during the present parliament, and to live and die with them against all men. The two houses were then adjourned by the king till the Monday fortnight after the festival of Easter.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1388.  
March 20.

During the recess every effort was employed to save the lives of the four knights, particularly of Sir Simon Burley. He had belonged to the court of Edward III.; had been selected by the Black Prince as guardian to Richard; and had negotiated the marriage between his sovereign and the present queen. He was attached to the king as to his son; and the king loved and revered him as a father. On these accounts Richard earnestly solicited Gloucester to spare him; but received for answer, that if he meant to keep his crown, he must consent to the execution of his favourite.<sup>2</sup> The queen on her knees seconded the prayer of her husband; but neither her rank nor beauty, her tears nor entreaties, could soften the heart of the tyrant. The task was then undertaken by the earl of Derby, one of the appellants; and a fierce but fruitless quarrel between the uncle and nephew served only to prove that no consideration could move the duke from his sanguinary purpose. When the parliament re-assembled, the inquiry was resumed; Richard

April 13.

<sup>1</sup> The sheriffs were ordered to administer the same oath to all men in office, and all gentlemen, and persons of influence in their counties (vii. 572). See the return from the county of Lincoln, Rot. Parl. iii. 400.

<sup>2</sup> *Qe s'il voloit estre Roy, covient estre perfourne et fait.*—Rot. Parl. iii. 431.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1388.

May 5.

obstinately maintained that Burley was innocent ; and for three weeks by refusing his assent averted the fate of his friend. At length, on an occasion when the king, and the lords who supported him, were absent, the opposite party resolved that one out of the thirteen counts in the impeachment had been brought home to the prisoner. He was called in, and immediately condemned on the vague charge of having conspired with other traitors to compass the death of those who had established the late commission of government. He suffered the same day ; and the only indulgence which he could obtain, was a commutation of the more ignominious part of the punishment into decapitation.<sup>1</sup>

May 12.

A week later was decided the fate of Burley's fellow-prisoners, Sir John Beauchamp, Sir James Berners, and Sir John Salisbury. The two former were convicted of treason, for having estranged the king's affections from his loyal subjects, and attached him to themselves ; the latter for having consented to pass the seas, and solicit the aid of the king of France in favour of the five lords appealed of treason. All were immediately led to execution ; Salisbury was drawn and hanged ; but the king interposed in favour of the other two, and obtained the consent of the lords that they should be beheaded.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 241—243, 376. In the rolls of this parliament he is said to have been condemned with the *assent* of the king (Rolls, 243) ; in those of the 21st of Richard, without his assent, against his will, and in his absence.—Rolls, 376.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 243. The manner in which these trials were conducted does not appear very consistent with our notions of justice. The impeachment was first read over in the presence of the accused, who spoke without the aid of counsel in his own justification. The commons replied ; and the lords resolved to “ examine the charges “ and the circumstances with good deliberation, and to give such



CHAP.

IV.

A.D. 1388.

The work of blood was now ended ; and “ the “ wonderful parliament,” as it was called by some, or “ the merciless parliament,” as it was more justly called by others, after a long session of one hundred and twenty-two days, was dissolved. Before its termination an order had been issued for the expulsion of the Bohemians, who attended the queen, and a pardon granted not only to the appellants and their friends, but also to the adherents of the opposite party, with the exception of eighteen persons by name. The parliament was, however, careful to incapacitate the king from reversing the attainders which had been passed, or recalling to England such of the attainted as had escaped to foreign lands, and to remunerate the services of the lords appellants with a present of twenty thousand pounds out of the new subsidy. Their last legislative act amounted to a condemnation of themselves. It was an ordinance that, “ whereas “ several points had been declared treason in the “ present parliament which had never been so declared by any statute, no judge should on that account have power to give judgment of treason in “ any other case or manner than he had before the “ commencement of their proceedings.” At the conclusion, the king was compelled to take the coronation oath a second time ; the prelates renewed their fealty,

June 2.

June 3.

“ judgment as should be to the honour of God, and the profit of the “ king and the kingdom.”—Ibid. 240, 241. In this “ good deliberation” days and weeks were consumed ; but there is no hint that the prisoner was ever heard again in his defence, or counsel introduced, or witnesses examined. We only learn that the lords decided among themselves, whether the accused were guilty of any one or more of the counts in the impeachment, and whether such count or counts amounted to treason. As soon as this was determined, he was called in to receive judgment, and led immediately to execution.—Ibid. 240, 243, 244.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1388.  
—

the lords their homage ; and all swore never to agree or suffer that any judgment given in that parliament should be reversed, nor that any statute enacted in it should be repealed.<sup>1</sup>

For nearly twelve months Richard continued a mere cipher in the hands of the party. The duke governed with greater lenity than might have been expected from his vindictive disposition ; but his administration was not distinguished by any act of sufficient importance to dazzle the eyes of the nation, or to give stability to his power. The invasion so often threatened from France was repeatedly averted by the dissensions which broke out in that kingdom ; and the war with Scotland was productive of little profit or glory. The earl of Arundel had, indeed, the good fortune to capture a fleet of French merchantmen ; but, on the other hand, the Percies lost against the Scots the battle of Otterburne in Northumberland, in which, if the earl Douglas was slain, the lords Henry and Ralph Percy, the English generals, were made prisoners.<sup>2</sup> The terror which Gloucester had inspired insensibly wore away ; several of his partisans offered their services to the king ; and Richard, by one bold action, instantaneously dissolved that authority which had been cemented with so much blood.

August 9. In a great council held after Easter, he unexpectedly requested his uncle to tell him his age. “Your highness,” the duke replied, “is in your twenty-second year.” “Then,” added the king, “I must certainly be old enough to manage my own concerns. I

1389.

May 3.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 244, 247—252. Stat. of Realm, ii. 43—50.

<sup>2</sup> See the two ballads on it in the “Reliques of ancient English Poetry,” and the “Border Minstrelsy.” Also Froissart, ix. 37—42.



“ have been longer under the control of tutors than  
 “ any ward in my dominions. I thank ye, my lords,  
 “ for your past services, but do not require them any  
 “ longer.” Observing their surprise, he followed up  
 the blow by demanding the seals from the archbishop  
 of York, and the keys of the exchequer from the  
 bishop of Hereford. A new treasurer and new chan-  
 cellor were appointed; the former council was dis-  
 missed; and the king gave his confidence to a few  
 tried friends, with the duke of York and the young  
 earl of Derby, who, though they originally belonged  
 to the commission, had either never forfeited, or had  
 regained the royal favour. Gloucester submitted with  
 reluctance, and after an interview with his nephew  
 retired into the country; Richard by proclamation  
 informed the people that he had taken the reins of  
 government into his own hands, that he intended  
 faithfully to maintain the ordinances of the parliament  
 at Westminster, and that he should suspend the col-  
 lection of the subsidy, which had lately been granted,  
 till he was better convinced that his necessities re-  
 quired it.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.

IV.

A.D. 1389.

May 8.

The king was now his own master; and whether it  
 were owing to his wisdom or the wisdom of his  
 ministers, it must be owned that for some years his  
 administration was tranquil and happy. The merit  
 indeed of suspending the war with France must be  
 claimed by Gloucester, under whose administration  
 the treaty was commenced; but Richard had the  
 good sense to continue it to a conclusion; and, re-  
 lieved from the pressure of foreign hostility, made it  
 his endeavour to preserve uninterrupted harmony

<sup>1</sup> Knyght. 2735. Wals. 337. Rym. vii. 617. Rot. Parl. iii.  
 404.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1389.

June 18.

1390.

between himself and his people. He frequently met his parliament; consulted it on all matters of importance, and appeared anxious to deserve its approbation. On one occasion he ordered the chancellor, treasurer, and other members of his council to resign; and openly invited every person, who felt himself aggrieved by them, to bring his charges against them as private individuals. The next day the two houses bore an honourable testimony to their integrity, and they were restored with applause to their former offices.<sup>1</sup> In return for his condescension, both lords and commons were liberal in their grants, and successively confirmed by their votes the acknowledged prerogatives of the crown.<sup>2</sup> Though he retained a deep sense of the injuries which he had suffered, he had the prudence to suppress his resentment; and on the return of the duke of Lancaster from Guienne, recalled the duke of Gloucester to a seat in the council.<sup>3</sup> He even affected an indifference to the lot of his friends, who had been banished to Ireland, till he was able to serve them without danger or opposition. His former confessor he promoted to a bishopric in that island; and, as the revenue was moderate, added to it a small annuity. With the consent of parliament he recalled to London the three surviving judges; and, as soon as he heard of the death of the duke of Ireland, granted a full pardon to Sir John Lancaster, the companion of the exile, and restored the earldom of Oxford in favour of the duke's uncle Sir Aubrey de Vere.<sup>4</sup> Three years later he ventured to give a stronger proof of his affection for his unfortunate friend. He ordered the body, which had been em-

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 258.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 316. Acts of Council, i. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 279, 286.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 302, 303, 346.



balmed, to be brought from Louvain, and re-interred it with great solemnity in the church of Colne. Before the completion of the ceremony the coffin was opened by his orders, and the covering removed from the face. The features were still discernible; and the king gazed on it for some minutes with visible emotions of the most poignant grief.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1390.

It was during this period of comparative tranquillity that the legislative enactments against papal provisions and reservations were completed. As soon as the king of France had espoused the cause of the cardinal of Geneva against Urban VI., the claims of the two competitors were canvassed in parliament; and at the suggestion of the primate and the other prelates, it was determined to acknowledge Urban, and to obey him, as the rightful head of the church. The legislature even went farther, and by statute confiscated the revenues of the cardinals who rejected Urban, and put out of the king's protection every English subject who should make application to his adversary, as the real pontiff.<sup>2</sup> In return Urban issued in favour of the king a bull, by which the two next vacant prebends in each collegiate church were reserved, and the nomination was transferred from the bishops and chapters to the crown.<sup>3</sup> But the harmony between the two courts was disturbed by the ambition of Edward Bromfield, the agent at Rome for the abbey of St. Edmund's; who, on the decease of his abbot, procured by false suggestions that appointment from the pontiff, and returning to England, took possession of the abbey in virtue of the papal provision. He was instantly apprehended under the Statute of Pro-

1378.  
Nov.

1379.  
May 11.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 352.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 48. Rym. vii. 222.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. vii. 216.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1379.

1380.  
Jan. 16.

visors passed in the late reign, and committed to the Tower.<sup>1</sup> This event attracted the notice of the public; complaints were made in parliament of new provisions granted to several cardinals; and by an additional enactment it was ordained, that if any of the king's subjects should, without his license given with the advice of the council, farm or administer the benefice of any alien within the realm, or in virtue of such administration should convey money out of the kingdom, he should for the same offence incur all the penalties comprised in the Statute of Provisors of the 27th of Edward III.<sup>2</sup>

Bromfield's affair was compromised by his translation to a different benefice. The king granted the necessary licenses to the attorneys of the cardinals enjoying preferment in England;<sup>3</sup> and the pope confirmed the concordat of Bruges between Edward III. and Gregory XI.<sup>4</sup> But, though Urban was willing to concede other points, he still refused to surrender the claim which had for centuries been exercised by his predecessors of presenting to such benefices as became vacant in the court of Rome by the death or the promotion of the incumbent;<sup>5</sup> and the parliament three years afterwards confirmed the former statutes, and, as an additional safeguard, extended the penalties of the late act to all foreigners residing on benefices obtained by provisions, whether they held them for themselves or for the profit of others. The king, however, was permitted to dispense with this act in favour of the cardinal of Naples, and such persons as might render particular services to the crown;<sup>6</sup> an

1383.  
Nov.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 230, 231, 236.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 82, 83.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. vii. 253, 256, 258, 259, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Rym. vii. 384.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 321, 428, 437.

<sup>6</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 163. Stat. of Realm, ii. 35.



exemption which tended in a great measure to render the statute nugatory ; for as the cardinals in possession of English benefices generally died at Rome, the pope instantly conferred their livings on the surviving cardinals, who found no difficulty in obtaining the royal license ; and the other preferments which became vacant in that court were frequently at the king's request bestowed on his own chaplains as the cheapest means by which he could remunerate their services.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1383.  
—

These evasions of the spirit of the law did not escape the observation of those who were enemies to the system of provisions ; and in consequence of their reiterated complaints it was enacted in the parliament holden in 1390 that all provisions granted before the twenty-ninth of January in that year should be valid ; that all granted afterwards should be of no effect ; that every person who should accept of a benefice contrary to this statute should forfeit his lands and chattels, and be banished for life ; that whoever should bring or send into England any papal sentence or excommunication against any person for the execution of this statute should, besides forfeiture, incur the penalty of life and limb ; and that whoever should publish such sentence or excommunication should, if he were a prelate, lose his temporalities ; if of inferior rank, suffer imprisonment, and make fine at the king's pleasure.<sup>2</sup> But the last clause appeared to bear so hard on the clergy, that the spiritual peers, though they had concurred in all the other statutes against provisions, unanimously protested against this, “ inasmuch as it might tend to restrain the authority “ of the Apostolic See, or to subvert the liberties of the

1390.  
Jan. 17.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 684.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 266, 270. Stat. of Realm, ii. 73.



CHAP. "church." By the king's orders the protestation was  
IV.  
A.D. 1390. read in parliament, and entered on the rolls.<sup>1</sup>

— Shortly afterwards Richard held a great council, and in his own name, and the names of the principal barons and knights, wrote to the pontiff, explaining their grievances, and requesting his holiness to devise some prompt and efficacious remedy for the evil. What answer was returned does not appear. Urban died, and was succeeded by Boniface IX., who declared the

1391.  
Feb. 4.

1392.  
August 14.

1393.  
Jan.

statutes enacted by the parliament of no effect,<sup>2</sup> and among other provisions granted a prebend in the church of Wells to Cardinal Brancacio, who immediately began a suit in the papal court against William Langbroke, the king's presentee.<sup>3</sup> The controversy was immediately revived; the king's courts decided in favour of Langbroke; but rumours were circulated, that, if the prelates executed the decrees of such courts, they would be exposed to ecclesiastical penalties. In the next parliament the commons petitioned the king to inquire of all estates, in what manner they would behave in the two following cases; 1st. If the pope were to issue sentences of excommunication against the bishops for instituting the king's presentees, in consequence of the judgment of the king's court; 2nd. If, for the same reason, he should attempt to translate the bishops from their present sees to other sees out of the kingdom.<sup>4</sup> The answer returned by

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 264.

<sup>2</sup> Fuisse et esse cassa et irrita, ipsaque ex superabundante cassamus, irritamus, et juribus vacuumus.—Apud Raynald. v. 162.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. vii. 734.

<sup>4</sup> It is rather laughable to observe how soon the parliament began to fear that its own artifice might be turned to its prejudice. The plan of translating bishops out of the kingdom had been invented by the duke of Gloucester's party to get rid of the archbishop of York. But it now became evident that if the pope could do this to punish a prelate who had offended the ruling party, he might



the commons was, that such proceedings would be subversive of the rights of the crown, and that they would therefore stand by the king against them to live and die. The reply of the temporal lords was nearly to the same effect. The prelates declared that it was not their intention to deny that the pope could issue sentences of excommunication, and translate bishops according to the law of the holy church, but to do so in the cases proposed would be to invade the rights of the crown, which they were determined to support with all their power.<sup>1</sup> In consequence of these answers, was drawn up the last and most comprehensive of the statutes of provisors or premunire, by which it is provided that, if any man pursue or obtain, in the court of Rome, or elsewhere, such translations, excommunications, bulls, instruments, or other things, against the king's crown and regality, or kingdom, as aforesaid, or bring them into the realm, or receive, notify, or execute them either within the realm or without, such person or persons, their notaries, procurators, maintainers, abettors, fautors, and counsellors, shall be out of the king's protection, their goods and chattels, lands and tenements, shall be forfeited to the king, and their persons attached wherever they may be found.<sup>2</sup>

There is reason to believe that, when this bill was discussed in the house of lords, it met with considerable opposition. It was at least withdrawn by the commons, who agreed that the king should refer the whole matter to his council, and have full power to make such alterations and ordinances as he might think fit, and to carry them, when made, into execu-

do the same to punish a prelate from whom he himself had received offence.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 304.

<sup>2</sup> Stat. of Realm, ii. 84, 85.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1393.

---

tion.<sup>1</sup> Though they expressed a hope that, when it was thus amended, they should assent to it at the next parliament, it does not appear to have been ever laid before them again; but to have been occasionally acted upon, and occasionally modified, as suited the royal convenience. The pope was still careful to bestow the English benefices of the deceased cardinals on their survivors; but frequently the king was also careful to present to them himself. On each of these occasions the old contest was fought over again; and in every case the provisor was compelled to relinquish his pretensions, and the pope, that he might save his own claim, conferred the benefice on the king's presentee. Convinced by experience of their inability to continue the contest with honour to themselves, the pontiffs negotiated with the court, and assented to such modifications of the statute as the king thought it prudent to make. Provisions in favour of aliens, unless they were cardinals, were entirely abolished, and those in favour of natives were generally granted

<sup>1</sup> Fait a remembrer touchant l'estatut des provisours, qe les communes, pur la grante affiance . . . . . s'accorderent et assenterent en plein parlement, qe nre dit Sr le Roi, par bone deliberation et assent des seigneurs et de son sage conseil, preigne toute la matire a luy, et q'il eit plein poair et auctorite de modifier le dit estatut, et ent ordeiner par deliberation et essent susditz en manere come luy semblera meutz.—Rot. Parl. iii. 301. Four years afterwards another memorandum to the same import, and nearly in the same words (the king was to alter it par assent et advis de tieux sages et dignes persones queux lui plerra appeller pur conseiller en le matiere) is inserted in the Rolls; and it is added, that immediately afterwards the prelates protested, that, if any ordinance were made which should restrain the power of the pontiff in the business of provisions, or derogate from the liberties of the church, they neither could nor ought to assent to it.—Rot. Parl. iii. 340, 341. Hence I think it plain that this statute was never properly passed in parliament, and on that account does not appear in the Rolls.—It was, however, acted upon by the king's council; and is referred to in the 25th Henry VIII. c. 20, and 2nd Philip and Mary, c. 8.



to persons who had previously obtained the royal license.<sup>1</sup> Thus ended this long and angry controversy entirely to the advantage of the crown; for though the right of election remained to the clergy, it was merely nominal, as they dared not reject the person recommended by the king; and though the pope still pretended to confer the great dignities of the church by provision, the provisor was invariably the person who had been nominated by the crown.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1393.  
—

If the war between the kings of England and France still continued, it was more from the difficulty of adjusting their differences than from any real enmity between the two monarchs. Of late hostilities had been suspended by a succession of negotiations, which, in 1394, terminated in a truce for four years.<sup>2</sup> Soon afterwards Richard was deprived of his consort, the good queen Anne, who died at his palace of Shene, and was interred at Westminster. The king appeared inconsolable; and to divert his melancholy, was advised to visit his Irish dominions. They had formerly produced a yearly income of thirty thousand pounds; now the receipts were not equal to the ordinary expenses of the government. To understand the cause of this defalcation we must take a hasty review of the past transactions in Ireland. After the fall of Bruce, the second Edward was too much occupied by

1394.  
May 27.

June 7.

July 26.

<sup>1</sup> We have one of these temporary modifications in Wilkins, Con. iii. 237. 1st. The bishoprics were to be granted after the election, and by provision, to the person elect, if the king wrote in his favour. If he did not, to some other person acceptable to the king. 2nd. In cathedral and collegiate churches, the pope and the ordinary were to present alternately, till the pope had possessed three presentations. He might grant the provisions to cardinals; otherwise he was bound to select Englishmen. 3rd. In other benefices the pope and ordinary were to present alternately for fourteen months.—Anno 1398.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. vii. 770.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1394.

---

his domestic enemies, the third by his wars with Scotland and France, to attend to the concerns of the sister island ; and the natives by successive encroachments gradually confined the English territories within narrower limits. The greater part of Ulster was recovered by the O'Nials ; the O'Connors won several districts in Connaught ; and in Leinster the O'Brians maintained, with perseverance, and often with success, the cause of Irish independence. Had the natives united in one common effort, they might have driven the invaders into the ocean ; but they lost the glorious opportunity by their own dissensions and folly. Their hostilities were generally the sudden result of a particular provocation, not of any plan for the liberation of the island ; their arms were as often turned against their own countrymen as against their national enemies ; and several septs received annual pensions from the English government as the price of their services in protecting the borders from the inroads of the more hostile Irish.

Neither did the English pale present a scene of less anarchy and disunion. The settlers were divided into two classes, the English by race and the English by birth. The former were the descendants of the first invaders, and considered themselves as the rightful heirs to the lands and emoluments which had been won by the swords of their progenitors. The further they were removed from their seat of government, the less did they respect its authority ; and, as they lived in the constant violation of the English laws, naturally sought to emancipate themselves from their control. Hence many adopted the dress, the manners, the language, and the laws of the natives, and were insensibly transformed from English barons into Irish



chieftains. Of these the most powerful was Thomas Fitz-Maurice, who collected, without distinction of country, every adventurer under his standard ; expelled the English settlers who refused to conform to his wishes ; encouraged intermarriages with the natives, and established among his dependents the customs of tanistry and gavelkind. Yet such was the weakness of the government, that, to secure his fidelity, he was created earl of Desmond, and his possessions were erected into a county palatine.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1394.

The English by birth comprised the persons born in England whom the king had invested with office in Ireland, and the crowds of adventurers whom penury or crime annually banished from their own country. To the old settlers they were objects of peculiar jealousy and hatred ; by the government they were trusted and advanced, as a counterpoise to the disaffection of the others. Edward III. had gone so far as to forbid any person to hold office under the Irish government who was not an Englishman, and possessed of lands, tenements, or benefices in England ; but the prohibition aroused the indignation of the English by race ; in defiance of his authority they assembled in convention at Kilkenny ; and so spirited were their remonstrances that he revoked the order, and confirmed to them the rights which they had inherited from their ancestors.

1342.

Edward had appointed his son Lionel, duke of Clarence, to the government of Ireland. The prince landed with an army, obtained some advantages over the natives, and left the island, having rather inflamed than appeased the jealousy between the two parties. Some years later he returned ; a parliament was held under his influence ; and the result was the celebrated

1361.  
March.

1364.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1364.  
—

statute of Kilkenny. Its provisions were directed not against the natives, but the descendants of the English settlers, who, “to the ruin of the common weal, had rejected the laws of England for those of Ireland.” It enacted that marriage, nurture of children, and gossipred with the Irish, should for the future subject the offender to the penalties of high treason; and that the Englishman who should adopt an Irish name, or the Irish language, or the Irish dress, should be constrained by imprisonment or forfeiture to give security that he would conform to the manners of his own country. It was moreover declared that the Brehon laws were a lewd custom, latterly crept in among the English, and it was made high treason for any Englishman to decline the authority of his own laws, and submit his cause to the decision of the Brehon judges.<sup>1</sup>

Still the former dissensions prevailed among the strangers; and the Irish gradually extended their conquests. To restore tranquillity, Richard, in his ninth year, created the earl of Oxford, his favourite, marquess of Dublin, and afterwards duke of Ireland; bestowed on him the government of Ireland for life; and granted to him and his heirs all the lands which he should conquer from the natives, with the exception of such as had already been annexed to the crown, or conferred on former adventurers.<sup>2</sup> Thirty thousand marks were allotted for the expedition by the parliament; and the most sanguine hopes of success were generally cherished; when the whole plan was defeated by the dissension between the king and his barons, and the subsequent exile and death of the duke. Now, however, the moment seemed to be

<sup>1</sup> Apud Leland, i. 320.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 209, 210.



arrived when the English ascendancy might be restored, and the natives reduced to the most complete submission. With four thousand men-at-arms and thirty thousand archers, Richard landed at Waterford; the duke of Gloucester, the earls of Rutland and Nottingham, aided him with their advice; and though the state of the country, intersected with lakes, morasses, and forests, impeded his progress; though the enemy, by retiring into inaccessible fortresses, shunned his approach; yet in a short time the idea of resistance was abandoned; the northern chieftains met the king at Drogheda, the southern attended his deputy, the earl of Nottingham, at Carlow; and all, seventy-five in number, did homage, promised to keep the peace, and submitted to pay a yearly tribute. The four principal kings, O'Nial, O'Connor, O'Brian, and M'Murchad, followed Richard to Dublin, where they were instructed in the manners of the English by Sir Henry Christal; submitted to receive, though with some reluctance, the honour of knighthood, and, arrayed in robes of state, were feasted at the king's table. But a distinction was made between the natives who had not previously sworn fealty and those who had done so and rebelled, the "Irrois savages," and "Irrois rebels," as the king denominated them. Yet the latter on their submission were taken under protection, and obtained the promise of a full pardon on the payment of a proportionate fine. Richard, though he devoted much of his time to parade, did not neglect the reformation of the government. Grievances were redressed, the laws enforced, tyrannical officers removed, and the minds of the natives gradually reconciled to the superiority of the English.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1394.  
—  
Oct.

1395.  
March 25.

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Coun. i. 56, 62. Christal gave the account of this



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1395.

---

But while the king was thus establishing his power in Ireland he was suddenly recalled to his English dominions. The disciples of Wycliffe, under the denomination of Lollards, had seized the opportunity of his absence to commence a fierce attack upon the revenues and the discipline of the church. Not content with affixing libels against the clergy in the most public places in the capital, they had prepared an inflammatory petition, which was to be presented to the house of commons. This instrument is a strange compound of fanaticism and folly. It complains that ever since the church had been endowed with worldly possessions, faith, hope, and charity have been banished from England; that the English priesthood is a false priesthood, because sinners can neither impart nor receive the Holy Spirit; that the clergy profess a life of celibacy, but pamper themselves too much to observe it; that by accepting places under the government, they become hermaphrodites, obliging themselves to serve both God and mammon; that they teach transubstantiation, which leads to idolatry; enjoin confession, which makes them supercilious; authorize war and criminal executions, which are contrary to the law of Christ, a law of mercy and love; and permit men to exercise the trades of the goldsmith and sword-cutler, which are unnecessary and pernicious under the dispensation of the Gospel. No one was found to present the petition; but the prelates, alarmed at the boldness

expedition to Froissart. He had formerly been made prisoner by one of the natives, a powerful man, who unexpectedly leaped up behind him, embraced him tightly, and, urging the horse forward with his heels, fairly carried him off. During his captivity he had learned the Irish language, and on that account was now charged with the care of the four kings. His great difficulty was to induce them to dine at a different table from their servants, and to wear breeches, and mantles trimmed with the fur of squirrels.—Froiss. xi. 24.



of the fanatics, solicited the protection of the king, who, at his return to London, severely reprimanded the patrons of the Lollards, and ordered their teachers to be expelled from the university of Oxford.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1395.  
—  
May.

During the quarrel between the duke of Gloucester and the king's favourites, Richard had been frequently reproached with a secret leaning towards the friendship of the king of France. On the death of his queen he discovered this inclination more openly, and solicited the hand of Isabella, the daughter of Charles VI., a princess in her eighth year. The dukes of Lancaster and York approved of the match; the duke of Gloucester, who on all occasions made his court to the prejudices of the nation by opposing any alliance with France, was able to postpone it for many months. At length his acquiescence was purchased with gifts and promises; and a treaty was signed, purporting that Isabella should marry Richard; that he should receive with her 300,000 francs of gold in ready money, and 500,000 afterwards by annual instalments in five years;<sup>1</sup> that the issue by this marriage should derive from their mother's descent no additional right to the French crown; and that if the king should die before Isabella had reached her twelfth year, she should be sent back to France with all her personal property, and that portion of the 500,000 crowns which had been already paid. At the same time the truce already existing between the two kingdoms was prolonged for the term of twenty-eight additional years, and made to comprehend their respective allies. Richard sailed to France to receive the princess; the kings feasted each other in their pavilions between

1394.  
June 7.

1396.  
March 9.

Sept. 27.

<sup>1</sup> Six French crowns of gold were equal in value to one pound sterling.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1396.  
Nov. 1.  
1397.  
Jan. 7.

Ardres and Calais ; the marriage ceremony was performed by the archbishop of Canterbury, and the young queen was afterwards crowned with the usual magnificence at Westminster.<sup>1</sup>

This alliance with the royal family of France encouraged Richard to execute a scheme of vengeance which he had long cherished within his own breast. He had not forgotten the sufferings and murders of his favourites, nor the insults which had been offered to his own authority. Hitherto it had been prudent to dissemble ; now, thinking himself secure on the throne, he resolved to wreak his vengeance on the offenders, though the principal of them was one of his nearest relatives. Of his three uncles the duke of York alone seems never to have forfeited his friendship. The easy and indolent disposition of that prince withdrew him from the rash and intemperate councils of his brother of Gloucester ; and if he did not strenuously exert himself in the cause, he never gave the weight of his co-operation to the enemies of his nephew. He was now beloved and trusted by Richard. During the king's absence in Ireland he had been appointed regent of the kingdom ; and his son, the earl of Rutland, was believed to hold the first place in the royal favour. With respect to the duke of Lancaster it had formerly been otherwise, when he was suspected of aspiring to the crown. But age had chilled his ambition ; every sinister impression had been effaced by more recent services ; and a grant to

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 802—805, 811—830, 834—837, 845—847, 848. Wals. 353. Isabella brought with her, besides jewels and plate, “ robes, tapisserie, et autres meubles, tant pour la personne, et pour “ la chambre, come pour la chapelle, l'escuyerie, panneterie, eschan- “ sonnerie, fruicterie, la cuisine, et autres offices ; ” for all which a receipt was given at Calais, 7 Nov.—Thres. des Chart. 64.



him for life of the sovereignty of Guienne, though it was afterwards recalled at the solicitation and remonstrance of the natives, proved how ready the king was to gratify the wishes of this uncle. Constance, his second wife, did not long possess the affection of her husband, which he had transferred to Catherine Swynford, a knight's widow, and governess of his two daughters by Blanche, the first duchess. Constance died in 1394, and in 1396 the duke married Swynford, after an illicit cohabitation of about twenty years, during which she had borne him three sons and one daughter, of the surname of Beaufort, from Beaufort castle in France, in which they were born. This marriage was resented as a disgrace by the other princes of the blood royal; but Richard, to please his uncle, approved of it, legitimated the children, and raised the eldest son to the dignity of earl of Somerset.<sup>1</sup> But the duke of Gloucester, the third uncle, though he knew how cruelly he had wounded the feelings, disdained to cultivate the friendship of his nephew. He was still the chief mover of every intrigue, the soul of every faction that opposed the king's wishes. He never took his seat at the council-board but to embarrass the proceedings; was the last to arrive and

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

1396.  
Jan. 13.

1397.  
Feb. 6.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 343. In the original patent of legitimation, and in the copy entered on the rolls of parliament, there was no reservation of the *royal dignity*. In the copy on the patent rolls there is such reservation, but it is interlined, and in a different ink, though the hand is nearly the same. In the exemplification by Henry IV. in 1407, the exception occurs without interlineation.—See Sir Harris Nicolas in Excerpt. Hist. 153. It appears, however, to me that the original patent, though it omits, nevertheless implies the exception; for it explains the honours, dignities, pre-eminences, estates, degrees, and offices which it enables the Beauforts to hold, as duchies, principalities, earldoms, baronies, and other fees, whether holden mediately or immediately of the crown. Is not this equivalent to a reservation of the royal dignity?



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

the first to depart ; treated Richard with an air of superiority ; and frequently threw out sarcasms in his hearing on his supposed inactivity and degeneracy from the spirit of his fathers. At the same time it was the policy of the duke to ingratiate himself with the knights, who had distinguished themselves in the last reign ; to inveigh against the peace with France ; to lament the pusillanimity of the king ; and to represent him as fit only to live in the company of ladies and bishops.<sup>1</sup> That he might at least display his own

<sup>1</sup> On this subject a singular occurrence took place in the parliament held in 1397. On the first of February the commons delivered a bill to the lords for the regulation of the king's household, complaining, among other things, that so many bishops, who had lordships, and so many ladies, with their servants, were always with the king, and were supported at his expense. Richard the next day sent for the lords, asserted that the bill was an invasion of his prerogative, and ordered the duke of Lancaster to demand from the commons the name of the person who had introduced it. This was Sir Thomas Haxey, a clergyman. On the third, the commons appeared before the king and the lords, professed their sorrow for the offence they had given, and declared that their only intention was to request the king to consider the subject of his household, and to make what regulations he thought proper. He professed himself satisfied ; adding that, as he did not demand from them either tenths or fifteenths, they ought not to interfere with his expenses. But Haxey was singled out for punishment, as a terror to others. His bill had been expressed in these words :—May it please the commons of England to consider the expenses of the king in his household, from the multitude of bishops and ladies with their followers, and to obtain due remedy thereof. On the fifth a law was made, that whoever moved, or should move the commons of parliament, or any other person, to make remedy or reformation of any thing appertaining to the king's person, rule, or royalty, should be taken for a traitor ; and two days after, Haxey, on his own confession, was condemned, according to this *ex post facto* law, to suffer the punishment of treason. But his life was immediately spared at the intercession of the prelates, and a full pardon was granted to him on the 27th of May. It is probable that no intention existed of putting Haxey to death ; but that the whole of this unjustifiable proceeding had for its object to check the attempts of Gloucester's partisans to intimidate the opponents of the court.—See Rot. Parl. iii. 339, 341, 407, 408. From this instance it appears that clergymen sat at this period among the commons in parliament.



courage, he obtained permission to join the Christians, who were fighting against the infidels in Prussia; but, whether it was that the expedition was merely a pretence, or that his courage evaporated at sea, he returned in a few days, and asserted that he had been driven back by a storm. He was then appointed to the government of Ireland, but neglected to take possession, probably because Ireland was a country in which, as he said, he could reap neither wealth nor glory. Richard's mind was perpetually harassed by what he saw and heard of Gloucester's conduct; a repetition of petty injuries kept alive his resentment, and the memory of the past urged him to get rid of a prince who still continued to display the same contempt for the person, the same hostility to the favourites of his sovereign. We are even told that the duke had actually formed a plan with his former associates, the present archbishop of Canterbury,<sup>1</sup> and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, to seize and imprison the king;<sup>2</sup> but the account appears to be no more than a report invented to explain the cause of his arrest. This, at least, is certain, that no such charge was afterwards brought forward by his accusers in parliament.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

July 8.

When Richard had taken his resolution, it was carried into effect with secrecy and despatch. The earl of Warwick, having dined with the king, was arrested at the house of the chancellor, near Temple Bar, hurried away to the Tower, and for greater security conveyed to the castle of Tintagel in Corn-

July 10.

<sup>1</sup> He was Thomas de Arundel, brother to the earl of the same name, had been bishop of Ely and chancellor during the prosecution of Richard's favourites; and was afterwards translated to the see of York, and thence to that of Canterbury.—Ang. Sac. i. 62, 122.

<sup>2</sup> Froissart, xl. 48. Account of MSS. in library of king of France, ii. p. 205.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.  
July 12.

wall.<sup>1</sup> The primate was unsuspectingly employed to bring his brother the earl of Arundel to a private conference with Richard, who instantly apprehended and sent him to Carisbrook Castle, in the isle of Wight; but with a promise, confirmed upon oath, that he should not suffer either in his person or property.<sup>2</sup> To prevent the escape or resistance of his uncle, Richard himself headed the party appointed to apprehend him, and proceeded to his castle at Pleshy. The duke with his family came out to meet the king, but was immediately delivered to the custody of the earl of Nottingham, earl marshal.<sup>3</sup> That nobleman pretended to conduct him to the Tower; but, when they had reached the Thames, he put him on board a ship, sailed down the river, and lodged his prisoner in the castle of Calais, of which he was governor. From the sudden disappearance of the duke it was generally believed that he had been murdered; and his friends, alarmed at his supposed fate, began to tremble for their own safety. Richard, to tranquillize the public mind, issued a proclamation, stating that these arrests had been made with the assent of the earls of Rutland, Kent, Huntingdon, Nottingham, and Salisbury, the lord Despenser, and Sir William Scrope, and with the approbation of his uncles of Lancaster and York, and his cousin of Derby; that the offences

July 15.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 436.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 435.

<sup>3</sup> There are different accounts of this arrest. The contemporary author in MS. mentioned before assures us that it took place in the morning, when the king arrived before the duke was up (p. 208); Froissart fixes it at five in the afternoon (xi. 48). Both agree that he joined Richard in the court of his palace, was asked to accompany him to London, and made prisoner on the road. But the rolls of parliament declare that he was arrested, as he came forth in procession to meet the king: domino regi cum processione solemniter humiliter occurrentem.—Rot. Parl. iii. 418.



of the prisoners were of recent date, and had no connection with the occurrences of the tenth and eleventh years of his reign; and that none of his subjects had any reason to be alarmed on account of the part which they had taken on those occasions.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

To arrange his plans with greater secrecy, he now repaired to the castle of Nottingham, where it was determined to copy the former example of the prisoners, and to appeal them of treason, after the manner in which they had appealed the king's favourites. The noblemen who had advised the arrests were at dinner, when they were unexpectedly summoned from table to the gate of the castle, and required to put their seals to a form of appeal, which had been prepared for the occasion. On their return they found the king in the hall, seated on the throne wearing his crown. "We appeal," they were made to say, "Thomas duke of Gloucester, Richard earl of Arundel, " and Thomas earl of Warwick, and say that they have " acted as traitors to your majesty and your realm. " Such we hold them, and such we will prove them " to be, when, where, and in whatever court your " majesty shall ordain. And we beseech your majesty " to hear us as soon as may be, and to do full right " and justice on this our appeal." Their request was granted, and the time of trial fixed for the ensuing parliament.<sup>2</sup>

On his return the king remained a few days at Woodstock, where it was resolved to take the deposition of the duke of Gloucester in prison, and a commission for that purpose was signed and addressed to

August 15.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 6. To the noblemen who are said to have given their assent to these arrests should have been added the young earl of Somerset.—Rot. Parl. iii. 374.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Rot. Parl. iii. 374, and 449—452.



- CHAP. Sir William Rickhill, one of the justices. About  
 IV.  
 A.D. 1397. three weeks later Rickhill was awakened in the mid-  
 dle of the night at Essingham in Kent by a royal  
 Sept. 5. messenger, who ordered him to repair immediately  
 to Dover, and to follow the earl of Nottingham to  
 Calais. If he was surprised at the mysterious nature  
 of this message, his surprise redoubled, when after  
 Sept. 7. his arrival the earl delivered to him a commission to  
 interrogate the duke of Gloucester, whom he had for  
 many weeks believed to be dead. In this delicate and  
 dangerous business Rickhill proceeded with a caution  
 which afterwards saved his life. He required that  
 two witnesses should be appointed to see and hear all  
 that passed between him and the prisoner; and on his  
 introduction to Gloucester, advised him to return his  
 Sept. 8. answer in writing, and to keep an exact copy of it in  
 his own possession. Some hours later the duke de-  
 livered to him what was termed his confession, with a  
 request that he would come back the next morning,  
 to receive any further communication that might be  
 deemed necessary. But in the morning Rickhill was  
 Sept. 11. refused admission; and, after remaining two days  
 longer at Calais, he returned to England, and gave an  
 account of his proceedings to the king the day before  
 Sept. 16. the opening of the parliament.<sup>1</sup>
- To prevent any opposition to his wishes, Richard  
 Sept. 17. was accompanied to Westminster by a most formid-  
 able force, composed of the knights and esquires who  
 wore his livery of the hart, and of his body-guard of  
 archers levied in the county of Chester. The leading  
 men in the commons had received their instructions  
 Sept. 18. from the court; and on the second day of the session  
 Sir John Bussy, the speaker, petitioned the king that

<sup>1</sup> See Rickhill's deposition, Rot. Parl. iii. 431.



the clergy might appoint proxies to represent them in their absence from trials of blood; that the commission of regency, and the statute confirming it, passed in the tenth year of his reign, should be repealed, as extorted from him by threats and violence; that whoever in future should procure the enactment, or act in virtue of such a commission, should suffer the penalties of treason; and that all pardons, general or private, heretofore granted to the duke of Gloucester, and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, should be revoked, as prejudicial to the king, and wrung from him by constraint. These petitions were immediately granted with the unanimous assent of parliament.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

The commons next impeached Thomas Arundel, archbishop of Canterbury, of high treason. He had, they maintained, aided the duke and two earls to obtain the commission of regency, and procured himself to be named one of the number; had also advised the arrest and execution of Sir Simon Burley and Sir James Berners, contrary to the will of the king; and had committed these crimes while he was chancellor, and bound by his oath to support the rights of the crown. He rose to defend himself, but was silenced by Richard, who, on account, as he pretended, of the archbishop's dignity, wished to have more time to consider the matter.<sup>2</sup>

Sept. 20.

The following day the lords appellants presented their charges against the three peers: 1. That the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel had compelled the king to assent to the commission of regency, by threatening his life in case of refusal; 2. That they had drawn to their party the earl of Warwick and Sir Thomas Mortimer at Hornsey park, and

Sept. 21.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 348—351.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 351.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.  
—

with force of arms constrained the king at Westminster to take them under his protection; 3. That these four, usurping the royal power, had condemned Sir Simon Burley to death, against the king's will and without his assent; and, 4. That at Huntingdon they had conspired to depose the king, shown him the act of deposition of Edward II., and told him that, if he had not met with the same fate, he owed the preservation of his crown to the respect which they entertained for his deceased father. To these charges the earl of Arundel pleaded not guilty, and offered to prove his innocence by wager of battle, or by the verdict of a jury. He then pleaded a general and particular pardon. But these had been already revoked, and he was ordered to speak to the facts alleged against him. On his refusal, the duke of Lancaster pronounced the usual judgment of treason; he was immediately led back to the Tower, and his head was struck off the same day under the direction of the lord Morley, the lieutenant of the earl marshal.<sup>1</sup>

That nobleman, who was still at Calais, had received an order to bring his prisoner, the duke of Gloucester, to the bar of the house, that he might reply to the lords who had appealed him of treason. Sept. 24. Three days later an answer was returned, that the earl marshal could not produce the said duke before the king in parliament, for that he, being in custody in the king's prison at Calais, had there died. The time, the place, the suddenness of the death, will create a suspicion that this unfortunate prince had been murdered; and in the next reign it was pre-

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 374—377, 435. Hence it is evident that the earl marshal himself was not present; and that the story of his insulting the prisoner at his execution cannot be true.—Wals. 355.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.  
—

tended that Richard, unwilling to disgrace the royal family by bringing his uncle to a public trial, and equally unwilling to grant life to one who had so unfeelingly refused mercy to others, had sent assassins to Calais, by whom the duke was smothered between two beds.<sup>1</sup> However that may be, the lords appellants demanded judgment; the commons seconded their demand by a petition; and the duke was declared a traitor, and all his property confiscated to the crown.<sup>2</sup>

Sept. 25.

The next day was read in parliament Gloucester's confession taken by Sir William Rickhill. He acknowledged that he had been guilty of procuring the commission of regency; of presenting himself with an armed force before the king in Westminster Hall; of opening the king's letters without permission; of speaking slanderously of him in the hearing of others; of employing threats to induce him to condemn Sir Simon Burley; of asking the advice of others, whether he might not give up his homage; and of having conspired with others to depose the king, but only for a few days, after which he meant to replace him on the throne. He protested, however, that, since the day

<sup>1</sup> In the first year of the next reign a paper was read in parliament, purporting to be a confession upon oath of John Hall, a servant to the earl of Nottingham. He said, or was made to say, that some day in September the duke was brought from the castle of Calais to an hotel called the Prince's Inn, and delivered to two persons, servants of the king and the earl of Rutland. That they took him up stairs, advised him to send for a confessor, as he must die, and, after the departure of the priest, smothered him between two beds in presence of himself and three others. As soon as this paper had been read, Hall was condemned, and immediately executed, without having been heard, or even presented before his judges. Though eight were named in the deposition, as being concerned in the transaction, not one of them was examined or molested. If we reflect how much it was for the interest of Henry IV. to have Richard believed the author of Gloucester's death, all these circumstances tend to excite a suspicion that he could not prove it.—See Rot. Parl. iii. 453.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 378.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

on which he swore to his nephew on God's body at Langley,<sup>1</sup> he had always been faithful to him; and concluded in these words: "Therefore I beseech my  
" liege and sovereign lord the king, that he will of his  
" high grace and benignity accept me to his mercy  
" and his grace, as I that put my life, my body, and  
" my goods wholly at his will, as lowly and as meekly  
" as any creature can do, or may do, to his liege lord.  
" Beseeching to his high lordship that he will, for the  
" passion that God suffered for all mankind, and the  
" compassion that he had of his mother on the cross,  
" and the pity that he had of Mary Magdalene,  
" that he will vouchsafe for to have compassion and  
" pity, and to accept me unto his mercy and his grace,  
" as he that hath ever been full of mercy and of grace  
" to all his lieges, and to all other that have not been  
" so nigh to him as I have been, though I be un-  
" worthy."<sup>2</sup> How eloquently he could plead for mercy in his own favour, though he had never shown mercy to others!

The archbishop of Canterbury had not appeared in his place in parliament since his impeachment. His absence was attributed to the perfidious counsel of the king, who, fearing the impression which might be made by his eloquence, affected to be his friend, advised him not to irritate his enemies by his presence,

<sup>1</sup> That oath was taken ten years before (Rot. Parl. 421). I notice this, because some writers suppose the duke's confession to regard recent occurrences, whereas it refers entirely to his conduct in the years 1386 and 1387. Richard ordered prayers for his soul in all parish churches, because he confessed and repented of his treasons before his death.—Acts of Coun. i. 76.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. 379. His acknowledgment of having employed threats to procure the condemnation of Burley is not in the confession; but was added afterwards by word of mouth to Rickhill.—Ibid. and 431. I have preserved the very words, and altered nothing but the spelling.



and promised to shield him from their resentment.<sup>1</sup> However that may be, as soon as the confession of the duke of Gloucester had been read, the commons prayed judgment against the primate. Richard immediately declared that he had acknowledged himself guilty, and thrown himself on the royal mercy; and sentence was pronounced that he should be banished for life, and that his temporalities should be forfeited to the crown. Arundel repaired to France; the pope, after some negotiation with Richard, translated him, probably, without his knowledge, to the see of St. Andrew's; and Roger Walden, dean of York, and treasurer of the household, succeeded him in the archbishopric of Canterbury.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.  
—

The earl of Warwick was then brought to the bar of the house. He pleaded guilty; but the sentence of death was commuted into exile, and the isle of Man was assigned for his residence. The lord Cobham was also convicted on the impeachment of the commons, and condemned to pass the rest of his life in the isle of Jersey. Mortimer, who had fled for protection to one of the Irish septs, was outlawed.<sup>3</sup>

Whatever may have been Richard's object, whether it were security or revenge, it must be confessed that the manner in which these prosecutions were conducted was illegal and unjustifiable. Not only did the king violate the pardons which he had formerly

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 421.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 351. From a document in Wilkins (Con. iii. 232), which, if genuine, must have contained the instructions from the king to his envoys, it would appear that Richard thought St. Andrew's too near to England. That, however, he acquiesced in the translation, appears from Rym. viii. 31.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. 379—382. Cobham was convicted in January. But I mention him now, that all the convictions may come before the reader at once.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

---

granted, but the terms of the proclamation which he had recently issued. At the same time the concurrence of the princes of the blood furnishes a strong presumption that there had been something highly criminal or dangerous in the conduct of Gloucester. His nephews, the earls of Somerset and Rutland, were two of his accusers; his brothers, the dukes of Lancaster and York, joined in his condemnation; and the former even pronounced against him the judgment of treason. Can we suppose that they would have thus united to disgrace and punish their own blood, had they been influenced by no other motive than the king's resentment for an offence committed and pardoned ten years before?<sup>1</sup>

It is remarkable that several peers who sat and voted in this parliament had been engaged in the very transactions which were now declared treasonable. The duke of York, the bishop of Winchester, and Richard Scrope, had been members of Gloucester's commission; the earls of Derby and Nottingham had been two out of the five who appealed the king's

<sup>1</sup> I think I can discover some traces of enmity between the duke of Lancaster and the party of the duke of Gloucester before this period. In the parliament of 1394 the earl of Arundel, Gloucester's intimate friend, told the king that certain matters lay so near his heart, that he could not in conscience conceal them: 1. That the duke of Lancaster walked often arm in arm with the king, who even wore his livery; 2. That in council the duke by his haughtiness prevented others from giving their opinions; 3. That he had obtained the grant of Guienne to the king's prejudice; 4. That he had received too much money for his journey to Spain; 5. That his conduct was blameable in the negotiations for peace. Richard vindicated his uncle; and by award of parliament Arundel was obliged to make the following apology to the duke: "Sir, since it seemeth to the king and other lords, and eke since ye be so mickle grieved and displeased by my words, it forthinketh me, and I beseech you of your good lordship to remit me your mawtalent (resentment)." —Rot. Parl. iii. 313, 314.



favourites of treason. In these the doom of their former associates could not fail of awakening the most gloomy apprehensions; nor, after what had passed, was the expedient to which they had recourse calculated to satisfy them of their security. Richard declared in full parliament that, though the three former had been named in the commission, they had always behaved as true and loyal subjects; and that the two latter, though they had at first allowed themselves to be deceived by the pretences of Gloucester, had given a convincing proof of their loyalty, by abandoning him and returning to their duty the very moment in which they discovered his treason. He then created his two cousins of Derby and Rutland dukes of Hereford and Albemarle; his two uterine brothers, the earls of Kent and Huntingdon, dukes of Surrey and Exeter; the earl of Nottingham duke of Norfolk; the earl of Somerset marquess of Dorset; the lords Despenser, Nevil, Percy, and William Scrope, earls of Gloucester, Westmoreland, Worcester, and Wiltshire. A general pardon followed, from which were excepted those who took up arms against the king in his eleventh year, not, however, without the hope of favour, provided they sued for it within eight months. To give the greater stability to these proceedings, it was enacted, that to compass the death or deposition of the king, or to give him back the homage which had been done to him, or to raise forces and march against him for the purpose of making war within the realm, were and should be accounted acts of treason; that every judgment, ordinance, and declaration made in the present parliament, should in all time to come, have the full force of statutes; that if any man should attempt to repeal or overturn them,

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.  
—

Sept. 29.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.  
—

he should suffer the penalties of treason ; and that the lords spiritual and temporal should swear to observe them ; that their oaths should be enrolled in the chancery ; and that the prelates should excommunicate all who publicly or privately should act contrary to them. On the last day of the session the peers took the oath ; at the request of the king the commons stretched out their right hands to show that they joined in it ; and then the lord Thomas Percy, who had been appointed by the clergy to assist as their proxy at the late trials, swore in the name of his constituents.<sup>1</sup> What reliance could be placed on such oaths, it is difficult to conceive. Of the very men who now swore, the greater part had sworn the contrary ten years before ; and, as they violated that oath now, so did they violate the present before two more years had elapsed. The parliament was prorogued to meet again at Shrewsbury after the Christmas holidays.<sup>2</sup>

These transactions unfolded to view the real character of the king. The secrecy with which for so long a period he had concealed his purposes of revenge, the dissimulation with which he had heaped favours

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 353—356. Stat. of Realm, ii. 95—107. I conceive that the persones exemptz called before the council to make fine (Acts of Coun. i. 75, 76) were the persons mentioned above as excepted from pardon.—See Rym. viii. 26.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 356—369. The parliament had probably been prorogued on account of the absence of the earl of March, the presumptive heir to the crown, who was the king's lieutenant in Ireland. All were anxious that he should give his consent to the late transactions, and Richard despatched a peremptory order for him to attend at Shrewsbury. No excuse would be admitted (Rym. viii. 21. Oct 15). He obeyed ; and as soon as the session was opened, took the oath, which had been taken already by the other peers (Rot. Parl. iii. 357), and concurred in the different ratifications of all that had passed in his absence.



on his destined victims, and that contempt for the forms of law and principles of justice which he had displayed in the course of the proceedings, astonished and appalled not only the former adherents of Gloucester, but every man who on any occasion had incurred the royal displeasure. The duke of Norfolk possessed, apparently at least, a high place in the king's favour; but he was conscious how deeply he had engaged in the political transactions of the eleventh year; he knew that by his reluctance to join in the late prosecutions he had given cause of offence;<sup>1</sup> and he entertained a suspicion, that the honours to which he had been raised were meant only to blind and ensnare him. Of the original lords appellants, he and the duke of Hereford alone remained. Chancing to overtake the latter on the road between Brentford and London, he unbosomed himself to his friend, detailed his apprehensions, and pointed out the most suspicious characters in the king's council.<sup>2</sup> Whether it were

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 383.

<sup>2</sup> The following was the conversation, according to Hereford's account of it:—*Norf.*—We are on the point of being undone. *Heref.*—Why so? *Norf.*—On account of the affair of Radcot Bridge. *Heref.*—How can that be, since he has granted us pardon, and has declared in parliament that we behaved as good and loyal subjects? *Norf.*—Nevertheless our fate will be like that of others before us. He will annul that record. *Heref.*—It will be marvellous indeed, if the king, after having said so before the people, should cause it to be annulled. *Norf.*—It is a marvellous and false world that we live in; for I know well that, had it not been for some persons, my lord your father of Lancaster and yourself would have been taken or killed, when you went to Windsor, after the parliament. The dukes of Albemarle and Exeter, and the earl of Worcester and I, have pledged ourselves never to assent to the undoing of any lord without just and reasonable cause. But this malicious project belongs to the duke of Surrey, the earls of Wiltshire and Salisbury, drawing to themselves the earl of Gloucester. They have sworn to undo six lords, the dukes of Lancaster, Hereford, Albemarle, and Exeter, the marquess of Dorset and myself; and have sworn to reverse the attainder of Thomas earl of Lancaster, which would



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1397.

that Hereford incautiously divulged the secret, or that he betrayed it clandestinely to Richard, is uncertain. But he received an order to attend the monarch at Haywood; was charged on his allegiance to communicate to the council the whole conversation; and was remanded with an injunction to appear before the parliament, and to submit every particular to the cognizance of that tribunal.

1398.  
Jan. 27.

At the appointed day the three estates (for the proctors of the clergy were present) assembled at Shrewsbury; and their proceedings were marked with the same obsequiousness to the will of the monarch, the same disregard of the liberties of the people, which they had evinced before the prorogation. 1. Sir John Bussy, the speaker, demanded that the acts of Gloucester's parliament, in the eleventh year of the king, should be repealed. As a preliminary, the judges and serjeants-at-law were introduced, and commanded to give their opinion of the answers which had been returned by the former judges to the questions submitted to them at Nottingham. They unanimously replied, that to the same questions they should have given the same answers.<sup>1</sup> Immediately the lords, the clergy, and the commons separately declared their assent; and all the judgments, ordinances, and statutes of Gloucester's parliament were repealed.

turn to the disherison of us and of many others. *Heref.*—God forbid! It will be a wonder, if the king should assent to such designs. He appears to make me good cheer, and has promised to be my good lord. Indeed he has sworn by St. Edward to be a good lord to me and the others. *Norf.*—So has he often sworn to me by God's body: but I do not trust him the more for that. He is attempting to draw the earl of March into the scheme of the four lords to destroy the others. *Heref.*—If that be the case, we can never trust them. *Norf.*—Certainly not. Though they may not accomplish their purpose now, they will contrive to destroy us in our houses ten years hence.—*Rot. Parl.* iii. 360, 382. <sup>1</sup> *Ibid.* 32.



2. It was evident that this act of theirs might be reversed by their successors, with as much ease as they had reversed the acts of the eleventh year; and the speaker the next day petitioned that the very attempt to invalidate any of the proceedings of the present session should be declared treason. The king consulted the judges,<sup>1</sup> who replied that no greater security could be devised than the authority of parliament. At his request, however, the lords repeated their former oath on the cross of Canterbury; the proctors of the clergy followed them; and the knights of the shire standing round the king, with most of the citizens and burgesses, imitated their example. Richard then inquired if it were possible to bind his successors; and, when he was informed that he could not, declared that he would at least solicit the pope to excommunicate the prince who should hereafter annul any act of the present parliament. A herald by proclamation asked the people if they would assent to this kind of security; and they, raising their hands, proclaimed with loud shouts their assent.<sup>2</sup> 3. Two

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1398.  
—  
Jan. 29.

<sup>1</sup> From these proceedings it is plain that the judges no longer sat in parliament with the lords in the same manner as formerly. Sir William Thirnyng, chief justice of the King's Bench, said that parliament alone could declare that to be treason which had not been so declared before; but that, were he a lord and peer of parliament, he would have answered as the others had done. The act of repeal is made "by the king, with the assent of the lords spiritual and temporal, of the proctors of the clergy, and of the commons, and by the *advice* of the judges and serjeants."—Ibid. 358.

<sup>2</sup> Proclamation feust fait en audience de tout le peuple . . . . criantz ove hautes voices, q'il lour plect bn, et q'ils sont a ceo pleinement assentuz.—Ibid. 360. I notice this circumstance, because it serves to explain those passages in more ancient writers which describe the people as assisting at the great councils, and testifying their approval by acclamation. The custom seems still to have prevailed. We find the people mentioned also in the first parliament of the next reign . . . . populoque dicti regni tunc ibidem propter factum parliamenti in maxima multitudine congregato.—Ibid. 417.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1398.

Jan. 30.

days before the opening of the session the duke of Hereford had obtained a general pardon under the great seal for the treasons, misprisions, and offences that he had ever committed.<sup>1</sup> He now appeared in parliament to prosecute the duke of Norfolk, and exhibited in writing the whole of the conversation between them. As if, however, he were conscious of guilt, and apprehensive of the royal sincerity, he returned the next morning, threw himself on his knees before Richard, and addressed him in the following terms: "My liege lord, there have been riots, troubles, "and evil deeds in your realm to the offence of you "and your royal estate; and in them I know that "I have taken a part; not, however, for an evil end, "or to displease you, as I did not then know that "I was doing wrong. But now, sir, I know it, and "confess my fault. Wherefore, sir, I cry you mercy, "and beg your pardon." The king immediately assented to his petition, promised to be his good lord, and in a set speech announced to the several estates that he had granted him a full pardon.<sup>2</sup> 4. Richard

Jan. 31.

had previously demanded an aid of the commons; and on the fourth day they voted to him, with the assent of the lords, a tenth and a half, and a fifteenth and a half; and in addition, as if they sought to render him independent of parliament, granted him the tax on wool, wool-fells, and hides, not for a short and definite period as usual, but for the whole term of his natural life.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 367. From this anxiety of Henry to obtain his pardon, which he had now solicited and received twice since the declaration made in his favour by Richard a few months before, I am inclined to suspect that he had engaged in the designs of Norfolk, whatever they were, and had been admitted to favour on the condition that he should accuse his associate.



Such liberality required a return on his part; and he published a general charter of pardon for all offences against the crown; but with this most curious exception, that no benefit should be derived from it, if either lords or commons in future parliaments should impeach the grant, which had been now made to him of a revenue for life.<sup>1</sup> 5. But the most unconstitutional act of the session still remains. It had been usual in former times to dismiss the members as soon as the public business was terminated, and to detain a committee of lords and justices to hear and determine such petitions as had been presented and not answered. A similar committee was now appointed of twelve peers and six commoners, of whom one half were required to be present at the deliberations; but they were not only invested with the powers of the ancient committees, but also authorized to “hear, “examine, and determine all matters and subjects “which had been moved in presence of the king, with “all the dependencies thereof;” words of indefinite and therefore of the more dangerous tendency, under the colour of which the committee arrogated to itself all the powers and functions of a full parliament. To it was referred the charge which had been brought against the duke of Norfolk.<sup>2</sup>

That nobleman had not thought proper to attend

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 368, 369.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 368. When Richard was deposed, his enemies alleged that this committee had no other powers than former committees; and that the additional authority was given to them by the king, who had for that purpose falsified the rolls. Of the truth of the charge we have no evidence.—I should observe that, though the same committee was appointed to examine the accusation against the duke of Norfolk, two of the members attended, not as peers, but as proctors for the clergy.—Ibid. 360. This was in consequence of a petition from the commons, lest it might afterwards be alleged that the clergy were not represented in the committee.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1398.  
—  
Feb. 23.

March 19.

his duty in parliament ; but he surrendered on proclamation, and was introduced to Richard at Oswaldstre. He loudly maintained his innocence against his accuser ; and, bending his knee, said to the king : “ My dear lord, with your leave, if I may answer your “ cousin, I say that Henry of Lancaster is a liar ; and “ in what he has said, and would say, of me, lies like “ a false traitor as he is.” Richard ordered both parties into custody ; and, proceeding to Bristol, with the assent of his committee of parliament, determined causes and published laws in the same form as if the two houses were sitting. He even enacted that these new statutes should possess equal authority with those which had been passed in the last parliament ; that any man who should seek to annul or repeal them should suffer the penalties of treason ; and that every prelate before he received his temporalities, every tenant of the crown before he obtained livery of his lands, should take an oath to observe all laws, ordinances, and judgments, as well those made by the king in the late parliament, as those made by him since its dissolution, with the assent of the committee, to oppose every endeavour to alter or revoke them, and to pursue with all his might every man who should infringe them, till the offender had suffered the punishment of his treason. At the same time it was determined that the controversy between the two dukes should be referred to a high court of chivalry.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 372. Nothing could exceed the solicitude of the king to give stability to all these proceedings. He had been told by the judges that he could not bind his successor. He made, however, the attempt. By his will, signed a few days before his departure for Ireland, he bequeathed the greater part of his personal property to his successor, but on the express condition that he should ratify and observe all the acts of the 21st and 22nd years of his reign ; other-



For this purpose, the barons, bannerets, and knights of England, were summoned to assemble at Windsor. The appellant and appellee were produced before them; Hereford persisted in the charge; and Norfolk, though he acknowledged that he had spoken disrespectfully of certain lords, denied every expression which seemed to reflect on the king's character. As no witness could be called, and the truth could not be elicited by confronting the parties, it was determined to refer the decision to the judgment of God; and, by award of the court, wager of battle was joined, to be fought at Coventry on the 16th of September. On the appointed day the combatants entered the lists, in presence of the king, the committee of parliament, and an immense assemblage of people. Hereford made with solemnity the sign of the cross; Norfolk exclaimed, "God speed the right." The former, pushing forward his shield, and fixing his lance in its rest with the point towards his adversary, advanced a few paces; the latter remained motionless at his station; and the king, throwing down his warder, took, in the language of the age, the battle into his own hands. He could not, he said, suffer a combat, which, whatever might be the event, would involve in indelible disgrace one of two persons, who were both allied to him in blood, and both bore his arms.<sup>1</sup> The combatants were then conducted back to their seats, and

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1398.  
April 29.

Sept. 16.

wise it was to be retained by his executors, and to be employed by them in defence of the same proceedings, "even, if it were necessary, unto death."—Rot. Parl. iii. 421.

<sup>1</sup> This had been requested, and for the reasons given by Richard, by Paynel, envoy from the king of France. He was instructed to represent, that le dict duc de Herfort est fort proche de la couronne d'Angleterre, comme fils de fils de Roy, et est aussi desendu de la maison de France, et le dict duc de Nortfolc de la maison d'Angleterre. —Thres. des Chart. 66.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1398.

---

awaited in anxious suspense the determination of the king, who was employed in consultation with the committee of parliament. At length the royal pleasure was announced, first to the appellant, and then to the appellee. To preserve the public tranquillity, and prevent quarrels between the two parties and their adherents, the duke of Hereford was ordered to quit the kingdom within the space of four months, and to remain in exile for the term of ten years; but at the same time it was declared that he had honourably performed his duty in prosecuting the appeal, till the king had taken the battle into his own hands. The judgment of the duke of Norfolk was more severe. He was ordered to quit the realm at the same time, to go a pilgrim to the Holy Land, and to remain in banishment for the rest of his life, in Germany, Hungary, or Bohemia; not that he had not honourably performed his duty against his adversary, but because he had, according to his own confession, endeavoured to excite dissension among the great lords, and had both publicly and privately opposed the repeal of the acts of Gloucester's parliament. Moreover, as he had been guilty of neglect in his government of Calais, and was in considerable arrears to the king, it was awarded that all his lands should be taken into the king's hand, to be applied to the payment of his debts, reserving the sum of one thousand pounds a year for his own use. Finally, both were forbidden, under the penalty of treason, to have any communication with Thomas, late archbishop of Canterbury, or with each other, during the time of their exile.<sup>1</sup> Before their departure they respectively

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 383, 384. I have given the sentences at greater length, because they fully explain the causes of that disparity which some



obtained a few favours of the king, and in particular a permission by patent to appoint attorneys to take possession of such inheritances as might fall to them in their absence, though they could not actually perform homage or swear fealty. Hereford repaired to Paris; Norfolk, after a short residence in Germany, visited Jerusalem, and in his return died of a broken heart at Venice.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1398.

1399.  
Sept. 29.

Richard now saw himself triumphant over all his opponents. The last of the lords appellants had been banished; and even his uncles, through affection or fear, seconded all his measures. He had attained what seems for some time to have been the great object of his policy. He had placed himself above the control of the law. By the grant of a subsidy for life he was relieved from the necessity of meeting his parliament; with the aid of his committee, the members of which proved the obsequious ministers of his will, he could issue what new ordinances he pleased; and a former declaration by the two houses, that he was as free as any of his predecessors, was conveniently interpreted to release him from the obligations of those statutes which he deemed hostile to the royal prerogative. But he had forfeited all that popularity which he had earned during the last ten years; and the security in which he indulged hurried him on to other acts of despotism, which inevitably led to his ruin. He raised money by forced loans; he compelled the judges to expound the law according to his own

modern writers have been at a loss to understand. The reasons for Norfolk's banishment are probably the real ones; those for that of Hereford do not appear so. The king sent to him at Calais a present of 1,000 marks.—Pell Records, 268.

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 372, 385. Rym. viii. 47—52.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

prejudices or caprice; he required the former adherents of Gloucester to purchase and repurchase charters of pardon; and, that he might obtain a more plentiful harvest of fines and amercements, put at once seventeen counties out of the protection of the law, under the pretence that they had favoured his enemies in the rencontre at Radcot Bridge. The duke of Lancaster did not survive the banishment of his son more than three months; and the exile expected to succeed by his attorneys to the ample estates of his father. But Richard now discovered that his banishment, like an outlawry, had rendered him incapable of inheriting property. At a great council, including the committee of parliament, it was decided, that the patents granted, both to him and his antagonist, were illegal, and therefore void; and all the members present were sworn to support that determination.<sup>1</sup> Henry Bowet, who had procured the patent for the duke of Hereford, was even condemned, for that imaginary offence, to suffer the punishment of treason; though, on account of his character, his life was spared on condition that he should abjure the kingdom for ever.<sup>2</sup> This iniquitous proceeding seems to have exhausted the patience of the nation. Henry (on the death of his father he had assumed the title of duke of Lancaster) had long been the idol of the people; and the voluntary assemblage of thousands to attend him on his last departure from London might have warned Richard of the approaching danger. The feeling of their own wrongs had awakened among

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 372, 373. Here again the king appealed to the people, who signified their assent by raising up their hands. *Quelle chose feust faite et assentuz par tout le people esteeantz en presence du roy.*  
—Ibid.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 385.



them a spirit of resistance; the new injury offered to their favourite pointed him out to them as their leader. Consultations were held; plans were formed; the dispositions of the great lords were sounded; and the whole nation appeared in a ferment. Yet it was in this moment, so pregnant with danger, that the infatuated monarch determined to leave his kingdom. His cousin and heir, the earl of March, had been surprised and slain by a party of Irish; and, in his eagerness to revenge the loss of a relation, he despised the advice of his friends, and wilfully shut his eyes to the designs of his enemies.

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

1398.

Having appointed his uncle, the duke of York, regent, during his absence, the king assisted at a solemn mass at Windsor, chanted a collect himself, and made his offering. At the door of the church he took wine and spices with his young queen; and lifting her up in his arms, repeatedly kissed her, saying, "Adieu, madam, adieu, till we meet again." From Windsor, accompanied by several noblemen, he proceeded to Bristol, where the report of plots and conspiracies reached him, and was received with contempt. At Milford Haven he joined his army, and embarking in a fleet of two hundred sail, arrived in two days in the port of Waterford. His cousin the duke of Albemarle had been ordered to follow with a hundred more; and three weeks were consumed in waiting for that nobleman, whose delay was afterwards attributed to a secret understanding with the king's enemies. At length Richard led his forces from Kilkenny against the Irish; several of the inferior chiefs hastened barefoot, and with halters round their necks, to implore his mercy; but M'Murchad spurned the idea of submission, and boasted that he would

1399.  
May 18.

May 29.

May 31.

June 23.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

extirpate the invaders. He dared not indeed meet them in open combat; but it was his policy to flee before them, and draw them into woods and morasses, where they could neither fight with advantage, nor procure subsistence.<sup>1</sup> The want of provisions and the clamour of the soldiers compelled the king to give up the pursuit, and to direct his march towards Dublin; and M'Murchad, when he could no longer impede their progress, solicited and obtained a parley with the earl of Gloucester, the commander of the rear-guard. The chieftain was an athletic man; he came to the conference mounted on a grey charger, which had cost him four hundred head of cattle; and brandished with ease and dexterity a heavy spear in his hand. He seemed willing to become the nominal vassal of the king of England, but refused to submit to any conditions. Richard set a price on his head, proceeded to Dublin, and at the expiration of a fortnight, was joined by the duke of Albemarle with men and provisions. This seasonable supply enabled him to recommence the pursuit of M'Murchad; but while he was thus occupied with objects of inferior interest in Ireland, a revolution had occurred in England, which eventually deprived him both of his crown and his life.<sup>2</sup>

When the king sailed to Ireland, Henry of Bolingbroke, the new duke of Lancaster, resided in Paris, where he was hospitably entertained, but at the same time narrowly watched by the French monarch. About Christmas he had offered his hand to Marie,

<sup>1</sup> Three ships from Dublin arrived with wine and provisions. An eye-witness tells us that more than a thousand men were drunk that day.

“D’ivres y ot, je croy, plus d’un millier cette journée.”

<sup>2</sup> MS. Harl. No. 1319, c. 4.

Archæol. xx. 304.



one of the daughters of the duke of Berry. The jealousy of Richard was alarmed; the earl of Salisbury hastened to Paris to remonstrate against the marriage of a daughter of France with an English 'traitor,' and, suiting his conduct to his words, the envoy, having accomplished his object, returned without deigning to speak to the exile. Whilst Henry was brooding over these injuries, the late primate, or nominal bishop of St. Andrew's, secretly left his house at Cologne, and in the disguise of a friar procured an interview with the duke at the hotel de Vinchester.<sup>1</sup> The result of their meeting was a determination to return to England during the king's absence. To elude the suspicions of the French ministers, Henry procured permission to visit the duke of Bretagne; and on his arrival at Nantes, hired three small vessels, with which he sailed from Vannes to seek his fortune in England. His whole retinue consisted only of the archbishop, the son of the late earl of Arundel, fifteen lances, and a few servants. After hovering for some days on the eastern coast, he landed at Ravenspur in Yorkshire, and was immediately joined by the two powerful earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland; before whom, in the White Friars at Doncaster, he declared upon oath, that his only object was to recover the honours and estates which had belonged to his father, and bound himself not to advance any claim to the crown.<sup>2</sup>

The duke of York, to whom the king had intrusted the government during his absence, was accurately informed of his motions, and had summoned the retainers of the crown to join the royal standard at St. Alban's. There is, however, reason to believe that he was not hearty in the cause which it was his duty to

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

July 4.

<sup>1</sup> Since called the Bicêtre.

<sup>2</sup> Hardyng, 350, 2.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

July 12.

support. He must have viewed with pity the unmerited misfortunes of one nephew, and have condemned the violent and thoughtless career of the other ; and from the fate of his brother Gloucester, and the cruel and unjust treatment of the only son of his brother, John of Ghent, he could not draw any very flattering conclusion with respect to the stability of his own family. Whether it was from suspicion of his fidelity, or from the disinclination of the chief barons to draw the sword against one who demanded nothing more than his right, the favourites of Richard became alarmed for their own safety. The earl of Wiltshire, with Bussy and Greene, members of the committee of parliament, had been appointed to wait on the young queen at Wallingford ; but they suddenly abandoned their charge, and fled with precipitation to Bristol. York himself followed with the army in the same direction. It might be that, to relieve himself from responsibility, he wished to be in readiness to deliver up the command on the expected arrival of Richard from Ireland ; but at the same time he left open the road from Yorkshire to the metropolis, and allowed the adventurer to pursue his object without impediment. Henry was already on his march. The snowball increased as it rolled along, and the small number of forty followers, with whom he had landed, swelled by the time that he had reached St. Alban's to sixty thousand men. He was preceded by his messengers and letters, stating not only his own wrongs, but also the grievances of the people, and affirming that the revenue of the kingdom had been let out to farm to the rapacity of Scrope, Bussy, and Greene. In all those lordships which had been the inheritance of his family he was received with enthusiasm ; in



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.

London by a procession of the clergy and people, with addresses of congratulation, and presents, and offers of service. His stay in the capital was short. Having flattered the citizens, and confirmed them in their attachment to his person, he turned to the west, and entered Evesham on the same day on which York reached Berkeley. After an interchange of messages they met in the church of the castle; and, before they separated, the doom of Richard was sealed. That the regent consented to the actual deposition of his nephew, does not necessarily follow; he might only have sought his reformation by putting it out of his power to govern amiss; but he betrayed the trust which had been reposed in him, united his force with that of Henry, and commanded Sir Peter Courtenay, who held the castle of Bristol for the king, to open its gates. That officer, protesting that he acknowledged no authority in the duke of Lancaster, obeyed the mandate of the regent. The next morning the three fugitives, the earl of Wiltshire, Bussy, and Greene, were executed by order of the constable and marshal of the host. The duke of York remained at Bristol; Henry with his own forces proceeded to Chester to secure that city, and awe the men of Cheshire, the most devoted adherents to the king.

July 27.

August 8.

We may now return to Richard in Ireland. It must appear strange, but Henry had been in England a fortnight, before the king, in consequence, it was said, of the tempestuous weather, had heard of his landing. The intelligence appears to have provoked indignation as much as alarm. "Ha!" he exclaimed, "fair uncle of Lancaster, God reward your soul! Had I believed you, this man would not have injured me. Thrice have I pardoned him; this is his fourth

July 18.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

“offence.” But he referred the matter to his council, and was advised to cross over to England immediately with the ships which had brought the reinforcement under the duke of Albemarle. That nobleman, however, insidiously, as it was afterwards pretended, diverted him from this intention. The earl of Salisbury received orders to sail immediately with his own retainers, a body of one hundred men, and to summon to the royal standard the natives of Wales; Richard promised to follow in the fleet from Waterford in the course of six days. The earl obeyed; the men of Wales and Cheshire answered the call; and a gallant host collected at Conway. But Richard appeared not according to his promise; distressing reports were circulated among the troops; and the royalists, having waited for him almost a fortnight, disbanded in spite of the tears and entreaties of their commander. At last, on the eighteenth day, the king arrived in Milford Haven with the dukes of Albemarle, Exeter, and Surrey, the earl of Worcester, the bishops of London, Lincoln, and Carlisle, and several thousands of the troops, who had accompanied him to Ireland. With such a force, had it been faithful, he might have made a stand against his antagonist; but on the second morning when he arose, he observed from his window that the greater part had disappeared. A council was immediately summoned, and a proposal made that the king should flee by sea to Bordeaux; but the duke of Exeter objected that to quit the kingdom in such circumstances was to abdicate the throne. Let them proceed to the army at Conway. There they might bid defiance to the enemy; or at all events, as the sea would still be open, might thence set sail to Guienne. His opinion prevailed;

Aug. 5.



and at nightfall the king, in the disguise of a Franciscan friar, his two brothers of Exeter and Surrey, the earl of Gloucester, the bishop of Carlisle, Sir Stephen Scrope, and Sir William Feriby, with eight others, stole away from the army, and directed their route towards Conway. Their flight was soon known. The royal treasure, which Richard left behind him, was plundered; Albemarle, Worcester, and most of the leaders, hastened to pay their court to Henry; the rest attempted in small bodies to make their way to their own counties, but were in most instances plundered and ill-treated by the Welsh.<sup>1</sup>

The royal party with some difficulty but without any accident reached Conway, where, to their utter disappointment, instead of a numerous force, they found only the earl of Salisbury with a hundred men. In this emergency the king's brothers undertook to visit Henry at Chester, and to sound his intentions; and during their absence Richard, with the earl of Salisbury, examined the castles of Beaumaris and Carnarvon; but finding them without garrisons or provisions, the disconsolate wanderers returned to their former quarters.

Aug. 9.

When the two dukes were admitted into the presence of Henry, they bent the knee, and acquainted him with their message from the king. He took little notice of Surrey, whom he afterwards confined

<sup>1</sup> We have two relations of the capture of Richard, both written by persons in his suite. The one belongs to the library of the king of France, No. 8,448; and an abridgment of it has been published by Gaillard, *Accounts and Extracts of MSS.* ii. p. 189. The other is in the British Museum, Harleian MSS. No. 1,319. It has been frequently consulted by Stow, 319—322, and Mr. Turner, ii. 241; and has lately been published with a translation, and copious and interesting notes by the Rev. J. Webb, in the twentieth vol. of the *Archæologia*. To this publication I am greatly indebted.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

in the castle ; but leading Exeter aside, spoke to him in private, and gave him, instead of the hart, the king's livery, his own badge of the rose. But no entreaties could induce him to allow them to return. Exeter was observed to drop a tear ; when the duke of Albemarle said to him tauntingly, " Fair cousin, be " not angry. If it please God, things shall go well."

The immediate object of Henry was to secure the royal person. He was gratified to learn from the envoys the place of Richard's retreat, and detained them at Chester, that the king, instead of making his escape, might await their return. His first care was to take possession of the treasure which the king had deposited in the strong castle of Holt ; his next to despatch the earl of Northumberland at the head of four hundred men-at-arms and a thousand archers to Conway, with instructions not to display his force, lest the king should put to sea, but by artful speeches and promises to draw him out of the fortress, and then make him prisoner. The earl took possession in his journey of the castles of Flint and Rhuddlan ; and a few miles beyond the latter, placing his men in concealment under a rock, rode forward with only five attendants to Conway. He was readily admitted ; and to the king's anxious inquiries about his brothers, replied, that he had left them well at Chester, and had brought a letter from the duke of Exeter. In it that nobleman said, or rather was made to say, that full credit might be given to the offers of the bearer. These offers were, that Richard should promise to govern and judge his people by law ; that the dukes of Exeter and Surrey, the earl of Salisbury, the bishop of Carlisle, and Maudelin, the king's chaplain, should submit to a trial in parliament, on the charge of

Aug. 18.



having advised the assassination of Gloucester ; that Henry should be made grand justiciary of the kingdom, as his ancestors had been for one hundred years ; and that, on the concession of these terms, the duke should come to Flint, ask the king's pardon on his knees, and accompany or follow him to London. Richard consulted his friends apart. He expressed his approbation of the articles ; but bade them secretly be assured that no consideration should induce him to abandon them on their trial, and that he would grasp the first opportunity of being revenged on his and their enemies : " for there were some among them " whom he would flay alive ; whom he would never " spare for all the gold in the land." Northumberland was then sworn to the observance of the conditions. He took his oath on the host ; and, " like " Judas," says the writer, " perjured himself on the " body of our Lord."

CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

As Northumberland departed to make arrangements for the interview at Flint, the king said to him : " I " rely, my lord, on your faith. Remember your oath, " and the God who heard it." Soon afterwards he followed with his friends and their servants, to the number of twenty-two. They came to a steep declivity, to the left of which was the sea, and on the right a lofty rock overhanging the road. The king dismounted, and was descending on foot, when he suddenly exclaimed, " I am betrayed. God of Paradise, " assist me ! Do you not see banners and pennons in " the valley ?" Northumberland with eleven others met them at the moment, and affected to be ignorant of the circumstance. " Earl of Northumberland," said the king, " if I thought you capable of betraying " me, it is not too late to return." " You cannot



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

“return,” the earl replied, seizing the king’s bridle ;  
“I have promised to conduct you to the duke of  
“Lancaster.” By this time he was joined by a hun-  
dred lances, and two hundred archers on horseback ;  
and Richard, seeing it impossible to escape, exclaimed :  
“May the God, on whom you laid your hand, reward  
“you and your accomplices at the last day !” and  
then turning to his friends, added : “We are be-  
“trayed ; but remember that our Lord was also sold,  
“and delivered into the hands of his enemies.”

They dined at Rhuddlan, and reached Flint in the evening. The king as soon as he was left with his friends, abandoned himself to the reflections which his melancholy situation inspired. He frequently upbraided himself with his past indulgence to his present opponent ; “Fool that I was !” he exclaimed ; “thrice did I save the life of this Henry of Lancaster. “Once my dear uncle his father, on whom the Lord “have mercy ! would have put him to death for his “treason and villany. God of Paradise ! I rode all “night to save him ; and his father delivered him to “me, to do with him as I pleased. How true is the “saying, that we have no greater enemy than the “man whom we have preserved from the gallows ! “Another time he drew his sword on me, in the “chamber of the queen, on whom God have mercy ! “He was also the accomplice of the duke of Glou- “cester, and the earl of Arundel ; he consented to “my murder, to that of his father, and of all my “council. By St. John, I forgave him all ; nor “would I believe his father, who more than once “pronounced him deserving of death.”

Aug. 19.

The unfortunate king rose after a sleepless night, heard mass, and ascended the tower to watch the



arrival of his opponent. At length he saw the army, amounting to eighty thousand men,<sup>1</sup> winding along the beach till it reached the castle, and surrounded it from sea to sea. He shuddered and wept, and cursed the earl of Northumberland, but was called down by the arrival of Archbishop Arundel, the duke of Albemarle, and the earl of Worcester. They knelt to Richard, who drawing the prelate apart, held a long conversation with him. After their departure he again mounted the tower, and surveying the host of his enemies, exclaimed: "Good Lord God! I commend myself into thy holy keeping, and cry thee mercy, that thou wouldst pardon all my sins. If they put me to death I will take it patiently, as thou didst for us all." Northumberland had ordered dinner; and the earl of Salisbury, the bishop, and the two knights, Sir Stephen Scrope and Sir William Feriby, sat with the king at the same table by his order; for since they were all companions in misfortune, he would allow no distinction among them. While he was eating, unknown persons entered the hall, insulting him with sarcasms and threats; as soon as he rose, he was summoned into the court to receive the duke of Lancaster. Henry came forward in complete armour, with the exception of his helmet. As soon as he saw the king, he bent his knee, and advanced a few paces, he repeated his obeisance with his cap in his hand.

"Fair cousin of Lancaster," said Richard, uncovering himself, "you are right welcome."—"My Lord," answered the duke, "I am come before my time. But I will show you the reason. Your people

<sup>1</sup> I have adopted the smaller number. The Harleian MS. swells it to 100,000 men.



CHAP. IV. "complain that for the space of twenty, or two-and-  
 A.D. 1399. "twenty years, you have ruled them rigorously; but,  
 — "if it please God, I will help you to govern better."  
 The king replied: "Fair cousin, since it pleaseth  
 "you, it pleaseth us well." Henry then addressed  
 himself successively to the bishop and the knights,  
 but refused to notice the earl. The king's horses  
 were immediately ordered; and two lean and miser-  
 able animals were brought out, on which Richard  
 and Salisbury mounted, and amidst the flourish of  
 trumpets and shouts of triumph followed the duke  
 into Chester.

At Chester writs were issued in the king's name  
 for the meeting of parliament, and the preservation  
 of the peace.<sup>1</sup> Henry dismissed the greater part of  
 his army, and prepared to conduct his prisoner to  
 the capital. At Lichfield Richard seized a favour-  
 August 24. able moment to let himself down from his window,  
 but was retaken in the garden, and from that  
 moment was constantly guarded by ten or twelve  
 armed men. In the neighbourhood of London they  
 August 30. separated. Henry, accompanied by the mayor and  
 principal citizens, proceeded to St. Paul's, prayed  
 before the high altar, and wept a few minutes over  
 the tomb of his father; the king was sent to West-  
 minster, and thence on the following day to the  
 Tower, and as he went along, was greeted with curses,  
 August 31. and the appellation of "the bastard," a word of  
 ominous import, and prophetic of his approaching  
 degradation.<sup>2</sup>

When the duke first landed in England, he had

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 84. Brady, iii. 419.

<sup>2</sup> This alluded to a report which had been spread that he was not  
 the son of the Black Prince, but of a canon of Bordeaux.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

sworn on the gospels that his only object was to vindicate his right to the honours and possessions of the house of Lancaster. If this was the truth, his ambition had grown with his good fortune. He now aspired to exchange the coronet of a duke for the crown of a king. Can we believe that he would meet with opposition from his associates, the Percies? yet, so we are assured. They, however, by their perfidy, had given themselves a master. Their retainers had been already dismissed; and the friends of Richard abhorred them as the worst of traitors. They had therefore no resource but to submit, and to second the design of Lancaster.<sup>1</sup> After several consultations it was resolved to combine a solemn renunciation of the royal authority on the part of Richard, with an act of deposition on the part of the two houses of parliament, in the hope that those whose scruples should not be satisfied with the one, might acquiesce in the other. To obtain the first, the royal captive was assailed with promises and threats. Generally he abandoned himself to lamentation and despair; occasionally he exerted that spirit which he had formerly displayed. “Why am I thus guarded?” he asked one day. “Am I your king or your prisoner?”—“You are my king, sir,” replied the duke with coolness; “but the council of your realm has thought proper to place a guard about you.” On the day before the meeting of parliament a deputation of prelates, barons, knights, and lawyers waited on the captive in the Tower, and reminded him, that in the castle of Conway, while he was perfectly his own master, he had promised to resign the

Sept. 29.

<sup>1</sup> Hardyng by Ellis, 351—6. He was partial to the Percies; but he tells us what he saw, and what he heard from the earl himself.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

crown on account of his own incompetency to govern. On his reply that he was ready to perform his promise, a paper was given him to read, in which he was made to absolve all his subjects from their fealty and allegiance, to renounce of his own accord all kingly authority, to acknowledge himself incapable of reigning, and worthy for his past demerits to be deposed, and to swear by the holy gospels that he would never act, nor, as far as in him lay, suffer any other person to act, in opposition to this resignation. He then added, as from himself, that if it were in his power to name his successor, he would choose his cousin of Lancaster, who was present, and to whom he gave his ring, which he took from his own finger.<sup>1</sup>

Such is the account of this transaction inserted by the order of Henry in the rolls of parliament; an account, the accuracy of which is liable to strong suspicion. It is difficult to believe that Richard had so much command over his feelings, as to behave with that cheerfulness which is repeatedly noticed in the record; and the assertion that he had promised to resign the crown, when he saw Northumberland in the castle of Conway, is not only contradictory to the statement of the two eye-witnesses, but also in itself highly improbable. From the fate of Edward II., with which he had so often been threatened, he must have known that it was better to flee to his transmarine dominions, which were still open to him, than to resign his crown, and remain a prisoner in the custody of his successor.

Sept. 30. The next day the two houses met amidst a great concourse of people in Westminster Hall. The duke occupied his usual seat near the throne, which was

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 416, 417.



empty, and covered with cloth of gold. The resignation of the king was read; each member standing in his place signified his acceptance of it aloud; and the people with repeated shouts expressed their approbation. Henry now proceeded to the second part of his plan, the act of deposition. For this purpose the coronation oath was first read; thirty-three articles of impeachment followed, in which it was contended that Richard had violated that oath; and thence it was concluded that he had by his misconduct forfeited his title to the throne. Of the articles, those which bore the hardest on the king are, the part which he was supposed to have had in the death of the duke of Gloucester, his revocation of the pardons formerly granted to that prince and his adherents, and his despotic conduct since the dissolution of parliament. Of the remainder, some are frivolous; many might, with equal reason, have been objected to each of his predecessors; and the others rest on the unsupported assertion of men, whose interest it was to paint him in the blackest colours. No opposition had been anticipated, nor is any mentioned on the rolls; but we are told that the bishop of Carlisle, to the astonishment of the Lancastrians, rose, and demanded for Richard what ought not to be refused to the meanest criminal, the right of being confronted with his accusers; and for parliament what it might justly claim, the opportunity of learning from the king's own mouth, whether the resignation of the crown, which had been attributed to him, were his own spontaneous act.<sup>1</sup> If Merks actually made such a speech, he must

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 417—422. This fact was first called in question by Kennet, on the ground that it is not supported by contemporary authority. Of the two contemporary French writers one records the bishop's speech; the other does not. Both, however, make so



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.

---

have stood alone ; no one was found to second it ; the house voted the deposition of Richard ; and eight commissioners ascending a tribunal erected before the throne, pronounced him degraded from the state and authority of king, on the ground that he notoriously deserved such punishment, and had acknowledged it under his hand and seal on the preceding day. Sir William Thirnyng, chief justice, was appointed to notify the sentence to the captive, who meekly replied, that he looked not after the royal authority, but hoped his cousin would be good lord to him.<sup>1</sup>

The rightful possessor was now removed from the throne. But, supposing it to be vacant, what pretensions could Henry of Lancaster advance to it ? By the law of succession it belonged to the descendants of Lionel, the third son of Edward III. ; and their claim, it is said, had been formally recognised in parliament. All waited in anxious suspense, till the duke rising from his seat, and forming with great solemnity the sign of the cross on his forehead and breast, pronounced the following words : “ In the  
“ name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, I, Henry  
“ of Lancaster, challenge this realm of England, and  
“ the crown, with all the members and appurtenances,

many mistakes in their narratives after the capture of Richard, that no inference can be safely drawn from the testimony of the one or the silence of the other. One thing after all is certain, that if Merks did not make the speech attributed to him, he had done something which gave great offence to Lancaster, for he was placed about this time in confinement in the abbey of St. Alban's, and brought before parliament as a prisoner on the 28th of October. Nor am I sure that there is not some allusion to his imprisonment or its cause in the metrical French history, where it is said of the bishop,

Ne pour parole

Quon liu en dist, oncques nen changea role.

Arch. xx. 322.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 423, 424.



“ as that I am descended by right line of blood,  
 “ coming from the good lord, king Henry III., and  
 “ through that right that God, of his grace, hath sent  
 “ me with help of my kin and of my friends to recover  
 “ it; the which realm was in point to be undone for  
 “ default of governance, and undoing of good laws.”

CHAP.  
 IV.  
 A.D. 1399.

In these extraordinary terms did Lancaster advance his pretensions, artfully intermixing an undefined claim of inheritance<sup>1</sup> with those of conquest and expediency; and rather hinting at each, than insisting on either. But, however difficult it might be to understand the ground, the object of his challenge was perfectly intelligible. Both houses admitted it unanimously; and, as a confirmation, Henry produced the ring and seal which Richard had previously delivered to him. The archbishop of Canterbury now

<sup>1</sup> He was descended from Henry III. both by father and mother.  
 Henry III.

|                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Edward I. king.                   | Edmund, earl of Lancaster.     |
| Edward II. king.                  | Henry, earl of Lancaster.      |
| Edward III. king.                 | Henry, duke of Lancaster.      |
| John of Ghent, duke of Lancaster. | Blanche, duchess of Lancaster. |

Philippa, queen of Portugal. Henry IV. Elizabeth, duchess of Exeter.

But he could not claim by the father's side, because the young earl of March was sprung from the duke of Clarence, the elder brother of John of Ghent; nor by the mother's side, because she was sprung from Edmund of Lancaster, a younger brother of Edward I. It was pretended that Edmund was the elder brother, but deformed in body, and therefore set aside with his own consent. If we may believe Hardyng, Henry on the 21st of September produced in council a document to prove the seniority of Edmund over Edward, but that the contrary was shown by a number of unanswerable authorities.—Hardyng, 353.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

took him by the hand, and led him to the throne. He knelt for a few minutes in prayer on the steps, arose, and was seated in it by the two archbishops. As soon as the acclamations had subsided, the primate stepping forward, made a short harangue, in which he undertook to prove that a monarch in the vigour of manhood was a blessing, a young and inexperienced prince was a curse to a people. At the conclusion the king arose :—"Sirs," said he, "I thank God, and  
"you, spiritual and temporal, and all estates of the  
"land ; and do you to wit, it is not my will that no  
"man think that by way of conquest I would disin-  
"herit any man of his heritage, franchises, or other  
"rights that him ought to have, nor put him out of  
"that that he has, and has had by the good laws and  
"customs of the realm ; except those persons that  
"have been against the good purpose, and the common  
"profit of the realm."<sup>1</sup>

Oct. 6.

With the authority of Richard had expired that of the parliament, and of the royal officers. Henry immediately summoned the same parliament, to meet again in six days, appointed new officers of the crown, and as soon as he had received their oaths, retired in state to the royal apartments. Thus ended this eventful day, with the deposition of Richard of Bordeaux, and the succession of his cousin, Henry of Bolingbroke.

The features of Richard were handsome, but feminine ; his manners abrupt ; his utterance embarrassed. He possessed some taste for literature, and occasionally gave indications of resolution and spirit. But he was passionately fond of parade and pleasure ; and the loss

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 422, 423.



of his crown has been sometimes attributed to his extravagance and pecuniary exactions. It would, however, be difficult to prove that his expenses were greater than those of his predecessors; it is certain that his demands on the purses of his subjects were considerably less. "What concern have you," he once observed to the commons, "with the establishment of my household, as long as I maintain it without asking you for assistance?"<sup>1</sup> His misfortunes may be more correctly traced to the early age at which he mounted the throne, and to the precautions taken by his mother and her friends to defeat the supposed designs of his uncles. By these he was estranged from the princes of his blood, whose pride refused to pay court to a boy; and whose neglect compelled him to fix his affections on his ministers and companions.<sup>2</sup> Jealousies and rivalry ensued, which ended in the celebrated commission of government, and the ruin, perhaps originally undeserved, of the royal favourites. When the king had recovered the exercise of his authority, he reigned in comparative tranquillity for a long period; but his conduct in the twenty-first and twenty-second years of his reign betrayed such a thirst for revenge, such habits of dissimulation, such despotic notions of government, and so fixed a purpose of ruling without control, that no reader can be surprised at the catastrophe which followed. We may, indeed, abhor the wiles by which he was ensnared; may sympathize with him in his

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 339. Richard appears from his will to have placed several sums, his own property, in different places of security, to the amount of 91,000 marks.—Rym. viii. 77.

<sup>2</sup> "Qil plese au Roy attrere a li gentz destat et de bien et de honeur, et comuner ovesques eux et eschuire la compaignie dautres." Advice to him from his council.—Acts of Coun. i. 86.



CHAP.  
IV.  
A.D. 1399.

---

prison ; and may condemn the policy which afterwards bereaved him of life ; but at the same time we must acknowledge that he deserved to be abandoned by the people, on whose liberties he had trampled, and to forfeit that authority which he sought to exalt above the laws and constitution of his country.



## CHAPTER V.

## HENRY IV.

SURNAMED OF BOLINGBROKE.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emp. of Germ.</i> | <i>K. of Scotland.</i> | <i>K. of France.</i> | <i>K. of Spain.</i> |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Winceslaus. 1400     | Robert III. 1405       | Charles VI.          | Henry III.          |
| Robert . . . . 1410  | James I.               |                      |                     |
| Sigismund.           |                        |                      |                     |

*Popes.*

Boniface IX. 1404. Innocent VII. 1406. Gregory XII. 1409.  
 Alexander V. 1410. John XXIII.

CORONATION OF THE NEW KING—INSURRECTION — DEATH OF  
 RICHARD—WAR AGAINST THE SCOTS—REBELLION OF THE PER-  
 CIES—INSURRECTION IN YORKSHIRE—REBELLION OF OWEN  
 GLENDOWER—TRANSACTIONS WITH FRANCE—SETTLEMENT OF  
 THE CROWN—DEATH OF THE KING—PRIVILEGES AND AUTHORITY  
 OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS—STATUTES AGAINST THE LOLLARDS.

THE new king assumed the name of Henry IV., and was crowned within a fortnight after the deposition of his predecessor, on the anniversary of the day on which he went into banishment. The ceremony was performed after the usual manner, but with this addition, that the sword which he wore when he landed at Ravenspurn, was borne naked, on his left hand, by the earl of Northumberland, during the procession.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
 V.  
 A.D. 1399.  
 Oct. 13.

<sup>1</sup> The earl received the Isle of Man, which had belonged to Sir



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1399.  
Oct. 6.

Oct. 15.

The new parliament had already assembled; and, as the members were the same individuals who sat in the last, they displayed an equal obsequiousness to the will of the monarch. All the vindictive acts of the twenty-first year of the late reign were repealed; the proceedings of the eleventh year against the favourites of Richard were recalled into force; and the attainders of the earls of Arundel and Warwick were reversed. The introduction of an act of settlement would have supposed the possibility of a doubt as to the king's title to the crown. This was therefore avoided; but his eldest son was created prince of Wales, duke of Guienne, Lancaster, and Cornwall, and earl of Chester; and was declared in parliament the apparent heir to the throne. The name of the earl of March, the rightful heir, was never mentioned. His friends wisely withheld his right from discussion; and the king was satisfied with keeping him and his brother (the eldest was only in his seventh year) in honourable confinement at the royal castle of Windsor.<sup>1</sup>

The lords, who had formerly appealed the duke of Gloucester and his associates of treason, were now summoned to justify their conduct. They all made the same defence, that they had neither advised nor framed the appeal; that they were compelled to put their seals to it by the threats of Richard; and that in prosecuting it they were no more guilty than the other lords, who had condemned the appellees. The discussion of this subject revived all the animosities of the last reign; and the opprobrious terms of liar

William le Scrope, earl of Wiltshire, in fee "for himself and his  
" heirs for the service of carrying this sword at the present and all  
" future coronations."—Rym. viii. 89, 91, 95.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 425—428, 434, 436. Rym. viii. 91—94.



and traitor were bandied about from one side of the house to the other. On one occasion, when the lord Fitzwalter made the charge against the duke of Albemarle, twenty other lords rose with Fitzwalter, and cast their hoods as pledges of battle on the floor. The accused in return threw down his hood; and all were gathered up, and given into the custody of the earl constable and earl marshal. On another day the lord Morley charged the earl of Salisbury with falsehood to the duke of Gloucester, whose secrets he had betrayed to the late king; Salisbury met him with a flat denial, and both cast their gloves on the floor. In conclusion, however, Henry by his authority silenced these passionate disputants, and a compromise was effected, by which the lords appellants forfeited the honours and the estates which they had obtained from Richard in reward of their appeal. The dukes of Albemarle, Surrey, and Exeter, the marquess of Dorset, and the earl of Gloucester, descended to the inferior rank from which they had been raised, and became again earls of Rutland, Kent, Huntingdon, and Somerset, and Lord le Despenser.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1399.  
Oct. 19.

Oct. 29.

To prevent the recurrence of those vindictive proceedings which had twice disgraced the last, and, from the temper of the lords, threatened to disgrace the present reign, several useful statutes were enacted. One confined the guilt of treason to the offences enumerated in the celebrated act of Edward III.; another

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 449—452. Archæol. xx. 275—281. It is singular that though the king had testified such a dislike to the earl of Salisbury, and had called upon him for his defence, he was unnoticed in the judgment. The duel between him and the lord Morley was appointed to be fought at Newcastle; for on the Issue Roll of 1 Hen. IV., Feb. 17, is a payment to John Vaux, sent by the constable to that town to superintend the trial.



CHAP. V.  
A.D. 1399. — abolished appeals of treason in parliament, and sent the accuser to the established courts of law; a third declared that the authority of parliament should never more be delegated to a committee of lords and commons; and a fourth forbade, under the heaviest penalties, any person besides the king to give liveries to his retainers. These badges had long been one of the principal expedients by which the great lords were enabled to increase their power, and to maintain their quarrels. Whoever wore the livery was bound in honour to espouse the cause of the donor; and it was worn not only by those who received fees, or were engaged in actual service, but by as many as were willing to accept it as an honour, or in token of friendship, or with a view to future emolument.<sup>1</sup>

Oct. 23. Before the close of the session the lords spiritual and temporal were charged by the archbishop of Canterbury, on the part of the king, to keep the resolution they were about to make an inviolable secret;

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 428, 442. Stat. 1. Hen. IV. c. 10, 14. In the summer of this year a sect of fanatics suddenly appeared in Italy, called Bianchi and Albati, because they wore a long white gown, and covered their faces with a white veil, that they might not be known. To the amount of some thousands they assembled in different places, and undertook pilgrimages of eight or ten days; during which they walked in procession from town to town, following a large crucifix, chanting hymns, and fasting on bread and water. They were opposed by the pope, and severely forbidden in France. Henry in this parliament issued a proclamation, with the assent of the lords spiritual and temporal, ordering that if any of them arrived in an English harbour, they should not be permitted to land.—Rot. Parl. iii. 428. It is singular that some Italian and contemporary writers should say, that the founders of the sect came from England or Scotland (see Spondanus, i. 671); and that the description of them in the proclamation should be nearly the same as that of the itinerant priests in the 5th of Richard II. In the first the Bianchi are called, gentz vestuz de blanche vesture, et soi pretendantz de grande saintete; in the other the preachers are termed, persones en certains habitz souz dissimulation de grant saintee.—Rot. Parl. iii. 124.



and then the earl of Northumberland delivered to them a message, asking their advice respecting the future treatment of the deposed monarch, whose life the king was resolved to preserve at all events. They answered that he should be conducted secretly to some castle, where no concourse of people could assemble; should be placed under the custody of trusty officers; and should be excluded from all communication with those who had formerly been in his service. Four days later the king came to the house, adjudged the unfortunate Richard to imprisonment for life, and ordered him to be guarded in the manner suggested by the lords.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1399.  
—

Oct. 27.

Henry was now in possession of the grand object of his ambition; but he soon learned that it was more easy to win the crown than to retain it. The hostility of foreign princes, who continued to treat him as an usurper, and the wavering fidelity of his own subjects, of whom some panted to revenge the wrongs of the late king, and others were discontented that their services had not been more amply rewarded, kept him in a state of perpetual alarm. During the lapse of nine years he was constantly harassed, sometimes by secret attempts on his life, sometimes by overt acts of rebellion, on one occasion by the inroads of the Scots, and on another by the descents of the French; but his power seemed to grow with his difficulties, and by his vigilance, temper, and activity, he not only

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 426, 427. It should be observed that the members of this house of commons were in reality elected by the king. They had been chosen by writs issued in the name of Richard; but though the existence of the parliament was acknowledged to have expired at his deposition, and on that account Henry summoned a new parliament; yet the same representatives of the commons were ordered to attend, without having been again returned by their constituents.



CHAP. V. succeeded in keeping the crown on his own head, but  
 A.D. 1399. peaceably transmitted it to his posterity. The first  
 — attempt against him was made by five of the lords  
 appellants, who had so narrowly escaped with their  
 lives in the last parliament. Within a month after  
 its dissolution they agreed to hold a tournament at  
 Oxford, and employ that opportunity to seize the  
 person of the king, and subsequently to proclaim and  
 liberate Richard. During the Christmas holidays they  
 assembled; but one of their number was wanting;  
 and he, unknown to them, had proved a traitor. It  
 is said that the earl of Rutland received a letter from  
 some of his associates at table; that his father, the  
 duke of York, insisted on knowing its contents; and  
 that the son, finding it impossible to conceal his secret,  
 hastened to reveal it to Henry. However that may  
 be, on the evening of the day appointed, the conspi-  
 rators with five hundred horse surprised the castle of  
 Windsor; but Henry, warned by Rutland, had left  
 it in the morning, and was already in London; where  
 he issued writs for their apprehension as traitors,<sup>1</sup>  
 and was employed in levying troops to march against  
 them. Alarmed and disconcerted, they resolved to  
 retire into the west; proclaimed Richard in all the  
 towns and villages on their route; and the next  
 evening took up their quarters in Cirencester.<sup>2</sup> The  
 mayor, who had already received the king's writ,  
 summoned the burghers, and the inhabitants of the  
 neighbourhood, and at midnight made an attack on  
 the quarters of the earls of Kent and Salisbury.  
 Every attempt to escape was repelled by the archers  
 posted in the street; and after a defence of six hours  
 these unfortunate noblemen were compelled to sur-

1400.

Jan. 4.

Jan. 5.

Jan. 6.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 120.<sup>2</sup> Rym. viii. 165.



render. They were conducted into the abbey; but a fire which burst out the next evening was attributed to their partisans; and in the middle of the night they were brought forth and beheaded by the populace.<sup>1</sup> The lords Lumley and Despenser had proceeded forwards, but met with a similar fate from the citizens of Bristol. The earl of Huntingdon was taken in the neighbourhood of London, and put to death at Pleshy by the tenants of the late duke of Gloucester, at the suggestion of the countess of Hereford, the eldest of Gloucester's daughters.<sup>2</sup> Sir Thomas Blount, Sir Bennet Shelley, and eighteen others, suffered in the Greenditch at Oxford, Feriby and Maudelin, the chaplains of Richard, in London.<sup>3</sup>

CHAP.

V.

A.D. 1400.

Jan. 7.

Jan. 9.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 18. Wals. 363. The women appear to have been very active in the king's cause, who to reward the inhabitants of Cirencester, made an annual grant of four does and a hogshead of wine to the men, and of six bucks and a hogshead of wine to the women of that town.—Rym. viii. 250.

<sup>2</sup> It has been doubted whether he was put to death at Pleshy, because there is an order to the constable of the Tower to receive him as a prisoner on the tenth (Rym. viii. 120). But it is probable that he was murdered by the people, before the order was executed. According to Walsingham, he was put into the gate-house at Pleshy, and taken thence to die.—Wals. 363.

<sup>3</sup> That the reader may form a notion of the barbarous manner in which executions for treason were conducted, I will relate that of Sir Thomas Blount in the words of a contemporary writer:—"He was hanged; but the halter was soon cut, and he was made to sit on a bench before a great fire, and the executioner came with a razor in his hand, and knelt before Sir Thomas, whose hands were tied; begging him to pardon his death, as he must do his office. Sir Thomas asked: 'Are you the person appointed to deliver me from this world?' The executioner answered, 'Yes, sir, I pray you pardon me.' And Sir Thomas kissed him, and pardoned him his death. The executioner knelt down, and opened his belly, and cut out his bowels strait from below the stomach, and tied them with a string, that the wind of the heart should not escape, and threw the bowels into the fire. Then Sir Thomas was sitting before the fire, his belly open, and his bowels burning before him. Sir Thomas Erpyngham, the king's chamberlain, insulting Blount, said to him in derision,



- CHAP. V.  
A.D. 1400. — Besides the latter, two other clergymen of higher rank, Walden and Merks, had been selected for victims. Walden, the successor, as the reader will recollect, of Archbishop Arundel, had descended from his station on the recall of that prelate, and remained a bishop without a bishopric.<sup>1</sup> Merks, the bishop of Carlisle, whom we left in confinement at St. Alban's, had been liberated at the solicitation of the pontiff.
- Jun. 10. Both prelates were now arrested as accomplices of the late conspirators, and were committed to the Tower. Walden had the good fortune to satisfy the king of his innocence; and not only obtained his freedom, but was advanced, on the recommendation of the primate, to the see of London. But Merks had offended too grievously before to hope for mercy, or perhaps justice, now. He was tried, convicted, and condemned to suffer the death of a traitor. The pope, to release him from the gripe of his prosecutor, had already translated him to the distant bishopric of Cephalonia, in the isle of Samos. But Henry refused
- Jan. 28. to forego the gratification of his revenge, and insisted that the prelate should be degraded from his orders preparatory to his execution. This demand fortunately caused a temporary respite; the pope demurred; the king's passion gradually cooled; and at last, to gratify the pontiff, Henry signed the pardon of the
- March 15.
- Nov. 28.

“ ‘Go, seek a master that can cure you.’ Blount only answered :  
 “ ‘Te Deum laudamus. Blessed be the day on which I was born,  
 “ ‘and blessed be this day, for I shall die in the service of my sove-  
 “ ‘reign lord, the noble king Richard.’ The executioner knelt down  
 “ before him, kissed him in an humble manner, and soon after, his  
 “ head was cut off, and he was quartered.”—Relation, &c. MS. p.  
 232. The heads of the lords and others then executed were sent  
 to the capital, and fixed on London Bridge.—Fabyan, 568.

<sup>1</sup> The pope had pronounced Arundel's translation to St. Andrew's void, because it was without Arundel's consent.—Acts of Coun. i. 115.



bishop. Merks eventually obtained the favour both of the primate and the monarch. By the first he was appointed his commissary, from the other he obtained preferment. He died rector of Todenham in Gloucestershire, in 1409.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1400.  
—

Such was the result of this premature and ill-concerted conspiracy; it strengthened the throne of the new king. But he had still reason to fear the hostility of a dangerous adversary, the king of France, who had been deeply offended by the deception practised upon him by Henry at his departure from Paris, and who deemed himself called upon by honour, as well as affection, to espouse the cause of his own daughter and of his son-in-law. At first he had an intention of sending ambassadors to the parliament;<sup>2</sup> but this design was soon abandoned; the voice of his people pronounced in favour of war; offers of military service were made, and bodies of armed men marched towards the coast. To avert the threatened storm, Henry appointed commissioners to treat with Charles for a confirmation of the existing truce, and for intermarriages between individuals of his family and of the royal family of France.<sup>3</sup> They proceeded to Calais;

1399.  
Oct. 31.

Nov. 29.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. iii. 124. Acts of Coun. i. 116, and Kennet's Third Letter to the bishop of Carlisle, 1713.

<sup>2</sup> So I conclude from the letter of safe-conduct signed by Henry on the 31st of October, for four individuals therein named, whom *he understood* that his dear cousin of France intended to send on an embassy to him. It is plain that this safe-conduct had not been formally asked for; yet a hint must have been given to him that it would probably be accepted; otherwise he would not have inserted the very names of the intended envoys.—See Rym. viii. 98.

<sup>3</sup> This was a singular commission, empowering the ambassadors to treat with the king of France and his uncles, paternal and maternal, for marriages to be had between the prince of Wales, his brothers and sisters, and the children, male or female, of the king of France, or of his uncles aforesaid.—Rym. viii. 108.



- CHAP. V.  
A.D. 1399. — and a herald hastened to the capital to solicit a safe-conduct for the ambassadors of the king of England; but Charles returned a peremptory refusal—he knew no king of England but Richard, his son-in-law. Henry now anticipated nothing but war; and, unwilling to risk his popularity by demanding an aid from the nation, summoned a great council of peers, exposed to them the proofs of the hostile disposition shown by the French monarch, and procured from them an engagement, by which the lords spiritual granted to him a tenth of their moveables for the war, and the lords temporal their personal service at their own cost with a certain number of retainers for three months.<sup>1</sup> These precautions, however, proved unnecessary; for Charles in the meanwhile had received intelligence, which left no doubt on his mind that Richard was dead. All thought of war was instantly abandoned; he had now nothing to fight for; and on this account he signed an instrument stating that he should not disturb the truce which had been concluded during the lifetime of his dear son Richard, king of England, on whose soul he prayed God to have mercy; despatched Blanchet, maistre des requestes, to demand at Calais the restoration of his daughter Isabella with her dower and her jewels; and appointed commissioners to treat, but on that subject only, with the English commissioners somewhere between Boulogne and Calais.<sup>2</sup> Henry immediately renewed the powers of his envoys at Calais for the same object as before, but with this difference,

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Coun. i. 102—6.

<sup>2</sup> Thres. des Chart. 66. They were ordered not to call Henry king of England, but in speaking to the English envoys, “le seigneur qui vous a envoyez;” in writing, “la partie d’Angleterre.”—Ibid. 67.



that Charles, who was in the former instrument his most dear cousin, is now "his adversary of France."<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1400.

Hitherto, from the day on which Richard had been consigned to secret and perpetual confinement by advice of the lords, all trace of him seemed to be lost. No man in England pretended to know where he was, or in what manner he was treated. But after the public statement of his death by the king of France, the secret could be no longer kept. It became necessary to acknowledge his death, or to show that he was still alive. One day, when the council assembled, the first article on the paper of subjects for deliberation (by whose order the entry was made we know not) regarded the manner in which Richard the late king, if *he were still alive*, as it was supposed that he was, should be well and safely kept for the preservation of the estate of the king and kingdom. The answer betrays a real or affected ignorance, but at the same time a strong suspicion on the part of the lords. "It seemeth," they say, "expedient to the council to speak to the king that, in case Richard, lately king, &c., be still alive, he be put into safe keeping in conformity with the advice of the lords; but, if he be departed this life, that then he be *shown openly to the people*, that they may have knowledge of it."<sup>2</sup> Only a short time

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 128.

<sup>2</sup> Si . . . soit encore vivant, a ce que len suppose quil est . . . sil soit alez de vie a trespassement, quadonques soit monstrez overtement au people.—Acts of Coun. 107, 111. For this important document we are indebted to the research of Sir Nicholas Harris Nicolas, who justly remarks that it refers to some day between the 2nd and the 24th of February. In the Issue Rolls of 1 Henry IV. is a payment to a person sent about this time to Pontefract upon the king's secret affairs, another to one coming thence to announce something to his advantage, and of 100 marks to the keeper of the



CHAP. V. passed, and the dead body of the dethroned prince  
 A.D. 1400. was conveyed with funeral pomp from the castle of  
 — Pontefract to the capital, and then, during two days  
 March 12. on which it lay in St. Paul's, *shown openly to the people*; that is, was exposed with the face bare from the eyebrows to the chin, to the gaze of the spectators, who amounted, we are told, to twenty thousand persons. Henry himself attended the obsequies—with what feelings must be left to the imagination of the reader. After the mass on the second day, the corpse was removed to the abbey church of Westminster; a dirge was chanted; and the procession moved forward to Richard's once favourite residence at Langley. There he was interred; the king perhaps feared the recollections which his tomb might sometimes awaken, if he had been buried at Westminster.<sup>1</sup>

But how, the reader will inquire, did the unfortunate prince come to his death? It is seldom that the secrets of the prison-house are suffered to transpire; in the present instance we are left entirely to conjecture. Richard may possibly have died of disease in his bed; the events immediately preceding will provoke a suspicion that he owed the loss of his life to the order of the man who had already bereaved him of his crown. No time could be more opportune for the commission of such a crime. Who in England, whilst the heads of Richard's adherents were still mouldering on London Bridge, would venture to charge Henry with the murder? and the death of

wardrobe for the conveyance of Richard's body to London. If the date of the last, February 17, be correct, the council was held in the early part of the month.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 405. Otterb. 288. Froissart. Hardyng, 357.



the captive would at once relieve him from the apprehension of the war, with which he was threatened by the king of France. But, however that may have been, several tales were soon current respecting the manner of Richard's death. By some it was said that, on the eighth day after Henry's departure from Windsor, Sir Piers Exton with seven assassins entered the cell; that Richard, aware of their object, wrested a battle-axe from one of the number, and laid several at his feet; but that Exton with one blow brought him to the floor, and with another deprived him of life. This story, which from its minuteness of detail might be thought to have some foundation in fact, was believed on the continent; but is in reality undeserving of credit, because it was unknown in England to those whose interest it was to discover and to publish the truth.<sup>1</sup> The more general belief was that the captive died of starvation; voluntary starvation, if we may give credit to the friends of Henry, in consequence of Richard's grief for the fate of his adherents; compulsory starvation, if we listen to the opposite party, in consequence of orders given by him who hoped to profit by his death. But of this there is no proof; and the story itself, as far as regards the manner of death, had probably no other foundation than the emaciated state of the face, when it was exhibited at St. Paul's.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1400.  
—

<sup>1</sup> I should add, that when Richard's tomb was opened, and the skull examined, there was no appearance of any wound, unless the opening of the suture above the os temporis might have been caused by a blow.—Arch. vi. 316. The os temporis was probably concealed by the bandage when the face was exposed.

<sup>2</sup> Much reliance has been placed on the following testimony of Archbishop Scrope. *Ubi eum breviter (ut vulgariter dicitur quindecim dies et totidem noctes) in fame, siti et frigore vexaverunt et crucifixerunt; et tandem morte turpissima, adhuc regno nostro*



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1400.

Henry very prudently abstained from taking any notice of these rumours. It was enough for him that he had proved the death of Richard; to have gone into any explanation of the cause of that death might have been construed into consciousness of guilt. But his silence encouraged the friends of the deposed monarch to persuade themselves that the object of their devotion was still alive. It was not, they maintained, his body, but the body of Maudelin, that had been shown at St. Paul's; of Maudelin, a man so like in feature to Richard, that, to deceive the people, he had been adorned in princely vesture during the insurrection, and had voluntarily personified the royal captive. But it is plain that men who gave credit to this tale, had suffered their feelings to blind their judgment.<sup>1</sup> No benefit, which Henry could have derived from such a fraud could be worth the risk of detection, either by the thousands of spectators well

*Angliæ penitus incognita, sed gratia divina diutius non celanda, interimerunt et occiderunt.*—*Ang. Sac. ii. 365.* But in my opinion this passage will bear a very different interpretation. It states that for fifteen days they tormented him with hunger, thirst, cold, and ill-treatment, and then (*tandem*) put him to death after a manner which had hitherto continued unknown, but which God's providence would not permit to be much longer concealed. Most assuredly, then, Scrope had not been able to discover the manner of Richard's death.

<sup>1</sup> Of this we have an instance in the French poet, the devoted admirer of Richard, who wrote before the end of 1401. Some said that Richard died of grief; but, says he,

vrayement

Je ne le croy pas aisement;  
Car aucuns dient pour certain  
Qu'il est, encore vif et sain  
Enferme dedens leur prison.

Of course, the dead body exhibited was that of some one else.

Pas ne croy

Que ce fust le roy ancien,  
Ains croy que c'estoit Madelien.

But in conclusion he owns that he knows not but that Richard is dead.



acquainted with the features of Richard, or by the possible reappearance of that prince himself on some future occasion; a detection which would have convicted the new king in the eyes of the whole world, not only of imposture, but also of sacrilege.

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1400.  
—

After the public funeral of Richard, it became more difficult for Henry to elude the repeated demand of the French king, that his daughter should be sent home with her jewels, and with the surplus of her marriage portion. He consulted the two universities whether the personal obligations of Richard descended to his successor; their answer was unfavourable. He suggested a marriage between her and his own son Henry; it was replied that her father could not with honour entertain the proposal, till he had her in his keeping: he offered to restore her at Candlemas in the next year; the offer was taken as a mere artifice to gain time. At length Charles, apprehensive that Henry's object was to detain her till the completion of her twelfth year, and then to procure her consent to a marriage in England,<sup>1</sup> submitted to receive her with her jewels at the moment, and to reserve the amount of the money for subsequent discussion. Isabella was restored to her parents; but the repetition of the

July 17.

1401.  
May 27.

August 1.

Et se cestoit il, main et tart  
Prie je de vray cuer a Dieu  
Qui est misericors et pieu,  
Quil veuille es sains chieulx  
Avoir lame  
De ly.

Arch. xx. 408, 9.

<sup>1</sup> Sa faulce entention estoit telle de le (la) donner á son fils aisé. Creton to Richard, whom he then supposed to be alive.—Archæol. xxviii. 80. Henry's commission to treat of marriages between the two royal houses, has been noticed in page 281; and the advice of the council (Acts of Coun. i. 118), shows that the persons chiefly meant were Isabella and the prince of Wales, whose marriage would do away every difficulty.—See also Thresor des Chartres, p. 67, 69.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1401.  
—

demand for the dower was met with an opposite claim of one million five hundred thousand crowns still remaining unpaid of the ransom of King John, who had been made prisoner at the battle of Poitiers. The French rejoined that England had never complied with the provisions of the subsequent treaty of Bretigni. Thus was opened a new field of endless litigation, from which Charles at length withdrew; but, instead of surrendering his claim, he transferred it to his daughter on her marriage with his nephew Charles, count of Angoulême.<sup>1</sup>

1404.  
June 5.

One of the charges against the late unfortunate monarch was, that he had degenerated from the military virtues of his family. Anxious to escape a similar reproach, the new king determined to signalize the commencement of his reign by an expedition into Scotland. He hinted the design to his parliament; but it was thought imprudent to hazard discontent by the imposition of new taxes; and in a great council of the spiritual and temporal peers, it was agreed that the former should give to the king a tenth of their incomes, and the latter should serve in the army with a certain number of men, for a limited period, at their own charges.<sup>2</sup> Henry summoned all persons possessed of fees, wages, or annuities, granted by Edward III., the Black Prince, Richard II., or the duke of Lancaster, to meet him at York under the penalty of forfeiture; and from the banks of the Tyne despatched heralds to King Robert,

1400.  
Feb. 9.

June 9.

June 15.

Aug. 6.

<sup>1</sup> For these particulars see Rym. viii. 108, 9, 28, 42, 52, 69, 86, 94, 203, 17, 15. Acts of Coun. i. 130—142. Thres. des Chart. 66, 67. Charles gave with her the 300,000 crowns, which had not yet been paid of the 800,000 promised with her to the late king Richard.—Ibid. p. 299.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. viii. 125. Acts of Council, i. 104.



and the barons of Scotland, commanding them to appear before him in the castle of Edinburgh, on the 23rd of August, and do to him homage for the Scottish crown and their several fiefs. He marched to Leith without opposition; but the castle of Edinburgh was in the hands of the duke of Rothsay, the eldest son of the king, who derided the pompous claim of his adversary, and offered to decide the quarrel in equal combat with one, two, or three hundred Scottish, against the same number of English knights.<sup>1</sup> Henry received the proposal with contempt, and waited several days for the arrival of the Scottish army, under the duke of Albany, who acted as regent during the infirmity of the king. But the duke was too prudent to attack an enemy, who was already defeated by famine; and the English, having consumed their provisions, retired in haste within their own borders. It was a useless and inglorious expedition; but it afforded the king an occasion to exhibit, to his followers and the enemy, a moderation unknown in the annals of Scottish warfare. From humanity, or policy, he laboured to mitigate the horrors of invasion; his protection was instantly afforded to all who asked it; and the royal banner displayed from the steeple of a church, or the turret of a castle, secured the village and its inhabitants from the violence and rapacity of the soldiers.<sup>2</sup>

But from Scotland the king's attention was suddenly diverted to the principality of Wales, where, during his absence, the standard of independence had been raised by Owen, commonly styled Owen Glendower, or of Glendowerdy. This adventurer had been

<sup>1</sup> Rym. 146, 155, 157.

<sup>2</sup> Fordun, xv. 11.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1400.  
—

educated “an apprentice of the law;” had afterwards waited as esquire on the earl of Arundel; and from the family of that nobleman had passed to the service of the late king, during the campaign in Ireland.<sup>1</sup> At a later period he pretended to trace his descent in a direct line from the ancient princes of Wales; if he aspired now to a higher station than that which his fortune seemed to assign to him, it was that injustice provoked his resentment, and the gratification of resentment opened a new and inviting prospect to his ambition. It happened that a powerful and wealthy neighbour, the lord Grey of Ruthyn, appropriated to himself without ceremony a considerable portion of Owen’s patrimony; and the injured Welshman petitioned the king in parliament for redress. It was not very probable that a poor partisan of Richard would prevail over his potent and favoured adversary; but the sting of disappointment was irritated by the scornful and insulting language in which the refusal was conveyed.<sup>2</sup> Owen was not a man to sit down inactive under an affront. Whether he actually awakened the vengeful spirit of his countrymen, or only improved the opportunity offered to him by a previous insurrection, is not easily determined; but the natives burst suddenly into the English marches, and in a few days Owen appeared at their head. The king pronounced him a traitor, and gave his lands in forfeiture to the earl of Somerset; but the Welshman returned to his sovereign a message of defiance, and declared himself the rightful prince of Wales. The experiment proved that the spirit of freedom still lived within the breasts of the natives. They instantly, and without inquiry,

Sept. 20.

Nov. 8.

<sup>1</sup> Otterb. 230. Lel. Collec. ii. 310. Wals. 364.

<sup>2</sup> “Scurri nudipedes.”—Lel. *ibid.*



admitted the claim of Glendower; adventurers hastened from the capital, the universities, and the most distant parts of the kingdom, to fight under his standard; and the Welsh indulged the flattering hope of being able to re-establish, like the Scots, the independence of their country.<sup>1</sup> To the pretender Henry opposed with the title of his lieutenant his own son, the legal prince of Wales. The youthful warrior penetrated into the valley, and gave to the flames the house of Glendowerdy; whilst Owen from the hills watched with coolness the steps of his impetuous adversary, and, the moment he was gone, poured his followers into the marches, and took ample and satisfactory revenge for the injuries which the prince had inflicted. Thrice within two years did Henry lead a numerous force against the insurgents, and thrice was he baffled by the conduct rather than the arms of his opponent; who, retiring among the mountains, left the invaders to contend with the inclemency of the season and the asperities of the country. By degrees Glendower assumed a bolder attitude. His original adversary, the lord Grey, was defeated by him and made prisoner on the banks of the Vurnway; and Sir Edmund Mortimer experienced a similar fate in a battle near Knyghton, in Radnorshire. Impatient to repair these losses, Henry collected his retainers at Shrewsbury; divided them into three armies, under himself, his eldest son, and the earl of Arundel; and thus invaded Wales at the same time from three different quarters. Still both force and policy proved unavailing. No enemy was to be discovered in the field; the heavens fought in favour of the natives;

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1400.

1402.

June 12.

August 27.

<sup>1</sup> Rolls, iii. 457. Rym. viii. 472, 3, 6.



CHAP. the valleys were deluged with rain; the king's tent  
 V.  
 A.D. 1402. was torn from its fastenings, and borne away in a  
 — storm; and the monarch, convinced that it was fruit-  
 less to contend with a man, who could call to his aid  
 spirits from the vasty deep, returned with disgrace  
 into England.<sup>1</sup>

In the meanwhile Henry had committed the charge  
 of the Scottish war to the earl of Northumberland,  
 and his son Sir Henry Percy or "Hotspur," the war-  
 dens of the western and eastern marches. By them  
 he was informed that an unknown Englishman had  
 lately been received at the Scottish court under the  
 designation of Richard Plantagenet, king of England.

May 9. In a short time letters from that very individual were  
 conveyed to the principal friends of the deposed  
 monarch, with an assurance that Richard himself  
 would pass the border at the head of a Scottish army  
 on the feast of St. John the Baptist. The vigilance  
 of the king was excited by this intelligence. He

June 5. published proclamation after proclamation against the  
 authors and propagators of false reports; and ordered

June 15. a statement of the late monarch's tyranny and of  
 his own determination to govern according to law, to  
 be made to the freeholders of every shire at the next  
 county court. Arrests and executions followed: Sir  
 Roger Clarendon, a natural son of the Black Prince,  
 nine Franciscan friars, whose order Richard had  
 always patronised, and several other persons in dif-  
 ferent parts, suffered the barbarous punishment of  
 treason. By these severities Henry intimidated his

<sup>1</sup> *Lel. Coll.* ii. 310, 311. *Otterb.* 230, 1, 4. *Rym.* viii. 156,  
 167, 181, 225. *Vita Ric.* ii. 172—6. The indignities, almost in-  
 credible, offered to the bodies of the slain by the Welsh women, may  
 be seen in *Walsingham*, 365.



opponents; but the proclamations produced so ample a harvest of charges and prosecutions, that to restore domestic tranquillity, he found himself compelled to recall his previous directions, and to confine the offence to words actually exciting to rebellion.

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1402.

But who was the new adventurer in Scotland? How did he prove that he was the dethroned king of England? How did he account for his escape from the castle of Pontefract? To these questions no answer has ever been returned. The earliest Scottish historians first become acquainted with him in the house of Donald, lord of the Isles, either as a menial performing the lowest offices in the kitchen, or as a mendicant soliciting hospitality. The scullion, according to one account, is recognised for King Richard by no less a personage than a man who had been jester to that monarch; the wanderer, according to the other account, by the sister-in-law of Donald, who maintained, in defiance of his asseveration to the contrary, that she had seen him at the head of the English army in Ireland. These fables were plainly framed to account for the real fact, that Donald did send an unknown individual under the name of king Richard to the court of Robert of Scotland, by whom, after some deliberation, he was delivered to the lord of Cambernauld to be kept in close custody. Robert's object is evident. The report of Richard's escape to Scotland would embarrass the king of England; the seclusion in which the adventurer was kept would prevent any detection of the imposture.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Wyntown, ii. 388. Bower, in Heane's Fordun, 1133. Goodalls, ii. 427. Wyntown wrote about the year 1420, Bower after 1441.



CHAP. V.  
A.D. 1402. To Henry it was of the first importance to unravel this mystery. For some time his efforts were fruitless; at last he was able to announce to his subjects that the pretended Richard in Scotland was an idiot, by name Thomas Ward, of Trumpington, and that the letters under his seal had been forged and forwarded by Serle, chamberlain to the late king.<sup>1</sup> A messenger, probably Donet, who had been intrusted with the care of these letters, fell into the hands of the king, and subsequently Serle himself was decoyed into the snare by Sir William Clifford. From these men it was said that Henry obtained all the particulars of the plot. Serle, however, did not save his life by the discovery; he was sent to London to suffer; and for greater notoriety was drawn on a sledge through all the towns in his way to the capital.<sup>2</sup>

If the Scottish king contrived to keep alive the hopes of Henry's opponents in England by countenancing the report that Richard was still alive, Henry was able to take his revenge through the aid of a Scottish nobleman, Dunbar, earl of March, who, on

<sup>1</sup> Thomas Warde de Trumpington, qui se pretende et feigne d'estre Roy Richard.—Stat. of Realm, ii. 148. Rym. viii. 353. Whenever he is mentioned by the English authorities, in the Rolls, by Henry V., by Archbishop Arundel, he is "the idiot in Scotland, the mawmet, le fol, fatuus, famulus infatuatus."—See Rolls, iii. 584, 605; iv. 65; Archæol. xxiii. 297; Ellis, Sec. Series, i. 25, 26. Wyntown hints the same:

Quether he had ben king or nane  
Ther wis but few that wist certaine—  
As he bare him, like was he  
Oft half wod or wyld to be.—Wynt. ii. 389.

And in "Ye Yngliss Chronikle;" Ye qwhilk "deit a beggar and out of his mind, and was erdit i ye blak frers of Striviling."—Archæol. xx. 427.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. viii. 262. Otterb. 248, 9. Wals. 370, 1. Grafton, 429.



account of an affront offered to his daughter,<sup>1</sup> had given back his fealty to his own sovereign, and done homage to the English king. Dunbar made common cause with the Percies, and directed their inroads into Scotland, whilst the earl Douglas, who had received the forfeiture of the rebel, retaliated by similar incursions into England. It was agreed between the earls of March and Northumberland that each chieftain should hold the command in rotation; and in the second inroad by the Scots the invaders were intercepted by the former on Nesbit Moor; their commander, Hepburn of Hales, with many of his companions, perished; and the remainder, the flower of the Lothian chivalry, were made prisoners.<sup>2</sup> The earl Douglas, to revenge this loss, solicited and obtained the aid of the duke of Albany. At the head of ten thousand chosen troops, he burst through the marches, and spread the havoc of war along each bank of the Tyne. But the earl of Northumberland, his son Henry Percy, surnamed Hotspur, and the earl of March, assembled an army in the rear of the plunderers, and at Milfield, near Wooler, awaited their return. On Holyrood day was fought a great and decisive battle. The Scots occupied the hill of Homildon; the English the opposite eminence. Percy ordered his archers to descend into the valley, from which they discharged their arrows with such force and precision, that they provoked Douglas with his

CHAP.

V.

A.D. 1402.

June 22.

Sept. 14.

<sup>1</sup> The affront is thus described by himself in a letter to Henry. "The duc of Rothesay spousit my douchter; and now agayn his oblying to me made by his lettre and his seal, and agaynes the law of halikirk, spouses ane other wife."—MS. Vesp. F. vii. 22. Henry granted to him and his heirs, lands of the value of 500 marks a year.—Rym. viii. 153.

<sup>2</sup> Ford. xv. 13. Acts of Coun. i. 187.



CHAP. V. men-at-arms to advance and attempt to disperse them.  
 A.D. 1402. The archers retired slowly; and, halting at intervals,  
 — with repeated volleys arrested the progress of the enemy. Douglas was pierced with six wounds, and fell from his horse; the foremost and bravest of his companions experienced a similar fate; and the rest, disheartened and in confusion, fled towards the Tweed. Many were lost in attempting to cross that river; eight hundred were left on the field of battle. Among the wounded and captives were Douglas himself, Murdac Stewart, the son and heir of the duke of Albany, the earls of Moray and Angus, two barons, eighty French and Scottish knights, and many gentlemen of the first families in Scotland. It is remarkable that in this battle the English men-at-arms never drew the sword. It was won by the archers alone, whose superior strength and dexterity had long been acknowledged by all the nations of Europe.<sup>1</sup>

Oct. 20. The earl of Northumberland attended the next parliament with his prisoner Murdac Stewart, and six other captives, three Scottish and three French knights. They were introduced to Henry in his palace at Westminster. They knelt thrice, at the entrance of the hall, in the middle, and at the foot of the throne; where Sir Adam Forster, by command of Murdac, thus addressed the king: “Most excellent  
 “and dread prince, my lord, who is here present, has  
 “directed me to request, both for himself and his com-  
 “panions, that you would treat them honourably and  
 “graciously, according to the laws of arms.” Henry coldly replied that they were welcome: and Forster proceeded to exhort him to spare the further effusion of Christian blood, and to treat of peace with his

<sup>1</sup> Otterb. 237. Ford. xv. 14. Rym. ix. 26.



lord, who had been furnished with full powers for that purpose. But the king upbraided the speaker with his former cunning and duplicity, alleging that had it not been for the fair but deceitful promises of Forster, he should not have retired from Edinburgh in his last campaign. Turning, however, to Murdac, he exhorted him to bear his captivity with resignation, and to recollect that he had been taken like a true knight on the field of battle. He then bade them rise, and invited them to dine at his table.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1402.  
—

We now come to a most extraordinary attempt. The reader will recollect that the lord Grey and Sir Edmund Mortimer were prisoners of war in the possession of Owen Glendower. The first with the royal permission purchased his liberty by the payment of ten thousand marks; the second, when he solicited a similar permission from the king, met with a peremptory refusal. The reason of this difference could not be concealed. From the pretensions of Grey, Henry had nothing to apprehend; but Mortimer, as the uncle, and therefore the natural protector of the young earl of March, was an object of distrust. Henry Percy, who had married Mortimer's sister, repeated the request. But the king was inexorable; he is reported to have answered, that Mortimer had gone of his own choice to Glendower, and therefore no loyal subject would wish him to come back; an insinuation which the stomach of a Percy could not brook. But the friendship between the king and that powerful family had long been on the wane. *They* believed that he owed his crown to the aid which they had administered to him in his distress; *he* had not forgotten that they would, if they had dared, have

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 487.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1402.

opposed his succession to the throne; *they* were incessantly calling for large sums of money due to them for the custody of the marches, and the expenses of the Scottish war; *he*, whether he were unable or unwilling, paid them but seldom, and then only by small and tardy instalments,<sup>1</sup> *they* expected a reward for their services at the battle of Homildon Hill; *he* gave to them what in such circumstances was not worth their acceptance, the Scottish estates of the earl of Douglas, to be held by them in fee of the English crown.<sup>2</sup> How their discontent gradually ripened into rebellion we know not; but their anxiety to effect the liberation of Mortimer gave occasion to several messages, and led to one personal interview, with Glendower and Hotspur; an intercourse which Henry watched with jealousy, and not, as the sequel will show, without reason. The first indication of the meditated mischief was furnished by Mortimer, who, to free himself from his fetters and his dungeon, married the daughter of Glendower, and informed the more trusty of his retainers that he had joined the Welshman in his righteous quarrel, with the view of winning the crown for King Richard, if Richard was still alive; or, if he was dead, for the earl of March, the lawful heir.<sup>3</sup> He had, however, confederates who were yet unknown, the three Percies, the earl of

Nov. 30.

Dec. 13.

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Coun. i. 150—3, 203, 4; ii. 57. I have not noticed with several writers the prohibition to ransom the prisoners made at the battle of Homildon Hill. Such prohibitions were common, and Henry expressly saved the rights of the captors.—Rym. viii. 278.

<sup>2</sup> Rotuli Scot. i. 163.

<sup>3</sup> Ellis, Sec. Series, i. 24, 5. Harydng, 359. Edmund, the great-grandson of the Mortimer put to death by Edward III. in 1230, married Philippa, the daughter and heiress of Lionel, the third son of the same monarch. Their eldest son Roger died in 1398, leaving two sons, Edmund about six, and Roger about five years old.



Northumberland, his son Henry, and his brother Thomas, earl of Worcester; Scrope, the archbishop of York, who had given his sanction to the attempt, and Douglas, who in lieu of ransom had promised the services of himself and of a certain number of Scottish knights.<sup>1</sup> It was probably to conceal their real object from the eyes of Henry that the Percies, during a foray into Teviotdale, appointed to meet in battle the chivalry of Scotland on the first of August, and that, on the other hand, the governor of Cocklaw Castle gave hostages for the surrender of the fortress, if it were not relieved by his countrymen before the evening of that day. The greatest publicity was given by the earl and his son to this expected field of arms; they solicited military assistance from their friends and retainers, and they demanded of Henry the arrears due to them, a sum of more than twenty thousand pounds, that they might be able to maintain their own honour and the honour of the nation.<sup>2</sup> Henry made promises, though he appears not to have parted with his money; he even proposed to join his faithful Percies, and to share with them the danger and the

CHAP.

V.

A.D. 1402.

1403.

May.

June 26.

<sup>1</sup> Sir Henry Ellis has published (Sec. Ser. i. 27) from an ancient chronicle a tripartite treaty for the division of the kingdom among Glendower, Northumberland, and Sir Edmund Mortimer, "if they should find reason to conclude that they were the persons foretold in the prophecies of Merlin." It is difficult to believe that men of sense could entertain notions so strange and hopes so unreasonable; but this was an age in which full credit was given to such pretended prophecies, and the conduct of men was often guided by their interpretation of them.

<sup>2</sup> Acts of Coun. i. 203, 4. One of these letters from the earl has the signature of "Vre Mathathias," a name probably given to him on some occasion by the king, to express his gratitude for Northumberland's services. It was a term in common use to designate a person who had distinguished himself by his devotion to some particular cause, like the Jewish chieftain of that name in chapter ii. of the first book of Maccabees.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1403.  

---

July.

glory of the day. It may have been that some dark intimation of the plot had already reached him; but at the very time when he set out for the borders with a select body of knights, Hotspur hastened from the same borders to North Wales, where, from his offices of lieutenant and justiciary, he possessed considerable influence. He was accompanied by Douglas and his Scottish knights; his uncle of Worcester, the lieutenant of South Wales, joined him with all the force which he could raise; and the archers of Cheshire, a race of men devotedly attached to the late king, answered his summons, calling on them to fight with him for Richard, who was still alive, against Henry of Lancaster, the mortal foe of that monarch.<sup>1</sup> The king had not reached Burton-upon-Trent when he heard of these proceedings. Not a moment was lost; he turned to the west, directed by messengers all his faithful subjects to join him on his march, and entered Shrewsbury at the moment when the insurgents were first descried from the walls. Hotspur was disappointed but not discouraged; he retired to Haytleyfield, at a small distance; and, though Owen with his Welshmen had not yet joined him, made preparations for battle.<sup>2</sup>

July 16.

July 20.

In accordance with the laws of chivalry, the confederates sent to the king a defiance, which has been preserved by Hardyng, who was at the same time in the service of Hotspur, and accompanied him the next day to the field of battle. In this instrument the

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Coun. i. 206, 208. The men of Cheshire had already risen in the support of Richard, when the earls espoused his cause in the first year of this king's reign. Henry deemed it more prudent to win them by forbearance, than to exasperate them by punishment.—Acts of Coun. ii. 42.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. viii. 313. Wals. 368. Otter. 239.



Percies pronounced Henry false and perjured. 1. Because on his return to England he had sworn before them at Doncaster, that he would claim nothing more than his own inheritance and that of his wife; and yet he had imprisoned Richard his sovereign, had compelled him by threats to resign the crown, and under colour of that resignation had taken upon himself the style and authority of king: 2. Because at the same time he had sworn that he would never consent to the imposition of any taxes by the king without the previous consent of parliament; and yet he had frequently since that time caused tenths and fifteenths to be levied by his own power and the dread which he inspired: 3. Because he had also sworn that Richard, as long as he lived, should enjoy every royal prerogative; and yet had caused the same prince in the castle of Pontefract, after fifteen days, to die of hunger, thirst, and cold, and to be murdered: 4. Because at the death of Richard he had kept possession of the crown, which then belonged to the young earl of March, the next and direct heir: 5. Because, though he had sworn to govern according to law, he had treacherously and against the law destroyed the freedom of election, and caused his own creatures to be returned representatives of the counties in parliament, so that justice could not be had; and lastly, because he had refused to permit the liberation of Sir Edmund Mortimer, who had been taken fighting for him, and was kept in chains in prison; and had looked on the Percies as traitors, because they had negotiated with Owen Glendower in behalf of the captive. They then conclude thus: “For these  
“reasons we do mortally defy thee, and thy ac-  
“complices and adherents, as traitors, and subverters



CHAP. " of the commonwealth and kingdom, and invaders,  
 V.  
 A.D. 1403. " oppressors, and usurpers of the rights of the true  
 — " and direct heir of England and France; and we  
 " intend to prove it this day by force of arms, with the  
 " aid of Almighty God."<sup>1</sup>

When Henry had perused the defiance, he replied, that he had no time to lose in writing an answer; that he would prove by the sword that the quarrel of the Percies was false and feigned; and that he had no doubt but God would give him the victory over perjured traitors.<sup>2</sup> The next morning was fought one of the most obstinate and bloody battles recorded in English history.

July 21. The two armies were nearly equal, consisting severally of about fourteen thousand men of approved valour.<sup>3</sup> As soon as they were arrayed in front of each other, the king, apprehensive of the result, sent the abbot of Shrewsbury to his opponents, with proposals of peace, which, after a long hesitation, were rejected by the advice of the earl of Worcester.

<sup>1</sup> This defiance is printed at length from the Harleian MS. 42, f. 152, in "The Hereditary Right of the Crown," p. 82—84; by Mr. Ellis in his edition of Hardyng, 352, and in Hall, f. 21; but the latter, of his own authority, has made Edmund Mortimer the earl of March.—See note (A) at the end. The reader will observe the awkward and ambiguous language in which the Percies state the death of Richard, as if they had no certain knowledge of the manner of that death; and will also notice in the last charge, that the custom still existed of torturing prisoners of war, to procure from them a larger ransom. "In prisona et ferreis vinculis crudeliter tentus." Hardyng mentions the same of Mortimer,

"Wherfore he laye in fetters and sore prysone,  
 For none payment of his greate raunsone."

—Hardyng, 359.

<sup>2</sup> Hall, f. 22.

<sup>3</sup> Hotspur's force consisted of 9,000 knights, squires, yeomen, and archers, "withouten raskaldry."—Hard. Pref. iii. According to Walsingham, the insurgents gave out that Richard was alive and with them.—Wals. 368.



“Then, banner, advance,” cried Henry. The air resounded with the adverse shouts of “St. George,” and “Esperance, Percy:” and the archers on both sides discharged their arrows with the most murderous effect. Percy and Douglas, who had long been rivals for glory, and were esteemed two of the most valorous knights in Christendom, rushed with thirty attendants into the centre of the enemy. Every thing yielded before them. The king’s guards were dispersed; the earl of Stafford, Sir William Blount, and two others, who, to deceive the enemy, wore the royal arms, were slain; the standard was beaten to the ground; and the prince of Wales received a wound in his face. Their object had been to kill or secure the person of Henry; but he, by the advice of the Scottish earl of March, had changed his armour; and was performing the duty of a valiant warrior in a distant part of the field. The two chiefs, disappointed in their expectation, determined to cut back their way through the enemy, who had closed behind them; and they had nearly effected their purpose, when the Northumbrian fell by an arrow, which seems to have been shot at random, and pierced his brain. With him fell the courage and the confidence of his followers, who, as soon as the loss of their leader was ascertained, fled in every direction. The battle had continued three hours; the killed and wounded on the part of the king amounted almost to five thousand, on that of the insurgents to a much greater number. Among the prisoners were the earl of Douglas, the earl of Worcester, the baron of Kinderton, and Sir Richard Vernon. The first received from the conqueror all that courtesy which was usually shown



CHAP. V. to foreign prisoners of high rank; the other three  
A.D. 1403. suffered the punishment of traitors.<sup>1</sup>

July 23.

The morning after this victory the king despatched orders to the earl of Westmoreland and Robert Waterton, to oppose the progress of the earl of Northumberland, who had recovered from his indisposition, and was marching at the head of his retainers through the county of Durham. But he soon received the melancholy intelligence of the defeat and death of his son and his brother, and that the Scottish army which had assembled for the pretended purpose of relieving Cockshaws, but in reality to aid the insurgents, had returned home. Returning by Newcastle, which shut its gates against him, he retired to his castle of Warkworth, and disbanded his forces. At the command of the conqueror he repaired with a small retinue to York, where he was received with evident marks of dissatisfaction. His protestations that Hotspur had acted in disobedience to his commands, and that the troops which he had raised himself were intended to join the royal army, were neither admitted nor rejected; but the earl was detained in safe though honourable custody, to plead his cause in the next parliament. Meanwhile Henry issued orders for the arrest of the lady Elizabeth, the widow of Hotspur; compelled the Northumbrian

Oct. 8.

<sup>1</sup> Otterb. 242—244. Ypodig. Neust. 560. Hall, f. 22. Rym. viii. 320. If we may believe a manifesto by the Yorkshire insurgents, after the body of Henry Percy had been solemnly buried, the king ordered it to be dug up, placed on the pillory, beheaded, and quartered.—Ang. Sac. ii. 366. The origin of this story, as is remarked by the editor of the Acts of the Council, may be found in the chronicle of London (88), from which we learn that the body was taken out of the grave, to refute the report that Percy was still alive.



knights to swear fealty to him against their earl; and promised pardon to all who should throw themselves on his mercy.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1403.  
Nov. 22.

When the parliament assembled, the earl presented to the king his petition, acknowledging that he had broken the law by the giving of liveries and the gathering of his retainers; but reminding Henry that he had in obedience to his command surrendered himself at York, and had received from him an assurance that "all graceless he should not go." The king had commissioned the judges to decide on the nature of the offences which the earl had confessed; but the lords, many of whom had been secretly leagued with him, declaring that the judgment belonged to them, pronounced that he had not been guilty either of treason or of felony, but only of trespasses, for which he was bound to pay a fine at the king's pleasure. He then swore fealty to Henry, to the prince of Wales, to the other sons of the king and their issue; and in return obtained a full remission of all fines and penalties. As report had included several prelates and lords among the conspirators, he solemnly declared that he knew nothing to the prejudice of the duke of York, or of the archbishop of Canterbury, or of any other person generally suspected, but that he held them all to be, and to have been, true and faithful subjects to their sovereign.<sup>2</sup>

1404.  
Feb. 7.

The unsuccessful issue of these insurrections, however it might disappoint, did not extinguish the hopes of the king's enemies. The families of the slain still

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 322, 333, 338.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 524—526. The duke of York who had fallen under suspicion was Edward, the former earl of Rutland. He had lately succeeded to the honours and estates of his father—Rot. Parl. iii. 533.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1404.

Oct. 7.

1405.  
Feb. 15.

Feb. 17.

March 6.

thirsted for revenge; and the annual taxes which Henry was compelled to demand augmented the discontent of the people. To relieve his poverty he had made an attempt, with the aid of the commons, to resume the grants of the crown, and to seize on some portion of the property of the church; and this attempt, though it proved unsuccessful, served to exasperate the minds of the most considerable among the laity and clergy.<sup>1</sup> In the beginning of the year a woman, the relict of the lord Spencer who had been executed at Bristol, undertook to liberate from the king's custody the young earl of March and his brother. By means of false keys she procured access to their apartment, conducted them out of the castle of Windsor, and hurried them away towards the frontiers of Wales. But Henry's good fortune never deserted him. The alarm had been given; the fugitives were quickly pursued, and retaken; and the lady on her examination before the council, perhaps to soothe the king's resentment, perhaps to excite his alarm, accused her brother the duke of York of being privy not only to her attempt, but to several other conspiracies against him. Henry, who could not but recollect how often that prince, under the titles of duke of Albemarle and earl of Rutland, had proved faithless to his associates, ordered him to be immediately arrested. If we may believe the suspicious language of the royal writs, he confessed his guilt; in his own petition he appears confident of proving his innocence. All his estates were seized to the king's profit; and the duke himself was confined in the castle of Pevensey. At the end of three months

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 371. Rot. Parl. iii. 547—549.



he was released, admitted to favour, and recovered his lands.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1405.  
—

To the earl of March and his brother was soon added another royal captive, the young prince of Scotland. King Robert, who lived in retirement in the isle of Bute, had allowed the reins of government to drop from his grasp into the hands of his brother, the duke of Albany; but the suspicious death of the heir apparent, the duke of Rothsay, admonished him to provide for the safety of his second son James, a young prince in his fourteenth year. He placed him under the care of the earl of Orkney, and sent him with a recommendatory letter to Charles, king of France. It was a time of truce between England and Scotland; yet they were intercepted off Flamborough Head by an English cruiser; and the prince was taken an acceptable present to Henry, who sarcastically remarked that he could speak French as well as his brother of France, and thought himself equally qualified to educate a king of Scotland. Instead of allowing the captive to pursue his voyage, he sent him to the castle of Pevensey, to be kept in secure custody, but to be treated with the respect due to his rank. On what ground the king justified this outrage, is unknown. It was probably an act of retaliation for the entertainment of the pretended Richard in Scotland. The fate of the prince contributed to break the heart of his father; at whose death the duke of Albany was appointed regent during

April 12.

1406.  
March 29.

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Coun. i. 270—5. Rym. viii. 386, 388. Wals. 372. Otterb. 250. The lady Spenser in proof of her assertion produced her champion, William Maidstone, and offered to be burnt, if he should be vanquished. The duke accepted the challenge, but Henry imprisoned him.—Otter. *ibid.*



CHAP. the absence of the young king in England. By  
 V.  
 A.D. 1406. Albany the pretended Richard was removed from  
 — Cambernauld to the castle of Stirling, and kept  
 there in the strictest privacy till his death in 1419.<sup>1</sup>  
 It has been said that an understanding existed be-  
 tween the regent and Henry, the former engaging  
 that the king should meet with no annoyance from  
 the prisoner in Stirling, the latter that Albany should  
 not be deprived of the regency by the return of  
 James to his kingdom. But this hypothesis derives  
 no support from the testimony of ancient writers,  
 nor is it at all necessary to account for any of the  
 transactions which followed.

The king had assembled two great councils of  
 barons and prelates at London and St. Alban's, and  
 to his disappointment, found in them a general dis-  
 inclination to approve of the measures which he  
 proposed.<sup>2</sup> Among the more violent opponents of  
 the government was the lord Bardolf, who from  
 May 6. St. Alban's repaired to the earl of Northumberland.  
 That nobleman, though he had been restored to his  
 estates, had been deprived of the offices of constable  
 1404.  
 August 27. and warden of the marches, and had been compelled  
 to sign an obligation to deliver into the king's hand,  
 within a certain period, the castles of Berwick and  
 Jedburgh, with their appurtenances, in exchange for

<sup>1</sup> He was buried in the church of the Blackfriars in Stirling, and his portrait was hung over his remains with an inscription styling him Richard king of England (Extract. ex Chron. Scot. p. 221). But that inscription is of no authority, as the fourth line shows that it was composed many years after this pretender's death, when the house of York had driven that of Lancaster from the throne.

Supplicium licet hinc ipsius omne genus.

An evident allusion to the misfortunes of the house of Lancaster after the dethronement of Henry VI.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 373.



other lands of the same value.<sup>1</sup> He readily listened to the counsel of Bardolf, and determined to make another attempt in opposition to Henry. He found a willing associate in Thomas, the eldest son of the late banished duke of Norfolk. Though his father had not been attainted, he abstained from assuming the title, that he might not provoke the jealousy of the king; and was commonly known by the name of Lord Mowbray or earl marshal; but when Henry bestowed the office of marshal (it had been made hereditary in the family of the Mowbrays) on the earl of Westmoreland, his prudence was subdued by his resentment; and he communicated his wrongs and projects to Scrope, the archbishop of York, an enthusiastic defender of the claim of the earl of March. This prelate was the son of Richard Lord Scrope of Bolton. He had long enjoyed the love and the veneration of the people; and the influence naturally attached to his station was increased by the affability of his manners, the fame of his learning, and the sanctity of his life. He had already exhorted Henry to repent of his perjury and treason to Richard; and to a question from the earl of Northumberland, had replied, that all who had contributed to place the present king on the throne were bound, in justice to the real heir, to drive the usurper from it. It was not difficult for the discontented to draw a prelate of these sentiments into their party; though it is probable that he was not admitted into all their secrets. His object, he always asserted, was the reformation of grievances, and the restoration of harmony among the principal lords. The first who appeared in arms was Sir John Falconberg, and

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1404.  
—

1405.  
May.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 364.



CHAP. three other knights in Cleveland; but they were  
 V.  
 A.D. 1405. immediately attacked, and dispersed by Prince John,  
 — Henry's third son, and the earl of Westmoreland.<sup>1</sup>  
 At the same time an instrument, divided into ten  
 articles of accusation against the king, was fixed on  
 the doors of the churches in York and the neighbour-  
 hood. It ran in the names of A. B. C. D. proctors of  
 the commonwealth of England; and charged Henry  
 with perjury, rebellion, usurpation, the murder of his  
 sovereign, irreligion, extortion, and the illegal execu-  
 tion of many clergymen and gentlemen.<sup>2</sup> Eight  
 thousand men assembled at Shipton on the Moor,  
 a few miles from York, and were joined by the arch-  
 May 29. bishop and the earl marshal. To disperse them, the  
 prince, with the earl of Westmoreland, hastened to  
 the forest of Galtres. The latter requested and  
 obtained a conference with the opposite leaders, in  
 the open space between the two armies. The arch-  
 bishop declared that he had come, not to make war  
 but peace, and particularized the different grievances  
 which he thought it necessary to redress for the pros-  
 perity of the kingdom. By some it is said, that  
 Westmoreland deceived the simplicity of the aged  
 prelate, by assenting to all his proposals; by others,  
 that he persuaded him to disband his followers, as the  
 only means of appeasing the king, and procuring a  
 favourable answer to his petitions. However that  
 may be, both the archbishop and the earl were un-  
 expectedly and forcibly conducted to the army of the  
 royalists; and the insurgents, learning the captivity  
 of their leaders, retired to their homes.<sup>3</sup> Henry, at

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. viii. 604.

<sup>2</sup> Ang. Sac. 362.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. viii. 605. Otterb. 255, 256. Wals. 373. The fugitives were pursued; but such as were taken were not put to death, but "stripped and severely scourged."—Holins. ii. 310.



the first rumour of these commotions, had marched towards the north ; at Pontefract the two captives were presented to him, and ordered to follow the court to Bishopsthorpe, a palace belonging to the primate. There the king commanded the chief justice Gascoigne to pronounce on them the sentence of death ; but that inflexible judge refused, on the plea that the laws gave him no jurisdiction over the life of the prelate, or of the earl marshal, who had a right to be tried by their peers. A more obsequious agent was found in a knight of the name of Fulthorpe, who by the king's order called them both before him, and without indictment or trial condemned them to be beheaded. Scrope immediately exclaimed : " The just and true " God knows that I never intended evil against the " person of King Henry ; and I beg you to pray, that " my death may not be revenged upon him or his " friends." The judgment was immediately carried into execution. The archbishop suffered with the constancy, and acquired among the people the reputation, of a martyr. To the body of the earl was allotted a grave in the cathedral ; his head was placed on a pike, and fixed upon the walls.<sup>1</sup> It is remarkable, that when the king, in parliament, required the temporal peers to declare the archbishop and the earl traitors, they replied, that according to the representation given by John, the king's son, their offence seemed to be treason ; but that they were unwilling to decide without more deliberation, and desired that the question might be postponed till the next parliament, when every peer should be compelled to attend, and to give his opinion.<sup>2</sup> Henry had the prudence to acquiesce ; and the matter was never afterwards

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1405.  
May 8.

June 8.

<sup>1</sup> Ang. Sac. ii. 370.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 606.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1405.

mentioned. Hence it may be fairly inferred that the peers believed the assertions of the archbishop, and did not conceive him guilty of levying war against his sovereign.<sup>1</sup>

July.

From York, which he deprived of its franchises, Henry advanced with thirty thousand men against the earl of Northumberland. That nobleman, at the very outset, had concluded a treaty with the regent of Scotland, and had solicited aid, but in vain, from the king of France and the duke of Orleans.<sup>2</sup> As Henry advanced, he fell back on his Scottish allies. His castles of Prudhaw, Warkworth, and Alnwick were successively reduced; and the Scots, to whom he had delivered the town of Berwick, set it on fire, and retired beyond the borders. The earl and lord Bardolf accompanied them. The castle made a show of resistance; but a shot from an enormous piece of ordnance shattered one of the towers; the garrison in dismay threw open the gates; and the son of the baron of Greystock, with the six principal officers, were immediately executed. Henry returned in triumph into the south.

<sup>1</sup> On this account, and on account of the style of the instrument, I have great doubt whether the "articles" before mentioned could be traced to the archbishop.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 605. From his letter to the duke it appears that the death of Richard was still considered by some as doubtful. The earl, probably to anticipate any objection on that head, says that, "he has levied war against Henry of Lancaster, the ruler of England, to support the quarrel of his sovereign lord the king Richard, if he is alive, and to revenge his death, if he be dead; and also to support the right quarrel, which his dread lady the queen of England may reasonably have to the kingdom of England." Carte has given to these words a meaning which they cannot bear; "to obtain justice for the queen in point of her jointure."—Carte, p. 667. Perhaps it may have some allusion to the protestation made by her, "that she did not acknowledge Henry, duke of Lancaster, as king of England."—Thres. des Chart. 127.



But, though the king, at the head of a victorious army, might despise the murmurs of his subjects, who condemned the execution of the archbishop, he found it expedient to palliate or justify his conduct to Pope Gregory XII., whose predecessor, Innocent VII., had published a provisionary sentence of excommunication against all who had been concerned in the death of that prelate. Henry alleged in his own defence that Scrope had levied war against his sovereign, a crime which the laws of England punished with death; that he was made prisoner after a battle in which his followers, amounting to eight thousand men, had been defeated; that the royalists clamorously demanded his punishment, and threatened to join the rebels, if he were spared; and that the king reluctantly gave his consent, to prevent the evils which must have ensued, if his armed followers had taken the execution of justice into their own hands.<sup>1</sup> What impression this answer made on the mind of Gregory is uncertain; but he ordered the excommunication to be removed from all who declared themselves sorry for the part which they had acted in the death of the archbishop.<sup>2</sup>

For more than two years, Northumberland with his companion in exile wandered from place to place, sometimes requesting aid from the Scots, sometimes consulting the insurgents in Wales. Henry employed every artifice to obtain possession of their persons; they with equal vigilance defeated all his schemes, and sought the opportunity of inflicting some signal

<sup>1</sup> The reader will observe that it is impossible to reconcile this account with that which has previously been given from our historians. Are we to accuse them of disguising the truth out of enmity to the house of Lancaster, or the king of inventing falsehoods to appease the pontiff?

<sup>2</sup> Ep. Greg. XII. apud Raynald, v. 291.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1407.

—

vengeance on their antagonist. On one occasion they obtained permission to visit, in company with two bishops and the abbot of Welbeck, the pretended Richard in Stirling Castle, that they might ascertain whether he was in reality the deposed monarch, and, in that case, might arrange with him a plan of future operations. But the attempt was fruitless. They were told that he refused to see them, and that no solicitations, not even those of the regent, could extort his consent.<sup>1</sup> Their hopes, however, were awakened by the contests in the parliament of 1407, and by the discontents created by the heavy subsidies which the king demanded of his people.<sup>2</sup> A correspondence was opened with Sir Thomas Rokeby; but the report that they were deceived by the artifice of that officer rests on the very doubtful credit of Buchanan. In the beginning of the next year the earl and Bardolf burst into Northumberland, surprised several castles, raised the tenantry, who were still attached to their exiled lord, and augmenting their numbers as they advanced, penetrated as far as Knaresborough, where they were joined by Sir Nicholas Tempest, who had distinguished himself in the cause of the archbishop. It is supposed to have been the policy of Rokeby to oppose no obstacle to their progress, that he might intercept their retreat. But having collected a body of tried men, he now prevented them from crossing the river, and following their footsteps, overtook them on Bramham Moor, in the neighbourhood of Tadcaster. The contest was soon decided between the rabble of the insurgents and an experienced soldiery. The earl fell in the field; Bardolf was taken, but died of his

1408.  
Feb. 18.

<sup>1</sup> Fordun, 11, 441. Assuredly Albany knew that he was an impostor.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 609, 611.



wounds; and the quarters of these noblemen were distributed among the principal cities in the kingdom. The fines exacted from their adherents supplied the royal wants; and the constant failure of every attempt to subvert, contributed to establish on a more secure basis the government of Henry.

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1408.

We may now return to the history of Glendower, who still maintained the war, notwithstanding the losses of his confederates at Shrewsbury, at Shipton, and on Bramham Moor. The whole of the north and a great part of the south of Wales acknowledged his authority; even Charles of France had received his ambassadors as those of an independent prince; and, by a treaty of alliance offensive and defensive, engaged to send him assistance whenever it should be required. Henry committed the conduct of the war to his eldest son, and the young hero by his activity and perseverance, and with the advice of prudent counsellors, gradually undermined the power of the Welshman. At Grosmont, in Monmouthshire, he gained a decisive victory over Griffith, the son of Glendower; and pursuing his career, reduced after a long siege the castle of Lampeder, in Cardiganshire. But French auxiliaries, to the number, probably exaggerated, of twelve thousand men, had now arrived, and had taken Caermarthen. Haverfordwest was saved by the earl of Arundel; and the king hastened to the assistance of his son; but no action of importance followed; Henry, after the loss of fifty waggon conveying his treasure and provisions, retired; and the French, unable to subsist in a depopulated country, returned to their homes.<sup>1</sup>

1405.  
March 11.

Nov. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. vii. 390, 412, 419. Otterb. 258. Wals. 370, 374. Monstrel. i. 13. Acts of Coun. i. 249.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1405.  
—

This happened before the fall of Northumberland; the termination of the insurrections in England allowed the king liberty to direct his attention to the war in Wales, and to furnish his indefatigable son with every necessary supply of men and provisions. The progress of the prince, though slow, was constant. At the end of four years, the southern division of Wales had entirely submitted. The natives of the north, disheartened by their misfortunes, insensibly withdrew themselves from the standard of Glendower; and that chieftain, appalled by the steady advance of his enemy, ordered the greater part of his forces to burst into Shropshire, and ravage the country, under the conduct of Rhees ap Du, and Philpot Scudamore. They were defeated, and their leaders suffered the punishment of treason. We are told that this misfortune broke the spirit of Owen; that he wandered for a time amidst the mountains, and then repaired in the habit of a shepherd to the house of his daughter at Monington, in Herefordshire, where he remained in concealment till his death. But this account must be erroneous. From several writs, which are still extant, it appears that he contrived to spin out the contest among the wilds and mountains of Snowdun till long after the accession of the next sovereign.<sup>1</sup>

We may now return to Henry's transactions with foreign powers. It was to him a most fortunate circumstance, that Charles of France continued for many years subject to fits of insanity, occasionally

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 711, 753; ix. 283, 330. The last of these is a commission given by Henry V., and dated Feb. 24, 1416, to Sir Gilbert Talbot, to treat with Meredith, the son of Glendower, concerning the submission of his father and the other rebels in Wales, if they desired it.—From Rot. Parl. iv. 377, it is evident that Glendower himself never submitted.



interrupted with lucid intervals; and that the government of that kingdom was divided and perplexed by the ambitious and opposite views of two powerful princes, the dukes of Burgundy and of Orleans. The first object of Charles at the accession of Henry had been to procure the restoration of Isabella; after that neither the king nor his ministers made any secret of their real sentiments. When it was rumoured that Richard was still alive, and had effected his escape into Scotland, they received the intelligence with undissembled joy; projects were discussed among them for his restoration to the throne; and many a French knight boasted that he was ready to peril his life in the cause of king Richard and the lady Isabella. But questions were soon asked, who had seen the supposed fugitive? What was he doing? Why had he made no communication to his wife or her father? In this uncertainty they resolved to discover the truth by sending a confidential agent to Scotland, and selected Creton for that service. Creton, the former page of Richard, who had accompanied him to Ireland, had been made prisoner with him in Wales, and had very recently interested their feelings by a poem on the wrongs and sufferings of his master. Creton undertook and accomplished the mission; and the result was a conviction that the real king had been murdered, and that the Richard in Scotland was an impostor.<sup>1</sup> From that moment the hatred of the French

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1405.  
—

<sup>1</sup> The ordonnance for the payment of Creton, states that he was sent pour savoir et enquerir la verite de nostre tres cher et tres ame fils le Roi Richart d'Angleterre, que l'on disoit lors estre en vie audict pays descocce.—Archæol. xxviii. 94. We have not the date of Creton's mission; but Mr. Dillon, in his valuable memoir (ibid. p. 70), concludes with great probability, that he must have returned before the latter part of 1402. The same may be inferred from the



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1405.

1402.  
Feb. 10.

people was directed against the supposed murderer. There was indeed no declaration of war between the two kingdoms ; no interruption on the part of Charles of the external relations of amity ; but the most powerful of the French nobles were encouraged to insult Henry, to plunder his subjects, and to make descents on the exposed parts of his dominions. The duke of Orleans led the way, and was followed by Walleran de St. Pôl, who had married a sister of Richard. Walleran possessed large estates and offices of emolument in France, and for them was amenable to the French government ; but he was also a prince of the empire, and as such acted as an independent sovereign. He believed, or pretended to believe, that it was his duty to revenge the fate of his brother-in-law ; and the king of England received from Walleran's herald the following defiance : “ To the most high and mighty  
“ prince Henry duke of Lancaster, I, Walleran of  
“ Luxemburgh, count of Ligny and St. Pôl, consider-  
“ ing the affinity, love, and confederation which ex-  
“ isted between me and the most high and mighty  
“ prince Richard king of England, whose sister I  
“ married, and the death of the same king, of which  
“ you are notoriously accused, and for which your  
“ reputation is blemished ; and, moreover, the great  
“ shame and loss that I and my posterity of his line  
“ may suffer for the time to come ; and likewise the  
“ indignation of Almighty God, and of all reasonable  
“ and honourable persons, if I do not expose myself  
“ to revenge the death of the said king, to whom I  
“ was allied ; on these accounts I give you to know  
“ that in every manner in my power I will do you  
conduct of the duke of Orleans and Walleran de St. Pôl in 1402 and 1403.



“harm; and every kind of injury by myself, my  
 “relations, my men, and my subjects, I will offer to  
 “you, both by sea and land without the kingdom of  
 “France, entirely for the reasons above rehearsed,  
 “and not on account of any hostilities between my  
 “dread and sovereign lord the king of France and  
 “the realm of England. And this I certify to you  
 “under my seal, at my castle of Luxemburgh, the  
 “10th of February, 1402.”<sup>1</sup> This was followed by a  
 singular exhibition. To testify his horror for the  
 perfidy of the earl of Rutland, who, it was believed,  
 had betrayed the secrets of his accomplices to Henry,  
 Walleran’s servants carried, by his orders, from the  
 castle of Bohain the figure of a man decorated with  
 the arms and device of Rutland, and in the dead of  
 the night hung it on a gibbet at the gates of Calais.  
 But his next operations were more serious. With a  
 numerous squadron of ships he inflicted severe injuries  
 on the inhabitants of the Isle of Wight, and of the  
 southern coast of England. Three princes of the  
 house of Bourbon, embarking in the same cause,  
 burnt the town of Plymouth; and the admiral of  
 Bretagne swept the narrow seas, and carried as prizes  
 into the French ports a large carrack, and forty-nine  
 smaller ships, with nearly two thousand prisoners.<sup>2</sup>

Henry commissioned the governor of Calais to re-  
 venge this insult on the Flemings in his neighbourhood,  
 the subjects of Walleran. But that which sank still  
 deeper into his mind was the challenge which he had  
 received from his former friend and sworn brother,<sup>3</sup>

August 7.

<sup>1</sup> 1403 according to our computation.

<sup>2</sup> Chroniques d’Enguerran de Monstrelet, vol. i. f. 13; à Paris, 1596.

<sup>3</sup> That the reader may form an idea of these contracts of friendship, I will translate that which had been given by Louis to



CHAP. V.  
A.D. 1402.  
Dec. 15.

Louis duke of Orleans, to fight him with one hundred knights on a side in the marches of Guienne. After a silence of more than four months, Henry replied by a letter, in which he expressed his astonishment at the receipt of such a challenge during the truce between the two kingdoms, and from one who had sworn to live with him in perpetual amity; reminded Louis that he was a king, and that kings did not condescend to fight in private combat with any but their equals; and concluded by saying, that he should go to Guienne when he pleased, and take with him such knights as he pleased, and then his adversary might, if he chose, meet him in whatever manner he thought best, and should receive such satisfaction as he deserved. This answer provoked a repetition of the challenge, with reproaches of rebellion, usurpation,

1403.  
Mar. 26.

Henry, who sent it back to him when he received the challenge. It begins with a long catalogue of sovereigns and princes, the relations and friends of the contracting parties, whose interests are not to be affected by the present agreement. It then provides, "that there shall be, always and without intermission, the good affection of true love between the dukes of Lancaster and Orleans, as between true and honourable friends; that each shall always and in all places be a friend and well-wisher to the friends and well-wishers of the other, and an enemy to his enemies, as becometh the honour and reputation of both; that at all times and in all places, in all things and concerns, each shall love, pursue, keep, and defend the health, the good, the honour, and the estate of the other, both in word and deed, diligently and carefully, and as far as can be done, honourably and worthily; that in time and case of discord, debate and war, they shall aid and defend each other with great desire, pure will, and perfect work, against and towards all princes, lords, barons, individuals, commonalties, colleges, universities, of whatever lordship, dignity, estate or condition they may be, by all means, remedies, acts, counsels, forces, aids, men-at-arms, troops, and other helps that they can or may; and that each shall rise, resist, and combat all the adversaries, warriors and enemies of the other, and apply to it with all his thought, advice, and work, lawful and honourable, excepting always the persons named above." Dated 17th June, 1396.—Monstrel. i. 9, 10.



and murder. To the two first, Henry made but evasive replies. They came, he said, with a bad grace from one who was not only privy to his designs, but had promised his aid to carry them into execution; and as to his right to the English crown, it was enough to satisfy his own conscience that he held it by the gift of the Almighty. But the charge of murder he met with the most emphatic denial. "If you mean that we had any hand in his death, we say that you lie, and will lie falsely, as often as you shall assert it; as the true God knows, whom we call to witness our innocence, offering, as a loyal prince ought, our body against yours, if you will or dare to prove it."<sup>1</sup> But these doughty champions upon paper never met in the field. Henry was more anxious to silence his adversary by the authority of the French government; and his ambassadors repeatedly complained of the challenge as of an infraction of the armistice. To their urgent demand for satisfaction, the following laconic reply was made: "Neither the king nor his council have ever broken, nor will they ever break, their engagements. This is the only answer that can be returned."<sup>2</sup> About the same time was contracted, and a few months later was solemnized, the marriage between Isabella and Charles, count of Angoulême, the eldest son of the duke of Orleans; a fact which presupposes inquiry and conviction on the part of the French council; for, to marry her to a prince so near to the throne without proof of the death of her first husband, was to expose the kingdom to the chance of a disputed succession.

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1403.  
April 30.

June 27.

1404.  
June 5.

It was most fortunate for Henry, that some time afterwards he was freed from all apprehension on the

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. f. 8—13.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. viii. 310. Rot. Parl. 522.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1407.  
Nov. 23.

1411.  
Oct. 23.

Nov. 10.

1412.  
May 18.

part of France by the death of his greatest adversary, the duke of Orleans, who was murdered one evening in the streets of Paris by eighteen assassins in the pay of the duke of Burgundy. After a short flight, Burgundy returned to the capital accompanied by his friends and vassals, attempted to justify the deed, and was again received into favour by his weak and vacillating sovereign. The princes of the house of Orleans, after several ineffectual petitions for justice, sought their revenge by force of arms; and the whole kingdom was divided between the two parties of the Bourguignons and the Armagnacs. Henry viewed these commotions with pleasure. They served to occupy and to weaken the most formidable of his adversaries; and they offered him the opportunity of retaliating upon France the injuries which for some years she had inflicted upon England. When the Armagnacs besieged Charles in Paris, Henry sent a thousand archers and eight hundred lances, commanded by the earl of Arundel, to the duke of Burgundy, who, with these auxiliaries, and his own forces, made his way into the capital, and compelled his enemies to retire.<sup>1</sup> The next year the duke prepared to follow up his success, and to reduce the Armagnacs to submission. But Henry had now listened to *their* proposals. The dukes of Berri, Orleans, and Bourbon, with the count of Alençon, consented for themselves and their associates to acknowledge him for rightful duke of Aquitaine, to aid him in the recovery of all the ancient rights and appurtenances of that duchy; to hold of him, by homage and fealty, whatever they possessed within its limits; to restore to him twenty towns belonging to the royalties of the duchy; and to give

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 132—136. Wals. 280.



security that, at the deaths of the present possessors, the counties of Poitou and Angoulême should return to him and his heirs. Henry on his part bound himself to assist them in every just quarrel, as his faithful vassals and subjects; to enter into no treaty with the duke of Burgundy, his children, brothers, or cousins, without their consent; and to send to their immediate assistance a thousand men-at-arms, and three thousand archers, to serve at their cost for three months.<sup>1</sup> The expectation of so powerful a reinforcement infused new spirits into the Armagnacs. When the duke of Burgundy, with the royal army, advanced to besiege the city of Bourges, the duke of Berri threw himself, with eight hundred men-at-arms, within the walls, and threatened to protract the defence to the last man. But there were in both armies persons who viewed with horror this unnatural war, and who dreaded the arrival of the English, as a means of adding to its continuance. It was not difficult to infuse the same sentiments into the principal officers, exhausted as they were by fatigue and enfeebled by disease. An accommodation was at length effected. The Armagnacs submitted to the royal authority; the dukes of Orleans and Burgundy swore to forget their former differences; and in order to cement their present friendship, the first engaged to marry a daughter of the latter, and renounced by letter to Henry his alliance with England. But the joy caused by their reconciliation was immediately damped by the

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1412.  
—

June 10.

July 13.

August 23.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. viii. 738—742. It appears from the contracts between the king and the dukes of Clarence and York, and the earl of Dorset, that this army of 4,000 men required 8,000 horses, and that the pay of the military had for some reason or other considerably advanced. The men-at-arms had 1s. 6d., the archers 9d. per day.—Ibid. 745, 749, 750.



CHAP. intelligence that Thomas duke of Clarence, second  
 V.  
 A.D. 1412. son to the king of England, had landed with an army  
 — in Normandy, had been joined by the counts of Alen-  
 çon and Richmond, and was busily employed in laying  
 waste the country as he advanced. It was in vain  
 that the Armagnacs informed him of the pacification.  
 Six hundred men-at-arms from Guienne hastened to  
 his standard; Maine and Anjou were overrun and  
 plundered; and the king of France was compelled to  
 order all his forces to assemble at Chartres for the  
 defence of the kingdom. But in the meanwhile the  
 duke of Orleans visited the English general, agreed to  
 pay him the sum of two hundred and nine thousand  
 crowns, and gave his brother the count of Angoulême  
 as hostage for the fulfilment of this engagement.  
 Nov. 14. The duke of Clarence professed himself satisfied, and  
 marched his army into Guienne.<sup>1</sup>

1386. While Henry was yet earl of Derby, he had married  
 Mary de Bohun, daughter and co-heiress of the earl  
 of Hereford. This lady bore him four sons, of whom  
 the eldest at his father's accession was in his twelfth  
 year. To have introduced at that period any measure  
 for the settlement of the crown would have seemed  
 to betray a secret doubt of the right which the new  
 king pretended to have to it; and he was content to  
 receive from the lords and commons an oath of alle-  
 giance to himself, and after himself to his eldest son  
 as the heir-apparent.<sup>2</sup> Afterwards, the victory which  
 he gained over the Percies at Shrewsbury proved to  
 him that even of his ancient friends many had become  
 secret adherents to the insurgents; but he had the  
 prudence to forego an inquiry which might have  
 proved dangerous; and in a great council at Worces-  
 1403.  
 October.

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. 153, 154, 156.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 426, 434.



CHAP.

V.

A.D. 1403.

Dec.

1404.

Feb. 9.

1406.

June 7.

Dec. 22.

ter required from all the lords spiritual and temporal a renewal of their allegiance. Two months later the same ceremony was repeated in another great council at London in presence of the ambassadors from France; and then, having thrice received the oaths of his subjects, he ventured to pass in parliament an act vesting the succession to the crown in his four sons and their heirs, in the order of seniority.<sup>1</sup> Besides these sons he had two daughters by the same mother; but they were purposely passed by, perhaps that he might not afford an additional argument in favour of the rightful heir, the earl of March, who claimed by the female line. It was, however, plain that, according to the late settlement, the daughters of his sons might inherit; and, therefore, to do away all ambiguity, two years later a new act was passed, limiting the succession to the crown of England and France to his sons and their issue male; and by this provision perpetually excluding the females.<sup>2</sup> But then it was asked, on what ground did he claim the crown of France? If females could not succeed to it, neither he nor his predecessors had any pretensions, since their right could descend to them only through a female, Isabella, the mother of Edward III. This objection disconcerted the king; and before the end of the session the last act was repealed, and the right of succession to the two crowns was declared to reside in the sons of the king, and their general issue. But even then, though the claim of the females descending from the four princes was distinctly allowed, Henry's daughters themselves were not noticed.<sup>3</sup>

Of the four princes, Henry, the eldest, from his

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 525, 575.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. 574—576.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 580—583. Rym. viii. 462.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1406.

---

proximity to the throne, chiefly attracted the public notice. In the battle of Shrewsbury he had given proofs of personal courage: the success of the war against the insurgents of Wales, which was carried on under his nominal command, reflected a lustre on his youth; and the commons, in an adulatory address, allotted to him the praise of three virtues, of filial respect for the king, of bravery in the field of battle, and of modesty in the readiness with which on all occasions he submitted his own judgment to that of his council.<sup>1</sup> His father, however, had little reason to be satisfied with his conduct. He was headstrong and impetuous in the pursuit of pleasure, and when he was not actually employed in military service, plunged without restraint into all the vices and follies of youth. Probably the reader's recollection has already transported him to those pages, in which the frolics and the associates of the prince have been portrayed by the inimitable pencil of Shakspeare. It may be, indeed, that the particular facts and personages are the mere creatures of the poet's imagination; but it cannot be denied that they are perfectly in unison with the accounts of the more ancient writers, and the traditionary belief of the succeeding century. It should, however, be added, that in the midst of his excesses he occasionally displayed proofs of an ingenuous mind. It happened that one of his associates had been arraigned for felony before the chief justice Gascoigne, the same inflexible magistrate who had withstood the illegal commands of the king at York. The prince imperiously required the release of the prisoner; and, when that was refused, drew his sword on the judge. But Gascoigne coolly ordered him into

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 574.



confinement in the prison of the King's Bench ; and the young Henry had the good sense to submit to the punishment. When the incident was related to his father, "Happy," he exclaimed, "the monarch who possesses a judge so resolute in the discharge of his duty, and a son so willing to yield to the authority of the law."<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1406.  
—

But it was not only the immorality of the prince which created anxiety in the breast of his father. Unguarded and disrespectful expressions, which had dropt from him in the hours of merriment and intoxication, were officiously collected, and conveyed to Henry ; and it was artfully insinuated that he ought to be on his guard against the attempts of an aspiring and unprincipled youth, whose court was already more numerously attended than his own. These suggestions, confirmed by his experience of the warm and enterprising temper of his son, made a deeper impression on the king's mind than might have been expected ; and the prince,<sup>1</sup> to justify himself, wrote exculpatory letters to many of the lords, and proceeded with a numerous train of followers to expostulate with his father. He not only maintained his innocence, but demanded the punishment of his calumniators ; and the monarch, to screen his own friends, required him to wait till the next meeting of parliament.<sup>2</sup> Yet even on such an occasion, if we may believe the earl of Ormond, an eye-witness, he displayed the usual eccentricity of his character. "He disguised himself in a gown of blue satin or damask, wrought full of oylet-holes, and at every oylet the needle wherewith it was made,

1412.  
June 29.

<sup>1</sup> Elmh. 12, Hardyng, 371, and the apology of the prince in Luders, 79—82. Mr. Tyler has shewn that the anecdote respecting the chief justice rests on very doubtful authority (i. 353).

<sup>2</sup> Otterb. 271. Elmham alludes to this circumstance, p. 11.



CHAP. V.  
A.D. 1412. — “hanging still by the silk; and about his arm he wore a dog’s collar set full of S.S. of gold, and the turrets of the same also of fine gold.” Henry received him in his closet attended by four friends, before whom the prince, throwing himself on his knees, and presenting a dagger to his father, besought him to deprive him of life, since he had deprived him of the royal favour. This anecdote has been disputed; but it comes to us from good authority, and does not seem inconsistent with the character of the young prince.<sup>1</sup>

1413. To domestic trouble must be added the state of the king’s health, and the anxieties of his conscience. Though he was only in his forty-sixth year, he bore about him all the symptoms of declining age. Soon after Archbishop Scrope’s insurrection he became afflicted with the most loathsome eruptions on his face, which by the common people were considered as a punishment for the death of that prelate; and a succession of epileptic fits, gradually increasing in violence, was now hurrying him to the grave. The prospect of his fate brought, we are told, to his recollection, the means by which he had acquired, and the blood by which he had preserved, the crown. He began at length to doubt the certainty of his favourite maxim, that the success of the enterprise was a proof that it had received the approbation of Heaven. One day, when he was lying in a fit, and to all appearance was dead, the prince conveyed into another room the crown, which according to custom had been laid on a cushion by the bed-side. The king returning to himself, sternly asked who had borne it away; and on the report of his guards, required the immediate return

<sup>1</sup> Apud Stow, 339, 340.



of the prince. Pacified by his dutiful expressions, he asked him with a sigh: "Alas! fair son, what right have you to the crown, when you know your father had none?" "My liege," answered the young Henry, "with the sword you won it, and with the sword I will keep it." After a pause the king faintly replied: "Well, do as you think best, I leave the issue to God, and hope he will have mercy on my soul."<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.

V.

A.D. 1413.

His last fit seized him while he was praying in St. Edward's chapel at Westminster. He was carried into the abbot's chamber, and quickly expired, on the 19th March, 1413, and in the fourteenth year of his reign.<sup>2</sup> Of his three younger sons, Thomas had been created duke of Clarence, John and Humphrey remained without any title. His daughters Blanche and Philippa were married, the first to the duke of Bavaria, and the other to the king of Denmark. By Jane of Navarre, his second wife, he left no issue.

March 19.

In the preceding reigns the reader has observed the house of commons continually advancing with a silent but steady pace towards importance and authority; under Henry it assumed a still higher tone; addressed the sovereign with greater freedom, and pushed its inquiries into every department of the administration. The king's pecuniary embarrassments, the defect in his title, and the repeated insurrections in favour of

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 163. It is not improbable that this story was framed by the friends of the rival family.

<sup>2</sup> There is a strange story told by Clement Maydestone, on the authority of one of the persons employed to convey the king's body by water from Westminster for interment at Canterbury. Finding themselves in danger from a storm, they threw the dead body into the river in imitation of the mariners, who had treated the prophet Jonah in that manner, and proceeding to Canterbury, deposited the empty coffin in the grave.—Peck, Desider. Curios. ii. 5.



CHAP. Richard and the earl of March, made it his interest  
V.  
A.D. 1413. to court the affections of the people through their  
— representatives;<sup>1</sup> and the men, who originally were  
deemed of no other use than to grant their money,  
became by almost imperceptible degrees a coequal  
and coefficient part of the legislature. The following  
particulars respecting their election, their immunities,  
and their proceedings, have been gleaned from the  
Rolls of Parliament.

1. As the importance of the knights of the shire increased, both the government and its opponents redoubled their exertions to procure the election of their respective friends. Much, however, depended on the partiality of the sheriff, who, as he was always appointed by the court, seldom hesitated to make an undue return at the request of the council. Such conduct had provoked frequent remonstrances during the last reign; they were renewed in the present; and, as a remedy for the abuse, two statutes were now enacted. The first provided that in the next county court held after the delivery of the writ, the day and place of the intended parliament should be announced by proclamation; that all present, both suitors duly summoned for the purpose, and others, should immediately proceed to the election; and that the names of the persons so chosen, whether they were present or absent, should be certified by an indenture under the seals of all those who had voted in their favour. By the second, the sheriff making a false return, or acting in opposition to the former statute, was subjected to a fine of one hundred pounds, and the judges

<sup>1</sup> On one occasion the king invited all the members to dine with him the next day.—Rot. Parl. iii. 493.



of assize were empowered to inquire into such offences, and to pass sentence on the delinquents.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

2. The members of the lower, in common with those of the upper house, possessed by ancient custom the right of freedom from arrest or imprisonment, including not only themselves, but their attendants and servants; and lasting from the day of their departure from their own homes to the moment of their return. This was a valuable, but in these ages, a necessary privilege. Many illegal practices still prevailed, which rendered it expedient that those, who attended their duty in parliament, should be placed under the special protection of the law. Men were liable to arrests on false pretences at the suit of a malicious adversary; they were exposed during their journeys to be waylaid, maimed, or even murdered by enemies who would not submit their quarrel to the decision of the law; and they were often in danger of being despoiled by the organized bands of robbers which infested some of the counties. Henry acknowledged this privilege, but refused to strengthen it with additional penalties. When the commons petitioned that the offender, besides a fine to the king, should pay treble damages to the party aggrieved, he coldly

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 601, 641. I am inclined to think that the word "others," the meaning of which is disputed, was intended to defeat the artifice of the sheriffs, who confined the election to the few suitors whom they summoned for the purpose. Even after this time, it is certain that many elections were made by a very small number of electors. And here I may instance the extraordinary return, made by the sheriff of the county of Dublin, of representatives to attend at a parliament held by Edward III. in England. The court consisted of no more than forty-four persons, of whom twenty-four elected Nicholas Houth and William Fitzwilliam; twenty elected Nicholas Houth and Richard White; and the sheriff returned the latter, because the twenty voters in his favour were of higher rank and greater substance than the twenty-four who voted for his competitor.—Lel. vol. i. App. p. 376.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

replied, that the law had already provided a sufficient remedy. It chanced that soon afterwards an esquire belonging to the representative for Somerset was severely wounded in an assault by John Savage. The commons again petitioned the king. They requested, that to murder any member or his servant should be adjudged treason; to maim or disfigure him, should be punished with the loss of a hand; and to wound or beat him should subject the offender to a heavy fine, and a year's imprisonment. Henry, however, evaded the petition, and issued a proclamation, ordering Savage, under severe penalties, to appear and take his trial before the justices of the King's Bench.<sup>1</sup>

3. Another, and a still more important privilege, was that of freedom of debate. If, during the last reign, it had been impaired by the cruel and unconstitutional judgment of Haxey, it recovered its former stability in the present, by the reversal of that judgment. The speaker was careful to claim it for himself and his colleagues, not only at the beginning of each session, but almost as often as he addressed the throne; and to request that the king would give no credence to reports of interested individuals, but believe that whatever was said in their debates proceeded from their attention to his real interests. Under the protection of this privilege the commons introduced a new practice, of presenting their petitions by word of mouth, instead of committing them to writing; an innovation greatly annoying to Henry, who was often distressed to return at the moment an appropriate answer. It was in vain that he commanded them to revert to the ancient custom. After a short interval the command was disobeyed; each new instance

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 541, 542.



served to form a precedent ; and before the end of the king's reign the practice was firmly established.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

Several of the addresses delivered by different speakers are still extant. They all commence with the most humble professions of loyalty and submission ; soon a bolder tone is assumed ; and they frequently end with a severe censure on the measures of government, or the characters of the ministers. Thus Sir John Tibetot, as speaker, complained that Calais had been left without provisions ; that in twelve months ninety-six towns and castles had been lost in Guienne ; that the greater part of the lordship of Ireland had been conquered by the natives ; that large sums had been unnecessarily squandered away in the marches of Scotland ; that the inhabitants of the sea-coast, and near the borders of Wales, had been impoverished by their exertions in their own defence ; and that all estates in the realm were reduced to the lowest distress ; whence he inferred that it was incumbent on the king to employ for the future more able and experienced counsellors.<sup>2</sup> At length, however, towards the close of his reign, Henry ventured

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. iii. 456, 523, 573.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. 573. Frequently their addresses were delivered in bold and energetic language ; occasionally they are degraded by the most puerile conceits. At the end of the session in 1401, the speaker compared the proceedings of parliament to the ceremonies of the mass. The speeches of the archbishop at the opening were likened to the epistle and gospel ; the king had offered up the sacrifice by promising to support the doctrine of the church ; and the commons were now come at the close to say " Deo gratias." —Ibid. p. 466. This is ridiculous enough ; but I mention it to notice a still more ridiculous mistake by the compiler of Cobbett's *Parliamentary History*, who tells us that the king, lords, and commons, heard mass together, when the archbishop read the epistle and gospel, the king performed the sacrifice, and when they came to " *Ite missa est*" and " *Deo gratias*," the commons offered their grant.—Vol. i. col. 288.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.

---

to check the growing freedom of the speakers; and when Thomas Chaucer was presented to him for his approbation, replied, that the new speaker should enjoy the same liberty which had been enjoyed by former speakers; but that he would not suffer the introduction of any novelty in parliament, and would remain in possession of the same franchises and prerogatives which had belonged to his ancestors, the former kings of England.<sup>1</sup>

4. The real authority of the commons had been defined in the first year of this reign. To one of their petitions the primate answered in the name of the king, that the commons, as they had acknowledged, were only petitioners and demandants; and that the king and lords alone had always been, and would be of right, judges of parliament; but that "it was the king's will to have the advice and assent of the commons in the enactment of statutes, and the making of grants, subsidies, and such things, for the common profit of the realm."<sup>2</sup> They complained, however (with what justice it is now impossible to ascertain), that by false and incorrect entries on the rolls, they were often made parties to enactments to which they had never given their assent. As a remedy, therefore, they prayed that the proceedings might always be engrossed before the close of the session, and while the particulars were fresh in the recollection of the judges; but Henry, without noticing their object, replied, that, for the future, the substance of the proceeding should be committed to writing by the clerk of parliament, and laid before the king and the lords for their approbation. The commons rejoined by pointing out

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 648.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 427.



a case of false entry, and praying redress. The rolls were immediately opened; the judges examined them in presence of the two houses; and the king pronounced the entry correct, and the complaint groundless. This failure did not dishearten them; their remonstrances were renewed in succeeding parliaments; and at last it was agreed that, to prevent errors, every entry should be made in the presence of a deputation from the two houses.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

When Henry first ascended the throne, he sought by public professions of economy to fix the wavering fidelity of his subjects.<sup>2</sup> But the insurrections so rapidly succeeding each other, plunged him into expenses, which it was not in his power to defray with the ordinary revenue of the crown; and to levy money by taxes, or tallages, imposed by his own authority, would, in his circumstances, have proved a most hazardous experiment. He preferred, therefore, to throw himself on the bounty of the nation; and thus contributed to establish the practice of what had long been the only legal method of raising extraordinary supplies. Neither had the king any reason to complain of the parsimony of his parliaments. In virtue of successive grants he enjoyed the tonnage and poundage, with the duties on wool and hides, during the whole of his reign; and in the course of fourteen years received eight tenths and eight fifteenths from the laity, with a proportionate number of tenths from the clergy. His wants, however, afforded opportunities to the commons of confirming and improving their newly acquired rights. They were careful to insert in their grants that the king could not lawfully raise such aids from his people without the previous assent

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. 457, 458, 466, 585.

<sup>2</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 239.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.

---

of the lords and commons.<sup>1</sup> In his second year they made a bold attempt to emancipate themselves from the chief restraint which the crown possessed over them, and prayed that their petitions might be answered before they presented their grant of money. Henry immediately perceived their object; he consulted the lords; and on the last day of the session replied: "That such a manner of proceeding had never been known in the reigns of his predecessors; and that he would not allow any alteration in the good customs of ancient times."<sup>2</sup> During the minority of Richard II. they had occasionally been allowed to appropriate the supplies to particular services. This they now claimed as a right; and the king, that he might evade without offence the formal recognition of their claim, spontaneously offered what they would otherwise have demanded. In 1404 he ordered the estimates of the current year to be laid before them; promised to submit his household to the regulation of the lords; and proposed that the public money should be received and paid by treasurers to be appointed in parliament with the advice of the two houses.<sup>3</sup> From that period they generally appropriated the supply, excepting from it a certain sum to remain at the king's disposal; often exhorted him to moderate his expenses; demanded and procured for that purpose the banishment of four persons from his court,<sup>4</sup> and of most of the foreign attendants

<sup>1</sup> S'il ne soit par les volentes des seigneurs et comunes de vostre royalme, et ceo de nouvell grante a faire en plein parlement.—Rot. Parl. iii. 493, 547.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 458.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 523, 529.

<sup>4</sup> Henry declared in parliament that he knew of no cause why they should quit his service; but as he was convinced that what the lords and commons should ordain was for the advantage of the



on the new queen from the kingdom;<sup>1</sup> and repeatedly extorted his assent to numerous articles of reformation in the government of his household, and of the whole realm. On one occasion they called for the receipts and disbursements of the last supply; but Henry replied, “that kings were not accustomed to account “to their subjects;” on another the accounts were granted, but with an observation, that it was not at the request of the commons, but because it was the will of the council.<sup>3</sup> On the whole, during his reign the commons seem to have firmly established their claim to vote the money of the nation, to appropriate it to particular services, and to inquire into all practices which tended to impoverish the crown, and all grievances which could increase the burdens of the people.

Before I close the subject, I must notice a singular dispute, which shows that the lower house had learned to appreciate its own importance, and knew how to maintain its own liberties. The king had called the lords before him, and exposed to them his wants, and had obtained their assent to a liberal supply. He then sent for a deputation of the commons, and informed them that he expected a similar proof of

realm, he charged the said four persons to depart from his household. They were his confessor, the abbot of Dore, Richard Derham, and Crossby, a valet of his chamber.—Rot. Parl. iii. 523.

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 527. The queen was Joan of Navarre, duchess dowager of Bretagne.

<sup>2</sup> Rex breviter respondebat, quod reges non solebant computum dare.—Wilk. Conc. iii. 282. We may suppose, however, that he yielded; for the same writer tells us that the laymen would grant no supply without the accounts, and we find that they did grant one, from the Rolls.

<sup>3</sup> Baille a mesmes les communes, de la voluntee des ditz seignrs du conseil, et nient a l'instance ne request des ditz communes.—Rot. Parl. iii. 609.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.

---

affection from their colleagues. At the report of the deputation the whole house was in a ferment; they contended that the most valuable of their privileges had been invaded; and interrupted for some time the course of public business. Henry had the wisdom to yield; and ordered the following declaration to be entered on the rolls: "That it shall be lawful for the  
" lords in this parliament and in every parliament to  
" come, to confer together, in the absence of the king,  
" respecting the state of the realm, and the necessary  
" remedies; and that it shall be lawful to the commons  
" in like manner to confer together on the same state  
" and remedies; provided always, that neither the lords  
" on their part, nor the commons on theirs, make any  
" report to the king of any grant granted by the  
" commons, and assented to by the lords, or of the  
" communications between the two houses respecting  
" the said grant, until the same lords and commons  
" are of one assent and accord in this matter; and  
" then in manner and form as hath been accustomed;  
" that is, by the mouth of the speaker of the said  
" commons; to the end that both lords and com-  
" mons may have their thanks of the king." By this declaration Henry appears to have surrendered all claim on the part of the crown to interfere in debates on the subject of supplies, and to have left the two houses on a footing of perfect equality in that respect; though, after they had, by communication with each other, come to an understanding among themselves, the money was said to be "granted by the commons  
" with the assent of the lords."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 611. It appears to me that the complaint of the commons was not that the question respecting the grant had been first introduced in the house of lords, but only that the king had



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

This reign supplies the first instance of a capital execution for the theological crime of heresy. Whether it were that men refused to distinguish between fact and opinion, and on that account visited erroneous persuasion with the same punishment as criminal action, it may not be easy to determine; but we unfortunately find that, in almost every country, whatever may have been the religious belief of the sovereign and the legislature, the severest penalties have repeatedly, and till a very late period, been enacted against dissent from the doctrines established by law. Sir Edward Coke, the great luminary of the English bar in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, teaches that heresy is so extremely and fearfully punished, because it is a crime not against human, but divine Majesty; that it is an infectious leprosy of the soul; and must therefore be cut off, lest it diffuse the contagion.<sup>1</sup> It was perhaps some such metaphorical and fallacious reasoning which persuaded the first Christian emperors to class heresy among the offences liable to civil punishment; it was certainly their example which induced the princes of the northern nations to adopt after their conversion similar regulations. In 1215 the fourth council of Lateran decreed that persons convicted of heresy “should be left to the secular power to be dealt with according to due form of law:” but this was not the introduction of a new system, but merely a declaration of what was then the common law in every country in Europe.

During the last thirty years the English clergy

personally interfered in the matter. His answer leaves either house at liberty to debate on any matter in his absence, whenever it may think proper.

<sup>1</sup> Coke, Inst. iii. 5.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1413.

---

had been goaded with every species of provocation, and yet had exhibited the most exemplary forbearance. Their moderation seemed to invite and sharpen the attacks of their adversaries. The spirit of Wycliffe had lost nothing of its original asperity by transfusion into the breasts of his successors. His itinerant preachers still appealed to the passions and prejudices of the people, against the riches, the luxury, and the vices of the clergy, whom they described as the disciples and associates of Satan; as mercenary shepherds, whose object was to shear the flock here, and lead it to perdition hereafter; as the usurpers of the patrimony of the poor, and of the revenues of the kingdom; as the real cause of the taxes voted by the parliament, and consequently of the poverty felt by the lower classes.<sup>1</sup> Such declamations might perhaps have been despised, had they not led to inferences and attempts of dangerous tendency. The people were advised, were even commanded, not to pay their tithes; and plans were artfully framed, and obstinately pursued, to ob-

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 208, 248, 345, et seq. Knyght. 2657—2669. Knyghton, who through curiosity attended some of their meetings, informs us that, according to their assertion, all good men came over to their sect; none refused but the wicked and reprobate. They called themselves true and evangelical preachers (*veros prædicatores et evangelicos*); their opponents false teachers and enemies of "Goddis lawe." He was surprised to observe how soon their disciples adopted the cant of their masters, and both men and women became teachers of evangelical doctrine (*unum modum statim loquelæ mirabiliter habuerunt. Doctores evangelicæ doctrinæ tam viri quam mulieres subito effecti sunt*).—See Knyghton, 2664, 2665. Though all the preachers seem to have studied in the school of Wycliffe, yet each distinguished himself by some particular doctrine. Most of their tenets were directed against the doctrines and the possessions of the established church; others were subversive of the well-being of society; some must appear absurd to every rational reader; and a few were too indelicate to be mentioned.—See Wilk. p. 248, 345; Knyght. 2669; Wals. 557.



tain the general confiscation of ecclesiastical property. Immediately on his accession Henry proclaimed himself the protector of the church against the assaults of the Lollards. In the first convocation held during his reign his intentions were made known to the clergy by a royal message ; at the opening of the second the king's commissioners, the earl of Northumberland, and Erpingham the lord chamberlain, exhorted the prelates and proctors to take measures for the suppression of the errors disseminated by the itinerant preachers, and promised to them the royal favour and assistance in the pursuit of so salutary an object.<sup>1</sup> In the parliament, which began to sit at the same time, the king's intention to support the established religion was announced from the throne ; and the commons in their address thanked him for his solicitude in favour of the doctrine, and his determination to preserve the liberties of the church.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.

V.

A.D. 1413.

1399.  
Oct. 6.

Encouraged by the royal invitation, the commons joined the clergy in a petition to the king in parliament ; and an act was passed for the protection of the church, and the suppression of the new sect. The preamble sets forth, that divers unauthorized preachers go about teaching new doctrines and heretical opinions, making conventicles and confederacies, holding schools, writing books, misinforming the people, and daily committing enormities too horrible to be heard ; and that the bishops are unable to repress these offences, because the offenders despise ecclesiastical censures, and when they are cited before their ordinaries, depart into another diocese ; the statute therefore provides as a remedy for these evils, that the bishop shall have power to arrest and confine persons defamed or vehe-

1401.  
Jan. 21.

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 239, 254.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 454, 455.



CHAP. V.  
A.D. 1401. — mently suspected of such offences, till they make their canonical purgation; and, if they be convicted, to punish them with imprisonment, and a fine to the king. It then enacts that if any person so convicted shall refuse to abjure such preachings, doctrines, opinions, schools, and misinformations, or after abjuration, shall be proved to have relapsed, then the sheriff of the county, or the mayor and bailiffs of the nearest borough, shall, on requisition, be present at the pronunciation of the sentence, shall receive the person so condemned into custody, and shall cause him to be burnt on a high place before the people, that such punishment may strike terror into the minds of others.<sup>1</sup>

1399.  
May 25.

1401.  
Feb. 12.

Feb. 18.

During this very parliament (whether before or after the passing of the act is uncertain) a petition was presented to the lords and commons by William Sawtre, begging that he might be permitted to dispute before them on the subject of religion. Such a request excited considerable surprise; but the enthusiast aspired to the crown of martyrdom, and had the satisfaction to fall a victim to his own folly. He had been rector of Lynn in Norfolk; but about two years before had been convicted of heresy and deprived of his living. On his recantation he had been lately admitted a chaplain in St. Osith's in London. The character of Sawtre, and the nature of his request, induced the convocation to summon him before them; and six days were allowed him to prepare his answer. The articles objected to him were those of which he had been accused before the bishop of Norwich. With unparalleled effrontery he denied his former conviction and recantation, and, explaining the other

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 466. Wilk. Conc. iii. 252.



articles in an orthodox sense, refused to give any satisfaction on the subject of the eucharist. The trial was adjourned from day to day; and the archbishop, notwithstanding the contempt and insolence of his answers, made a last effort to save him, by asking if he were content to stand on that question by the determination of the church. He answered that he was, provided the determination were agreeable to the will of God; an evasion which of course was rejected. The record of his former conviction and recantation was now produced from the registry of the bishop of Norwich; and on the eleventh day from his arraignment he was pronounced by the primate a relapsed heretic, was degraded from his orders, and delivered into the custody of the constable and marshal of England.<sup>1</sup> About a week afterwards, Henry consulted the temporal lords sitting in parliament,<sup>2</sup> and by their advice issued a precept to the mayor and sheriffs to execute the sentence of the law upon Sawtre. The unhappy man, instead of being shut up in an asylum for lunatics, was burnt to death as a malefactor, in the presence of an immense multitude; and the commons by their speaker returned thanks to the king that, whereas “by bad doctrine the faith of holy church was on the point of being overturned, to the destruction of the king and kingdom, he had made and ordained a just remedy to

Feb. 23.

March 2.

March 10.

<sup>1</sup> Con. iii. 255—260.

<sup>2</sup> During this parliament, and probably at this very time, the commons petitioned the king that “when any man or woman was taken and imprisoned for Lollardism, he might be instantly put on his answer, and have such judgment as he deserved, for an example to others of such wicked sect, that they might soon cease their wicked preachings, and keep themselves to the Christian faith.” It received the royal assent.—Rot. Parl. iii. 473, 474.



CHAP. V. "the destruction of such doctrine and the pursuers  
A.D. 1401. "thereof."<sup>1</sup>

This severity did not, however, subdue the boldness of the preachers. They declaimed with redoubled animosity against the temporalities of the clergy, till the lay proprietors became alarmed for the security of their own possessions. In 1407 the subject attracted the notice of the house of lords; a petition was sent by them to the commons for their concurrence; and it was afterwards presented by the speaker to the king. It stated that the preachers excited the people to take away the possessions of the church, of which the clergy were as assuredly endowed as the

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. 459, 466. There have been writers who have not hesitated to pronounce the statute against the Lollards a forgery, entered on the rolls by the fraud of the clergy after the dismissal of parliament (Coke, 4 Inst. p. 51. See also 3 Inst. p. 40): a singular charge, founded on as singular a blunder. The statute, they say, does not mention the assent of the commons, therefore it never passed in parliament. It would certainly have been as easy to forge that assent as the rest of the instrument; but the fact is, the statute could not mention the assent of the commons because it was passed at their *petition*; in which case the bill was always said to be granted by the king with the assent of the lords, and at the *prayer* of the commons; de l'assent des seigneurs espirituelx et temporelx, et a la *prier* des communes. In the present case the petition was presented by the clergy and the commons conjointly—*prælati et clerus ac etiam communitates dicti regni in eodem parlamento existentes dicto domino regi supplicarunt*—and was in the usual manner granted by the king with the assent of the lords,—*qui quidem dominus rex ex assensu magnatum . . . concessit, ordinavit, et statuit.*—Stat. of Realm, ii. 126. Wilk. Con. iii. 328. Hence it is said in stat. 25 Hen. VIII. that "the clergy impetrated it by *authoritie of parliament.*"—Stat. iii. 454. The usual assumption that the commons favoured the Lollards against the clergy is contrary to fact; for they thanked the king, as the reader has seen above, for his resolution to support the church, in the beginning of the session; they afterwards petitioned for severe measures against the preachers; and at the end expressed their obligations to Henry for having passed this very statute; *pur ceo que nostre Sr le Roy ent ad fait et ordeigne bon et joust remede en destruction de tiele doctrine, et de la secte d'icelle.*—Rot. Parl. iii. 466.



temporal lords were of their inheritances; and that unless these evil purposes were speedily resisted, it was probable that in process of time they would also move the people to take away the possessions and inheritances of the temporal lords, and make them common, to the open commotion of the people, and the utter subversion of the realm. In consequence it was enacted that such persons, together with those who maintained that King Richard was still alive, and others who published false prophecies to delude the people, should be arrested and brought before the next parliament, to receive such judgment as the king and peers in their judicial authority should pronounce.<sup>1</sup>

Hitherto the commons had equalled, perhaps, surpassed, the upper house in hostility to the Lollards. Four years later Henry made the extraordinary request that the laity would empower him to raise a fifteenth, the clergy a tenth, in the years in which he might not summon a parliament. Neither body would entertain the proposal; but the commons, to shift the burden from themselves, advised him to lay it on the church. From its superfluous revenues, so they pretended, he might maintain fifteen earls, fifteen hundred knights, and six thousand two hundred esquires;<sup>2</sup> and also support one hundred hospitals for the relief of the poor. But when the king called for the grounds of this calculation, they had none to offer;

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iii. p. 583. This was only a temporary ordinance to last till the next parliament.—Ibid. There is therefore no reason to suppose that it was excluded from the statute roll by the artifice of the clergy. Indeed Otterburne tells us that none of the statutes made at that time were carried into execution.—Otter. 261.

<sup>2</sup> The income of an earl was stated at 3,000 marks a year, of a knight at 100 marks and four ploughlands, and of an esquire at forty marks and two ploughlands.



CHAP.  
V.  
A.D. 1401.  
—

and Henry severely reprimanded them for their presumption, and desired never more to hear of the subject.<sup>1</sup> This check appears to have silenced the advocates of the new doctrines during the remainder of his reign.

<sup>1</sup> Wals. 379. Otterb. 267. Fab. 575. How far this account may be true is uncertain. No vestige of the transaction is to be found on the rolls; no notice is taken of it in the acts of the convocation, which was then sitting. Yet something extraordinary had passed; for on the 8th of February the commons prayed the king to give them back their petition respecting the statute against the Lollards, and not to suffer any part of it to be enacted. He assented as a special favour, provided it were not drawn into a precedent.—Rot. Parl. 623. What was the object of the petition does not appear; probably it was that mentioned above.



## CHAPTER VI.

## HENRY V.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

|                                                 |                                    |                                     |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Emp. of Germ.</i><br>Sigismund.              | <i>K. of Scotland.</i><br>James I. | <i>K. of France.</i><br>Charles VI. | <i>K. of Spain.</i><br>Henry III. 1416.<br>John I. |
| <i>Popes.</i><br>John XXIII. 1415.    Martin V. |                                    |                                     |                                                    |

SUCCESSION OF HENRY V.—INSURRECTION OF THE LOLLARDS—  
INVASION OF FRANCE—BATTLE OF AZINCOURT—SECOND INVA-  
SION OF FRANCE—CONQUEST OF NORMANDY—MURDER OF THE  
DUKE OF BURGUNDY—HENRY IS MADE REGENT OF FRANCE—  
REDUCES MEAUX—AND DIES—HIS FUNERAL—AFFAIRS OF THE  
CHURCH.

THE late king had outlived his popularity, and the intelligence of his death excited little regret in any part of his dominions. His eldest son, Henry of Monmouth, immediately ascended the throne. He had so long been considered heir-apparent, that the claim of the earl of March was never mentioned; and though his errors had created a prejudice against him, his subjects were willing to attribute them rather to the giddiness of youth than to depravity of heart. Neither did he disappoint their expectations. As soon as his father expired he withdrew to his closet, spent the rest of the day in privacy and prayer, and

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1413.

—  
March 19.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

in the evening hastened to his confessor, a recluse in the church of Westminster; by whom he was confirmed in his resolution to atone for the scandal of his past, by the propriety of his subsequent conduct. The dissolute companions of his pleasures were instantly dismissed; men of knowledge and experience were invited round the throne; and those who by checking his excesses had earned the enmity of the *prince*, found themselves, to their surprise, honoured with the approbation and friendship of the *king*.<sup>1</sup> As an act of justice, he set at liberty the earl of March, who from his childhood had been kept in confinement by the late monarch, for no other crime than his right to the throne; after some time he restored the son of Hotspur, an exile in Scotland, to the honours and hereditary estates of the Percies; and when the remains of the unfortunate Richard were removed by his orders from Langley to Westminster Abbey, he testified his respect for that prince by attending as chief mourner in the funeral procession.<sup>2</sup>

Henry had partaken of the general alarm excited among the higher classes by the levelling principles

<sup>1</sup> Repente mutatus est in virum alterum, honestati, modestiæ, gravitati studens.—Wals. 382. Otterb. 273. Elm. 16. Tit. Liv. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 6, 37. Wals. 385. Otterb. 274. See payments on this occasion in Pell Records, p. 326. “After a solemn tement there holden, he provided that iiij tapers shuld brenne daye “and nyght about his (Richard’s) grave whyle the world endureth; “and one day in the week a solemne *Dirige*, and upon the morrowe “a masse of *Requiem* by note, after which masse endyd to be gyven “wekely unto pore people xi. s viii in pens, and upon the daye of “his anniversary, after the sayd masse of *Requiem* is songe, to be “yerely distrybuted for his soul xx li. in d.”—Fabyan, 577. No one can believe that Henry, had he not been convinced that the Richard in Stirling castle was an impostor, would have acted in this manner. In any other supposition he would have been guilty, gratuitously and deliberately, of hypocrisy and sacrilege.



of the Lollards; and when he was only prince of Wales, had joined the lords and commons in presenting a petition to his father for the arrest and punishment of their preachers.<sup>1</sup> Now, however, the chiefs of the sect, whether they were urged forward by enthusiasm, or intoxicated with success, instead of labouring to remove these unfavourable impressions, sought to intimidate their adversaries. During Henry's first parliament, papers were affixed to the doors of churches in London, stating that, if force were employed to suppress the new doctrines, a hundred thousand men would be found ready to draw the sword in their defence.<sup>2</sup> It was a bold, and at that moment a most alarming announcement; for it was made at a time, when the king, the nobility, and the capital of France were actually in the possession and at the mercy of a lawless and infatuated populace.<sup>3</sup> An inquiry was instituted, and with the aid of Burton, "the king's spy," the authors or abettors of these papers were traced to Cowling, the residence of Sir John Oldcastle, who, having married the heiress of the last Lord Cobham, had been summoned to the house of lords in right of his wife. Hitherto he had made no great display of religious principle. During the last reign, among the wild and dissolute companions of the prince his pre-eminence in vice had been universally admitted, and so firmly established was his reputation in that respect, that for more than a century after his death Sir John Oldcastle continued to tread the stage in the character which has since been transferred to the facetious knight, Sir John Falstaff.<sup>4</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

May 15.

<sup>1</sup> See history of the last reign.

<sup>2</sup> Walsing. 382.

<sup>3</sup> See Rym. ix. 51.

<sup>4</sup> Persons calls him "the ruffian knight, as all England knows,



CHAP. VI.  
A.D. 1413. — Now, however, he had made himself the patron of the new teachers; and Cowling became their headquarters, whence they issued on their missions into the neighbourhood, setting at defiance the authority of the bishops and the officers of the ecclesiastical courts.

June 21. The convocation, to spare the honour of a man so intimate with the sovereign,<sup>1</sup> instead of summoning him before them, denounced him to the king as the supporter of false doctrine. Henry undertook to convert his friend with all the zeal of an apostle; but the disciple ventured to contradict his master, and suddenly withdrew from Windsor to Cowling. His

August 21. departure was followed by a proclamation ordering the magistrates to apprehend all itinerant preachers, and by a direction to the archbishop to proceed against Oldcastle according to law. The spiritual powers of that prelate were soon exhausted; but the knight, aware of the necessity of satisfying the king, returned to Windsor with a new confession of faith subscribed by himself. Henry refused to receive it; confessions of faith were matters appertaining to the bishops, not to him.<sup>2</sup> Foiled in this instance, the knight offered

“commonly brought in by the commediants on their stage.”—Three Conv. pt. 1. p. 317. This was about the year 1603. It was afterwards thought proper to withdraw him from the drama, and to supply his place with the facetious knight, who still treads the stage under the name of Sir John Falstaff.

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 330, 338, 352, 353.

<sup>2</sup> This document still exists. It begins with the apostles' creed, and the doctrine of the trinity, and then declares that no man can be saved unless he be a member of the church. Now the church consists of three bodies,—1. of the saints in heaven, who during life renounced Satan, the world, and the flesh; 2. of the souls in purgatory, abiding the mercy of God, and a full deliverance of pain; 3. and of the church militant, which church is subdivided into three estates: 1. of the priesthood, which ought to teach the scripture purely, and give example of good living; 2. of knighthood, which,



to clear himself from the suspicion of heresy upon oath with a hundred impurgators of the same rank, or to abide the decision of God by meeting in single combat any adversary, Christian or infidel, who dared to accept his challenge. But Henry coolly inquired if he would submit to the decision of the bishops, and on his reply that he appealed from their judgment to that of the pope, committed him to the Tower, that he might be forthcoming on the day mentioned in the citation already received by him from the archbishop of Canterbury.

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1413.  
—

On his appearance in court, his demeanour was as arrogant and insulting as that of his judge was mild and dignified. Not content with signifying his dissent from the established creed, he poured out a torrent of abuse against all those by whom it was upheld. He maintained that the church had ceased to teach the doctrine of the gospel from the moment that it became infected with the poison of worldly riches; that the clergy were the antichrist; that the pope was the head, the bishops and prelates the limbs, and the religious orders the tail of the beast; and that the only true successor of St. Peter was he who most faithfully practised the virtues of St. Peter. Then turning to the spectators, and extending his arms, he exclaimed: "Beware of the men who sit here as my judges. They will seduce both you and them-

Sept. 23.

having the sword, should compel the priesthood to fulfil its duty, and should seclude all false teachers; and 3. of the common people, who ought to bear true obedience to their kings, and civil governors, and priests. It moreover declares that the sacraments are necessary to all believers, and that in the sacrament of the altar is contained very Christ's body and blood, that was born of the virgin and died on the cross. If a better faith than this can be taught by the word of God, the subscriber will most reverently at all times subscribe thereunto.



- CHAP. VI.  
A.D. 1413. — “selves, and will lead you to hell.” He was brought to the bar on two different days, and persisting in his opinions, was pronounced an obstinate heretic.<sup>1</sup>
- Oct. 10. The primate, however, when he delivered him to the civil magistrate, procured from the king a respite of fifty days; during which Oldcastle found the means
- Oct. 28. to escape from the Tower and to communicate with the most ardent of his partisans. Emissaries were immediately despatched into the neighbouring counties; the aid of the preachers was invoked; and crowds of fanatics held themselves in readiness to march to the metropolis. The first plan of the leaders was to surprise the king and his brothers during the Christmas festivities at Eltham. It failed through the unexpected departure of the court to Westminster. These men resolved to make a demonstration of their strength by meeting in the fields at St. Giles’s on the morrow of the Epiphany. This Henry, with the example of Paris before his eyes, determined to prevent. Having secured the gates of the city, to separate the Lollards within the walls from those without, he proceeded soon after midnight with a strong force to the place of rendezvous. The roads were covered with insurgents repairing from all quarters towards St. Giles’s. The first comers, who to the question—for whom are you?—replied by the preconcerted watchword, “for Sir John Oldcastle,” were disarmed and secured. By degrees a few made their escape; they spread the alarm; and the parties on their march precipitately dispersed. Of the prisoners, about seventy were tried and condemned at
1414.  
Jan. 11, 12.

<sup>1</sup> From the acts in Rymer, ix. 61, 66, and Wilkins, iii. 353—357. Dr. Southey (Book of the Church, i. 379) relies on the authority of Foxe.



the sessions at Westminster; and one half of these paid the forfeit of their lives. Two of the leaders, Sir John Oldcastle and Sir Thomas Talbot, escaped; a third, Sir Roger Acton, was taken, condemned, drawn, and hanged. His dead body was buried under the gallows.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1414.

Feb. 12.

But what could be the object of these misguided men? It was to remodel the state according to the doctrines of their sect; to reform both the “priest-hood and the knighthood,” under the auspices of Sir John Oldcastle. Hence the commons in their address to the king state that the insurgents sought “to destroy the Christian faith, the king, the spiritual and temporal estates, and all manner of policy and law;” and Henry in his proclamation declares that they meant “to destroy him, his brothers, and several of the spiritual and temporal lords, to confiscate the possessions of the church, to secularize the religious orders, to divide the realm into confederate districts, and to appoint Sir John Oldcastle president of the commonwealth.” The failure of the insurrection had the usual effect of adding to the severity of the penal laws already in existence. It was enacted that all judges and magistrates should be authorized to arrest persons suspected of Lollardism, and deliver them over to the ecclesiastical courts; and

<sup>1</sup> The admirers of Sir John Oldcastle are at a great loss how to exculpate him and the Lollards on this occasion. The testimony of the old chroniclers (Tit. Liv. 6. Wals. 385, 6. Elm. 31, 32) is fully borne out by parliamentary documents, judicial records, and royal proclamations.—Rot. Parl. iv. 24, 108. Rym. ix. 89, 119, 129, 170, 193. Hence Fuller remarks in his usually quaint style, “Let Mr. Foxe be this Lord Cobham’s compurgator. I dare not, and, if my hand were on the book, I would take it back again. Yet so that, as I will not acquit, I will not condemn him, but leave all to the revelation of the righteous judgment of God.”—Church Hist. l. iv. p. 168.



CHAP. VI. that the prisoners on their conviction should forfeit  
A.D. 1414. their lands, goods, and chattels, as in cases of felony.<sup>1</sup>

— The restoration of tranquillity allowed the king to direct his attention towards the French throne, which was still occupied by an imbecile monarch, and was daily undermined by the rage of contending factions. Within the course of a few months the reins of government had successively passed from the hands of John, the fearless duke of Burgundy, to the dauphin, a young prince, rash, headstrong, and capricious;<sup>2</sup> to the populace of the capital, whose ephemeral superiority had been accompanied with the imprisonment or massacre of the lords and ladies attached to the court;<sup>3</sup> and lastly to the duke of Orleans, who persisted in waging a successful but impolitic war against the Burgundians, the ancient foes of his family. To the aspiring mind of Henry these troubles opened a most alluring prospect. He determined to revive the claim, and tread in the footsteps of his great-grandfather Edward III.; and, if he consented to a succession of short truces at the prayer of Charles, it was only that he might have leisure to mature his plans, to provide money for his expenses, and to open the war with an army adequate to his object. A little more than a year had elapsed from his accession when he unexpectedly demanded the crown of France, with all its appurtenances, as the heir of Isabella,

1413.  
April 28.

1414.  
July 10.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 24. Stat. of Realm, ii. 181. In this parliament the king's brothers, John and Humphrey, were made dukes of Bedford and Gloucester.—Elm. 33.

<sup>2</sup> He is said to have sent in derision to Henry a present of tennis-balls. The king promised to return the compliment with English balls, which should batter to the ground the walls of Paris.—Otterb. 275.

<sup>3</sup> See the letter of the king of France in Rymer, ix. 51, and the account of Monstrelet, i. 165—170.



daughter of Philip IV. The French ministers might have replied that he was not the legitimate representative of that princess;<sup>1</sup> but they deemed the claim an insult to the national independence, and refused to admit it even as a subject of discussion. Henry therefore consented that Charles should continue to possess his throne, but required, as the price of his forbearance, conditions which would have reduced France to a secondary station among the powers of Europe; that he should cede to England in full sovereignty the provinces of Normandy, Maine, and Anjou; the territories which formerly composed the duchy of Aquitaine, and the several towns and counties included in the great peace of Bretigny; that he should put Henry in possession of one half of Provence, the inheritance of Eleanor and Sanchia, the queens of Henry III. and of his brother Richard, and two of the four daughters of Berenger, once sovereign of that country; that he should faithfully discharge the arrears of the ransom of King John, amounting to twelve hundred thousand crowns; and that he should give his daughter Catherine in marriage to the king of England with a portion of two millions of crowns.<sup>2</sup> To these demands Henry had been persuaded to descend by his council, who told him that by such moderation he would throw the blame of refusal on his adversaries, and “deserve through God’s grace better speed and conclusion.” The duke of Berri, the organ of the French government, replied, that Charles for the sake of peace was willing to restore all the

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1414.

August.

<sup>1</sup> The reader will recollect that our kings claimed the French crown on the plea that it could descend by females. Now in that hypothesis it belonged not to Henry, but to the earl of March.

<sup>2</sup> Two crowns were equal to a noble English.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1414.

territories anciently comprehended within the duchy of Aquitaine, and to give with his daughter six hundred thousand crowns, a greater portion than had ever been given on a similar occasion by any of his predecessors. By a prince of ordinary ambition such offers would have been cheerfully accepted. It was evident that they were made, not on account of the real superiority of England, but of the temporary embarrassments of France; and there was reason to fear that, if they should be refused, the different factions might unite against the common enemy, and by their union defeat all his projects. Great, however, as they were, they did not satisfy the expectations of Henry.<sup>1</sup> He recalled his ambassadors, summoned a parliament, avowed his intention of vindicating his right by arms, and obtained a supply of two tenths and two fifteenths.<sup>2</sup> The grant of so large a sum created considerable alarm in the French court, and Henry resolved to make a second attempt by negotiation. A few days before the conclusion of the armistice the earl of Dorset, with the bishops of Durham and Norwich, and a retinue of six hundred horsemen, entered Paris, where, by their parade and magnificence, they surprised and mortified the vanity of the French.<sup>3</sup> Their first object was easily attained, to prolong the truce during four months. They next proposed a treaty of peace and alliance on a new basis. The claim of Normandy, Maine, and Anjou was entirely abandoned; they consented to accept the princess with half the sum originally required; but every other demand made by the late embassy

1415.  
Jan. 24.

March 13.

<sup>1</sup> The whole process of the negotiation is to be found in Rymer, ix. 208. See also Acts of Coun. ii. 141, 150.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 35.

<sup>3</sup> Monstrel. i. 216.



was repeated and enforced. The duke of Berri gave the same answer, with this unimportant difference, that he offered eight instead of six hundred thousand crowns as the marriage portion of Catherine. The ambassadors immediately returned.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.  
March 14.

It is probable that the result of the negotiation was not displeasing to Henry. His counsellors might wish to avert the impending calamities of the war ; but the young hero longed to encircle his brow with the laurels of conquest. A council of fifteen spiritual and twenty-eight temporal peers was immediately assembled ; the king declared his resolution "to recover his inheritance" by arms ;<sup>2</sup> and his speech was received with applause and assurances of support. The duke of Bedford, one of his brothers, accepted the office of regent during the royal absence ; his duties and powers were specified ; the members of the council appointed ; and the terms of military service arranged.<sup>3</sup> The barons and knights, anxious to obtain

April 16.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 205, 212—215.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 222. Acts of Coun. ii. 155.

<sup>3</sup> The following were the terms, and the manner of raising the army. 1. Contracts were made by the keeper of the privy seal with different lords and gentlemen, who bound themselves to serve with a certain number of men for a year, from the day on which they were first mustered. 2. The pay of a duke was to be 13s. 4d. per day ; an earl, 6s. 8d. ; a baron or banneret, 4s. ; a knight, 2s. ; an esquire, 1s. ; an archer, 6d. 3. The pay, or security for its amount, was to be delivered by the treasurer a quarter of a year in advance ; and if the money were not actually paid at the beginning of the fourth quarter, the engagement was to be at an end. As an additional remuneration, each contractor received "the usual regard," or *douceur* of 100 marks for every thirty men-at-arms. 4. A duke was to have fifty horses ; an earl, twenty-four ; a baron or banneret, sixteen ; a knight, six ; an esquire, four ; an archer, one. The horses were to be furnished by the contractor, the equipment by the king. 5. All prisoners were to belong to the captors ; but if they were kings, the sons of kings, or officers high in command bearing commissions from kings, they were to belong to the crown, on the payment of a reasonable recompense to the captors. 6. The booty



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

renown, or to secure the royal favour, engaged to furnish troops according to their abilities; parliament granted two tenths and fifteenths; all alien priories not conventual, more than one hundred in number, were dissolved, and given to the crown; and Henry himself pawned his jewels, solicited loans, and by great exertions amassed the sum of five hundred thousand nobles in ready money.<sup>1</sup>

June.

The French ministers had made no preparations to meet the storm with which they were threatened. Occupied in maintaining the ascendancy over their domestic rivals, they had flattered themselves that the king of England would accept the terms which had been offered him; and with this fallacious expectation they even now sent the archbishop of Bourges and the earl of Vendôme, to repeat the proposals which had lately been made by the duke of Berri. The ambassadors were introduced to the king at Winchester; the next day Henry Chicheley, who had lately succeeded to the archbishopric of Canterbury, informed them that his sovereign would accept nothing short of the restoration of all the territories which had ever been possessed by his predecessors; and Henry, following the primate, added, that the crown of France was his right, and that he would wrest it from its unjust possessor in defiance of all his enemies. These words aroused the spirit of the archbishop of Bourges, who, having previously obtained permission, replied, that if the king attributed to fear the offers which had been made, he deceived

taken was to be divided into three parts. Two remained to the men; the third was again divided into three parts, of which the leader took two, and left the third to the king. See the several contracts in Rymer, ix. 223, 227—239.

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 241, 271, 284—7. Rot. Parl. iv. 24, 35.



himself. The throne of France was the most excellent in Europe. It would require more than the power of England to shake it. Let Henry, if he chose, make the attempt; he would either be driven back to sea, or would pay the forfeit of his presumption with his liberty, perhaps with his life. As for himself, the archbishop added, that he had nothing more to do in England. He requested passports; but trusted that the king would give the answer in writing, and spare him the pain of delivering so insulting a message by word of mouth. Henry did not resent the freedom of the prelate, but dismissed him and his colleague with valuable presents.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

July 1.

Every preparation was now complete; the army had assembled at Southampton; and the king superintended the embarkation. At that very moment, while his mind was occupied with visions of conquest and glory, he was suddenly alarmed with the intelligence that a conspiracy against his life had been formed in the bosom of his own family and household. The ringleader was his cousin Richard, a brother to the duke of York, and lately created earl of Cambridge. The principal accomplices were Sir Thomas Grey of Heton, a Northumbrian knight, and the lord Scrope of Masham, who had been honoured with the highest employments in the state, and was, both in bed and at board, at the council-table and in the chase, the king's individual companion. What motives could induce them to form the design, or whence they derived their hopes of success, it is impossible to discover; the historian must content himself with

July 21.

<sup>1</sup> See Monstrelet (i. 22), who praises the spirit, and Elmham (p. 30) and Walsingham (p. 389), who reprove the insolence of the French prelate. The king's answer is in *Thresor des Chartres*, 79.



CHAP. VI. describing the facts as they appear upon record. By  
 A.D. 1415. an inquest of twelve jurors of the county it was found,  
 August 2. but on what testimony is not mentioned, that the earl  
 of Cambridge had conspired with Sir Thomas Grey to  
 collect a body of armed men, to conduct the earl of  
 March to the frontiers of Wales, and to proclaim him  
 the rightful heir to the crown in case Richard II.  
 were really dead;<sup>1</sup> and had also by their emissaries  
 solicited Thomas of Trumpyngton, who still person-  
 ated Richard, Henry Percy, who had not yet returned  
 from Scotland, and several Scottish lords, to invade the  
 king's dominions at an appointed time; and that the  
 lord Scrope had received from them the knowledge of  
 their treasonable intentions, had concealed that know-  
 ledge from the king and council, and had given to the  
 conspirators his aid and abettance. On this indictment  
 the prisoners were arraigned, and severally pleaded  
 guilty; but the lord Scrope added, that his intention  
 was innocent, as his only object in learning, was to  
 defeat the plans of the conspirators. The usual judg-  
 ment of treason was passed against Grey; but the  
 king commuted the most disgraceful parts of the  
 sentence. Instead of being drawn, he was permitted  
 to walk to the place of execution, and suffered de-  
 August 5. capitation instead of being hanged. Cambridge and  
 Scrope claimed the privilege of being tried by their  
 peers. The duke of Clarence presided in the place  
 of the king; all the lords in the army were sum-  
 moned; and the duke of York, that he might not  
 sit in judgment on his brother, appointed the earl of  
 Dorset his proxy. By this court both were con-

<sup>1</sup> It should be observed that the earl of Cambridge had married Anne, sister to the earl of March, who, on the death of her brother without issue, would have had the real right to the crown.



demned,<sup>1</sup> and after a fruitless appeal by the earl of Cambridge to the mercy of his royal relative, were executed. Though the earl of March sat among the judges at the trial, he soon afterwards received from Henry a general pardon for all treasons and offences; whence it has been inferred by some writers that he was privy to the conspiracy, and had secured the royal favour by betraying his accomplices. But the inference is not warranted by the practice of the age. Such pardons were frequently solicited by the most innocent, as a measure of precaution to defeat the malice, and prevent the accusations of their enemies.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.  
—

Henry's impatience had hastened the trial and execution of the conspirators. As soon as the wind would permit, he left Southampton; and after a rapid voyage entered the mouth of the Seine with a fleet of fifteen hundred sail, carrying six thousand men-at-arms and twenty-four thousand archers. Three days were consumed in landing the men, stores, and provisions; and immediately Harfleur, a strong fortress on the right bank of the river, was invested by land and blockaded by water. The knights in garrison, confident in their valour and numbers, repeatedly assailed the intrenchments of the besiegers; but successive defeats taught them to confine themselves within the walls; their defences were in a short time shattered or demolished by the artillery and the miners; and in the fifth week they submitted to an unconditional surrender. Henry seated himself on his throne under a magnificent tent, which was raised

August 13.

August 15.

August 18.

Sept. 22.

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 64—67.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. ix. 303. It is indeed true that the earl of Cambridge in his written confession charges the earl of March with having assented to the plan; but the charge was disbelieved, or passed over in silence.—Rot. Parl. iv. 66.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.  
—

for the purpose on the summit of the hill, opposite to the town. On his right hand stood Sir Robert Umfravile, bearing on the point of a lance the king's helmet surmounted with a crown; on each side were ranged the chief of the English nobility; and in this state the king received Gaucourte the governor, and thirty-four burgesses, who on their knees presented to him the keys of the town, and threw themselves on his mercy. He ordered his banner and that of St. George to be fixed over the principal gate, and pronounced his pleasure that the men-at-arms should depart in their doublets, after taking an oath to yield themselves prisoners within a fixed time to the governor of Calais; that the inhabitants, men, women, and children, should quit their homes for ever, carrying with them a portion of their clothes, and five pennies each to procure subsistence; and that the riches of the town, with the arms and horses of the garrison, should be faithfully distributed among the conquerors, according to their terms of service. Harfleur in his estimation had already become a second Calais; but its reduction had been purchased with the sacrifice of many officers and men, who perished not only from the casualties of the siege, but from the ravages of a dysentery caused by the dampness of the place, the immaturity of the fruits, and the exhalations from the putrid remains of animals slaughtered for the use of the camp. When the sick and wounded had been sent to England, and a competent garrison had been selected for the defence of the place, the army was reduced to one half of its former number; a force evidently too inconsiderable to attempt any expedition of importance.<sup>1</sup> But the

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 9—11. Wals. 390, 391. Elm. 40—49. Monstrel, i. 223, 224, 226. Hardyng, 389.



king's honour was now at stake. He first sent a personal challenge to the dauphin, and, receiving no answer, took the bold and chivalrous resolution of marching to Calais through the hostile provinces of Normandy, Picardy, and Artois. It was in vain that the uselessness of so hazardous an expedition was represented by the majority of the council; the objections of prudence were opposed by the fear of incurring the imputation of cowardice; and every voice was silent, as soon as the king had declared that he would never shun the men who had unjustly seized his inheritance.

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

The army, consisting of nine hundred lances and five thousand archers, proceeded in three grand divisions, attended by two detachments, which alternately served as wings in the field, and as van and rear guards on the march.<sup>1</sup> At every step they were closely watched by strong bodies of the enemy, who, while they avoided an engagement, cut off the stragglers, and laid waste the country. The progress of the English was slow. Often they were compelled to pass the day without food; and it was with difficulty that they could extort a scanty subsistence from the fears of the inhabitants in the villages where they rested for the night. As they crossed the river Bresle, they were attacked by the garrison of Eu with loud shouts and amazing impetuosity;<sup>2</sup> but they received the assailants with coolness, and after a sharp contest

Oct. 8.

Oct. 11.

<sup>1</sup> Livius observes on this arrangement, that it was the custom of the English (p. 12). Elmham also says, *ut moris est* (p. 51). Hardyng, who was present, makes the English quit Harfleur on Tuesday the first, but his own narrative shows that it was Tuesday the eighth, of the month.

<sup>2</sup> *Clamore et impetu maximo—cantu terrifico et impetu maximo, ut moris est Gallis.*—Tit. Liv. 13.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.  
—

- drove them back to the fortress. Henry had intended, like his grandfather Edward III., to pass the Somme at Blanchetacque; but his scouts informed him that the ford was intersected with palisades, behind which had been posted strong bodies of archers and men-at-arms. Aware of his danger, he passed the night at Arrames, and avoiding Abbeville, where D'Albret, the constable of France, had established his head-quarters, proceeded to Bailleul. But D'Albret did not lose sight of his enemy. From the right bank he watched the motions of the English, who, as they advanced along the opposite bank, had the mortification to find every ford broken up, and guarded by divisions of the hostile army. From the neighbourhood of Corbie the king, taking advantage of the winding of the river, cut across the country to Boves, and on his march thence to Nefles, halting his men in a valley, ordered the archers to provide themselves with stakes six feet long, and to sharpen them at each extremity. The constable had been obliged to pursue a more circuitous route by Peronne, whence he had sent forward orders to guard every ford higher up the river. But these orders had not been received, or had been neglected by the militia of St. Quintin's; and at Nefles Henry received advice, that the passage was still open at Voyenne and Bethencourt. Four bannerets crossed immediately; the rest of the army with the baggage followed under their protection; and in twelve hours the English had taken a safe position on the right bank. Henry marched forward to Monchy la Gauche; the constable fell back to Bapaume, and thence to St. Pôl.

Whilst that commander yet guarded the passages of the Somme, a military council had been held at



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.  
—

Rouen in the presence of Charles, and a resolution was taken to give battle to the English by a majority of thirty-five voices to five. The twenty-fifth of the month was fixed for the day, and a proclamation was issued, calling on all true knights and loyal Frenchmen to join the constable by that time, wheresoever he might be. Henry was still at Monchy when three heralds were introduced to him by the duke of York. They delivered their message on their knees, announcing that their countrymen were ready to meet him in the field on the Friday following. The king answered with apparent indifference, that the will of God would be done. They inquired by what road he intended to march. "By that which leads straight to Calais," was the reply; "and if my enemies attempt to intercept me, it will be at their peril. I shall not seek them; but I will not move a step quicker or slower to avoid them. I could, however, have wished that they had adopted other counsels, instead of determining to shed the blood of Christians." It is probable that the last words alluded to the private challenge which the king had sent from Harfleur, and which, if we may believe his solemn declaration, had been made for the sole purpose of sparing the blood of men who had no personal interest in their quarrel. The heralds, who had delivered their message under considerable apprehensions, received a present of one hundred crowns, and returned impressed with a deep veneration for the character of the king.<sup>1</sup>

The English continued their march leisurely and in good order. Leaving Peronne on their left, they passed through Encre and Lucheu to Blangy, where

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 226. Liv. 14. Elm. 55. Hardyng, 391.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

Oct. 24.

the deep and rapid stream of the Ternois intersected the road; but the detachment arrived in time to secure the bridge, which the French were preparing to demolish; and the whole army crossed without molestation. In a short time the duke of York discovered several large masses of the enemy marching in the direction of Azincourt; and Henry, having reconnoitred them from an eminence, gave orders to form a line of battle. The men remained in their ranks till it was dark; but as no enemy approached, they broke up in the evening, and advanced in silence by a white road which lay before them. Fortunately it led to Maisoncelles, a large village, where they found better food, and more comfortable accommodation than they had known for some weeks.<sup>1</sup>

It was with difficulty that the constable had checked the impetuosity of his followers, whose confidence of victory seemed to be warranted by the immense superiority of their force. But he knew, that in the fatal battles of Creci and Poitiers, the French had been the assailants, and he determined on the present occasion to leave that dangerous honour to the English. To him delay could bring only new accessions of force; to them it was pregnant with famine and inevitable destruction. On this account he had selected a strong position in the fields in front of the village of Azincourt, through which it was necessary for the king of England to cut his way, unless he would consent to yield himself prisoner. His marshals had allotted their stations to the different divisions of the army; and each lord had planted his banner on the spot which he intended to occupy during the battle. The night was cold, dark, and

<sup>1</sup> Elm. 56; Monstrel. i. 227; and Hardyng, 394.



rainy; but numerous fires illumined the horizon; and bursts of laughter and merriment were repeatedly heard from the French lines. The men collected round their banners, spent their time in revelling and debate, discussed the probable events of the next day, and fixed the ransom of the English king and his barons. No one suspected the possibility of defeat; and yet they could not be ignorant that they lay not far from the field of Creci.<sup>1</sup>

To the English it was a night of hope and fear, of suspense and anxiety. They had been wasted with disease, broken with fatigue, and weakened by the many privations which must attend the march of an army through a hostile country, and in the presence of a superior force. But they were supported by the spirit and confidence of their gallant leader, and by the proud recollection of the victories won in similar circumstances by their fathers. As men, however, who had staked their lives on the issue of the approaching battle, they spent the intervening moments in making their wills, and in attending to the exercises of religion. The king himself took little repose. He visited the different quarters of the army, sent as soon as the moon arose officers to examine the ground, arranged the operations of the next day, ordered bands of music to play in succession during the night, and before sunrise summoned the men to attend at matins and mass. From prayer he led them into the field, and arrayed them after his usual manner in three divisions and two wings; but so near to each other, that they seemed to form but one body. The archers, on whom he rested his principal hope, were placed in advance of the men-at-arms. Their well-earned reputation

Oct. 25.

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 227.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

---

in former battles, and their savage appearance on the present day, struck terror into their enemies. Many had stripped themselves naked; the others had bared their arms and breasts, that they might exercise their limbs with more ease and execution. Besides his bow and arrows, his battle-axe or sword, each bore the stake already mentioned on his shoulder, which he was instructed to fix obliquely before him in the ground, and thus oppose a rampart of pikes to the charge of the French cavalry. The king himself appeared on a grey palfrey, followed by a train of led horses ornamented with the most gorgeous trappings. His helmet was of polished steel, surmounted with a crown sparkling with jewels; and on his surcoat were emblazoned in gold the arms of England and France.<sup>1</sup> As he rode from banner to banner, cheering and exhorting the men, he chanced to hear an officer express a wish to his comrade that some of the good knights, who were sitting idle in England, might by a miracle be transported to the field of battle. "No," exclaimed Henry, "I would not have  
" a single man more. If God gives us the victory,  
" it will be plain that we owe it to His goodness. If  
" He do not, the fewer we are, the less will be the loss  
" to our country. But fight with your usual courage,  
" and God and the justice of our cause will protect us.  
" Before night the pride of our enemies shall be  
" humbled in the dust; and the greater part of that  
" multitude shall be stretched on the field, or captives  
" in our power."<sup>2</sup>

The French were drawn up in the same order, but with this fearful disparity in point of number, that

<sup>1</sup> Tres flores aurei et tres leopardi aurei.—Elmh. 61.

<sup>2</sup> Liv. 16. Elmh. 60, 61.



while the English files were but four, theirs were thirty men deep.<sup>1</sup> The constable himself commanded the first division, the dukes of Bar and Alençon the second, the earls of Marle and Falconberg the third. The distance between the two armies scarcely exceeded a quarter of a mile; but the ground was wet and spongy; and D'Albret, faithful to his plan, ordered his men to sit down near their banners, and await in patience the advance of the enemy. Their inactivity disconcerted the king, who expected to be attacked. He improved the opportunity, however, to order a plentiful refreshment to be distributed through the ranks, while two detachments stole away unperceived by the French; of which one was instructed to lie in ambush in a meadow at Tramecourt, on their left flank, and the other to alarm them during the battle by setting fire to the houses in their rear. Just as the king had made every preparation for the attack, he was surprised by the approach of three French knights, who demanded permission to speak with him. One of them was the baron de Helly, who had been a prisoner in England, and was said to have broken his parole. He took the opportunity to deny the charge, and offered to meet in single combat between the two armies any man who should dare

<sup>1</sup> Livius and Elmham observe that in the French lines were placed a number of military engines or cannons, to cast stones into the midst of the English.—Liv. 19. Elm. 62. According to Livius, the French were to the English as something more than seven to one. Monstrelet (i. 228) makes them as six to one. I suspect that in Elmham, where he mentions the files, we should read xxx instead of xx, as we do in Livius. A contemporary writer estimates the enemy at 100,000.—Apud Raynald. v. 473. So also does Hardyng, who was present.—Hard. 395. Juxta computacionem Haraldorum.—Ibid. 391. Fabyan reduces them to “40,000 fightynge men” (579). Gaguin mentions 10,000 cavalry, besides footmen, in the French army.—Ibid. 1.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

to repeat it. The king, who saw the object, instantly replied: "This is not the time for single combats. "Go, tell your countrymen to prepare for battle before night, and doubt not that for the violation of your word, *you* will a second time forfeit your liberty, if not your life." "Sir," returned Helly, "I shall receive no orders from you. Charles is our sovereign. Him we obey; and for him we shall fight against you, whenever we think proper." "Away then," resumed the king, "and take care that we are not before you."<sup>1</sup> Immediately stepping forward, he exclaimed, "Banners, advance!" At the same moment Sir Thomas Erpingham threw his warder into the air; and the men, falling on their knees, bit the ground,<sup>2</sup> arose, shouted, and ran towards the enemy. At the distance of twenty paces they halted to recover breath, and then repeated the shout. It was echoed back by the detachment in the meadow, which issuing from its concealment, instantly assailed the left flank of the French. At the same moment the archers, having planted their stakes, ran before them, discharged their arrows, and

<sup>1</sup> Livius, p. 17. Elmham mentions the arrival of the knights, but not their object, p. 63. But the contemporary ballad says that they summoned him to surrender.

"The lord Haly un trewe knyzt  
Untel oure kyng he come in hye,  
And sayd: 'Syre, zeld zou withoute fyzt  
' And save zoure self and zoure meyny.' "

Elm. 368.

<sup>2</sup> A singulis in ore capta terræ particula.—Tit. Liv. 18, 19. Elm. 65. This singular custom had been introduced by the peasants of Flanders before the great victory which they gained over the French cavalry at Courtray in 1302. A priest stood in front of the army, holding the consecrated host in his hand; and each man, kneeling down, took a particle of earth in his mouth, as a sign of his desire, and an acknowledgment of his unworthiness, to receive the sacrament.—Spondan. ii. 339.



retired behind their rampart. The constable had appointed a select battalion of eight hundred men-at-arms to break this formidable body. Of the whole number not more than seven score ever came into action. These were quickly despatched; the others, unable to face the incessant shower of arrows, turned their visors aside, and lost the government of their horses, which, frantic with pain, plunged in different directions into the close ranks of the first division. It was a moment of irremediable confusion. Nor did the archers lose the opportunity. Slinging their bows behind them, and with their swords or battle-axes in their hands, they burst into the mass of the enemy, killed the constable and principal commanders, and in a short time totally dispersed the whole body.<sup>1</sup>

Henry, who had followed with the men-at-arms, ordered the archers to form again, and immediately charged the second division. The Frenchmen, though the fate of their fellows had checked their presumption, met the shock with courage, and maintained for two hours a most bloody and doubtful contest. The king's life was repeatedly in imminent danger. Seeing his brother, the duke of Clarence, wounded and lying on the ground, he hastily strode across his body, and bravely repelled the efforts of the assailants, till the prince was safely removed by his own servants. Soon afterwards he was charged by a band of eighteen French knights, who had bound themselves to each other to kill him or take him prisoner. One of them with a stroke of his mace brought the king on his knees; but he was instantly rescued by his guards, and his opponents were all slain. At length the duke of Alençon, the French commander, fought his

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 229. Wals. 392. Tit. Liv. 19.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

way to the royal standard. With one stroke he beat the duke of York to the ground; with a second he cleaved the crown on the king's helmet. Every arm was instantly uplifted against him. The duke, aware of his danger, exclaimed, "I yield; I am Alençon." Henry held out his hand; but his gallant enemy had already fallen. The death of the duke was followed by the flight of the survivors.<sup>1</sup>

There still remained the third and most numerous division of the enemy. Though dismayed, it was yet unkroken; and the English were preparing for the charge, when the alarming intelligence arrived that a powerful force approached the rear of the army. In this emergency the king hastily gave orders that all the prisoners should be put to death,—orders which in most instances were unfortunately executed before the mistake could be discovered.<sup>2</sup> The force, which had been so greatly magnified, consisted only of six hundred peasants under Robinet de Bournonville, and Ysambert d'Azincourt; who had profited of the moment to enter Maisoncelles, plunder the baggage, and drive away the horses of the army. That this enterprise should prove so disastrous to their countrymen, they could not have foreseen; but they were afterwards called to account, and severely punished by their immediate lord, the duke of Burgundy.<sup>3</sup>

During this interval, the ranks of the third division began to waver; and their irresolution was augmented by the flames kindled in their rear by the English detachment. Of the whole number no more

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 20. Elmh. 67. Monstrel. i. 231.

<sup>2</sup> This was ordered *sur peine de la hart*, the halter, or the gallows.  
—Monst. 129, b.

<sup>3</sup> Monstrel. i. 229.



than six hundred could be persuaded to follow their leaders, the earls of Falconberg and Marle, who boldly rushed on the conquerors, and found, what they probably sought, captivity or an honourable death. The English were in no condition to pursue the fugitives. As soon as resistance ceased, the king with his barons traversed the field, while the heralds examined the arms and numbered the bodies of the slain. He then called to him Montjoy, the French king-at-arms, and asked him to whom the victory belonged. "To you, sir," replied Montjoy. "And what," continued the king, "is that castle, which I see at a distance?"—"It is called the castle of Azincourt," was the answer. "Then," resumed Henry, "let this battle be known by the name of the battle of Azincourt."<sup>1</sup>

The blood shed on this day was drawn from the noblest families in France. Among the slain were numbered eight thousand knights and esquires, more than a hundred bannerets, seven counts, the three dukes of Brabant, Bar, and Alençon, and the constable and admiral of France.<sup>2</sup> The most distinguished of the prisoners were, the dukes of Orleans and Bourbon, and the counts of Eu, Vendôme, and Richemont. The loss of the conquerors amounted to sixteen hundred men, with the earl of Suffolk, and the duke

<sup>1</sup> The king, impressed with the conviction that he owed his extraordinary success to the protection of Heaven, sent for the clergy, and ordered a service of thanksgiving to be immediately performed in the presence of the whole army. In allusion to their escape from the enemy, they chanted the psalm cxiv. *When Israel came out of Egypt; and at the verse, Not unto us, O Lord, not unto us, but to thy name give the glory*, every man knelt on the ground. The ceremony was concluded with the *Te Deum*.—Hall, f. 50.

<sup>2</sup> Hardyng numbers five counts, ninety bannerets, fifteen hundred knights, and a very great multitude of inferior soldiers (391). Monstrelet gives the names of seven counts, and more than 300 grants seigneurs. (230, 1).



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.  
Oct. 26.

of York. They left Maisoncelles the next morning, and resumed their march towards Calais. As they crossed the field of battle, they killed such of the wounded as still retained any appearance of life; and the moment they were gone, the hope of plunder conducted to the spot thousands of both sexes from the neighbouring villages. The English soldiers had carried off every article of value; these native plunderers stripped the slain of their clothes, and left more than ten thousand dead bodies naked on the ground.<sup>1</sup> The count of Charolois, son of the duke of Burgundy, ordered the dead to be interred at his own expense. Those, which it was possible to recognise, were buried in the nearest churches, or conveyed to the tombs of their ancestors. The rest, to the number of five thousand eight hundred, were deposited in three long and deep pits dug in the field of battle. This vast cemetery was surrounded with a strong inclosure of thorns and trees, which pointed out to succeeding generations the spot where the resolution of a few Englishmen triumphed over the impetuous but ill-directed valour of their numerous enemies.<sup>2</sup>

Oct. 29.

At Calais Henry assembled a council, in which it was determined to return to England. The army, indeed, wasted with disease, fatigue, and the casualties of war, was not in a condition to resume offensive operations; but the argument which chiefly weighed with the king will probably surprise the reader. It was maintained that the last expedition had sufficiently

<sup>1</sup> Et demourerent sur le champ tous desnuez, comme ils issirent du ventre leur mere.—Id. i. 231. Among the slain was the baron de Helly.—Id. 230. Liv. 21. Of the ten thousand all but sixteen hundred are said to have been of gentle birth.—Monstr. 231.

<sup>2</sup> Monstrel. i. 230, 231, 232. Tit. Liv. 21.



demonstrated his right to the crown of France ; that God, by granting him the victory at Azincourt, had given the divine sanction to his claim ; and that the same Providence would hereafter furnish him with the opportunity of again seeking and ultimately recovering his inheritance. The fallacy of such reasoning could escape no one who recollected the events which followed the victories of Creci and Poitiers ; but Henry was satisfied with a decision which allowed him to depart from France, and to receive in person the congratulations of his subjects. He sailed to Dover ; the crowd plunged into the waves to meet him ; and the conqueror was carried in their arms from his vessel to the beach.<sup>1</sup> The road to London exhibited one triumphal procession. The lords, commons, and clergy, the mayor, aldermen, and citizens, conducted him into the capital ; tapestry, representing the deeds of his ancestors, lined the walls of the houses ; pageants were erected in the streets ; sweet wines ran in the conduits ; bands of children, tastefully arrayed, sang his praise ; and the whole population seemed intoxicated with joy.<sup>2</sup> The parliament partook of the general enthusiasm. It ordered the tenth and fifteenth voted the last year to be levied immediately, added another tenth and fifteenth, to be levied within twelve months, granted the king tonnage and poundage for the safeguard of the sea, and settled on him for life the subsidy on wool, wool-fells, and leather.<sup>3</sup>

In the spring Henry's vanity was flattered by a visit

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1415.

Nov. 16.

Nov. 23.

1416.

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 22. The French captives of distinction were in the king's ship. They had never been at sea ; and as it blew a storm, Henry was much diverted to hear them assert, that they would rather fight the battle of Azincourt over again than encounter such another passage.—Ibid.

<sup>2</sup> Liv. *ibid.* Elmh. 71, 72.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 63, 64.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1416.

Mar. 1.

April 7.

from several distinguished personages. Among those who sought to extinguish the schism occasioned by the two pretenders to the papacy, no one had laboured more earnestly than Sigismund, king of the Romans, and emperor elect; and, as the co-operation of the kings of England and France was deemed necessary for the success of his endeavours, he cheerfully undertook to visit, and, if it were possible, to reconcile the two monarchs. In France he was received with honour, held several conferences with Charles and his ministers, and with their approbation proceeded on his journey. Henry endeavoured, by the most magnificent preparations, to convince his guest of his opulence and resources. By royal proclamation all the knights and esquires in the kingdom were summoned to the capital to attend on their sovereign; a fleet of three hundred sail assembled at Calais for the conveyance of Sigismund and his retinue, amounting to a thousand horsemen; and officers were appointed to escort him from Dover to London, and to defray his expenses on the road.<sup>1</sup> But before his arrival a story was told, which created some perplexity in the king's mind. It had chanced that curiosity led the emperor to witness the proceedings in the parliament of Paris; through courtesy he was invited to occupy the throne; and as, during the pleadings, one of the parties was in danger of being nonsuited because he was only an esquire, Sigismund drew his sword, and dubbed him a knight. It was probably a harmless action, proceeding from a mere impulse of the moment; but by the spectators it was reprov'd, and in England was represented as an undue assumption of power in virtue of the imperial dignity.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 339, 340.

<sup>2</sup> Monstrel. i. 235.



Henry determined to preserve the rights and independence of his crown ; and, as soon as the emperor's ship cast anchor in the harbour, the duke of Gloucester and several noblemen rode into the water with their swords drawn, and inquired whether the imperial stranger meant to exercise or claim any authority or jurisdiction in England. He replied in the negative, and was immediately received with all the honours due to the first sovereign in Europe.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1416.  
April 29.

Sigismund had been accompanied or followed to England by ambassadors from France ; and his mediation between the two crowns was seconded by the presence and exhortations of William of Bavaria, duke of Holland, and count of Hainault. Before them Henry explained his right to the kingdom of France ; and alluding to his late victory, claimed the praise of moderation, when he offered to resign that right, on condition that the treaty of Bretigny should be faithfully executed in all its provisions. It is hardly credible that the French ministers could have advised their sovereign to accept of a proposal which must have deprived him of one-half of his dominions ; though the emperor, when he afterwards entered into an alliance with Henry, accused Charles of having given to it a full but treacherous assent.<sup>2</sup> Nothing in reality was more foreign from the present policy of the French court than such a humiliating concession. To the dauphin, who was lately dead, had succeeded in the administration of affairs the count of Armagnac, a nobleman of distinguished talents and approved intrepidity. Anxious to signalize his entry into office with the recovery of Harfleur, he obstinately rejected

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 21, 22. Elm. 73, 77. Acts of Coun. ii. 193.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. ix. 377.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1416.

every proposal for a truce, drew lines round the town, and with a fleet of French ships and Genoese carracks, blockaded the harbour. The earl of Dorset, who commanded in Harfleur, earnestly solicited a supply of troops and provisions; and Henry himself would have sailed to the relief of his first conquest had he not been restrained by the remonstrances of Sigismund, who deemed it an enterprise of less consequence than to require the presence of the sovereign. The earl of Huntingdon accepted the command, and after a rough and dilatory passage reached the mouth of the Seine. At sunset the captains of the fleet were summoned on board of the admiral's vessel; the lights which he displayed during the night kept the ships together; and in the morning they bore down on the enemy. It was found that the loftiest of the English vessels did not reach to the upper decks of the Genoese by more than a spear's length; but the deficiency was supplied by the native courage of the combatants, who climbed up the sides, boarded the enemy, and made themselves masters of four out of the nine carracks. Most of the French ships had previously struck; a few escaped up the river; and Harfleur was relieved.<sup>1</sup>

France still continued to present the same lamentable scene of confusion. The two parties ardently sought the extinction of each other; and, as long as the Armagnacs maintained their ascendancy in the councils of Charles, the duke of Burgundy was urged by the motive of self-preservation to seek a counterpoise in the friendship of Henry. During the last campaign he had forbidden his vassals to serve in the French army according to the summons from their

<sup>1</sup> Liv. 24—26.—Elm. 77—83. Otterb. 279. Monstrel. i. 239.



sovereign, and had allowed his county of Flanders to be declared neutral, for the advantage of the commercial intercourse between the natives and England; but he had cautiously abstained from entering into engagements with Henry, or lending assistance to the invading army. In the present year a continual correspondence was maintained between the two courts. The ostensible object was the regulation of trade; the real cause, the desire of each prince to derive advantage from the personal quarrel of the other. In the beginning of September the king of England, the emperor, who had concluded an alliance with his host, and had been enrolled a knight of the garter, and the count of Hainault, repaired to Calais, where they were met, according to appointment, by the Burgundian.<sup>1</sup> This congress surprised and alarmed the French ministers; nor could their envoys, who attended under pretence of soliciting a truce, discover the secret designs of the four powers. Men would not believe that they had assembled, as it was given out, for the sole purpose of deliberating on the state of the church, and the means of extinguishing the schism; and it was whispered that the duke, through enmity to the Armagnacs, had solicited the protection of Henry, had formally acknowledged his claim to the French crown, and had done homage to him for Burgundy and Alost. The French cabinet gave full credit to the report; and to mark their abhorrence of his conduct, ordered the Burgundian prelates and envoys at Constance to be excluded from the meetings of the French nation; but there is reason to think that the duke was calumniated, and that, if such proposals were made to him at Calais, he re-

Sept. 4.

Oct. 3.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 377—382.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1416.

jected them as incompatible with his interests, or his honour.<sup>1</sup>

From the congress Henry returned to England to obtain supplies from his parliament, and to make preparations for a second expedition at the expiration of the armistice. Sigismund proceeded through Dordrecht to Constance, to support by his presence the prelates who sought, by the deposition of the contending pontiffs, to restore the peace of the church. The duke of Burgundy retired to put in execution the plans which he had formed for his own aggrandizement, but which he had carefully concealed from Henry. At Valenciennes he met the second son of the king of France, who, on the death of his elder brother, had assumed the title of dauphin. The two princes instantly swore eternal friendship to each other; the dauphin engaged to unite with the duke in removing the Armagnacs from the administration; the duke to assist the dauphin in his opposition to the claim of the king of England. But this union was speedily dissolved by the unexpected death of his young ally; and the moment that event was known, his unprincipled mother, Isabella of Bavaria, was arrested by order of her husband, stripped of her treasures, and sent a captive to the city of Tours. The duke seized the opportunity to send a circular

1417.  
April 5.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 397, 401, 436. Monst. i. 240. That such proposals were indeed made appears from the protocol of a treaty preserved by Rymer, in which the duke was made to say, that though he formerly doubted, he was now convinced of Henry's right to the French crown; to promise that he would do him homage, as soon as he should have conquered a notable portion of France; and to engage to make war on A. B. C. if they should oppose the king's pretensions. This being a draught of a treaty without date or signature, shows what was demanded from him (see Rym. ix. 395, 396), but there is no proof that he ever signed it.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1417.  
—

letter to all the towns and cities in France. He charged his opponents with having administered poison to the dauphin, attributed to their rapacity and ambition all the evils which afflicted the kingdom, and claimed the aid of every good Frenchman to reform the government, and punish the traitors. At the head of sixty thousand cavalry he marched towards Paris. Many cities and towns opened their gates through fear of his resentment: by others he was welcomed as the saviour of his country; but the Armagnacs defied his power from the walls of the capital, and quelled the efforts of his partisans within the city. Isabella had been hitherto his bitterest enemy; her captivity taught her to solicit his assistance, and to offer her co-operation against the men who were equally enemies to them both. Early one morning, under pretence of devotion, she prevailed on her keepers to accompany her to a church in the suburbs of Tours; in a few minutes she was in the hands of her deliverer, the duke himself, who during the night, had arrived with eight hundred men-at-arms in a neighbouring forest. She immediately assumed the title of regent during the malady of the king, and by proclamation appointed the duke of Burgundy her lieutenant.<sup>1</sup>

This rapid view of the state of parties in France was necessary to explain the conduct and subsequent success of the king of England. When the Burgundian commenced his march towards Paris, Henry landed without opposition on the coast of Normandy. But the failure of his former attempt had taught him to pursue a different policy. He no longer sought to irritate the vanity of his enemies by an insulting but

August 1.

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 241—257.



- CHAP. dangerous march through the country. He came  
 VI.  
 A.D. 1417. prepared to make permanent conquests ; and his army,  
 — amounting to sixteen thousand men-at-arms, and  
 probably an equal number of archers, was provided  
 with a long train of artillery and military engines,  
 and a useful body of artificers and sappers.<sup>1</sup> It was  
 in vain that he called on the Normans to receive him  
 as their lawful duke. At the expiration of two  
 centuries, the natives felt nothing of that attachment  
 for the descendants of Rollo which had animated  
 their ancestors : they looked on Henry as a foreign  
 adventurer ; and defended their country with the  
 most steady, and often the most enthusiastic bravery.  
 But they received no aid from their countrymen ; they  
 were even deprived of the presence and example of  
 their nobles, whom the Armagnacs detained at Paris  
 to oppose the efforts of the Burgundians ; and fortress  
 after fortress fell into the hands of the invaders.
- Aug. 7--25. Touques, Auvillers, and Villers surrendered after  
 Sept. 2. short sieges ; if Caen refused to capitulate, it was  
 Sept. 19. carried by assault ; Bayeux submitted spontaneously,  
 and obtained the confirmation of its privileges ; and  
 the campaign was terminated by the successive reduc-  
 tion of l'Aigle, Lisieux, Alençon, and Falaise.<sup>2</sup> Dur-

Elm. 92. Tit. Liv. 31, 33. This army was raised in the follow-  
 ing manner. The duke of Clarence furnished 240 lances, the duke  
 of Gloucester 100, the six earls, of March, Warwick, Salisbury,  
 Huntingdon, Suffolk, and the earl marshal, 470, thirteen barons  
 526, seventy-seven bannerets and knights 950 ; in all 2,186 lances,  
 or 6,558 men-at-arms.—Ibid. They also furnished an equal num-  
 ber of archers mounted. The rest of the army, making up the gross  
 amount of 16,400 men-at-arms, were the king's retainers, and  
 private knights who had entered into his service. Some of the  
 numbers are incorrectly printed in Livius ; but the mistakes may be  
 corrected by comparing the number of archers with the number of  
 men-at-arms.

<sup>2</sup> Tit. Liv. 33—49. Rym. ix. 480, 487, 490, 493, 532, 541.  
 Elm. 96—138. Sept. 2, the king dismissed a great number of the



ing its continuance the French government did not attempt to oppose the king in the field, but solicited a peace or an armistice. Henry, however, would not suffer his career to be interrupted by negotiation; and, when at last he consented to listen to the envoys, cut short the conference by the inadmissible tenour of his demands. He would grant neither peace nor armistice but on condition that Catherine, the daughter of Charles, should consent to become his wife; that the regency of the kingdom should be given to him during the lifetime of the king; and that he should be declared his successor in the event of his death.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1417.

Nov. 28.

But while Henry was thus occupied with the conquest of Normandy, a feeble attempt had been made to deprive him of England. In consequence, it is said, of a secret understanding between the Scottish cabinet and the chiefs of the Lollards, the duke of Albany and the earl Douglas suddenly crossed the borders, and laid siege, the former to the castle of Berwick, the latter to that of Roxburgh. It proved, however, a "foul raid." They had persuaded themselves that the kingdom had been left without a competent force for its protection; but when they learned that the dukes of Bedford and Exeter were approaching at the head of a numerous force, they decamped with precipitation, and disbanded their armies.<sup>2</sup> At the same time Sir John Oldcastle emerged from his

transports which had brought the army from England. Of these 117, named logge-ships, had been taken up in Holland, Zeeland, and the neighbouring ports; 122 were English, distinguished by the following names—doggers, faircoasts, balingers, loadships, ships, craieres, collets, barges, picards, skiffs, and passagers. They were paid according to their tonnage.—Rot. Norm. 321—329.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 521—524.

<sup>2</sup> Wals. 398. Ford. xv. 24. Elm. 163.



CHAP. VI. concealment, and arrived in the neighbourhood of  
 A.D. 1417, London. The retreat of the Scots defeated his pro-  
 Nov. jects. At St. Alban's he eluded by a precipitate  
 flight the pursuit of his enemies; but was taken near  
 Broniart, in Montgomeryshire, by the retainers of Sir  
 Edward Charlton, lord of Powis.<sup>1</sup> At the petition of  
 the commons (the parliament was then sitting) he was  
 Dec. 14. arraigned before the peers; the indictment on which  
 he had been formerly outlawed was read; and he was  
 asked in the usual form by the duke of Bedford why  
 he should not receive sentence of death. Instead of  
 replying directly to the question, he preached a long  
 sermon on one of the favourite doctrines of his sect,  
 that it is the duty of man to forgive, and to leave the  
 punishment of offences in the hands of the Almighty.  
 Being interrupted, and required to return a direct  
 answer, he said that he would never acknowledge the  
 authority of that court, as long as his liege lord King  
 Richard II. was alive in Scotland. Judgment was  
 instantly pronounced, that he should be hanged as a  
 traitor, and burnt as a heretic. St. Giles's Fields,  
 which had been the theatre of his rebellion, witnessed  
 also his punishment. By his partisans he would have  
 been revered as a martyr, had not their faith been  
 staggered and scandalized by the non-accomplishment  
 of a prophecy, which he was said to have uttered at  
 the gallows, that he should rise from the grave on the  
 third day.<sup>2</sup>

1418. In the spring Henry resumed his victorious career,  
 and by a reinforcement of fifteen thousand men, was  
 enabled to divide his army, and undertake several

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 219. Rolls, iii. Ellis, 2, ser. i. 86. The king gave  
 to Charlton 1,000 marks as a reward.—Pell Records, 370.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 107—110. Wals. 399, 400.



operations at the same time. Cherbourg, after a resistance of six months, opened its gates; the whole of Lower Normandy was reduced; and the king proceeded to settle the government of his conquests. He appointed a treasurer and chancellor of the duchy; granted his protection to all who swore fealty; abolished the odious tax upon salt; and by the distribution of favours and the suppression of grievances sought to attach the natives to the person of their new sovereign.<sup>1</sup> His progress was viewed with indifference by the rival chiefs, who, to gratify their own ambition, scrupled not to sacrifice the independence of their country. A project of reconciliation, framed by the cardinals Ursini and St. Mark, had been gratefully accepted by the duke of Burgundy, and indignantly rejected by his opponents. From that moment the latter were stigmatized as the enemies of peace, and their interest visibly declined even within the walls of the capital. One night a gate of the city was treacherously opened to a party of Burgundians, who were instantly joined by thousands of citizens; and the king, unable to stem the torrent, reluctantly gave his sanction to their proceedings. A general arrest followed, and the count of Armagnac, several ladies and bishops, the lords of the council, the officers of the treasury, and the members of the parliament, were thrown into confinement. But the leaders of the Burgundians were not yet satisfied. By reports and accusations they goaded the passions of the populace to a state of madness; and on the night of the twelfth of June sixty thousand persons assembled in arms, broke open the gaols, and without distinction of rank or sex, guilt or innocence, mas-

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1418.  
—

May 23.

June 12.

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 50—58. Elm. 117, 118.



CHAP. VI.  
A.D. 1418. — sacred all the prisoners. At the same time perished numbers of those who were known or suspected to be hostile to the party ; but one individual, Charles, the third and only surviving son of the king, escaped by the care of Tannegui du Chastel, who took him out of bed, wrapped him in a sheet, and carried him to a place of safety. After these horrors, the queen, accompanied by the duke of Burgundy, entered Paris in triumph, and having possession of the king's person, exercised without opposition the royal authority.<sup>1</sup> But the remains of the opposite faction repaired to Poitiers, proclaimed the young dauphin regent of the kingdom, and established a rival administration. Thus France was divided into two separate governments, more hostile to each other than to their natural enemy, the king of England, and equally desirous to purchase by concessions his assistance for their own interest. Henry listened to their proposals, but obstinately refused to accept them. It was his policy to play off one party against the other ; that by working on their apprehensions, he might induce them to rise in their offers. When his ministers met the envoys of the dauphin at Alençon, they assumed a tone of the most insulting superiority. It was not for them to bring forward any project ; they had come to receive the proposals of the dauphin. The crown of France was the rightful inheritance of Henry. What could his adversary give him as an equivalent ? When they had thus drawn from the French negotiators a declaration of the offer, which they had been authorized to make, they upbraided them with a want of sincerity ; questioned the validity of the powers with which they had been furnished ; and hinted a

Nov. 10.

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 262—266.



doubt whether their master at so early an age could give sufficient security for the fulfilment of his engagements.<sup>1</sup> This conference was hardly terminated, when a second was opened under the mediation of the cardinal Ursini, with the envoys of the king of France and the duke of Burgundy. They presented to Henry a flattering portrait of the princess Catherine; but the politician would not permit the charms of the lady to weigh in the balance against his interests. During a fortnight he practised upon the hopes and fears, and prejudices of the negotiators; and then dismissed them with the remark, that Charles from his infirmity, and the duke from his inferior rank as a vassal, were equally incapable of disposing of the territories belonging to the French crown.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1418.

Dec. 4.

The negotiation for peace had not interrupted the operations of war; and Henry from the reduction of Pont de l'Arche advanced to lay siege to Rouen, the capital of Upper Normandy. In time of peace its population was estimated at two hundred thousand souls; but the approach of the enemy had prompted numbers to emigrate; and the magistrates by proclamation had urged the departure of all who were not furnished with provisions for ten months. By the French a confident hope was indulged that Rouen would arrest the victorious career of the English

July 19.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 633—645.

<sup>2</sup> Monstrel. i. 271. In both negotiations the English contended that the Latin, the French that the French, language should be employed. It was at last agreed that two copies of every instrument should be made, one in each language, and that in case of dispute the Latin should be deemed the authentic copy. This circumstance is deserving of notice, on account of the reason given by Henry, that his ambassadors did not speak or understand the French tongue; a proof that English had by this time become the language of the higher classes.—Rym. ix. 655—659.



CHAP. VI.  
A.D. 1418. — monarch. Its fortifications were strong ; numerous batteries covered its walls ; the Seine winding round it, served to protect it from insult ; and to fifteen thousand citizens trained to war, had been added four thousand men-at-arms under the command of Guy le Bouteillier, an officer of approved valour and the most ardent patriotism. By his orders the suburbs were immediately burnt, the ground levelled in the neighbourhood of the walls, and the country around reduced to the state of a naked wilderness. At the approach of the English, he boldly met them in the open field ; and, though he was repulsed by superior numbers, continued daily to repeat his attacks, destroying their works, beating up their quarters, and disconcerting their operations. The army encamped in six divisions, opposite to the six gates of the city ; and to preserve the communication between them, trenches were opened sufficiently deep to screen the passengers from the shot of the enemy. I shall neglect the events of the siege ; but the works erected, and the precautions taken by Henry are, from their connection with the history of the military art, more deserving of notice. The natural and artificial strength of the place, with the number and courage of the garrison, forbade a hope that Rouen could be reduced by force ; but it might be starved into submission ; and to prevent the introduction of supplies became the great object of the king's solicitude. Lines were drawn round the city, and strengthened with thick hedges of thorns ; and without the camp the most commanding situation was chosen, and fortified with towers of wood, batteries of cannon, and engines for the projection of arrows. Still the Seine remained open to the besieged. But a bridge was soon

July 30.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1418.  
—

thrown across it above the city ; and near the bridge was moored a squadron of boats, which with incredible exertion had been dragged over the land by the labour of men and horses. Below, the navigation was impeded by two booms, each consisting of three strong chains of iron ;<sup>1</sup> and the mouth of the river was carefully watched by a Portuguese fleet in the pay of the English monarch. Two hundred sail of small vessels, employed for the purpose, poured daily supplies of provisions into the camp of the besiegers ; but within the walls the privations of famine began to be felt before the expiration of two months. Twelve thousand individuals were expelled from the city by order of the governor. Henry forbade them to be admitted within the lines ; and, though a few were supported by the humanity of the troops, the rest perished through want of shelter and food. During the next month the besieged were content to feed on the flesh of their horses ; and when that resource failed, contrived for ten weeks to protract their defence with no other nourishment than reptiles and weeds. It was calculated that the number of those who fell victims to famine and disease had amounted to fifty thousand. The survivors, by a trusty messenger to the French court, described their sufferings, and demanded relief. He returned with flattering but fallacious promises ; he even announced the very day which had been fixed for their deliverance. At the news every eye glistened with hope ; the bells were rung ; rejoicings were made ; and each combatant was admonished to be on his guard, and

<sup>1</sup> One chain was suspended eighteen inches within the water, the second level with the surface, the third three feet above it.—Mons. 268.



CHAP. VI.  
A.D. 1418. to second the efforts of his friends. The day came ;  
it passed, and no deliverer appeared.

— The despair of the garrison now subdued the obstinacy of the governor; but when he solicited a capitulation, Henry rejected his offers, and insisted that he should surrender at discretion. Le Bouteillier assembled his men, and proposed to them to set fire to the city, to throw down that part of the wall which had been undermined, and to burst in a mass into the camp of the enemy; where, if they could not win a way with their swords, they would at least find an honourable death. The knowledge of the design changed the determination of Henry, who had no wish that Rouen should be reduced to a heap of ashes.

1419.  
Jan. 3.

Jan. 13. He gave the men-at-arms their lives and liberty, on condition that they should not serve against him for twelve months; of the citizens he required a contribution of three hundred thousand crowns, in consideration of which they preserved their property and the franchises of the city. The other fortresses followed the example of the capital; and the Normans submitted to wear the red cross, the distinguishing badge of the English nation.<sup>1</sup>

The fall of Rouen was felt to the very extremities of France. It might have been hoped that the adverse factions would now forget their animosities, and unite against their common enemy; but every attempt to reconcile them proved ineffectual; and each had

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 654. Tit. Liv. 60—71. Elm. 176—202. Monstrel. 268, 272—274. It was remarked as something very singular that, when the king made his entry into Rouen, he was followed by a page mounted on a spirited charger, and bearing as a pennon the tail of a fox, attached to the head of a spear.—Monst. 273. It may have alluded to his having once unkenneled a fox in his favourite arbours, which was taken as a good omen, or to some one of the many prophecies then in circulation, and generally believed.



again recourse to a separate negotiation with Henry. The duke of Burgundy requested a renewal of the conferences for peace ; the dauphin solicited a personal interview. For reasons which are not mentioned, the young prince did not keep his appointment ;<sup>1</sup> and the duke, improving the opportunity, affected a willingness to assent to the demands of the English king, who was even persuaded to undertake in person the conduct of the negotiation. Mantes was assigned for the residence of Henry, Pontoise for that of Charles. Between these towns and in a plain near Meulent, was marked out a square plot of ground, of which one side was washed by the Seine, the other three were inclosed with a deep trench and a line of palisades. The mast of a ship erected in the centre designated the spot where it was intended that the kings should meet, and two magnificent pavilions, standing near it, offered them the convenience of withdrawing from the view of the spectators. The ground without the inclosure on the right was allotted to the attendants of Henry, that on the left to the attendants of Charles ; and for their accommodation tents were erected, in the decorations of which the two nations strove to outvie each other. It chanced that on the appointed day the king of France suffered an access of his disorder ; but in the morning Isabella, her daughter Catherine, and the duke of Burgundy, left Pontoise with a retinue of one thousand horse ; and Henry, accompanied by his brothers of Clarence and Gloucester, departed at the same time from Mantes, escorted by an equal number of men-at-arms. At a signal they entered the inclosure from the opposite sides, and met in the centre at the same moment. Henry

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1419.

—  
Feb. 28.

May 30.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 701, 789. Tit. Liv. 71. Elm. 209.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1419.

bowed to Isabella and her daughter, saluted them, and taking the former by the hand led her into the pavilion. It was the first time that he had seen his intended bride. She was young, graceful, and beautiful; and by the instruction of the queen employed all her charms to make an impression on the heart of the conqueror. Though Henry strove to suppress, he could not conceal, his emotions from the inquisitive eye of the mother. This was sufficient for Isabella. From that moment the daughter was withdrawn from the conferences. It was hoped that her absence would irritate the king's passion, and thus induce him to consent to more favourable conditions.<sup>1</sup>

The first conference was employed in arranging the order of the subsequent discussions. Two days later

June 1. Henry stated his demand; the possession of Normandy, his other conquests and the territories ceded by the peace of Bretigny, to be held in full sovereignty, and independently of the French crown. Four days

June 5. elapsed, when the ministers of Charles returned their answer. They made no objections to the king's pretensions; but brought forward eight demands on the part of their own sovereign, respecting renunciations, exchanges of territory, and the payment of debts. Henry fondly persuaded himself that he should at last obtain the prize of his labours. Yet doubts were artfully started, explanations required, and the intervals between the conferences prolonged. In a whole month no more than seven meetings were held; a

July 3. day had been appointed for the eighth; but the French ministers did not appear, and Henry discovered that his own arts had been turned against himself. The conference, conducted at Meulent with

<sup>1</sup> Monst. i. 276, 277. Tit. Liv. 73, 74.



so much parade, was but a feint; the real negotiation was carried on between the dauphin and the duke of Burgundy, whose respective demands and replies had been conveyed from one to the other by the secret agency of Madame de Giac. The day after the interruption of the conferences the two princes met and embraced near Melun on the road to Paris. They bound themselves by oath to forget their former quarrel, to live in amity, to concert measures which might heal the dissensions in the kingdom, and to unite their forces against their enemy the king of England.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1419.  
—

July 4.

July 11.

Never had Henry experienced a more cruel disappointment; but his passion was gratified by the surprise of Pontoise, a populous town in the neighbourhood of Paris. He immediately published a manifesto, in which he boasted of his moderation, complained of the fraud of his opponents, and offered, notwithstanding the insult so lately received, to conclude a peace on the terms which he had formerly proposed; but with this proviso, that Pontoise, with the country lying between that town and Normandy, should be included among the territories to be ceded to the English crown.<sup>2</sup> His prospects, however, began to darken. The duration and expenses of the war had provoked the remonstrances of his subjects; the king of Castile had fitted out an armament, which swept the coast of Guienne, and threatened the city of Bayonne; and the dauphin and the duke of Burgundy were preparing to array against him the whole power of France. But if others doubted, he still

<sup>1</sup> Compare Rym. ix. 762, 776, 779, 789, with Elmham, 217—226, Livius 74, 75, and Monstrelet, i. 277—279.

<sup>2</sup> Rym. ix. 786—791. Tit. Liv. 76.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1419.

---

appeared confident of success ; and within a few days that confidence was converted into certainty by an unexpected revolution, which placed one of the two factions at his disposal, and involved the other in calamity and disgrace.

Sept. 10.

Two months had elapsed since the apparent reconciliation of the dauphin and the Burgundian ; yet their correspondence showed how deeply they mistrusted the sincerity of each other. The duke importuned the prince to join his father's council at Troyes ; the prince required that the duke should previously meet him at Montereau sur Yonne. It was not without hesitation that the latter complied. As he approached the town, he was told that three barriers, with a gate in each, had been drawn across the bridge ; but at the same time a courier informed him that the dauphin had already waited his arrival more than an hour on the opposite bank. Both circumstances awakened his suspicions ; he consulted his friends ; and a hasty determination was taken to proceed, that he might not afterwards be accused of having by groundless jealousies replunged his country into civil dissension. With twelve attendants the duke passed the first and second gates, which were immediately locked behind him. Before he reached the third the dauphin appeared. He bent his knee, and was addressing the prince, when he received a stroke in the face from a small axe in the hand of Tannegui du Chastel. It was in vain that he grasped his sword ; a multitude of wounds instantly laid him dead on the ground. Of his attendants one vaulted over the barrier, and escaped ; a second was slain ; the others remained captives in the power of the assassins. To apologize for this foul murder recourse was had to the



CHAP.

VI.

A.D. 1419.

same plea by which the Burgundian himself had once attempted to justify that of the duke of Orleans; that when a criminal is too powerful to be punished according to law, it is the duty of every loyal subject to make himself the minister of public justice. Whatever might be his guilt, the circumstances of the assassination, perpetrated under the mask of friendship, in violation of the most solemn oaths, and in the presence of the dauphin, fixed an indelible stain on the character of that prince. Perhaps some extenuation may be found in his youth, and the violence of his counsellors; and perhaps some credit may be given to his repeated asseverations, that he had been kept in ignorance of the design till it was carried into execution.

This tragical event excited throughout the kingdom one common feeling of detestation and horror. Every other interest was forgotten; and the former cry for the salvation of the country was drowned in the still louder cry for revenge on the murderers. To the partisans of the late duke it was evident that their security depended on the ruin of the dauphin, and the protection of the king of England. The city of Paris hastened to conclude an armistice;<sup>2</sup> Philip, son and heir to John, solicited his aid and friendship; and Isabella informed him, that whatever arrangements he should make with that prince would be cheerfully ratified by Charles. Henry was not slow to name the price at which he would consent to be the minister of their vengeance, or rather of his own ambition. He required the hand of the princess Catherine, the regency of the kingdom during the life of the king, and the succession to the crown at his death. Blinded

Nov. 20.

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel i. 281. Elm. 235.<sup>2</sup> Rym. ix. 812, 815.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1419.  
Dec. 2.

by passion and personal interest, the queen and the duke signified their assent. Within ten weeks after the murder these important preliminaries were signed; it employed five months to settle the minor arrangements. By these Henry bound himself to settle on Catherine the usual income of an English queen, amounting to twenty thousand nobles; to govern during his regency with the advice of a council of natives; to conquer the territories now in possession of the dauphin for the benefit of his father-in-law; to lay aside the title of king of France during the reign of that monarch; to re-annex Normandy to the French crown as soon as he should ascend the throne; to preserve the parliaments, peers, nobles, cities, towns, commonalties, and all individuals in the full enjoyment of their liberties; and to administer justice according to the laws and customs of the kingdom.<sup>1</sup>

1420.  
May 20.

At length, accompanied by sixteen thousand men-at-arms, he entered Troyes, the residence of the French court.<sup>2</sup> The "perpetual peace" was ratified

May 21.

the next day by Isabella and Philip as commissioners of Charles; the parliament, nobles, citizens, and commonalties, actually acknowledging his authority, swore to observe it; and the union of the two crowns was celebrated with every outward demonstration of joy.

May 30.

According to the national custom, Henry and Catherine were first affianced to each other. Then after a short interval the marriage was celebrated; and two days later "the regent and heir of France," with his

<sup>1</sup> Rym. ix. 816, 825, 840, 877, 890, 893, 894.

<sup>2</sup> The wine of Champagne was strong and heady (*fortissimum et fumosum vinum*). Henry, to preserve sobriety in the army, published a very unpalatable order, that no Englishman should drink wine unmixed with water.—Tit. Liv. 83. Elm. 251.



beautiful bride, departed from Troyes to assume the command at the siege of Sens.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1420.  
—

The operations of the campaign were limited to the reduction of that city, of Montereau, and of the strong fortress of Melun.<sup>2</sup> At the approach of winter the kings with their queens made their triumphal entry into the capital. Charles had summoned the three estates of the kingdom; and in a long speech exposed to them the reasons which had induced him to conclude a “final and perpetual peace with his dear son “the king of England.” He left for their inspection a copy of the treaty, which in a few days was returned with their unanimous approbation.<sup>3</sup> In this assembly appeared the duke of Burgundy, dressed in mourning, and accompanied by the princes of his family. He demanded justice against the assassins of his father; and Charles, after the usual formalities, pronounced the judgment, by which they were declared guilty of high treason, rendered incapable of holding or inheriting office or property, and deprived of all command over their vassals, whom at the same time the

Nov. 18.

Dec. 6.

Dec. 10.

Dec. 23.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. 895—906. The following letter contains some interesting particulars (Ibid. 910). “Worshipful Maister, I recomand me to you. And as touchyng tydyngs, the kyng owre sovereyn loord was weddid with greet solempnitee in the cathedrale chirche of Treys, abowte myd day on Trinitie Sunday. And on the Tuysday suyng he removed toward the town of Sens, xvi leges thennis, havyng wyth hym thedir owre queen and the Frensh estat. And on Wednysday thanne next suyng, was sege leyd to that town, a greet town and a notable, towards Bourgoyneward, holden strong with great nombre of Ermynakes. The whiche town is worthily beseged: for ther ly at that sege, two kyngs—queenes, iv ducks, with my loord of Bedford, whanne he cometh hedir: the which the xii day of the monyth of Juyn shall logge besyde Parys hedirward. An at this sege also lyn many worthy ladyes and gentilwomen, both Frensh and English; of the whiche many of hem begonne the faitz of armes long time agoon, but of lyging at seges now they begynne first.—Johan Ofort.”

<sup>2</sup> Tit. Liv. 89, 90.

<sup>3</sup> Rym. x. 30—32.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1420.

king absolved from all oaths of fealty, and obligations of service. It should, however, be observed that this sentence was issued against the murderers in general, without naming any individual. The young prince is indeed mentioned by the designation of "Charles, styling himself dauphin;" but not so much as a suspicion is hinted that he was either the author or an abettor of the crime.<sup>1</sup>

1421.  
Feb. 23.

From Paris Henry, accompanied by the queen, bent his way towards England. His subjects, proud of their victorious monarch, conducted him in triumph to London, where Catherine was crowned with a magnificence hitherto unparalleled in the English annals.<sup>2</sup> After the ceremony they made a progress through the kingdom; but at York their joy was clouded with the melancholy news of the battle of Beaujé. The duke of Clarence, whom the king had appointed his lieutenant in Normandy, undertook to lay waste the county of Anjou, which still recognised the authority of the dauphin. To oppose him La Fayette had assembled an army of the natives, to whom he joined five or seven thousand Scottish auxiliaries under the earls of Buchan and Wigton, and the lord Stuart of Darnley. The duke suffered himself to be deceived by the false reports of the prisoners. Despising the advice of his officers, he hastened without the archers to surprise the enemy; and was surrounded with his men-at-arms by a numerous force. Twelve hundred

March 22.

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 33—35.

<sup>2</sup> La fut faicte telle et si grande pompe, et bobant, et jolivite, que depuis le temps que jadis le très noble combattant Artus, roy des Bretons et Anglois commença a regner jusques à present ne fut veue en la dite ville de Londres la pareille feste de nuls des roys Anglois. —Monst. i. 303. Fabyan has preserved the names of all the dishes served at the three courses for dinner, p. 402.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1421.  
—

of the English remained on the field; three hundred were taken. The duke, who was distinguished by his coronet of gold and jewels, received a wound from Sir William Swyton, and was slain with a battle-axe by the earl of Buchan. The archers arrived in time to recover his body; but the enemy, who retired in haste, carried off the prisoners. This victory raised the fame of the Scots, and their general was named by the dauphin constable of France.<sup>1</sup>

Revenge and vexation speedily recalled the king to the theatre of war. Troops were ordered to assemble at Dover; loans were raised in every county; and the parliament and convocation were summoned. Both, at Henry's request, approved and ratified the treaty of Troyes.<sup>2</sup> The clergy voted him a tenth; from the lords and commons he did not receive, probably did not ask, any grant of money; but they cheerfully empowered the council to raise loans for the use of the crown on the security of parliament.<sup>3</sup> Anxious to wreak his vengeance on the men who had slain his brother, the king resolved to oppose Scot to Scot,

May 12.

<sup>1</sup> Elm. 302—304. Monst. i. 306. Des Ursins, 389. The Scottish historian, who ascribes all the merit of the victory to his countrymen, tells us that only twelve Scots and two Frenchmen were killed.—Ford. xv. 33. Monstrelet more honestly admits the loss of the two nations to have amounted to more than a thousand men.—Monst. *ibid.*

<sup>2</sup> Per ipsum et tres status regni sui, . . . . videlicet praelatos et clerum, nobiles et magnates, necnon communitates dicti regni.—Rot. Parl. 135. This passage must distress those who contend that the king himself is one of the three estates.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* 130. These loans were raised in a very arbitrary manner. By order of the council letters were sent to individuals, calling on them to furnish the sum of money there specified (which it is stated that they had agreed to lend), or to appear in person under the usual penalty before the king, wherever he might be in England, for such purposes as should then be disclosed to them. The sums demanded descended as low as forty shillings.—Acts of Counc. ii. 280—2.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1421.  
May 30.

and to procure the ministers of his resentment from among their own countrymen. Archibald earl Douglas, in consideration of an annuity of two hundred pounds, contracted to serve him during his life, with two hundred men-at-arms, and two hundred foot soldiers; and James, the young king of Scotland, who had now spent sixteen years in captivity, on a promise that he should revisit his own country within three months after his return, consented to accompany the expedition in quality of a volunteer. He probably was not aware of the object of Henry; who indulged a hope that the Scots in the pay of the dauphin would not venture to fight against their native sovereign. In this he was disappointed; but the presence of James afforded him a pretext to gratify his revenge; and every Scot taken in arms was immediately executed as a traitor.<sup>1</sup>

June 10.

The king landed at Calais with a reinforcement of four thousand men-at-arms, and twenty-four thousand archers.<sup>2</sup> By his orders they proceeded towards the seat of war under the command of the earl of Dorset, while he paid a rapid but welcome visit to his father-in-law at the Bois de Vincennes. Returning to the army, he drove the dauphin from the walls of Chartres; and, leaving the king of Scots to besiege Dreux, chased his adversary into the strong city of Bourges. Thence, to pay his court to the Parisians, he repaired to the capital; and at their request undertook to reduce the city of Meaux. Its commander was the celebrated bastard of Vaurus, whose activity and barbarity had rendered him an object of terror and detestation. Bursting from his asylum with unexampled rapidity, he often swept the whole country

Oct. 6.

<sup>1</sup> Rym. x. 124, 125. Ford. xv. 34.

<sup>2</sup> Monst. i. 307.



to the very gates of Paris; and was accustomed on his return to hang on a particular tree every prisoner who would not, or could not, pay the ransom which he demanded. The town at the end of ten weeks was carried by storm; but the garrison retired into an adjoining work called the market-place, and during five months bade defiance to the united attempts of Henry and his father-in-law. Famine at length compelled them to surrender at discretion. The governor was decapitated. His banner, surmounted with his head, was fixed in his favourite tree, and his trunk suspended from one of the branches. With him were executed three of his officers, who had earned the distinction by their insolence and inhumanity; a few persons, accused of having participated in the murder of the duke of Burgundy, were sent to Paris, to take their trials before the parliament.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1421.

1422.  
May 10.

By the surrender of Meaux the northern division of France, from the frontier to the Loire, with the exception of Maine, Anjou, and a few castles in Picardy, was brought to acknowledge the authority of the king of England; and to add to his good fortune, his queen had lately been delivered of a son, who had received in baptism the name of his father. As soon as Meaux was reduced, she left England, in the company of the duke of Bedford, and hastened with her child to her father and mother at the Bois de Vincennes. Henry flew to join her; and the two courts repaired together to Paris against the festival of Whitsuntide. The citizens gazed at the magnificence of the regent and his nobles; but at the same time pitied and resented the comparative in-

1421.  
Dec. 6.

1422.  
May 21.

<sup>1</sup> Mons. i. 313, 316, 318, 319. Tit. Liv. 92, 93. Elm. 315—325.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1422.  
May 30.

July 30.

significance to which their own sovereign had been reduced. The shows and pageantries with which Henry sought to amuse them, did not soothe their feelings, nor silence their murmurs; and these nascent expressions of discontent might have taught him to entertain a doubt of the ultimate result of his enterprise.<sup>1</sup> But his attention was now called to a more serious subject,—the secret malady which he had for some time affected to despise, but which rapidly undermined his constitution, and baffled the skill of his physicians.<sup>2</sup> At the invitation of the duke of Burgundy he undertook to raise the siege of Cosne; but the failure of his strength rendered him unable to proceed; and at Corbeil he transferred the command of the army to his brother, the duke of Bedford. The dauphin, alarmed at the report of his advance, had retreated across the Loire.<sup>3</sup>

From Corbeil Henry was conveyed back to the Bois de Vincennes, where the progress of his disorder soon extinguished every hope of recovery. He met his fate with composure, and divided the short remnant of his time between the concerns of his soul and those of his family. Whatever might be his feelings, he saw the French crown, the great object of his ambition, slip from his grasp without expressing a regret. \*But for the prosperity of his son he appeared deeply solicitous; the evils of a long and perhaps a tumultuous minority offered themselves to his mind; and his apprehensions and advice, his wishes and commands, were strongly and repeatedly inculcated to the members of his council. On the day

<sup>1</sup> Monstrel. i. 320.

<sup>2</sup> By different writers it is described as a dysentery, a fistula, and a pleurisy.—Raynald. vi. 50.

<sup>3</sup> Tit. Liv. 94, 95. Monst. i. 324.



of his death he called to his bedside the duke of Bedford, the earl of Warwick, and four other noble-  
men of distinction. To their loyalty he recommended his wife and her child; and then appointed the earl of Warwick tutor to the prince, and the duke of Gloucester guardian of the kingdom. As his last advice, he conjured them to cultivate the friendship of the duke of Burgundy, and to offer him the regency of France; but, should he refuse, to give it to his fair brother of Bedford. The issue of the war, he observed, was in the hands of God; but he forbade them, whatever might happen, to release from captivity the French princes of the blood during the minority of his son; or to conclude any peace with the dauphin, unless Normandy were ceded in full sovereignty to the crown of England. Then turning to his physicians, he requested to know how long he might expect to live; and was told, that the Almighty had it in his power to restore him to health. Dissatisfied with the evasion, he repeated his question, and required a direct answer. "Then sir," replied one of them, falling on his knee, "attend to the health of your soul, for you cannot live more than two hours." He heard the awful denunciation unmoved, sent for his confessor, and devoted the remaining moments to exercises of devotion. While the assistants recited around his bed the penitential psalms, he interrupted them at the verse, "Thou shalt build up the walls of Jerusalem," and said in a faint voice, that it had always been his intention to visit Palestine, and free the holy city from the yoke of the Saracens. He expired in a few hours, on the last day of August in the year 1422.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1422.

August 31.

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 95. Monstrel. i. 324. Wal. 407. Martin V. in a



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1422.

---

The splendour which conquest threw around the person of Henry during his life still adheres to his memory four centuries after his death. But he was not only a warrior, he was also a statesman. The praise of constitutional courage he may share with many of his predecessors ; he surpassed most of them in the skill with which he fomented the dissensions among his antagonists, and improved to the best advantage the unexpected events which chequered the busy scene of French politics. Success, however, gave a tinge of arrogance to his character. He did not sufficiently respect the prejudices, nor spare the feelings, of his new subjects ; the pomp and superiority which he displayed mortified their vanity ; and the deference which he exacted from the proudest of the French nobility was reluctantly yielded by men who, under the weak reign of Charles, had been accustomed to trample on the authority of their sovereign. Continually engaged in war, he had little leisure to discharge the duties of a legislator ; but he has been commended for his care to enforce the equal administration of justice, and was beloved by the lower classes, both in France and England, for the protection which he afforded them against the oppression of their superiors.<sup>1</sup> To those who served him, if he were a stern, he was also a bountiful master ; and though he punished severely, he rewarded with munificence. By military men he was

letter asserts that the king died in the most edifying sentiments. In Domino mortuus est ; nam, sicut accepimus, cor ejus excelsum humiliavit, et depositis curis sæculi animum direxit ad Deum, devote ecclesiæ sacramenta accipiens.—Apud Raynald. vi. 50. That he actually meditated a crusade against the infidels, is shown by the survey of the coasts of Egypt and Syria made for him by Gilbert de Lannoi.—See Archæol. xxi. 281.

<sup>1</sup> See Monstrelet, i. 326 ; and Du Fennin, 501.



beloved and adored; and the officers of the army in France resolved to prove the sincerity of that attachment which they had professed for the living monarch, by the extraordinary pomp with which they paid the last duties to his remains.

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1422.  
—

On the funeral car, and under a rich canopy of silk, was placed a bed of crimson and gold, on which reposed the effigy of the king in his robes, with a crown of gold on the head, the sceptre in the right hand, and the globe and cross in the left. It was preceded and followed by five hundred knights and esquires in black armour, with their spears reversed. Around the corpse walked three hundred torchbearers, intermixed with persons bearing achievements, banners, and pennons. The clergy of every district through which the procession passed, were arranged in lines on each side; and behind rode the nobility, the princes of the blood, and the king of Scots as chief mourner. After these, at the distance of a league, followed Queen Catherine with a numerous retinue. In this manner the body of the king was conveyed to Paris and Rouen, where it lay in state; and from Rouen by short journeys to Calais, where a fleet was in waiting to transport it to England. As the procession approached the metropolis, it was met by the bishops, the mitred abbots, and the clergy; and the obsequies were performed in presence of the whole parliament, first in St. Paul's and then in Westminster Abbey. The corpse was interred near the shrine of Edward the Confessor; and the tomb was long visited by the people with feelings of veneration and sorrow.<sup>1</sup>

Nov. 10.

<sup>1</sup> Elm. 336. Wal. 407. Monstrel. i. 325, 326. He adds; et mesmement luy mort et mis en sepulture, luy ont faict, et font chacun



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1422.

---

During Henry's reign the commons obtained from the king a confirmation of their claim, that no statute should be valid unless it were enacted with their assent. They had repeated an ancient complaint, that the terms of their petitions, whether delivered in writing, or by the mouth of the speaker, were frequently so altered by additions, omissions, and pretended corrections, that the law, when it was published, proved to be very different from their original intention. In reply, the king granted that, "fro thenceforth no thyng should be enacted to the petitions of his comune, that might be contrarie of hyr askyng, wharby they shuld be bound without their assent: savyng alwey to himself his real prerogatif to graunte and denye what him lusted of their petitions and askynges aforesaide."<sup>1</sup> He soon afterwards gave them another proof of his regard and condescension, by submitting to their inspection and approval the articles of the treaty which he had concluded with the emperor Sigismund.<sup>2</sup> Henry, like his predecessors, was repeatedly obliged to ask for pecuniary aid; but his victories kept the nation in a frenzy of joy; and both houses liberally acceded to his requests. Though the example of Richard II. had proved the danger of rendering the sovereign independent of parliament, they granted him for life the tonnage and poundage, with the duties upon wool;<sup>3</sup> and, to enable him by loan to anticipate the produce of the taxes, offered the security of parliament to those

*jour aussi grand-honneur et reverence, comme s'ils fussent acertenez, qu'il fut ou soit saint en paradis.*

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 96, 98. It seems, however, to have become a common practice, in most kingdoms at this period, to have solemn treaties ratified by the three estates.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Parl. 63, 64.



who refused to advance money on the sole security of the crown.<sup>1</sup> By these means, and with the tenths granted by the clergy, the king was enabled to raise armies, and carry on a successful war in the heart of France; though, at the same time, if we may believe a statement laid before him by the officers of his treasury, the ordinary revenue of the crown was hardly equal, if it were equal, to the annual expenditure.<sup>2</sup>

I may here direct the attention of the reader to the

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. 95, et passim.

<sup>2</sup> The receipts of the year ending the 29th of September, 1420, from the customs and duties, amounted to 40,676*l.* 19*s.* 9¼*d.*; from the crown lands, escheats, &c. under the head of casualties, to 15,066*l.* 11*s.* 1*d.*, making the gross sum of 55,743*l.* 10*s.* 10¼*d.* The ordinary expenses for the custody of the marches, the fees of the judges and crown officers, and the annuities granted to different persons, amounted to 52,235*l.* 16*s.* 10¾*d.*, leaving the small balance of 3,507*l.* 13*s.* 11½*d.* But out of that sum provision was to be made for the chambers of the king and queen, their household and wardrobe, the royal works, the navy clerk, the constable of the Tower, and the care of the lions, the guard and support of prisoners, embassies, &c., and an allowance of 100*l.* per month lately granted to the duchess of Brabant. It was moreover observed, that no provision whatever had yet been made for the payment of old debts, among which were numbered those contracted by the king in his prodigal career before he came to the throne.—Rym. x. 113, 114. It has, however, been suggested that this statement in Rymer is incorrect; that its deficiency should be supplied from another statement in the Rolls, belonging to the twelfth year of the next reign; and that a sum of 20,000*l.* should be added for the revenue derived from fee-farm rents, from Ireland, Aquitaine, the duchy of Lancaster, &c. I see no cause for the addition. Both statements are divided in the same manner. In the first part is given the revenue belonging to the crown, in the second that derived from parliamentary grants. The chief difference between them is, that the statement in Rymer gives the net amount of the first, after the deduction of all charges upon it: the second contains every particular sum as well as the charges. If it be said that the statement in the Rolls gives something more than 30,000*l.* for the hereditary revenue, while that in Rymer gives only 15,000*l.*—the answer is obvious. The sum of 30,000*l.*, after the deduction of the charges upon it, dwindles to about 11,000*l.*; and thus comes as near as could be expected to the amount of the revenue in the time of Henry V. as it is stated in Rymer.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1422.

---

schism in the papacy, a subject which at this period excited considerable interest. He has witnessed its origin at the death of Gregory XI.; after the lapse of almost forty years it still continued to divide and agitate the nations of Europe. The original competitors, Urban and Clement, were indeed dead; but their rival claims had been perpetuated by the zeal or ambition of their partisans; and to Urban had succeeded Boniface IX., Innocent VII., and Gregory XII.; to Clement Peter de Luna, an Arragonese, who, under the name of Benedict XIII., wore the tiara for the long period of thirty years. The evils arising from the conflicting jurisdiction and opposite anathemas of these pontiffs provoked complaints and remonstrances. Consultations were held; princes and prelates united their efforts to put an end to the schism; and a general understanding prevailed, that the two rivals should be induced or compelled to resign, and a new pope should be canonically elected. With this view the church of France withdrew from the obedience of Benedict, whose authority it had previously acknowledged: but, when this example was proposed for imitation to the English prelates, they contented themselves with petitioning the king to withhold from Gregory XII. the moneys which the pontiffs annually drew from the kingdom.<sup>1</sup> At length the cardinals of the two parties united; a council assembled at Pisa; a sentence of deposition was pronounced against both the competitors; and Peter, a Greek, was raised to the papacy by the name of Alexander V. But the remedy added to the evil. Both Gregory and Benedict disputed the authority of the council; and Europe saw for the first time three pontiffs con-

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 306.



tending for the chair of St. Peter. The restoration of tranquillity was owing to the exertions of the emperor Sigismund, who, by persuasion and menaces, prevailed on John XXIII., the successor of Alexander, to call the council of Constance. In this assembly Gregory resigned; and the refusal of John and Benedict to copy his example was followed by a solemn sentence of deposition. To give the greater stability to the election of the pope, six persons from each of the five nations of Italy, Germany, England, France, and Spain, entered the conclave, and, at the nomination of the bishop of London, the Cardinal Colonna was unanimously chosen.<sup>1</sup> He assumed the name of Martin V. Benedict indeed maintained his pretensions in his native country, but after his death his successor acknowledged the claim of Martin. If the schism was thus terminated, it had previously given a shock to the temporal authority of the pontiffs, from which it never recovered. The contending rivals dared not employ the imperious tone of their predecessors. It was the policy of each to conciliate, to increase the number of his adherents, and to avoid every measure which might drive men to seek the friendship of his opponent. Hence the pretensions which had given so much offence to the sovereigns were allowed to fall into desuetude; enactments, hostile to the immunities or claims of the church, were either passed over in silence, or but feebly opposed; and instead of the spiritual weapons of excommunication and interdict, were adopted the more persuasive means of entreaty and concession.

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1422.

1417.  
Nov. 11.

<sup>1</sup> The English nation was represented by the bishops of London, Bath, Lichfield, and Norwich, the dean of York and the abbot of St. Mary's in the same city.—Harps. f. 610.



CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1417.

1399.

1416.

1417.

In England the duration of the schism had allowed the statutes against provisors to be executed with little opposition. Experience, however, showed that they operated in a way which had never been contemplated, to the depression of learning, and the deterioration of the universities. Both these bodies, in the year 1399, presented petitions to the convocation, setting forth, that while the popes were permitted to confer benefices by provision, the preference had always been given to men of talents and industry, who had obtained degrees in the universities; and that the effect of such preference had been to quicken the application, and multiply the number of the students; but that, since the passing of the acts against provisors, their members had been neglected by the patrons, the students had disappeared, and the schools were nearly abandoned.<sup>1</sup> The evil continued to increase. Sixteen years later it attracted the notice of the commons, who, to preserve the universities from utter destruction, petitioned the king, that the statutes against provisors might be repealed, or an adequate remedy provided.<sup>2</sup> He informed them that he had referred the matter to the bishops. But these prelates had no wish that the statutes should be repealed; and in convocation a law was published, obliging every spiritual patron during the next ten years to bestow the first vacant benefice in his presentation, and after that every second, on some member of either university, graduated in one of the three faculties of divinity, law, or physic. It was hoped that this expedient would silence their complaints; though on account of objections raised by the universities themselves, four years

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 242.

<sup>2</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 81.



elapsed before it was put into execution.<sup>1</sup> The truth is, that the persons who chiefly suffered from the practice of provisions, and who chiefly profited by the statutes against them, were the higher orders of the clergy. These, as their right of presentation was invaded by the exercise of the papal claim, had originally provoked the complaints which the reader has so frequently noticed, and now were ready to submit to a minor sacrifice, rather than allow the repeal of the statutes which secured to them the influence of patronage, and shielded them from the interference of the pontiffs.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
A.D. 1421.  
—

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 381, 401.

<sup>2</sup> I profit of this open space to notice a singular assertion of Hume at the close of his nineteenth chapter; that "the first commission of array which we meet with was issued by Henry V. in 1415; when the feudal militia gave place to one which was still less orderly and regular." The fact is, that such commissions were usual in every reign since Henry II.—See vol. ii. p. 240; and vol. iii. p. 250.



elaborate historic were put into circulation. The truth is that the persons who chiefly suffered from the restriction of suffrage, and who were excluded by the action against them, were the higher orders of the clergy. These as their right of participation was limited by the exercise of the right of election, and originally proved the complexity which the restriction had so frequently noticed, and now was made to refer to a minor restriction, rather than allow the restriction of the election which remained to them the substance of participation, and excluded them from the influence of the political.

I wish to call attention to a singular restriction of suffrage in the case of the electors of the House of Representatives. It is that which we have seen in the case of the electors of the House of Representatives. The fact is that such restriction was made in 1842, and it is now in force. It is a restriction which we have seen in the case of the electors of the House of Representatives. The fact is that such restriction was made in 1842, and it is now in force.

The restriction of suffrage in the case of the electors of the House of Representatives is a restriction which we have seen in the case of the electors of the House of Representatives. The fact is that such restriction was made in 1842, and it is now in force. It is a restriction which we have seen in the case of the electors of the House of Representatives. The fact is that such restriction was made in 1842, and it is now in force.



## APPENDIX.

NOTE A, p. 76.

*The Death of Thomas de Gournay.*

SINCE the last edition of this work, Mr. Hunter has discovered among the compotuses rendered into the Exchequer in the years 1332 and 1333, the charges made by two of the king's messengers, who had been employed to bring Gournay to England; and has published them with valuable remarks in *Archæologia*, vol. xxvii. These charges, though confined to matters of account, casually disclose several interesting particulars, and serve to correct the errors of our ancient historians.

We learn from the *Fœdera* that Sir John Martin de Leyna, chamberlain to Alphonso XI., king of Castile, having discovered Gournay, procured his committal to prison at Burgos, and sent a messenger with the intelligence to Edward. It was agreed that Leyna should receive the promised reward of 300*l.* on the delivery of the prisoner to the civil authorities of the town of Bayonne. The council gave to the messenger a gratuity of 50*l.*; and sent to Alphonso and the magistrates of Burgos a request, that Gournay might be judicially interrogated, and an official copy of his answers might be given to the English envoy, before the latter took the prisoner in charge.—*New Rym.* p. 821.

That envoy, a sergeant-at-arms, called Egidius de Ispannia (Giles Spain), left England, as appears from his bill of expenses, on 11th June, 1331. In Castile he was detained five months, following the court in its frequent migrations from place to place, and negotiating at one time with the king, at another with the chamberlain. At length all difficulties were surmounted. He went to Bayonne to receive the 300*l.*, which he had engaged to pay at Pampeluna; and a special messenger was despatched from England to receive the prisoner from the magistrates of Bayonne on his arrival in that town (Feb. 13, 1332).—*Rym.* 832. But at Pampeluna, Giles was informed that Gournay was not forthcoming, but had made his escape out of prison. After a long and fruitless search, he returned to England on the 17th of June, 1332. Upon a review of these cir-



cumstances it appears to me, that some other party, interested in the safety of Gournay, had been bidding against the English monarch; and that the Spaniard found it at last more profitable to connive at the escape, than to consent to the delivery of the prisoner.

But the murderer was nowhere safe. Before the end of the year he was discovered in Naples, and committed to prison at the suit of a William de Cornwall. Edward sent from England a Yorkshire knight, Sir William de Twenge, to whom he was immediately delivered by Robert, king of Sicily. Twenge freighted a small ship for Aigues Mortes, landed at that port, or more probably at Marseilles (for he hired a guide to conduct them from Marseilles to Bayonne—*de Marsill usque Bayonne*.—*Archæol.* xxvii. 293), and had passed the town of Perpignan, when they were arrested by the heirs of a native merchant; who, having been robbed by English sailors, had obtained a license from his sovereign to reimburse himself by seizing the goods or persons of English subjects. From this unpleasant situation they were relieved by the intervention of Alphonso IV., king of Arragon; who commissioned one of his officers to conduct them in safety through his dominions. Having crossed the Pyrenees, they reached Sordes, and sailed down the river to Bayonne.

But Gournay's health was now in a dangerous state. While he was yet on the road, we find a charge of thirty-nine florins for medicines for him, and for medical attendance; soon after his arrival we meet with another charge of fifty-two florins under the same head, and this is followed by a third charge of twenty-seven florins for the conveyance of his *dead* body, in a boat from Bayonne to Bordeaux. Thence the knight proceeds with it to Sandwich, and learning that the king is in Scotland, puts to sea again, and delivers his charge at Berwick.

We are told by Moor, who is repeated by Walsingham, that Gournay was decapitated at sea, to prevent him from compromising certain great personages by his testimony:—*Massiliam fugitivus clanculo, post triennium cognitus, captus, et versus Angliam reductus, pœnam pro meritis recepturus, in mari fuit decapitatus, ne forte magistros et magnos prelatos et quamplures alios de regno sibi suum nefas monuisse, et in illud sibi suum assensum præbuisse, accusasset*.—Moor, 603. From the preceding narrative it is evident that Moor's account cannot be accurate; yet no one will be surprised that such a report should find credit at the time, who recollects how necessary it was to the safety of many distinguished persons that he should never come to England alive, and considers in addition the apparent mystery which attended the landing of his dead body.



## NOTE A, p. 430.

*The Defiance sent by the Percies to Henry IV.*

The authenticity of this instrument has been recently disputed, but, as far as I can judge, on very insufficient grounds.

1. It is, indeed, evident that the earl of Northumberland could not (as in this document he is made to do) *personally* join with his son Hotspur, and his brother of Westmoreland, in defying Henry to battle on that very day (*hac die*); because he was at the same time many miles distant in Yorkshire. But it should be remembered that he was the head of the enterprise; that if he was absent, it was owing to accident only, and that it was of importance to the insurgents that Henry should believe him to be present. Hence it will be no improbable supposition that his son and his brother, either with or without his previous consent, determined to couple his name with their own, and to affix his seal as well as theirs to the instrument, which bears neither date nor signature. It was delivered to Henry by Thomas Knayton and Roger Salvayn, two esquires of Sir Henry Percy.

2. It is objected that the defiance contains a palpable contradiction, because it states in the first article, that Henry on his landing made oath before the Percies at Doncaster, that he would remain the faithful subject of King Richard, as long as that prince should live; and in the second article, that Henry made oath at the same time and place that he would never raise taxes without the consent of parliament—an oath which presupposes an avowed intention in him to seize the throne. But this is a mistake. Henry swore, first, that he would acknowledge Richard for his sovereign, and secondly, that he would not permit taxes to be levied for the king's (Richard's) use, without consent of parliament—*quod nullas decimas, &c., levare permitteres ad opus regium, nisi per considerationem trium statuum regni in parlamento*.

3. The next objection is, that the sixth article states a falsehood, where it asserts that Mortimer was at that very time (*adhuc*) a prisoner, and in chains with Owen Glendower, though it is well known that he had long before married the daughter of the Welsh prince, and had become his confederate. But most certainly the word *adhuc* has no reference to the day on which the defiance was made. It refers to the opposition made by Henry to the ransom of Mortimer, while that nobleman was *yet* in prison and chains: *Ubi fuit captus et in priona et in vinctis adhuc crudeliter tentus, quem tu proclamasti captum ex dolo, et noluisti pati deliberationem suam*.—Hardyng, p. 352.

Hence I do not see any sufficient reason why this cartel of defiance should be taken for a forgery.

END OF VOL. III.











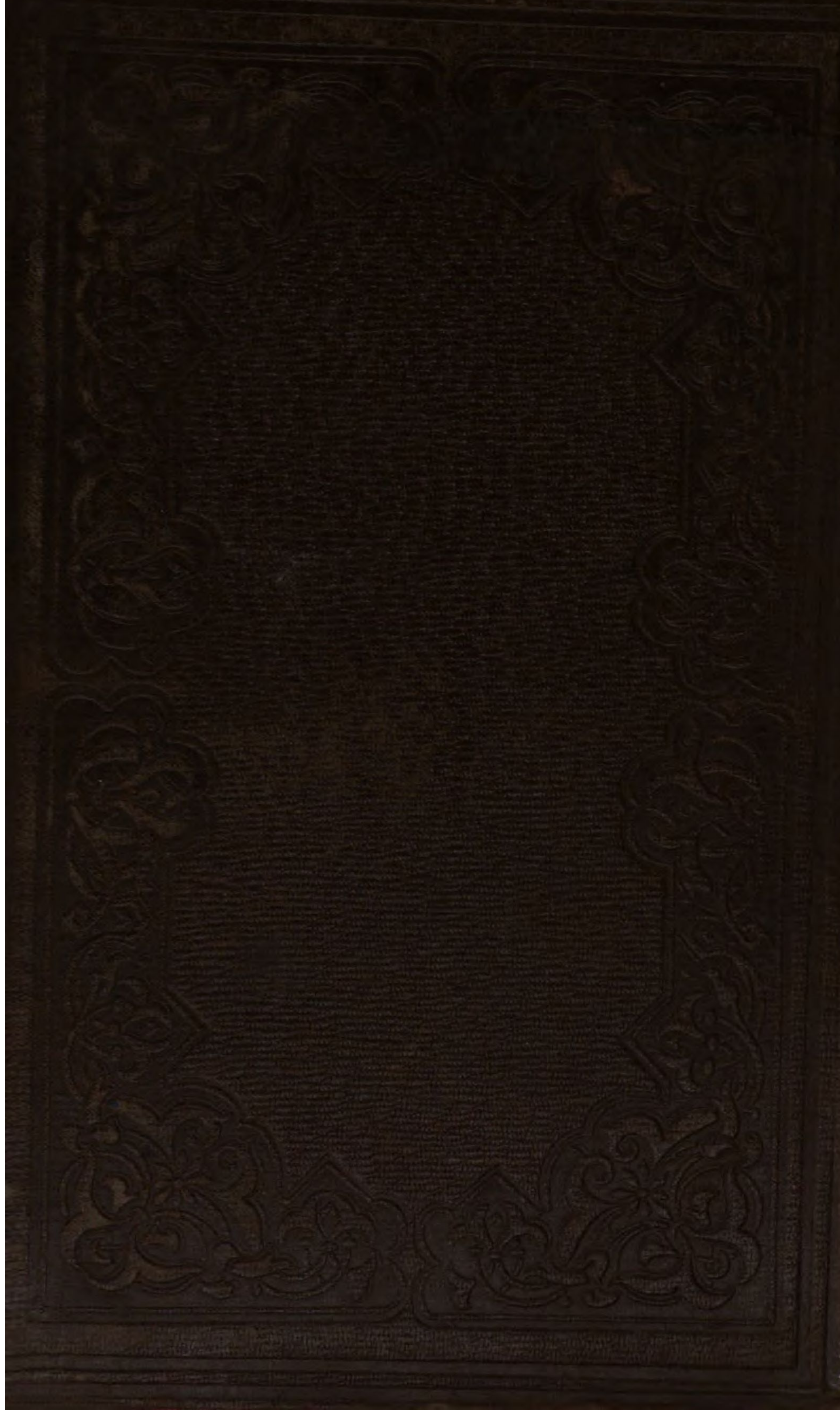














Lingard, John,

The History of England, from the first invasion by the Romans to the  
accession of William and Mary in 1688

Bd.: 3

London 1849

Brit. 355 mf-3

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10280681-6